LEGAT ARCHITECTS

ESTES CONSTRUCTION

Project Manual
Volume 2: M.E.P. FP. & CIVIL
ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER **224150.00**

Moline-Coal Valley School District
Lincoln-Irving Addition and Renovation

1015 16th Avenue, Moline, IL 61265

FOR THE
Board of Education
Moline – Coal Valley School District
1900 52nd Avenue
Moline, IL 61265

Issued for Bidding
October 23, 2025

Lincoln-Irving Addition and Renovation

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME 2: M.E.P. FP. AND CIVIL

DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 05 13 Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression Equipment 3
21 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping 5
21 05 18 Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping 2
21 05 23 General-Duty Valves for Fire Protection Piping 6
21 05 53 Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment 4
21 07 00 Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation 22
21 11 19 Fire-Department Connections 2
21 12 13 Fire-Suppression Hoses and Nozzles 4
21 13 13 Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems 17
21 13 16 Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems 11

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 00 00 Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods 4
22 05 13 Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment 2
22 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping 4
22 05 18 Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping 3
22 05 19 Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping 8
22 05 23.12 Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping 8
22 05 23.14 Check Valves for Plumbing Piping 8
22 05 23.15 Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping 5
22 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment 9
22 05 53 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment 4
22 07 19 Plumbing Piping Insulation 18
22 11 16 Domestic Water Piping 14
22 11 19 Domestic Water Piping Specialties 9
22 11 23 Domestic Water Pumps 4
22 13 16 Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping 13
22 13 19 Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties 12
22 14 13 Facility Storm Drainage Piping 7
22 14 23 Storm Drainage Piping Specialties 8
22 14 29 Sump Pumps 4
22 34 00 Fuel-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters 6
22 42 13.13 Commercial Water Closets 5
22 42 16.13 Commercial Lavatories 6
22 42 16.16 Commercial Sinks 5
22 42 23 Commercial Showers 3
22 47 23 Drinking Fountains 3

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 00 00 Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods 4
23 05 13 Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment 3
23 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping 4
23 05 18 Escutcheons for HVAC Piping 3
23 05 19 Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping 14
23 05 23 General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping 13
23 05 29 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment 9
23 05 48 Vibration and Seismic Controls for Mechanical Systems 12
23 05 53 Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment 5
23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing for HVAC 15
23 07 13 Duct Insulation 15
23 07 14 Acoustical Joint Sealant 2
23 07 16 HVAC Equipment Insulation 26
23 07 19 HVAC Piping Insulation 13

23 08 00 Commissioning of HVAC 4
23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC 22
23 09 20 Building Automation System (BAS) 20
23 09 21 Building Automation System (BAS)- Basic Materials, Interface Devices, And Sensors 17
23 09 23 Building Automation System (BAS)- Field Panels 8
23 09 24 Building Automation System (BAS)– Communication Devices 1
23 09 25 Building Automation System (BAS)– Software and Programming 20
23 09 25.01 Building Automation System (BAS)– Software and Programming Exhibits 19
23 09 26 Building Automation System (BAS)– Sequence of Operation 6
23 09 27 Building Automation System (BAS)– Commissioning 9
23 11 23 Facility Natural-Gas Piping 17
23 21 13 Hydronic Piping 15
23 21 16 Hydronic Piping Specialties 11
23 21 23 Hydronic Pumps 7
23 23 00 Refrigerant Piping 12
23 29 23 Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers 13
23 31 13 Metal Ducts 15
23 33 00 Air Duct Accessories 13
23 33 53 Duct and Plenum Liners 4
23 34 23 HVAC Power Ventilators 4
23 36 00 Air Terminal Units 6
23 37 13 Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles 3
23 51 13 Draft Control Devices 2
23 52 16 Condensing Boilers 7
23 63 13 Air Cooled Refrigerant Condensers 4
23 73 13 Central-Station Air-Handling Units 14
23 74 13 Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units 11
23 74 33 Dedicated Outdoor Air Units 11
23 81 26 Split-System Air-Conditioners 5
23 82 19 Fan Coil Units 7
23 82 23 Unit Ventilators 6
23 82 39.19 Wall and Ceiling Unit Heaters 2

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 05 00 Common Work Results for Electrical 3
26 05 19 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables 3
26 05 26 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems 5
26 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems 5
26 05 33 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems 9
26 05 43 Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems 8
26 05 44 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling 3
26 05 53 Identification for Electrical Systems 7
26 05 73 Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study 7
26 05 74 Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study 7
26 09 23 Lighting Control Devices 6
26 24 13 Switchboards 10
26 24 16 Panelboards 9
26 27 26 Wiring Devices 5
26 28 13 Fuses 2
26 28 16 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers 6
26 32 13 Generator Sets 15
26 43 13 Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits 3
26 51 19 LED Interior Lighting 6
26 52 19 Emergency and Exit Lighting 6
26 56 19 LED Exterior Lighting 5

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

27 05 26 Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems 8
27 05 28 Pathways for Communications Systems 9
27 05 44 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling 3

27 11 00 Communications Equipment Room Fittings 5
27 13 00 Communications Backbone Cabling 12
27 15 00 Communications Horizontal Cabling 14

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
28 05 13 Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security 17
28 31 11 Fire-Alarm System 18

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK
31 05 13 Soils for Earthwork 5
31 05 16 Aggregates for Earthwork 4
31 05 19.13 Geotextiles for Earthwork 8
31 10 00 Site Clearing 2
31 22 13 Rough Grading 3
31 23 00 Foundation Excavating and Backfilling 7
31 23 16 Excavation 3
31 23 16.13 Trenching 6
31 23 23 Fill 4
31 25 00 Erosion and Sedimentation Controls 3
31 26 00 Steel Helical Piles 12

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS
32 11 23 Aggregate Base Courses 3
32 12 16 Asphalt Paving 4
32 13 13 Concrete Paving 6
32 16 23 Sidewalks 7
32 17 23 Pavement Markings 6
32 17 26 Tactile Warning Surfacing 4
32 18 10 Synthetic Turf System 9
32 18 13 Synthetic Grass Surfacing 6
32 18 16 Poured-In-Place Bonded Rubber Mulch Surface For Playground Areas 3
32 31 13 Chain Link Fencing 2
32 33 00 Site Furnishings 2
32 92 19 Seeding 3
32 93 00 Plants 4

DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES
33 01 10.58 Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems 2
33 01 30.86 Manhole Rim Adjustment 3
33 05 05.33 Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing 3
33 05 05.36 Vacuum Testing 2
33 05 05.41 Air Testing 3
33 05 05.43 Mandrel Testing 2
33 05 09.33 Thrust Restraint for Utility Piping 4
33 05 61 Concrete Manholes 8
33 14 16 Site Water Utility Distribution Piping 7
33 14 17 Site Water Service Utility Laterals 7
33 14 19 Valves and Hydrants for Water Utility Service 5
33 31 00 Sanitary Sewerage Piping 5
33 42 00 Stormwater Conveyance 6

SECTION 21 05 13

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.03 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
   1. Motor controllers.
   2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
   3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
   4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
   2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:
   1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
   2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.04 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
   1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
   2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
   3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
   4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
   1. Permanent-split capacitor.
   2. Split phase.
   3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
   4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 05 17

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.02 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel Plastic Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.05 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.02 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.03 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.04 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.05 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Cast-iron wall sleeves Galvanized-steel wall sleeves Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings .
    b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves Galvanized-steel wall sleeves Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves .
2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Sleeve-seal fittings .
        1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system .
        1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Sleeve-seal fittings .
        1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves .
        1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves PVC-pipe sleeves Stack-sleeve fittings Sleeve-seal fittings Molded-PE or -PP sleeves Molded-PVC sleeves .

b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves PVC-pipe sleeves Stack-sleeve fittings .

5. Interior Partitions:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves PVC-pipe sleeves .

b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves .

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 05 18

ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Escutcheons.
   2. Floor plates.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.02 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
   1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
      a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 05 23

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
2. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
3. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
4. Check valves.
5. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
6. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
7. NRS gate valves.
8. Indicator posts.
9. Trim and drain valves.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

B. NRS: Nonrising stem.

C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

D. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.

2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.

2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
   a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.

B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
   1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
      a. Indicator posts.
      b. Valves.
         1) Gate valves.
         2) Check valves.
            a) Single check valves.
         3) Miscellaneous valves.

C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.

D. ASME Compliance:
   1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
   2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
   3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.

G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.

H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

I. Valve Actuator Types:
   1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
   2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
   3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

2.02 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Description:
   1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
   2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
   3. Body Design: Two piece.
   4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
   5. Port Size: Full or standard.
   6. Seats: PTFE.
   7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
   8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
   9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
   10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
   11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) through NPS 2 (DN 50): Threaded ends.
   12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Grooved ends.

2.03 BRONZE BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Minimum: Pressure rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem Material: Bronze or stainless steel.
6. Disc: Bronze Stainless steel with EPDM coating.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) through NPS 2 (DN 50): Threaded ends.
10. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Grooved ends.

2.04 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Description:
1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated and EPDM or SBR coated.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Lug or wafer Grooved-end connections.

2.05 CHECK VALVES

A. Description:
1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

2.06 BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES

A. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Threaded.

2.07 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged Grooved Threaded.

2.08 NRS GATE VALVES

A. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged Grooved Threaded.

2.09 INDICATOR POSTS

A. Description:
1. Standard: UL 789 and FM Global standard for indicator posts.
2. Type: Underground Pit Wall.
3. Base Barrel Material: Cast or ductile iron PVC.
4. Extension Barrel: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Cap: Cast or ductile iron.
6. Operation: Wrench Handwheel.

2.010 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball Valves:
1. Description:
a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) 250 psig (1720 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa) .
b. Body Design: Two piece.
c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
d. Port size: Full or standard.
e. Seats: PTFE.
f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
h. Actuator: Handlever.
i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) through NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Threaded ends.
j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2 (DN 32 and DN 65): Grooved ends.

B. Angle Valves:
1. Description:
a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) 250 psig (1720 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa).
b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.

c. Ends: Threaded.
d. Stem: Bronze.
e. Disc: Bronze.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:
1. Description:
a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) 250 psig (1720 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa).
b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
c. Ends: Threaded.
d. Stem: Bronze.
e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
1. Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for application of valves in fire-suppression water-service piping outside the building.
2. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for application of valves in fire-suppression standpipes.
3. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
4. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
5. Section 211339 "Foam-Water Systems" for application of valves in AFFF piping.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.

E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.

F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.

H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.

I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 05 53

IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Equipment labels.
   2. Warning signs and labels.
   3. Pipe labels.
   4. Stencils.
   5. Valve tags.
   6. Warning tags.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
   1. Material and Thickness: [Brass, 0.032 inch (0.8 mm)] [stainless steel, 0.025 inch (0.64 mm)] [aluminum, 0.032 inch (0.8 mm)] [or] [anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch (0.8 mm)] thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Letter Color: [Black] [Blue] [Red] [White] [Yellow] .
   3. Background Color: [Black] [Blue] [Red] [White] [Yellow] .
   4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
   5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
   6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel [rivets] [or] [self-tapping screws].
   7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
   1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, [1/16 inch (1.6 mm)] [1/8 inch (3.2 mm)] thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Letter Color: [Black] [Blue] [Red] [White] [Yellow] .
   3. Background Color: [Black] [Blue] [Red] [White] [Yellow] .
   4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
   5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).

6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel [rivets] [or] [self-tapping screws].
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.02 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, [1/16 inch (1.6 mm)] [1/8 inch (3.2 mm)] thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: [Black] [Blue] [Red] [White] [Yellow] .

C. Background Color: [Black] [Blue] [Red] [White] [Yellow] .

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel [rivets] [or] [self-tapping screws].

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.03 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to [partially cover] [cover full] circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: [Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping] [At least 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances].

E. Pipe-Label Colors:

1. Background Color: Safety Red.
2. Letter Color: White.

2.04 STENCILS

A. Stencils for Piping:
   1. Lettering Size: [Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping] [At least 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances].
   2. Stencil Material: [Aluminum] [Brass] [Fiberboard] [Fiberboard or metal] .
   3. Stencil Paint: Safety Red, exterior, gloss, [alkyd enamel] [acrylic enamel] . Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
   4. Identification Paint: White, exterior, [alkyd enamel] [acrylic enamel] . Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.05 VALVE TAGS

A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
   1. Tag Material: [Brass, 0.032 inch (0.8 mm)] [stainless steel, 0.025 inch (0.64 mm)] [aluminum, 0.032 inch (0.8 mm)] [or] [anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch (0.8 mm)] thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Fasteners: Brass [wire-link chain] [beaded chain] [or] [S-hook].
   3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
   4. Letter Color: White.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
   1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.06 WARNING TAGS

A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
   1. Size: [3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum] [Approximately 4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm)] .
   2. Fasteners: [Brass grommet and wire] [Reinforced grommet and wire or string].
   3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
   4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.03 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.04 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping: Painting of piping is specified in [Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]

B. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1,[with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles] on each piping system.
   1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
   2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
   1. Near each valve and control device.
   2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
   3. Near penetrations and on [both sides of]through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
   4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
   5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
   6. Spaced at maximum intervals of [50 feet (15 m)] along each run. Reduce intervals to [25 feet (7.6 m)] in areas of congested piping and equipment.
   7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

3.05 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
   1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
      a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)], [round] [square] .
      b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)], [round] [square] .
      c. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)], [round] [square] .
      d. Foam-Water System: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)], [round] [square] .
      e. Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)], [round] [square] .

3.06 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 07 00

FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Insulating indoor engine coolant piping for remote radiator of engine-driven fire pump.
2. Insulating indoor engine exhaust piping and silencer.
3. Insulating indoor and outdoor equipment.
4. Insulating outdoor piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
8. Detail field application for fire-suppression water storage tanks.

C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to

authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.

1. Piping Mockups:
   a. One 10-foot (3-m) section of NPS 2 (DN 50) straight pipe.
   b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
   c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
   d. One NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or larger valve.
   e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
   f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
   g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
   h. One pressure temperature tap.
   i. One mechanical coupling.
2. Equipment Mockups:
   a. One tank or vessel.
3. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
4. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
6. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
7. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
8. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.08 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Calcium Silicate:
   1. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   2. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
   2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
   3. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
   4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
   5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
   6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket with factory-applied ASJ with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

K. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
   1. Type I, 850 Deg F (454 Deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket with factory-applied ASJ with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   2. Type II, 1200 Deg F (649 Deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket with factory-applied ASJ with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

L. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at

100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

M. Phenolic:
1. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
4. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   a. Preformed Pipe Insulation: None ASJ.
   b. Board for Equipment Applications: None ASJ.

N. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.
1. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
2. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1 inch (25 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
3. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
4. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   a. Pipe Applications: None ASJ ASJ-SSL PVDC PVDC-SSL.
   b. Equipment Applications: None ASJ ASJ-SSL PVDC PVDC-SSL.

O. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

P. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

2.02 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.

C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.03 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C).
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

G. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).

2.04 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
   3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
   4. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
   3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
   4. Color: White.

D. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
   3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
   4. Color: White.

2.05 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
   2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
   3. Color: White.

2.06 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:
   1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
   4. Color: White or gray.
   5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
   4. Color: Aluminum.
   5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
   4. Color: White.
   5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.07 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
   1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
   4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm (0.013 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   5. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm (0.007 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   6. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.08 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering equipment.

C. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave.

2.09 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
   2. Color: White Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
   3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
      a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
   4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

C. Metal Jacket:
   1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
      a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing Factory cut and rolled to size.
      b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
      d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
      e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
         1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
         2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
         3) Tee covers.
         4) Flange and union covers.
         5) End caps.
         6) Beveled collars.
         7) Valve covers.
         8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
   2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
      a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing Factory cut and rolled to size.
      b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.

d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    3) Tee covers.
    4) Flange and union covers.
    5) End caps.
    6) Beveled collars.
    7) Valve covers.
    8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. SK Tape: FFoil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 500 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
2. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm).
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).

2. Film Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
   a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel Aluminum Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
   a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel Aluminum Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel aluminum stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
   a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
   1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
   2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
   1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
   2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
   a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Below-Grade Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.05 EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
    a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
    c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
    f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
    g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).

8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

3.06 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
   1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
   2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
   3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
   4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
   5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.07 CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
   2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
   3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
   4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
   2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
   3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.08 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.09 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.10 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.11 PHENOLIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. General Installation Requirements:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.12 POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.13 POLYOLEFIN INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.14 POLYSTYRENE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and make thickness same as adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.15 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
   2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
   5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
   2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
   3. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
   4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
   5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.16 FINISHES

A. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
   1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
2. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.18 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

C. Fire-suppression water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
7. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3.19 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Indoor fire-suppression piping.
2. Underground piping.

3.20 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Indoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

B. Indoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

3.21 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Fire-Suppression Water Piping:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

B. Outdoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      a. Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      b. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

C. Outdoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

D. Outdoor Fire-Suppression Piping Filled with Water:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      d. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      f. Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      g. Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

3.22 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:
   1. None.
   2. Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
   3. Painted Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
   5. .

D. Piping, Exposed:
   1. None.
   2. PVC PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils (0.5 mm) 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
   3. Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
   4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
   6. .

3.23 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Equipment, Concealed:
   1. None.
   2. PVC PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils (0.5 mm) 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
   3. Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
   4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish Corrugated Stucco Embossed: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
   6. .

D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
   2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish Corrugated Stucco Embossed with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
   3. .

E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth Stucco Embossed with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
   2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth Stucco Embossed, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
   3. .

F. Outdoor Exposed Piping:
   1. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) 30 mils (0.8 mm) 40 mils (1.0 mm) thick.
   2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth Corrugated Stucco Embossed with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
   3. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish Corrugated Stucco Embossed with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 11 19
FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exposed-type fire-department connections.
2. Flush-type fire-department connections.
3. Yard-type fire-department connections.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 EXPOSED-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

A. Standard: UL 405.

B. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.

C. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.

D. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

E. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.

F. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.

G. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.

H. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.

I. Number of Inlets: Two Three.

J. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE STANDPIPE."

K. Finish: Polished chrome plated Rough brass or bronze Rough chrome plated.

L. Outlet Size: NPS 4 (DN 100) NPS 5 (DN 125) NPS 6 (DN 150).

2.02 FLUSH-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

A. Standard: UL 405.

B. Type: Flush, for wall mounting.

C. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.

D. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

E. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.

F. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.

G. Escutcheon Plate: Rectangular, brass, wall type.

H. Outlet: With pipe threads.

I. Body Style: Horizontal Square Vertical.

J. Number of Inlets: Two Three Four Six.

K. Outlet Location: Back Bottom Left side Right side Top.

L. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE STANDPIPE."

M. Finish: Polished chrome plated Rough brass or bronze Rough chrome plated.

N. Outlet Size: NPS 4 (DN 100) NPS 5 (DN 125) NPS 6 (DN 150) NPS 8 (DN 200).

2.03 YARD-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

A. Standard: UL 405.

B. Type: Exposed, freestanding.

C. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).

D. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

E. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.

F. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.

G. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.

H. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.

I. Number of Inlets: Two Three Four.

J. Sleeve: Brass Not required.

K. Sleeve Height: 18 inches (460 mm).

L. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE STANDPIPE."

M. Finish, Including Sleeve: Polished chrome plated Rough brass or bronze Rough chrome plated.

N. Outlet Size: NPS 4 (DN 100) NPS 5 (DN 125) NPS 6 (DN 150).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.

B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.

B. Install yard-type fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Install two three protective pipe bollards around on sides of each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications."

D. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 12 13

FIRE-SUPPRESSION HOSES AND NOZZLES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) rack-type hose stations.
   2. NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 2-1/2 (DN 40 by DN 65) rack-type hose stations.
   3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) reel-type hose stations.
   4. Monitors.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets" for hose cabinets.
   2. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for fire hose valves.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each product type to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) RACK-TYPE HOSE STATIONS

A. Hose Rack:
   1. Standard: UL 47.
   2. Material: Brass or bronze with polished chrome-plated Steel with red-enamel finish.
   3. Type: Hose-rack assembly. Include hose valve, hose rack, water-retention device, hose pins, and hose.
   4. Operation: Semiautomatic.
   5. Sized to hold fire hose.

B. Hose Valve:
   1. Standard: UL 668, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), for connecting fire hose.
   2. Type: Adjustable Nonadjustable.
   3. Pressure-Control Device: Pressure reducing or pressure restricting.
   4. Hose Valve and Trim Finish: Polished chrome-plated Rough brass or bronze Rough chrome-plated.
   5. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
   6. Pattern: Angle.
   7. Material: Brass or bronze.
   8. Pressure-Control Device: UL 1468 integral or for field installation if indicated.
   9. Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
   10. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
   11. Outlet: Male hose threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.

C. Hose:
1. Standards: NFPA 1961 and UL 219 lined fire hose with swivel inlet, coupling, gaskets, and nozzle.
2. Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
3. Length: 50 feet (15 m) 75 feet (23 m) 100 feet (30 m) .
4. Jacket: Combination of natural and synthetic threads Natural thread Synthetic thread.
5. Lining: Rubber, plastic, or combination of rubber and plastic compounds Combination of rubber and plastic compounds Rubber compound Plastic compound.
6. Cover: Rubber, plastic, or combination of rubber and plastic compounds.
7. Nozzle: UL 401.
   a. Material: Brass Polished brass Rough chrome-plated brass Polished chrome-plated brass Polycarbonate plastic.
   b. Type: Plain, for nonadjustable water stream Spray, adjustable from shutoff to fog spray or straight stream Spray, adjustable from shutoff to full fog; for use on electrical fires.

2.02 NPS 1-1/2 BY NPS 2-1/2 (DN 40 BY DN 65) RACK-TYPE HOSE STATIONS

A. Hose Rack:
1. Standard: UL 47.
2. Material: Brass or bronze with polished chrome-plated Steel with red-enamel finish.
3. Type: Hose-rack assembly. Include hose valve, reducer adapter, hose rack, water-retention device, hose pins, and hose.
4. Operation: Semiautomatic.
5. Sized to hold fire hose.

B. Hose Valve:
1. Standard: UL 668, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65), for connecting fire hose.
2. Type: Adjustable Nonadjustable.
3. Pressure-Control Device: Pressure reducing or pressure restricting.
4. Hose Valve and Trim Finish: Polished chrome-plated Rough brass or bronze Rough chrome-plated.
5. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
6. Pattern: Angle.
7. Material: Brass or bronze.
8. Pressure-Control Device: UL 1468, integral or for field installation if indicated.
9. Size: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).
10. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
11. Outlet: Male hose threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
12. Reducer Adapter: NPS 2-1/2 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 65 by DN 40).

C. Hose:
1. Standards: NFPA 1961 and UL 219, lined fire hose with swivel inlet, coupling, gaskets, and nozzle.
2. Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
3. Length: 50 feet (15 m) 75 feet (23 m) 100 feet (30 m) .
4. Jacket: Combination of natural and synthetic threads Natural thread Synthetic thread.
5. Lining: Rubber, plastic, or combination of rubber and plastic compounds Combination of rubber and plastic compounds Rubber compound Plastic compound.
6. Cover: Rubber, plastic, or combination of rubber and plastic compounds.
7. Nozzle: UL 401 spray nozzle unless plain nozzle is indicated.
   a. Material: Brass Polished brass Rough chrome-plated brass Polished chrome-plated brass Polycarbonate plastic.

b. Type: Plain, for nonadjustable water stream Spray, adjustable from shutoff to fog spray or straight stream Spray, adjustable from shutoff to full fog; for use on electrical fires.

2.03 NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) REEL-TYPE HOSE STATIONS

A. Hose Reel:
1. Standard: UL 47.
2. Hose Reel and Bracket Material: Steel.
3. Type: Hose-reel assembly. Include hose valve, wall bracket, hose reel, water-retention device, hose pins, and hose.
4. Operation: Semiautomatic.
5. Sized to hold fire hose.
6. Finish: Red enamel.

B. Hose Valve:
1. Standard: UL 668, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), for connecting fire hose.
2. Type: Adjustable Nonadjustable.
3. Pressure-Control Device: Pressure reducing or pressure restricting.
4. Hose Valve and Trim Finish: Polished chrome-plated Rough brass or bronze Rough chrome-plated.
5. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
6. Pattern: Angle.
7. Material: Brass or bronze.
8. Pressure-Control Device: UL 1468, integral or for field installation if indicated.
9. Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
10. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
11. Outlet: Male hose threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.

C. Hose:
1. Standards: NFPA 1961 and UL 219 lined fire hose with swivel inlet, coupling, gaskets, and nozzle.
2. Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
3. Length: 50 feet (15 m) 75 feet (23 m) 100 feet (30 m) .
4. Jacket: Combination of natural and synthetic threads Natural thread Synthetic thread.
5. Lining: Rubber, plastic, or combination of rubber and plastic compounds Combination of rubber and plastic compounds Rubber compound Plastic compound.
6. Cover: Rubber, plastic, or combination of rubber and plastic compounds.
7. Nozzle: UL 401.
   a. Material: Brass Polished brass Rough chrome-plated brass Polished chrome-plated brass Polycarbonate plastic.
   b. Type: Spray, adjustable from shutoff to fog spray or straight stream full fog; for use on electrical fires.

2.04 MONITORS

A. Type: Stationary.

B. Nozzle: UL 401, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65), brass, adjustable from fog spray to straight stream to shutoff.

C. Horizontal Rotation: 360 degrees with locking device.

D. Vertical Rotation: 80-degree elevation and 60-degree depression with locking device.

E. Waterway: Double Single brass or stainless-steel tube.

F. Waterway Size: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) minimum.

G. Water Stream Flow: 500 gpm (31.5 L/s) 750 gpm (47.3 L/s) 1000 gpm (63 L/s)

H. Operation: Lever Wheel.

I. Base Inlet Size: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) NPS 3 (DN 80) NPS 4 (DN 100).

J. Finish: Red-painted body with brass trim.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire hoses, reels, racks, and monitors.

B. Examine roughing-in for standpipe systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 HOSE-STATION INSTALLATION

A. Install freestanding hose stations for access and minimum passage restriction.

B. Install NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) hose-station valves with flow-restricting device unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) hose connections with quick-disconnect NPS 2-1/2 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 65 by DN 40) reducer adapter and flow-restricting device unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install freestanding hose stations with support or bracket attached to standpipe.

E. Install wall-mounted, rack hose stations in cabinets. Include pipe escutcheons, with finish matching valves, inside cabinet where water-supply piping penetrates cabinet. Install valves at angle required for connection of fire hose. Comply with requirements for cabinets in Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

F. Install hose-reel hose stations on wall with bracket.

3.03 MONITOR INSTALLATION

A. Install monitors on standpipe piping.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 13 13
WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Fire-protection valves.
3. Sprinklers.
4. Alarm devices.
5. Manual control stations.
6. Control panels.
7. Pressure gages.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 211119 "Fire-Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire-department connections.
2. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for standpipe piping.
3. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
4. Section 211339 "Foam-Water Systems" for AFFF piping.
5. Section 213113 "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" Section 213116 "Diesel-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" Section 213213 "Electric-Drive, Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps" Section 213216 "Diesel-Drive, Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps" for fire pumps, pressure-maintenance pumps, and fire-pump controllers.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. High-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig (1200 kPa), but not higher than 250 psig (1725 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa).

B. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175 psig (1200 kPa) maximum.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.

B. Deluge Sprinkler System: Open sprinklers are attached to piping connected to water supply through deluge valve. Fire-detection system, in same area as sprinklers, opens valve. Water flows into piping system and discharges from attached sprinklers when valve opens.

1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.

B. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 20 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
a. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1 .
b. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1 .

c. Libraries except Stack Areas: Light Hazard .
d. Library Stack Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2 .
e. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard .

3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
   a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. (4.1 mm/min. over 139-sq. m) area.
   b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. (6.1 mm/min. over 139-sq. m) area.
   c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. (8.1 mm/min. over 139-sq. m) area.
4. Minimum Density for Deluge-Sprinkler Piping Design:
   a. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm (6.1 mm/min.) over entire area.
   b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm (8.1 mm/min.) over entire area.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: Per UL listing.
6. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
   a. Office Spaces: 120 sq. ft. (11.1 sq. m) 225 sq. ft. (20.9 sq. m) .
   b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m) .
   c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m) .
   d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m) .
   e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
7. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm (6.3 L/s) for 30 minutes .
   b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm (15.75 L/s) for 60 to 90 minutes .

C. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7 .

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

D. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Domestic water piping.
2. Compressed air piping.
3. HVAC hydronic piping.
4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
   a. Lighting fixtures.
   b. Air outlets and inlets.

E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.

F. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

G. Welding certificates.

H. Fire-hydrant flow test report.

I. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."

J. Field quality-control reports.

K. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:
   1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
      a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. NFPA Standards: Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
   1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
   2. NFPA 13R, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height."
   3. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Architect Construction Manager Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Architect's Construction Manager's Owner's written permission.

1.09 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

1.010 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.02 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Standard Weight, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E , Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

B. Schedule 30, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135; ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E ; or ASME B36.10M, wrought steel; with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

C. Thinwall Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

D. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 (DN 125) and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10 (DN 150 to DN 250), plain end.

E. Nonstandard OD, Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, thinwall, with plain ends and wall thickness less than Schedule 10.

F. Hybrid Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, lightwall, with wall thickness less than Schedule 10 and greater than Schedule 5.

G. Schedule 5 Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, lightwall, with plain ends.

H. Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

I. Galvanized and Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.

J. Galvanized and Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

K. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

L. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

M. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

N. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.

O. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
   1. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) 250 psig (1725 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
   2. Galvanized and Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
   3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

P. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM-approved, 175-psig (1200-kPa) pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.

2.03 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) and ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) water tube, drawn temper.

B. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.

D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

E. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

F. Copper Pressure-Seal Fittings:
   1. Standard: UL 213.
   2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

G. Grooved-Joint, Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
1. Grooved-End, Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze castings.
2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper-tube dimensions, with design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

H. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

2.04 CPVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 442/F 442M and UL 1821, SDR 13.5, for 175-psig (1200-kPa) rated pressure at 150 deg F (62 deg C), with plain ends. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER PIPE" markings.

B. CPVC Fittings: UL listed or FM approved, for 175-psig (1200-kPa) rated pressure at 150 deg F (62 deg C), socket type. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER FITTING" markings.
1. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/2 (DN 20 to DN 40): ASTM F 438 and UL 1821, Schedule 40, socket type.
2. NPS 2 to NPS 3 (DN 50 to DN 80): ASTM F 439 and UL 1821, Schedule 80, socket type.
3. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC, one piece, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
4. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Unions: CPVC, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
5. Flanges: CPVC, one or two pieces.

2.05 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.
1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

E. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493, solvent cement recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer, and made for joining CPVC sprinkler pipe and fittings. Include cleaner or primer recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer.
1. Use solvent cement that has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 650 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, and Bolts and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.06 COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

A. Description: System of support brackets and covers made to protect sprinkler piping.

B. Brackets: Glass-reinforced nylon.

C. Covers: Extruded PVC sections of length, shape, and size required for size and routing of CPVC piping.

2.07 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

A. General Requirements:
1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Minimum Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Piping: 250 psig (1725 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa).

B. Ball Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
2. Valves NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
3. Valves NPS 2 and NPS 2-1/2 (DN 50 and DN 65): Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
4. Valves NPS 3 (DN 80): Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.

C. Bronze Butterfly Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. End Connections: Threaded.

D. Iron Butterfly Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Style: Lug or wafer.
5. End Connections: Grooved.

E. Check Valves:
1. Standard: UL 312.
2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Type: Swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Bronze OS&Y Gate Valves:
1. Standard: UL 262.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. End Connections: Threaded.

G. Iron OS&Y Gate Valves:
1. Standard: UL 262.
2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

H. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
3. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
   a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Bronze.
   c. End Connections: Threaded.
4. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
   a. Valve Type: Butterfly.

b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
c. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.

5. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, single-circuit, supervisory switch electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, two-circuit, supervisory switch visual indicating device.

I. NRS Gate Valves:
1. Standard: UL 262.
2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast iron with indicator post flange.
4. Stem: Nonrising.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

J. Indicator Posts:
1. Standard: UL 789.
2. Type: Horizontal for wall mounting.
3. Body Material: Cast iron with extension rod and locking device.
4. Operation: Wrench Hand wheel.

2.08 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. General Requirements:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.

2.09 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. General Requirements:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating:
a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
b. High-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

B. Alarm Valves:
1. Standard: UL 193.
2. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
3. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
4. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.

C. Deluge Valves:
1. Standard: UL 260.
2. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
3. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, fill-line attachment with strainer, and push-rod chamber supply connection.
4. Wet, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include gage to read push-rod chamber pressure, globe valve for manual operation of deluge valve, and connection for actuation device.

D. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1726.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.

4. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.010 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
1. Standard: UL 213.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
4. Type: Mechanical-T and -cross fittings.
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

C. Branch Line Testers:
1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Brass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Length: Adjustable.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

2.011 SPRINKLERS

A. General Requirements:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175 psig (1200 kPa) maximum.
3. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.

4. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum 300 psig (2070 kPa).

B. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767 <Insert standard>.
2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199 <Insert standard>.
3. Residential Applications: UL 1626 <Insert standard>.
4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

C. Open Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element Removed: UL 199.
1. Characteristics:
a. Nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) Orifice: With Discharge Coefficient K between 5.3 and 5.8 .
b. Nominal 17/32-inch (13.5-mm) Orifice: With Discharge Coefficient K between 7.4 and 8.2 .

D. Sprinkler Finishes:
1. Chrome plated.
2. Bronze.
3. Painted.

E. Special Coatings:
1. Wax.
2. Lead.
3. Corrosion-resistant paint.

F. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch (25-mm) vertical adjustment Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.

G. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.012 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:
1. Standard: UL 753.
2. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
3. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
4. Size: 10-inch (250-mm) diameter.
5. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
7. Outlet: NPS 1 (DN 25) drain connection.

C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
1. Standard: UL 464.
2. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
3. Size: 6-inch (150-mm) minimum- 8-inch (200-mm) minimum- 10-inch (250-mm) diameter.
4. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.

D. Water-Flow Indicators:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.

3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
4. Type: Paddle operated.
5. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
6. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

G. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design: Signals that controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.

2.013 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

A. Description: UL listed or FM approved, hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.014 CONTROL PANELS

A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves. Panels contain power supply; battery charger; standby batteries; field-wiring terminal strip; electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell; lamp test facility; single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts; and rectifier.
1. Panels: UL listed and FM approved when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
2. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
3. Manual Control Stations: Hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.015 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Standard: UL 393.

B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.

C. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 250 psig (0 to 1725 kPa) minimum 0 to 300 psig (0 to 2070 kPa).

D. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

E. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."

B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."

C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

3.03 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.04 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
   1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements for installation of sprinkler piping in NFPA 13.

C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation in NFPA 13.

D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.

G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.

K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.

M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 (DN 8) and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.

N. Pressurize and check preaction sprinkler system piping and air-pressure maintenance devices air compressors.

O. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.

P. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."

Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.05 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.

D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.

I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

J. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
   1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.

K. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

L. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

M. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

N. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.

O. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

P. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

Q. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

R. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

S. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
   2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and with NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

3.07 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Specialty Valves:
   1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
   2. Alarm Valves: Include bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
   3. Deluge Valves: Install in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

3.08 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.

B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

C. Install sprinklers to hard pipe, sprinkler hose fittings and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.09 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.010 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
   3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
   4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
   5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
   6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
   7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.

C. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.011 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

3.012 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

3.013 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends; cast-iron threaded fittings; and threaded grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

C. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.

D. CPVC pipe; Schedule 40 Schedule 80 CPVC fittings; and solvent-cemented joints may be used for light-hazard and residential occupancies.

E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
   1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
   2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
   3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
   4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; galvanized, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.

5. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
6. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
7. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
8. Thinwall Schedule 10, nonstandard OD, thinwall or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
9. Thinwall Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
10. Thinwall Schedule 10, nonstandard OD, thinwall or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
11. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
12. Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
13. Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
14. NPS 2 (DN 50), Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

F. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
6. Thinwall Schedule 10, nonstandard OD, thinwall or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
7. Thinwall Schedule 10, nonstandard OD, thinwall or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
8. Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
9. Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
10. Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

G. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger, shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
6. Thinwall Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
7. Thinwall Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
8. Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
9. Type L (Type B) Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

H. High-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
4. Thinwall Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

I. High-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 (DN 125) and, shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
4. Thinwall Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.014 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers .
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Pendent sprinklers Recessed sprinklers Flush sprinklers Concealed sprinklers Pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright sprinklers Pendent, dry sprinklers Sidewall, dry sprinklers Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated .
5. Deluge-Sprinkler Systems: Upright and pendent, open sprinklers.
6. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers where indicated .

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.

2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.
5. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 13 16
DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

B. Section Includes:
   1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
   2. Fire-protection valves.
   3. Sprinkler specialty pipe fittings.
   4. Sprinklers.
   5. Alarm devices.
   6. Manual control stations.
   7. Control panels.
   8. Pressure gages.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

C. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Dry-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure 175 psig (1200 kPa) maximum.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

D. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing compressed air. Opening of sprinklers releases compressed air and permits water pressure to open dry-pipe valve. Water then flows into piping and discharges from sprinklers that are open.

1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

E. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.

F. Delegated Design: Design sprinkler system(s), including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

G. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
   2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
      a. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard
   3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
      a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. (4.1 mm/min. over 139-sq. m) area.
   4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: Per UL listing.
   5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
      a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft. (20.9 sq. m) devise subparagraph below to suit requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.06 ACTION SUBMITTALS

H. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

I. Shop Drawings: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

J. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.07 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

K. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Domestic water piping.
   2. Compressed air piping.
   3. HVAC hydronic piping.
   4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
      a. Lighting fixtures.
      b. Air outlets and inlets.

L. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

M. Fire-hydrant flow test report.

N. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."

O. Field quality-control reports.

1.08 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

P. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.09 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

Q. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

R. Installer Qualifications:
   1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
      a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

S. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

T. NFPA Standards: Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
   1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
   2. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."

1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

U. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Construction Manager's written permission.

1.12 COORDINATION

V. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.02 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Standard Weight, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

B. Schedule 30, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135; ASTM A 795/A 795M; or ASME B36.10M, wrought steel; with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

C. Thinwall Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

E. Galvanized, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.

F. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

G. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

H. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.

I. Plain-End-Pipe Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron body with retainer lugs that require one-quarter turn or screwed retainer pin to secure pipe in fitting.

J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
   1. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa), 250 psig (1725 kPa), 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
   2. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
   3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.03 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

K. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), and, ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) water tube, drawn temper.

L. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

M. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.

N. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

O. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

P. Copper Pressure-Seal Fittings:
   1. Standard: UL 213.
   2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

Q. Grooved-Joint, Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
1. Grooved-End, Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze castings.
2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper tube, with dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

R. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

2.04 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

S. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, or, ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.
1. Class 125, Cast-Iron and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
2. Class 250, Cast-Iron and Class 300, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

T. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

U. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.05 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

V. General Requirements:
1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig (1200 kPa).

W. Ball Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
2. Valves NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
3. Valves NPS 2 and NPS 2-1/2 (DN 50 and DN 65): Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
4. Valves NPS 3 (DN 80): Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.

X. Bronze Butterfly Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. End Connections: Threaded.

Y. Iron Butterfly Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Style: Lug or wafer.
5. End Connections: Grooved.

Z. Check Valves:
1. Standard: UL 312
2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum, 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Type: Swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

AA. Bronze OS&Y Gate Valves:
1. Standard: UL 262.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).

3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. End Connections: Threaded.

BB. Iron OS&Y Gate Valves:
1. Standard: UL 262.
2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum, 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

CC. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1091.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
3. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
   a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Bronze.
   c. End Connections: Threaded.
4. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
   a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
   c. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.
5. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, single-circuit, supervisory switch indicating device.

DD. NRS Gate Valves:
1. Standard: UL 262.
2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum, 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast iron with indicator post flange.
4. Stem: Nonrising.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

EE. Indicator Posts:
1. Standard: UL 789.
2. Type: Horizontal for wall mounting.
3. Body Material: Cast iron with extension rod and locking device.
4. Operation: Wrench, Hand wheel.

2.06 SPECIALTY VALVES

FF. Dry-Pipe Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of
2. Standard: UL 260
3. Design: Differential-pressure type.
4. Include UL 1486, quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
5. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
   a. Standard: UL 260.
   b. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
   c. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig (95- to 410-kPa) adjustable range, and 175-psig (1200-kPa), 300-psig (2070-kPa) outlet pressure.
6. Air Compressor:
   a. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
   b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.

c. Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.

GG. Deluge Valves:
1. Standard: UL 260.
2. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
3. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, fill-line attachment with strainer, and push-rod chamber supply connection.
4. Dry, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include dry, pilot-line actuator; air- and water-pressure gages; low-air-pressure warning switch; air relief valve; and actuation device. Dry, pilot-line actuator includes cast-iron, operated, diaphragm-type valve with resilient facing plate, resilient diaphragm, and replaceable bronze seat. Valve includes threaded water and air inlets and water outlet. Loss of air pressure on dry, pilot-line side allows pilot-line actuator to open and causes deluge valve to open immediately.
5. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
   a. Standard: UL 260.
   b. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
   c. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig (95- to 410-kPa) adjustable range, and 175-psig (1200-kPa), 300-psig (2070-kPa) outlet pressure.
6. Air Compressor:
   a. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
   b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
   c. Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.

HH. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1726.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
4. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.07 SPRINKLERS

II. General Requirements:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.

JJ. Sprinkler Finishes:
1. Painted.

KK. Special Coatings:
1. Corrosion-resistant paint.

LL. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch (25-mm) vertical adjustment.
2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel one piece, flat.

2.08 ALARM DEVICES

MM. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

NN. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

1. Standard: UL 753.
2. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
3. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
4. Size: 10-inch (250-mm) diameter.
5. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
7. Outlet: NPS 1 (DN 25) drain connection.

OO. Pressure Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

PP. Valve Supervisory Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

QQ. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design: Signals that controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.

2.09 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

RR. Description: UL listed or FM Global approved, hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.10 CONTROL PANELS

SS. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned type control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves. Panels contain power supply; battery charger; standby batteries; field-wiring terminal strip; electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell; lamp test facility; single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts; and rectifier.
1. Panels: UL listed and FM Global approved when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
2. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
3. Manual Control Stations: Hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.11 PRESSURE GAGES

TT. Standard: UL 393.

UU. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.

VV. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 250 psig (0 to 1725 kPa) minimum, 0 to 300 psig (0 to 2070 kPa).

WW. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

XX. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

C. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
   1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.

D. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 13 for installation of sprinkler piping.

E. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

F. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

G. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.

H. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

I. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

J. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

K. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire-department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or to outside building.

L. Connect compressed-air supply to dry-pipe sprinkler piping.

M. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
   1. Pressure gages and controls.
   2. Electrical power system.
   3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.

N. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

O. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13 for hanger materials.

P. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 (DN 8) and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.

Q. Drain dry-pipe sprinkler piping.

R. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping and air compressors.

S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

V. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

W. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

X. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.

Y. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

Z. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

AA. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

BB. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

CC. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.

DD. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

EE. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.

FF. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

GG. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

HH. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

II. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.04 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

JJ. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

KK. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

LL. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

MM. Specialty Valves:

1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
2. Dry-Pipe, and, Deluge Valves: Install trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
    a. Install air compressor and compressed-air supply piping.
    b. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device: Install shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler system; bypass valve for quick system filling; pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig (95- to 410-kPa) adjustable range; and 175-psig (1200-kPa) maximum inlet pressure.
    c. Install compressed-air supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.

3.05 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

NN. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.

OO. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

PP. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

QQ. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

RR. Perform tests and inspections.

SS. Tests and Inspections:
1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Start and run air compressors.
6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.

TT. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

UU. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.08 CLEANING

VV. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

WW. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

3.09 DEMONSTRATION

XX. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

YY. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends; cast-iron threaded fittings; and threaded, grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

ZZ. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

AAA. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.

BBB. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight, or, Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight, Schedule 30, or, thinwall, galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
3. Standard-weight, or, Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
4. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; cast-, or, wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
5. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
6. NPS 2 (DN 50), Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

CCC. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight, or, Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight, or, Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
3. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; cast-, or, wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
4. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
5. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

DDD. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150), shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight, or, Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight, or, Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
3. Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with plain ends; cast-, or, wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
4. Type M (Type C), hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 00 00

BASIC PLUMBING MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Division 1 – General Acoustic Considerations – Definitions including:
   1. Acoustically Sensitive Room (ASR)

B. Division 9 – Joint Sealants

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Provide acoustical wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations as specified herein and as shown on the Contract Drawings. Verify all dimensions and requirements and coordinate with other trades as necessary to complete the work on schedule.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide complete submittal including the following:
   1. Manufacturer cut sheets for all products.
      a. Provide for approval a list of alternative products proposed for use to achieve the requirements for airtight seal and no rigid connection between the pipe and the penetrated construction.

B. Shop Drawings: Provide shop drawings for all Penetration Sleeve Assemblies not made by a pre-approved manufacturer listed herein showing the use of alternative products to achieve an airtight closure and no rigid connection between the pipe and the penetrated construction. Additionally, include a narrative for approval which describes specific construction sequencing associated with Alternative Penetration Sleeve Assemblies that will be implemented for:
   1. Conditions when the penetrating pipe is installed prior to the future wall, floor, or ceiling construction.
   2. Conditions when the penetrating pipe is installed following construction of wall, floor, or ceiling elements.

C. Samples: Provide sample of sleeve construction, complete with sample pipe, to Architect, Mechanical Engineer, and Acoustic Consultant if product is not made by a pre-approved manufacturer listed herein.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

A. Mason Industries (Mason), Hauppauge, NY – www.mason-ind.com

B. Kinetics Noise Control (Kinetics), Dublin, OH – www.kineticsnoise.com

C. Amber-Booth Company (ABC), Houston, TX – www.amberbooth.com

D. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc. (VMC), Bloomingdale, NJ – www.thevmcgroup.com

E. Armacell LLC (Armacell), Mebane, NC – www.armacell.com

F. Owens Corning (OC), Toledo, OH – www.owenscorning.com

G. Anvil International (Anvil), Exeter, NH – www.anvilintl.com

H. Johns Manville (JM), Denver, CO – www.specjm.com

I. Link-Seal, GPT Inc., Houston, TX – www.linkseal.com

2.02 DESCRIPTION OF PRODUCTS

A. Resilient Penetration Sleeves for Pipes

1. Where specified, resilient pipe penetrations shall be sleeved to avoid rigid connection between the building structure and the penetrating element.
2. Sleeve assembly shall consist of 1/2 inch (13mm) to 3/4 inch (19mm) formed closed cell neoprene foam or semi-rigid glass fiber liner with a metal surround. Inner diameter of sleeve assembly shall match the outer diameter of the associated pipe. Sleeve assembly may be split to allow it to be clamped once the pipe is installed.
3. Acceptable products:
   a. SWS Split Acoustical Wall Seal (Mason)
   b. NSW Sleeve (ABC)
   c. VCS Sleeve (VMC)
   d. Approved alternative products which follow the execution requirements identified within this specification section.

B. Alternative Penetration Sleeve Assembly

1. Where specified, resilient pipe penetrations shall be sleeved to avoid rigid connection between the building structure and the penetrating element.
2. Alternative Penetration Sleeve Assembly shall consist of a formed closed cell neoprene foam or semi-rigid glass fiber liner with a steel surround. Inner diameter of sleeve assembly shall match the outer diameter of the associated pipe. Sleeve assembly may be split to allow it to be clamped once the pipe is installed.
   a. Liner shall be a minimum 1/2 inch (13mm) thick with density of 6 to 10 pounds per cubic foot (96 to 160 kg/m^3)
   b. Surround shall be minimum 22 gauge steel. Surround may be split to allow it to be clamped once the pipe is installed.
3. Acceptable products (Metal Surround):
   a. Roundup Pipe Insulation Saddles (Buckaroos)
   b. Pipe Saddles (Anvil)
4. Acceptable products (Liner):
   a. Armaflex (Armacell)
   b. Micro-Lok (JM)
   c. Approved Equivalent

C. Perimeter Isolation Board

1. Where specified, group penetrations shall be sleeved using a 7 to 10 pound per cubic foot (112 to 160 kg/m^3) semi-rigid fiber or foam board.
2. Acceptable products:
   a. P7 (Mason)
   b. PIB (Kinetics)
   c. FIBERGLAS Type 707 (Owens Corning)
   d. Approved equivalent

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall notify the Architect and the Acoustics Consultant prior to the installation of millwork, walls, ceilings, or other requirements which would obscure visual inspection of these acoustical products and will provide these parties with an opportunity to review the condition of the mounts prior to any such construction.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Piping Installation, General

1. All piping that cross the Extent of AIC shall be supported on vibration isolators for a distance of 8 feet (2.5m) measured linearly along the penetrating element.
2. Vibration isolate piping that is connected to vibration isolated equipment, as per Division 22 “Vibration and Seismic Control for Plumbing Systems”.
3. Coordinate locations of pipe penetrations that require sleeves prior to installing pipe to ensure sleeves are installed with the pipe. Installer shall be liable for any additional cost due to revision work or product changes due to sleeves not being initially provided.

B. Pipe Penetrations at Acoustic Applications:

1. Penetration Type A: Resilient and Airtight Penetration.
   a. Type A Penetrations are required for all:
      i. Acoustically Sensitive Rooms with a background noise level of RC-30 or less.
      ii. Penetrations through walls or slabs crossing and within 8 feet (2.5m) crossing of Acoustically Isolated Construction.
      iii. Penetrations through walls, floors, or ceilings of Noise Producing Rooms.
      iv. Wall, floor, or ceiling penetrations within 30 feet (9m) of a connection to vibration isolated equipment.
   b. Type A Penetrations shall be installed as follows, providing an airtight and resilient penetration:
      i. Wall, floor, or ceiling openings for Type A penetrations shall be oversized and sleeved to provide an inner diameter 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50mm) greater than the outside dimension of the sleeve or penetrating element.
      ii. The penetrating element shall be centered in the opening and shall not contact the wall, floor, or ceiling, even after filling.
      iii. The resulting gap shall be packed with glass fiber packing material and foam backer rod on both sides of the wall, floor, or ceiling.
      iv. The gap shall be caulked to an airtight seal using permanently flexible acoustical sealant on both sides of the wall, floor, or ceiling.
2. Penetration Type B: Fire Rated Resilient and Airtight Penetration.
   a. Where the use of Firestop is required in the conditions noted above, the packing materials and sealant indicated for Type A penetrations may be replaced with an approved permanently flexible Firestop sealant, creating a resilient and airtight penetration that is also compliant with fire code.
   b. In locations not common to Acoustically Sensitive Rooms requiring airtight and resilient penetrations of multiple pipes passing through a wall, floor, or ceiling, it is acceptable to utilize the penetration Type B detail for multiple pipes, as shown on the Contract Drawings.
3. Penetration Type C: Airtight Penetration
   a. Pipe penetrations of walls, floors, and ceilings of Acoustically Sensitive Rooms which do not meet the conditions for Type A or B penetrations shall utilize Type C Penetrations. Requirements for CMU, Concrete, Gypsum Board, or other walls are typical for both sides of the wall.

b. CMU or Concrete walls, floors, and ceilings: Penetrations shall be grouted and caulked into the structure as follows, forming an airtight penetration:
   i. Oversize penetration to provide an inner diameter 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50mm) greater than the outside dimension of the penetrating element.
   ii. Before grout has set, rake a groove around the penetrating element on each side of the wall or slab.
   iii. The groove shall be 1/2 inch (13mm) wide and 1/2 inch (13mm) deep.
   iv. After grout has set, fill the groove full depth with permanently flexible acoustical sealant.

c. Gypsum and wood walls, floors, and ceilings: Penetrations shall be mudded or caulked as follows, forming an airtight penetration:
   i. Mud all gaps between gypsum wallboard and penetrating element using joint compound.
   ii. After joint compound has set, caulk all gaps to an airtight seal using approved permanently flexible acoustical sealant.

3.03 PROTECTION

A. Products that would be exposed to the weather shall be wrapped in temporary protective plastic or other weather-tight coating until building is weather tight.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 13

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.03 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F .

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T .

2.04 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 17

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Sleeves.
   2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
   3. Sleeve-seal systems.
   4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
   5. Grout.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.02 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
   1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
   1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
   2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel Plastic Stainless steel.
   3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.05 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
   1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
   1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
   2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
   3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
   3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.02 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
   1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
   2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
   3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.

4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.03 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.04 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.05 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Cast-iron wall sleeves Galvanized-steel wall sleeves Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings .
   b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves Galvanized-steel wall sleeves Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves .
2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Sleeve-seal fittings .
      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
   b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system .
      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Sleeve-seal fittings .
      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
   b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves PVC-pipe sleeves Stack-sleeve fittings Sleeve-seal fittings Molded-PE or -PP sleeves Molded-PVC sleeves .
   b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves PVC-pipe sleeves Stack-sleeve fittings .
5. Interior Partitions:
   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150) : Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves PVC-pipe sleeves .
   b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves .

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 18

ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Escutcheons.
   2. Floor plates.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.02 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
   1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
      a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 19

METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Dial-type pressure gages.
5. Gage attachments.
6. Test plugs.
7. Test-plug kits.
8. Sight flow indicators.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

A. Standard: ASME B40.200.

B. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) 5-inch (127-mm) nominal diameter.

C. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.

D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle rigid, back and rigid, bottom , with unified-inch screw threads.

E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm) , with ASME B1.1 screw threads.

F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.

G. Window: Plain glass or plastic .

H. Ring: Stainless steel.

I. Element: Bimetal coil.

J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.

K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.02 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 5-inch (127-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.

4. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic .
8. Ring: Metal Stainless steel .
9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device rigid, back and rigid, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Sealed type, plastic ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 5-inch (127-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic .
8. Ring: Metal or plastic .
9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device rigid, back and rigid, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter with back front flange and holes for panel mounting.
3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic .
8. Ring: Metal Stainless steel .
9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Sealed type, plastic ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter with back front flange and holes for panel mounting.

3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic .
8. Ring: Metal or plastic .
9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, back bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.03 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Cast aluminum ; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
3. Case Form: Back angle Straight unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass or plastic.
7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

B. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Plastic ; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
3. Case Form: Back angle Straight unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass or plastic.
7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

C. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Cast aluminum ; 7-inch (178-mm) 9-inch (229-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Case Form: Adjustable angle Back angle Straight <Insert form> unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass or plastic .
7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

D. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Plastic ; 7-inch (178-mm) 9-inch (229-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Case Form: Adjustable angle Back angle Straight <Insert form> unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass or plastic .
7. Stem: Aluminum Brass Stainless steel Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel and of length to suit installation.
   a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.04 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure relief Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) psi and kPa.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass or plastic .
9. Ring: Metal Brass Stainless steel.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Sealed type; plastic ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) psi and kPa.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass or plastic .
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   2. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel metal ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter with back front flange and holes for panel mounting.
   3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
   5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
   6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) psi and kPa.
   7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
   8. Window: Glass or plastic .
   9. Ring: Metal Stainless steel .
   10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   2. Case: Sealed type; plastic ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter with back front flange and holes for panel mounting.
   3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
   5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
   6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) psi and kPa.
   7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
   8. Window: Glass or plastic .
   9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

2.05 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Valves: Brass ball Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.06 TEST PLUGS

A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) or NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C) .

E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.07 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

B. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C) .

C. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C) .

D. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa) <Insert range>.

E. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.08 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

A. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.

C. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) 150 psig (1034 kPa) .

D. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F (93 deg C) .

E. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid one-third of pipe diameter to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.

I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.

J. Install test plugs in piping tees.

K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
   1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
   2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
   3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
   4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.

L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
   1. Building water service entrance into building.
   2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
   3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.04 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
   1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
   2. Direct Remote-mounted, metal plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
   3. Compact Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
   4. Direct Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
   5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
   1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
   2. Direct Remote-mounted, metal plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
   3. Compact Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
   4. Direct Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
   5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
   1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
   2. Direct Remote-mounted, metal plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
   3. Compact Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
   4. Direct Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
   5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be one of the following:
   1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
   2. Direct Remote-mounted, metal plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
   3. Compact Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
   4. Direct Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
   5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.05 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

C. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.

D. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.

E. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.

F. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.

G. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.

H. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

3.06 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:
1. Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure-relief Solid-front, pressure-relief , direct remote-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed , direct remote-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
1. Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure-relief Solid-front, pressure-relief , direct remote-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed , direct remote-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:
1. Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure-relief Solid-front, pressure-relief , direct remote-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed , direct remote-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.07 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

B. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.

C. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.

D. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

E. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.

F. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.

G. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 23.12
BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Brass ball valves.
   2. Bronze ball valves.
   3. Steel ball valves.
   4. Iron ball valves.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
   1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
   1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
   2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
   3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:
   1. Maintain valve end protection.
   2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:
   1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
   2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
   3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
   4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
   5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
   6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.

D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

G. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4 (DN 100) .

H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
1. Include 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions.
2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

2.02 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Brass Ball Valves:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel.
i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Brass Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Regular Port and Brass Trim:
1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Regular.

E. Two-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Regular.

F. Three-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Brass Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Three piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Full.

G. Three-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Three piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

2.03 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.

f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Bronze.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Reduced.

B. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Reduced.

C. Two-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

E. Two-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Regular Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Regular.

F. Two-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:
    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    c. Body Design: Two piece.
    d. Body Material: Bronze.
    e. Ends: Threaded.
    f. Seats: PTFE.
    g. Stem: Stainless steel.
    h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    i. Port: Regular.

G. Three-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:
1. Description:
    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    c. Body Design: Three piece.
    d. Body Material: Bronze.
    e. Ends: Threaded.
    f. Seats: PTFE.
    g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
    h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    i. Port: Full.

H. Three-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Description:
    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    c. Body Design: Three piece.
    d. Body Material: Bronze.
    e. Ends: Threaded.
    f. Seats: PTFE.
    g. Stem: Stainless steel.
    h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    i. Port: Full.

I. Three-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Regular Port and Bronze Trim:
1. Description:
    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    c. Body Design: Three piece
    d. Body Material: Bronze
    e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
    f. Seats: PTFE.
    g. Stem: Bronze.
    h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    i. Port: Regular.

J. Three-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Description:
    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    c. Body Design: Three piece.
    d. Body Material: Bronze.
    e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.

f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Regular.

K. Two-Piece, Safety-Exhaust, Bronze Ball Valves:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze, ASTM B 584, Alloy C844.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass, with exhaust vent opening for pneumatic applications.
i. Port: Full.

2.04 STEEL BALL VALVES

A. Class 150, Steel Ball Valves with Full Port:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig (1964 kPa).
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A 216, Type WCB.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

B. Class 150, Steel Ball Valves with Regular Port:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig (1964 kPa).
c. Body Design: Uni-body.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A 216, Type WCB.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Regular.

2.05 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel.
i. Port: Full.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.03 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

B. Select valves with the following end connections:
   1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
   4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
   5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.04 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
   1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
   2. One piece, brass ball valve.
   3. One piece, bronze ball valve with bronze stainless-steel trim.
   4. Two-piece, brass ball valves with full regular port and brass stainless-steel trim.
   5. Two-piece, bronze ball valves with full regular port and bronze or brass stainless-steel trim.
   6. Three-piece, brass ball valves with full port and brass stainless-steel trim.

7. Three-piece, bronze ball valves with full port and bronze or brass stainless-steel trim.
8. Two-piece, bronze ball valves with regular port and bronze stainless-steel trim.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
1. Steel and Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Class 150, steel ball valves with full regular port.
3. Class 150, iron ball valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 23.14

CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Bronze lift check valves.
2. Bronze swing check valves.
3. Iron swing check valves.
4. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
5. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
6. Iron, center-guided check valves.
7. Iron, plate-type check valves.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

D. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.

E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.02 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
1. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
   c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
   d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
   f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
   c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
   d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
   f. Disc: NBR, PTFE.

2.03 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
1. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
   c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
   d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
   f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
   c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
   d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
   f. Disc: PTFE.

C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
1. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
   b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
   c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
   d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
   f. Disc: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
f. Disc: PTFE.

2.04 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
f. Trim: Bronze.
g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
f. Trim: Composition.
g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
i. Disc: PTFE.
j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
f. Trim: Bronze.
g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.05 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
f. Trim: Bronze.
g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
h. Closure Control: Factory-installed exterior lever and weight.

2.06 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      c. Seal: EPDM.
      d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.07 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED, SPRING-LOADED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      e. Seat: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      e. Ends: Flanged.
      f. Seat: Bronze.

C. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      e. Seat: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      e. Ends: Flanged.
      f. Seat: Bronze.

E. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      e. Seat: Bronze.

F. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).

c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seat: Bronze.

G. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
e. Seat: Bronze.

H. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seat: Bronze.

I. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
e. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

J. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

K. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
e. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

L. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

M. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      e. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

N. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      e. Ends: Flanged.
      f. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

O. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      e. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

P. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      e. Ends: Flanged.
      f. Seat: EPDM or NBR .

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
   1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
   2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
   3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
   1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
      a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
      b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring; or iron, center-guided, metal-seat or resilient-seat check valves.
      c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.

B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. End Connections:
   1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded or soldered.
   2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged or threaded.
   3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged.
   4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
   5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged or threaded.
   6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged.
   7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Grooved.

3.05 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG (1035 kPa) OR LESS)

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
   1. Vertical, Upflow Applications Only: Bronze lift check valves, Class 125, bronze nonmetallic disc with soldered or threaded end connections.
   2. Horizontal and Vertical Applications: Bronze swing check valves, Class 125 Class 150, bronze nonmetallic disc with soldered or threaded end connections.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
   1. Iron swing check valves, Class 125 Class 250, metal nonmetallic-to-metal seats with threaded or flanged end connections.
   2. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
   3. Iron, dual-plate check valves, Class 125 Class 150 Class 250 Class 300, metal resilient seat with threaded or flanged end connections.
   4. Iron, single-plate check valves, Class 125 Class 250, resilient seat with threaded or flanged end connections.

3.06 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 TO 200 PSIG (1035 TO 1380 kPa))

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Vertical, Upflow Applications Only: Bronze lift check valves, Class 125, bronze nonmetallic disc with soldered or threaded end connections.
2. Horizontal and Vertical Applications: Bronze swing check valves, Class 125 Class 150, bronze nonmetallic disc with soldered or threaded end connections.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
1. Iron swing check valves, Class 125 Class 250, metal nonmetallic-to-metal seats with threaded or flanged end connections.
2. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP with threaded or flanged end connections.
3. Iron, dual-plate check valves, Class 125 Class 150 Class 250 Class 300, metal resilient seat with threaded or flanged end connections.
4. Iron, single-plate check valves, Class 125 Class 250, resilient seat with threaded or flanged end connections.

3.07 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves, Class 125 Class 150, bronze nonmetallic disc with soldered or threaded end connections.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
1. Iron swing check valves, Class 125 Class 250, metal nonmetallic-to-metal seats with threaded or flanged end connections.
2. Iron swing check valves with closure control, Class 125, lever and spring weight with threaded or flanged end connections.
3. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
4. Iron, center-guided check valves, Class 125 Class 150 Class 250 Class 300, compact wafer.
5. Iron, center-guided check valves, Class 125 Class 150 Class 250 Class 300, globe, metal resilient seat with threaded or flanged end connections.
6. Iron, dual-plate check valves, Class 125 Class 150 Class 250 Class 300, metal resilient seat with threaded or flanged end connections.
7. Iron, single-plate check valves, Class 125 Class 250, resilient seat with threaded or flanged end connections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 23.15

GATE VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Bronze gate valves.
   2. Iron gate valves.
   3. Chainwheels.

B. CWP: Cold working pressure.

C. NRS: Nonrising stem.

D. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

E. RS: Rising stem.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
   1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
   1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
   2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
   3. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:
   1. Maintain valve end protection.
   2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:
   1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
   2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
   3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
   4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
   5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.

D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

G. RS Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions.

H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.02 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS, Bronze Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
      e. Stem: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
      g. Packing: Asbestos free.
      h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, RS, Bronze Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
      e. Stem: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
      g. Packing: Asbestos free.
      h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, NRS, Bronze Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
      d. Ends: Threaded.
      e. Stem: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
      g. Packing: Asbestos free.
      h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, RS, Bronze Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
      d. Ends: Threaded.
      e. Stem: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
      g. Packing: Asbestos free.
      h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.03 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      d. Ends: Flanged.
      e. Trim: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge.
      g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      d. Ends: Flanged.
      e. Trim: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge.
      g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      d. Ends: Flanged.
      e. Trim: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge.
      g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

D. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
   1. Description:
      a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      c. Body Material: Gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      d. Ends: Flanged.
      e. Trim: Bronze.
      f. Disc: Solid wedge.
      g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.04 CHAINWHEELS

A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain, and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to hand wheels.
   1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron Ductile or cast iron Cast iron Aluminum Bronze, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc or epoxy coating.
   2. Chain: Hot-dip galvanized steel Brass Stainless steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for gate valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.

F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Use gate valves for shutoff service only.

B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.05 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG (1035 kPa) OR LESS)

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze gate valves, Class 125 Class 150, NRS RS with soldered threaded ends.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron gate valves, Class 125 Class 250, NRS OS&Y with flanged ends.

3.06 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 TO 200 PSIG (1035 TO 1380 kPa))

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze gate valves, Class 125 Class 150, NRS RS with soldered threaded ends.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron gate valves, Class 125 Class 250, NRS OS&Y with flanged ends.

3.07 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze gate valves, Class 125 Class 150, NRS RS with soldered threaded ends.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron gate valves, Class 125 Class 250, NRS OS&Y with flanged ends.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Fiberglass strut systems.
4. Pipe stands.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
   1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
   2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
   3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
   4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
   5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel stainless steel .

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
   1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
   2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
   3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel .

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
   1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
   2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel stainless steel .

2.02 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.03 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
   1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
   2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of fiberglass polyurethane or stainless steel .

B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
   1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
   2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

2.04 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
   1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
   2. Standard: MFMA-4.
   3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
   4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.

5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel stainless steel .
6. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc Hot-dipped galvanized Mill galvanized In-line, hot galvanized Mechanically-deposited zinc.
7. Paint Coating: Vinyl Vinyl alkyd Epoxy Polyester Acrylic Amine Alkyd
8. Plastic Coating: PVC Polyurethane Epoxy Polyester Framing systems in paragraph below should be equal to or able to exceed MFMA-4 requirements.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel stainless steel .
6. Coating: Zinc Paint PVC

2.05 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

A. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
1. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass or other plastic channel with inturned lips.
2. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of fiberglass stainless steel .

2.06 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig (688-kPa) ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.07 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.08 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
   1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
   2. Base: Plastic Stainless steel.
   3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
   4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
   1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
   2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
   3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
   4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
   5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.09 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.010 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
   1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
   2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
   1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
   2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.

F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

G. Fastener System Installation:
   1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
   2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Pipe Stand Installation:
   1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
   2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

I. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

O. Insulated Piping:
   1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
      a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
      b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
      c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
   2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
      a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
   3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
      a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
   4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.02 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm)

3.04 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting." Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.05 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
   2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
   3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
   4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
   5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
   6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
   7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
   8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
   9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
   10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
   11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
   12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
   13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
   14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
   15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
   16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.

17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.

11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 53

IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Equipment labels.
   2. Warning signs and labels.
   3. Pipe labels.
   4. Valve tags.
   5. Warning tags.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
   1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Letter Color: Black Blue Red White Yellow .
   3. Background Color: Black Blue Red White Yellow .
   4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
   5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
   6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
   7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
   1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Letter Color: Black Blue Red White Yellow .
   3. Background Color: Black Blue Red White Yellow .
   4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
   5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).

6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.02 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Black Blue Red White Yellow .

C. Background Color: Black Blue Red White Yellow .

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.03 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.04 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.05 WARNING TAGS

A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum Approximately 4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm) <Insert size>.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.03 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.04 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting." Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.

7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
   1. Low-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
      a. Background: Safety blue .
      b. Letter Colors: White .
   2. High-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
      a. Background: Safety blue .
      b. Letter Colors: White .
   3. Domestic Water Piping
      a. Background: Safety green .
      b. Letter Colors: White .
   4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
      a. Background Color: Safety black Safety purple Safety white Safety gray .
      b. Letter Color: Black White .

3.05 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
   1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
      a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) 2 inches (50 mm), round square .
      b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) 2 inches (50 mm), round square .
      c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) 2 inches (50 mm), round square .
      d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) 2 inches (50 mm), round square .
   2. Valve-Tag Colors:
      a. Cold Water: Natural Safety green .
      b. Hot Water: Natural Safety green .
      c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural Safety blue .
      d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural Safety blue .
   3. Letter Colors:
      a. Cold Water: White .
      b. Hot Water: White .
      c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: White .
      d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: White .

3.06 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 07 19
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
   1. Domestic cold-water piping.
   2. Domestic hot-water piping.
   3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
   4. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
   5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
   6. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
   2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
   3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
   4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
   5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
   6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
   7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
   1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
   2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
   3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
   4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having

jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.

1. Piping Mockups:
   a. One 10-foot (3-m) section of NPS 2 (DN 50) straight pipe.
   b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
   c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
   d. One NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or larger valve.
   e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
   f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
   g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
   h. One pressure temperature tap.
   i. One mechanical coupling.
2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

D. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:

1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.08 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
   2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
   3. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
   4. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
   5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
   1. Type I, 850 Deg F (454 Deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket with factory-applied ASJ with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. Phenolic:
   1. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
   2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
   3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
   4. Factory-Applied Jacket: None ASJ. Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

K. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.

2.02 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.

C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.03 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C).
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
   1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.04 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
   1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.

2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.05 LAGGING

A. APPROVED MANUFACTURERS
1. Kinetics Noise Control, Dublin, OH – www.kineticsnoise.com
2. Wilrep Ltd., Mississauga, Ontario – www.wilrep.com
3. Sound Seal, Agawam, MA – www.soundseal.com
4. Great Lakes Textiles, Walton Hills, OH – www.gltproducts.com
5. Bradford Industries, Lowell, MA – www.bradfordind.com

B. DESCRIPTION OF PRODUCTS
1. Pipe lagging material shall be comprised of an insulating decoupling wrap or batting with a mass-loaded vinyl or other non-porous material barrier layer. Barrier layer shall not be directly adhered to or contact the lagged pipe.\
2. Provide multiple layers of pipe lagging material or heavier weight material on pipes specifically identified on the contract drawings, or in order to achieve the minimum specified weight.
3. Barrier products may be provided with integrated decoupling product, else provide duct wrap/pipe insulation as specified herein.
4. Insulating Decoupling Wrap/Batting
   a. Barrier material shall be separated from the pipe with a glass fiber or foam decoupling layer.
   b. Product shall have a minimum thickness of 2 inches (50mm) unless indicated elsewhere.
   c. Product shall have a minimum density of 2 pounds per cubic foot (32 kg/m^3) unless indicated elsewhere.
5. Mass-loaded Vinyl Barrier
   a. Product shall be a flexible, mass-loaded vinyl sheet.
   b. Surface density shall be minimum 2 pounds per square foot (9.7 kg/m^2) unless indicated elsewhere.
      1) Multiple layers of lighter weight products is acceptable provided the composite weight of the layers is equal to or greater than the minimum specified surface density.

c. Flammability: SE “0” in/min.
d. Acceptable Products
1) KNM-200B (Kinetics)
2) Barymat 5 (Wilrep)
3) B-20 Lag (Sound Seal)
4) Vinaflex VP-200 (Great Lakes Textiles)
5) 20NL Coustifilm (Bradford)

2.06 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.07 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.08 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.09 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

2.010 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
   2. Color: White Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
   3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
      a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

C. Metal Jacket:
   1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
      a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing Factory cut and rolled to size.
      b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
      d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
      e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
         1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
         2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
         3) Tee covers.
         4) Flange and union covers.
         5) End caps.
         6) Beveled collars.
         7) Valve covers.
         8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
   2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
      a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing Factory cut and rolled to size.
      b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
      d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
      e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
         1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
         2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
         3) Tee covers.
         4) Flange and union covers.
         5) End caps.

6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

2.011 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 500 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.012 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

2.013 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers, :

1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures, :
1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
   a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.05 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for

above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.

8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
   2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
   4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
   2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
   2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.08 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
   2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
   3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
   4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.09 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.010 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
   4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
   2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
   2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.011 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
   2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
   5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.012 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
   1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.013 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.014 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
   1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
   2. Underground piping.
   3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.015 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water:
   1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      b. Flexible Elastomeric:1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

C. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Polyolefin: 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

D. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

E. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

F. Stormwater and Overflow:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulate entire runs above and below ground. Insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

G. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 11 16
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
   2. Encasement for piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Architect Construction Manager Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
   2. Do not interrupt water service without Architect's Construction Manager's Owner's written permission.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) and ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) water tube, drawn temper.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, annealed temper.

C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

F. Copper Unions:
   1. MSS SP-123.
   2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
   3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
   4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:

1. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.

H. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
1. Description:
   a. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
   b. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

I. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

J. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
1. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M) copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
   a. Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606.
   b. Ferrous housing sections.
   c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
   d. Bolts and nuts.
   e. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).

2.03 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
1. AWWA C151/A21.51.
2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:

a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
b. Ferrous housing sections.
c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
d. Bolts and nuts.
e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
1) NPS 14 to NPS 18 (DN 350 to DN 450): 250 psig (1725 kPa)
2) NPS 20 to NPS 46 (DN 500 to DN 900): 150 psig (1035 kPa)

2.04 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
1. ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E , Grade B , Standard Weight.
2. Include ends matching joining method.

B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions:
1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
2. Hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
4. Threaded ends.

E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
b. Ferrous housing sections.
c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
d. Bolts and nuts.
e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
1) NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller: 600 psig (4137 kPa) .
2) NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 to DN 300): 400 psig (2758 kPa) .
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 250 psig (1725 kPa) .

2.05 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 10 and Schedule 40.

C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.

D. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe: Stainless-steel casting with dimensions matching stainless-steel pipe.
2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
a. AWWA C606 for stainless-steel-pipe dimensions.
b. Stainless-steel housing sections.
c. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts.
d. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
1) NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller: 600 psig (4137 kPa) .
2) NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 to DN 300): 400 psig (2758 kPa) .
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 250 psig (1725 kPa) .

2.06 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. All PEX piping and fittings must meet flame spread ASTM E85 certification. No exceptions. Plenum return utilized in project, and thus all piping must meet that within plenum space. If piping is not rated, then contractor to carry the cost to insulate all piping with fire wrap insulation to meet the ASTM E85 requirement by code. This note has been highlighted, added to sheets as well so there is zero confusion for bidding.

B. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 877, SDR 9 tubing.

C. Fittings for PEX Tube: ASTM F 1807, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp rings and matching PEX tube dimensions.

D. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal assembly complying with ASTM F 877; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet.

2.07 PEX-AL-PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. PEX-AL-PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 1281 tubing.

B. Fittings for PEX-AL-PEX Tube: ASTM F 1281, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp rings and matching PEX-AL-PEX tube dimensions.

2.08 PEX-AL-HDPE TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. PEX-AL-HPDE Distribution System: ASTM F 1986 tubing.

B. Fittings for PEX-AL-HDPE Tube: ASTM F 1986, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp ring and matching PEX-AL-HDPE tube dimensions

2.09 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. All PVC piping and fittings must meet flame spread ASTM E85 certification. No exceptions. Plenum return utilized in project, and thus all piping must meet that within plenum space. If piping is not rated, then contractor to carry the cost to insulate all piping with fire wrap insulation to meet the ASTM E85 requirement by code. This note has been highlighted, added to sheets as well so there is zero confusion for bidding.

B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80

C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80.

D. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.

2.010 PP PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PP Pipe: ASTM F 2389, SDR 7.4 and SDR 11.

B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 2389.

2.011 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
   1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

F. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
   1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

G. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.012 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

B. Form: Sheet or tube.

C. Color: Black or natural

2.013 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:
1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
1. Description:
a. PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.

E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
1. Description:
a. PVC four-part union.
b. Brass or stainless-steel threaded end.
c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
d. Rubber O-ring.
e. Union nut.

2.014 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C) 150 psig (1035 kPa) 250 psig (1725 kPa) .
3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C) 150 psig (1035 kPa) 175 psig (1200 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa) .
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) .
3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:
1. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
2. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
3. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C) .
4. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
5. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain without pitch and plumb.

I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

O. Install piping free of sags and bends.

P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

Q. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.

R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."

U. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.

E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.

H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install

coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Square cut Roll groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

M. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
   2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

N. Joints for PEX Piping: Join according to ASTM F 1807.

O. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.04 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
   1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
   2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.05 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings couplings or nipples nipples unions.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges flange kits nipples.

D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
   1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
   2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
      a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
      b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
      c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
   3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
   4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).

D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.

2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
6. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
7. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.

E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

F. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.

G. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

H. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.

I. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

J. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 32 inches (815 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.

K. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).

L. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
4. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
5. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.

M. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).

N. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PP piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.

3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
4. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
5. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
6. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.

O. Install supports for vertical PP piping every 60 inches (1500 mm) for NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller, and every 72 inches (1800 mm) for NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and larger.

P. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.07 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Piping Inspections:
   a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
      2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
   c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
   d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
   a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.010 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.011 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.

2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.012 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
2. PVC, Schedule 40 Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
3. PP, SDR 7.4 SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.

E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger, shall be one of the following:
1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
4. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
5. PVC, Schedule 40 Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
6. PP, SDR 7.4 SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.

F. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300) , shall be one of the following:
1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
2. PVC, Schedule 40 Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
3. PP, SDR 7.4 SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.

H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:

1. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed soldered joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) or ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
4. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) or ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
5. PEX tube, NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller; fittings for PEX tube; and crimped joints.
6. PE-AL-PE tube, NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller; fittings for PE-AL-PE tube; and crimped joints
7. PEX-AL-PEX tube, NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller; fittings for PEX-AL-PEX tube; and crimped joints.
8. PVC, Schedule 40 Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
9. PP, SDR 7.4 SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.

I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed soldered joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) or ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) or ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
4. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
5. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
6. PVC, Schedule 40 Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
7. PP, SDR 7.4 SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.

J. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed soldered joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) or ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C); grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
4. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
5. Stainless-steel Schedule 10 Schedule 40 pipe, grooved-joint fittings, and grooved joints.
6. PVC, Schedule 40 Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

K. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to (DN 300), shall be one of the following:
1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
2. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
4. Stainless-steel Schedule 10 Schedule 40 pipe, grooved-joint fittings, and grooved joints.

3.013 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
   1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
   2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
   3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated Memory-stop balancing valves.
   4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 11 19

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Water-hammer arresters.
7. Air vents.
8. Trap-seal primer valves.
9. Trap-seal primer systems.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14. Mark "NSF-pw" on plastic piping components.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig (860 kPa) unless otherwise indicated.

2.03 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3 (DN 8 to DN 80), as required to match connected piping.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
5. Finish: Rough bronze Chrome plated.

B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.

4. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated Rough bronze.

C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1020.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Size: <Insert NPS (DN)>.
5. Design Flow Rate: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
6. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
7. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: <Insert psig (kPa)>.
8. Accessories:
   a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

D. Laboratory-Faucet Vacuum Breakers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1035.
2. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 (DN 8 or DN 10) matching faucet size.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Finish: Chrome plated.

E. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1056.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) NPS 3/8 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15) NPS 3/4 (DN 20) NPS 1 (DN 25).
4. Accessories:
   a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

2.04 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1012.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Union, solder Solder joint.
6. Finish: Chrome plated Rough bronze.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: for sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; <Insert psig (kPa)> for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through vertical-inlet, horizontal-center-section, and vertical-outlet vertical flow.
8. Accessories:
   a. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.

b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

C. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies :
1. Standard: ASSE 1015.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits:
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
8. Accessories:
a. ValvesNPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
b. ValvesNPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

D. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1022.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 (DN 8 or DN 10).
4. Body: Stainless steel.
5. End Connections: Threaded.

E. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1024.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) NPS 3/4 (DN 20) NPS 1 (DN 25) NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32).
4. Body: Bronze with union inlet.

F. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection, Backflow-Preventer Assemblies :
1. Standard: ASSE 1047 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved Steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved Stainless steel.
5. End Connections: Flanged.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through vertical-inlet, horizontal-center-section, and vertical-outlet vertical flow.
7. Accessories:
a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
c. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

G. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1048 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle third of flow range.

4. Body: Cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved Steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved Stainless steel.
5. End Connections: Flanged.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through vertical-inlet, horizontal-center-section, and vertical-outlet vertical flow.
7. Accessories:
    a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

H. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers :
1. Standard: ASSE 1052.
2. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water (30-kPa) back pressure.
3. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20).
4. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Capacity: At least 3-gpm (0.19-L/s) flow.

I. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits :
1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.05 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves :
1. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
2. Body: Brass or bronze.
3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2 (DN 50).
4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves :
1. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
2. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).

C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves :
1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Port: Standard or full port.
6. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
7. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
8. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
9. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.06 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices :
1. Standard: ASSE 1017.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
3. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
4. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.

6. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
7. Valve Finish: Chrome plated Rough bronze.

B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves :
1. Standard: ASSE 1017.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa)minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Type: Exposed-mounted Cabinet-type, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
4. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
6. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
7. Valve Finish: Chrome plated Polished, chrome plated Rough bronze.
8. Piping Finish: Chrome plated Copper.
9. Cabinet: Factory fabricated, stainless steel, for recessed surface mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

C. Manifold, Thermostatic, Water Mixing-Valve Assemblies :
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, cabinet-type exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing-valve assembly in two three-valve parallel arrangement.
2. Large-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic, water mixing valve and downstream-pressure regulator with pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
3. Intermediate-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic, water mixing valve and downstream-pressure regulator with pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
4. Small-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic, water mixing valve.
5. Thermostatic Mixing Valves: Comply with ASSE 1017. Include check stops on hot- and cold-water inlets and shutoff valve on outlet.
6. Water Regulator(s): Comply with ASSE 1003. Include pressure gage on inlet and outlet.
7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
8. Cabinet: Factory fabricated, stainless steel, for recessed surface mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.
9. Thermostatic Mixing Valve and Water Regulator Finish: Chrome plated Polished, chrome plated Rough bronze.
10. Piping Finish: Chrome plated Copper.

D. Photographic-Process, Thermostatic, Water Mixing-Valve Assemblies :
1. Standard: ASSE 1017, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve made for precise, process-water temperature control.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Body: Bronze with corrosion-resistant interior components.
4. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
5. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, thermometer, shutoff valve, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
6. Cabinet: Factory fabricated, stainless steel, for surface mounting; with controls and thermometer mounted on front.

E. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves :
1. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
4. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
5. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.

F. Primary Water Tempering Valves :

1. Standard: ASSE 1017, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve, listed as tempering valve.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Temperature Control: Manual.
5. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.

2.07 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers :
1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
   a. Strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) 0.062 inch (1.57 mm) .
   b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): 0.045 inch (1.14 mm) 0.062 inch (1.57 mm) 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) .
   c. Strainers NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: 0.10 inch (2.54 mm) 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) 0.25 inch (6.35 mm) .
6. Drain: Pipe plug Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.08 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters :
1. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
2. Type: Metal bellows Copper tube with piston.
3. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.09 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents :
1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F (60 deg C).
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents :
1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

2.010 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device :
1. Standard: ASSE 1018.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.

3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
5. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
6. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device :
1. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum, trap makeup connection.
2. Size: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum.
3. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

2.011 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER SYSTEMS

A. Trap-Seal Primer Systems :
1. Standard: ASSE 1044.
2. Piping: NPS 3/4, ASTM B 88, Type L (DN 20, ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper, water tubing.
3. Cabinet: Recessed Surface-mounted steel box with stainless-steel cover.
4. Electric Controls: 24-hour timer, solenoid valve, and manual switch for 120-V ac power.
a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1001.
6. Number Outlets: Four Six Eight .
7. Size Outlets: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) NPS 5/8 (DN 18).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.

F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve water pressure-reducing valve solenoid valve and pump.

G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

H. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
   1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

I. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. (0.75 cu. m) of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.

J. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. (0.75 cu. m) of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. (0.03 cu. m) of concrete block at grade.

K. Set nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants in concrete or pavement.

L. Set freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.

M. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

N. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.

O. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

P. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.

Q. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.03 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
   1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
   2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
   3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
   4. Double-check, backflow-prevention assemblies.
   5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
   6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
   7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection, backflow-preventer assemblies.
   8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
   9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
   10. Calibrated balancing valves.
   11. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
   12. Manifold, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
   13. Photographic-process, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
   14. Primary water tempering valves.
   15. Outlet boxes.
   16. Hose stations.
   17. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
   18. Trap-seal primer systems.

B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 11 23
DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Section 221123.13 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps" for booster systems.
   2. Section 332100 "Water Supply Wells" for well pumps.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.

B. Pump Construction:
   1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
   2. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
   3. Impeller: Plastic.
   4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Capacities and Characteristics:
   1. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig (860 kPa).
   2. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F (104 deg C).

3. Pump Control: Pressure switch Thermostat Timer.
4. Motor Horsepower: .
5. Electrical Characteristics:
    a. Volts: 120.
    b. Phases: Single.
    c. Hertz: 60.
    d. Full-Load Amperes: .
    e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: .
    f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: A.

2.02 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
    1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.03 CONTROLS

A. Pressure Switches: Electric, adjustable for control of water-supply pump.
    1. Type: Water-immersion pressure sensor, for installation in piping.
    2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X .
    3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
    4. Transformer: Provide if required.
    5. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac 120 V, ac .

B. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
    1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
    2. Range: 50 to 125 deg F (10 to 52 deg C) 65 to 200 deg F (18 to 93 deg C) 100 to 240 deg F (38 to 116 deg C) .
    3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X .
    4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
    5. Transformer: Provide if required.
    6. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac 120 V, ac .
    7. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F (41 deg C) 110 deg F (43 deg C) 115 deg F (46 deg C) and stop pump at 120 deg F (49 deg C) 125 deg F (52 deg C) .

C. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
    1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
    2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 , suitable for wall mounting.
    3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
    4. Transformer: Provide if required.
    5. Power Requirement: 24-V ac 120-V ac .
    6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days <Insert operational sequence>.

D. Time-Delay Relays: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump between water heater and connected hot-water storage tank.
    1. Type: Adjustable time-delay relay.
    2. Range: Up to five minutes.
    3. Setting: Five minutes.
    4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X .
    5. Operation of Pump: On or off.
    6. Transformer: Provide if required.
    7. Power Requirement: 24-V ac 120-V ac .
    8. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Limit pump operation to periods of burner operation plus maximum five minutes after the burner stops.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.02 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled and close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.

D. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.

E. Pump Mounting: Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using elastomeric pads elastomeric mounts restrained spring isolators. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) 1 inch (25 mm) .
   2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
   3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

F. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support pump weight.
   1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

G. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.

H. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

I. Install timers on wall in engineer's office .

J. Install time-delay relays in piping between water heaters and hot-water storage tanks.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
   1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
      a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
      b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
      c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
      d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for

Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

1. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

E. Connect pressure switches, thermostats, time-delay relays, and timers to pumps that they control.

F. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.05 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Check piping connections for tightness.
   3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
   4. Set pressure switches, thermostats, timers, and time-delay relays for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
   5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
      a. Verify bearing lubrication.
      b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
      c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
   6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
   7. Start motor.
   8. Open discharge valve slowly.
   9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
   10. Adjust timer settings.

3.06 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust initial temperature set points.

C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 13 16
SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
   2. Specialty pipe fittings.
   3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa) .
   2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa) 100 psig (690 kPa) 150 psig (1035 kPa) .

B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 .

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For sovent drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Architect Construction Manager Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Architect's Construction Manager's Owner's written permission.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.02 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es).

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.03 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.

C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
   1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
   2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

D. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
   1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
   2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

E. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
   1. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
   2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.04 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight class. Include square-cut-grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.

B. Galvanized-Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, threaded.

C. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:
   1. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
   2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
   3. Galvanized-Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

D. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
   1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
   2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

E. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
   1. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable-iron castings, ASTM A 234/A 234M forged steel fittings, or ASTM A 106/A 106M steel pipes with dimensions matching ASTM A 53/A 53M steel pipe, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
   2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.05 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASME A112.3.1, drainage pattern with socket and spigot ends.

B. Internal Sealing Rings: Elastomeric gaskets shaped to fit socket groove.

2.06 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:
   1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
   2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:
   1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
   2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

C. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:
   1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
   2. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
      a. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A 21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A 21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
      b. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.07 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.

C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type B and Type C), water tube, drawn temper.

D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, annealed temper.

E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
   1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
   2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
   1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
   2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.08 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. All PVC piping and fittings must meet flame spread ASTM E85 certification. No exceptions. Plenum return utilized in project, and thus all piping must meet that within plenum space. If piping is not rated, then contractor to carry the cost to insulate all piping with fire wrap insulation to meet the ASTM E85 requirement by code. This note has been highlighted, added to sheets as well so there is zero confusion for bidding.

B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.

D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
   1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
   1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.09 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:
   1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
   2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
   3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
      a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
      b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
      c. Sleeve Materials:
         1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
         2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
         3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
   4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
      a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
      b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
   5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
      a. Standard: AWWA C219.
      b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
      c. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard Carbon steel Stainless steel Ductile iron Malleable iron.
      d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
      e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:
   1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
   2. Dielectric Unions:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: ASSE 1079.

2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C) 150 psig (1035 kPa) 250 psig (1725 kPa).
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
      2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
      3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C) 150 psig (1035 kPa) 175 psig (1200 kPa) 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
   a. Description:
      1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) .
      3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
      4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
      5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
5. Dielectric Nipples:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
      2) Electroplated steel nipple.
      3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C) <Insert pressure and temperature>.
      4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.010 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) or high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.

C. Form: Sheet or tube.

D. Color: Black or natural <Insert color>.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
   2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
   3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
   1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

N. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.

O. Install stainless-steel piping according to ASME A112.3.1 and applicable plumbing code.

P. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

Q. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.

R. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.

S. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
   1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Sovent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and sovent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

T. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
   1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

U. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
   1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

V. Install force mains at elevations indicated.

W. Plumbing Specialties:
   1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

X. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

Y. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

Z. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

AA. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.

C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

E. Join stainless-steel pipe and fittings with gaskets according to ASME A112.3.1.

F. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

G. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

H. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

I. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

3.04 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:
1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.

4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
    a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:
1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) : Use dielectric flanges flange kits nipples.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.05 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Shutoff Valves:
1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.

D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install stainless-steel fiberglass pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.

D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.

F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
   6. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).

G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   5. NPS 3 (DN 80): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   7. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   8. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.

I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

J. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 2 (DN 50): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   3. NPS 4 (DN 100): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   4. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.

K. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet (3 m).

L. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   4. NPS 3 and NPS 5 (DN 80 and DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   5. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   6. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.

M. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

N. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.

5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.

O. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).

P. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.07 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor in pit with pit cover flush with floor <Insert description>.
6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.

E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
   1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
   2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
   4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg (250 Pa). Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
   5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
   6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
   1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
   3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
   4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.010 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.011 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
   1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
   2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and sovent stack fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
   3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
   4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings, sealing rings, and gasketed joints.
   5. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.

6. Solid-wall Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints. See material note about meeting ASTM E85 requirements.
7. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and sovent stack fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings, sealing rings, and gasketed joints.
5. Solid-wall Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints. See material note about meeting ASTM E85 requirements.
6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings gaskets, and gasketed joints.
5. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
   a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 and DN 90): Hard copper tube, Type M (Type C); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
6. Solid-wall Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints. See material note about meeting ASTM E85 requirements.
7. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
4. Solid-wall Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints. See material note about meeting ASTM E85 requirements.
5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Extra Heavy Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed calking materials; and calked joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
4. Solid wall Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Extra Heavy Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed calking materials; and calked joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
3. Solid-wall Cellular-core PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50) shall be any of the following:
   1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
   2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.

I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150) shall be any of the following:
   1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
   2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
   3. Grooved-end, galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
   1. Hard Soft copper tube, Type L (Type B); wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
   2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
   3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
   4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
   5. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.

K. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
   1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
   2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
   3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
   4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
   5. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 13 19
SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Backwater valves.
2. Cleanouts.
3. Floor drains.
4. Trench drains.
5. Channel drainage systems.
6. Air-admittance valves.
7. Roof flashing assemblies.
8. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
9. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
10. Flashing materials.
11. Floor sink

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.

C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.

E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves :
   1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
   2. Size: Same as connected piping.
   3. Body: Cast iron.
   4. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
   5. End Connections: Hub and spigot Hub and spigot or hubless Hubless.
   6. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
   7. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves :
   1. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
   2. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
   3. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
   4. Inlet: Threaded.
   5. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves :
   1. Size: Same as connected piping.
   2. Body: ABS PVC.
   3. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
   4. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
   5. End Connections: Socket type.

2.02 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts :
   1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
   2. ASME A112.3.1, Stainless-Steel Cleanouts:
   3. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron ASME A112.3.1 for stainless steel for cleanout test tee.
   4. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
   5. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee Stainless-steel tee with side cleanout as required to match connected piping.
   6. Closure: Countersunk Countersunk or raised-head Raised-head, brass cast-iron plastic plug.
   7. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
   8. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts :
   1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
   2. ASME A112.36.2M, Stainless-Steel Cleanouts:
   3. ASME A112.3.1, Stainless-Steel Cleanouts:
   4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule heavy-duty, adjustable housing threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
   5. Size: Same as connected branch.

6. Type: Adjustable housing Cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule Heavy-duty, adjustable housing Threaded, adjustable housing.
7. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron Stainless steel .
8. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
9. Outlet Connection: Inside calk Spigot Threaded.
10. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket Brass plug with tapered threads Cast-iron plug Plastic plug.
11. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron Plastic with threads set-screws or other device.
12. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy Painted cast iron Polished bronze Rough bronze Stainless steel <Insert material and finish>.
13. Frame and Cover Shape: Round Square .
14. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Heavy Light Medium Duty.
15. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
16. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
17. Size: Same as connected branch.
18. Housing: Stainless steel.
19. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
20. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts :
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk Countersunk or raised-head Raised-head, drilled-and-threaded brass cast-iron plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round Square, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts :
1. Size: Same as connected branch.
2. Body: PVC.
3. Closure Plug: PVC.
4. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

2.03 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 with backwater valve.
2. Pattern: Area Floor Funnel floor Sanitary drain.
3. Body Material: Gray iron .
4. Seepage Flange: Not required Required.
5. Anchor Flange: Not required Required.
6. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
7. Outlet: Bottom Side .
8. Backwater Valve: Drain-outlet type Integral, ASME A112.14.1, swing-check type Not required.
9. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Acid-resistant enamel Not required .
10. Sediment Bucket: Not required <Insert description>.
11. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze Gray iron Nickel bronze Stainless steel .

12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze Polished bronze Rough bronze Stainless steel .
13. Top Shape: Round Square .
14. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: <Insert dimensions and describe body, sump, and grate.>
15. Top Loading Classification: E Light Duty Medium Duty
16. Funnel: Not required Required <Insert description and dimensions>.
17. Inlet Fitting: Not required Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
18. Trap Material: Bronze Cast iron Copper Not required .
19. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap Standard P-trap Not required .
20. Trap Features: Cleanout Trap-seal primer valve drain connection Cleanout and trap-seal primer valve drain connection Not required .

B. Stainless-Steel Floor Drains :
1. ASME A112.3.1, Stainless-Steel Floor Drains:
2. ASME A112.6.3, Stainless-Steel Floor Drains:
3. Standard: ASME A112.3.1 ASME A112.6.3.
4. Outlet: Bottom Side .
5. Top or Strainer Material: Stainless steel .
6. Top Shape: Round Square .
7. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: <Insert dimensions and describe body, sump, and grate.>
8. Seepage Flange: Not required Required.
9. Anchor Flange: Not required Required.
10. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
11. Trap-Primer Connection: Not required Required.
12. Trap Material: Cast iron Stainless steel Not required .
13. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap Standard P-trap Not required .

C. Plastic Floor Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
2. Material: ABS or PVC .
3. Seepage Flange: Not required Required.
4. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
5. Outlet: Bottom Side .
6. Sediment Bucket: Not required <Insert description>.
7. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze Plastic Stainless steel <Insert other>.
8. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze Polished bronze Rough bronze Stainless steel <Insert other>.
9. Top Shape: Round Square .
10. Trap Material: Cast iron Plastic drainage piping Not required .
11. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap Not required .

2.04 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
2. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
3. Flange: Anchor Seepage Not required.
4. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
5. Outlet: Bottom End Side .
6. Grate Material: Ductile iron Ductile iron or gray iron Gray iron Stainless steel .
7. Grate Finish: Painted Not required .
8. Dimensions of Frame and Grate: <Insert dimensions and describe body, sump, and grate if required.>

9. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy-Duty Heavy Duty Light Duty Medium Duty <Delete if not applicable>.
10. Trap Material: Cast iron Stainless steel Not required .
11. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap Not required .

2.05 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems :
1. ASME A112.3.1, Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems:
2. Non-ASME A112.3.1, Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems:
3. Type: Modular system of stainless-steel channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
   a. Standard: ASME A112.3.1, for trench drains.
   b. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, stainless-steel with level invert.
      1) Dimensions: 5.8 inches (147 mm) 11.7 inches (297mm) wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
   c. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy medium duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels.
      1) Material: Ductile iron Fiberglass Galvanized steel Gray iron Stainless steel .
      2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections Not required.
   d. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron stainless steel , of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels, and of lengths indicated.
   e. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
   f. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
4. Type: Modular system of stainless-steel channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
   a. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, stainless steel with level invert.
      1) Dimensions: 6 inches (152 mm) 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
   b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy medium duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels.
      1) Material: Ductile iron Fiberglass Galvanized steel Gray iron Stainless steel .
      2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections Not required.
   c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron stainless steel , of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels, and of lengths indicated.
   d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
   e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

B. Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems :
1. Narrow, Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
2. Narrow, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
3. Wide, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
4. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
   a. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.

1) Dimensions: 4-inch (102-mm) inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates Not required.

b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy medium duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
1) Material: Ductile iron Fiberglass Galvanized steel Gray iron Stainless steel .
2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections Not required.

c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron , of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.

d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.

e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

f. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 (DN 100) outlets in number and locations indicated.
1) Dimensions: 5-inch (127-mm) inside width and 9-3/4 inches (248 mm) deep. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates Not required.

g. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy medium duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
1) Material: Ductile iron Fiberglass Galvanized steel Gray iron Stainless steel .
2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections Not required.

h. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron , of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.

i. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.

j. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

k. Channel Sections: Wide, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include flat or rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
1) Dimensions: 8-inch (203-mm) inside width and 13-3/4 inches (350 mm) deep. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates Not required.

l. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy medium duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
1) Material: Ductile iron Fiberglass Galvanized steel Gray iron Stainless steel .
2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections Not required.

m. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron , of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.

n. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.

o. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

C. Polymer-Concrete Sediment Interceptor :
1. Description: 27-inch- (686-mm-) square, precast, polymer-concrete body, with outlets in number and sizes indicated. Include 24-inch- (610-mm-) square, gray-iron slotted grate.
2. Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grate Not required.

D. FRP Channel Drainage Systems :
   1. Description: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
      a. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, FRP modular units, with end caps. Include flat, rounded, or inclined inside bottom, with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
         1) Dimensions: 4 inches (102 mm) 4 or 6 inches (102 or 152 mm) 6 inches (152 mm) 6 or 8 inches (152 or 203 mm) 8 inches (203 mm) wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
         2) Frame: Galvanized steel Stainless steel Manufacturer's standard metal for grates.
      b. Grates: With slots or perforations and widths and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
         1) Material: Fiberglass Galvanized steel Gray iron Stainless steel .
         2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections Not required.
      c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron , of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
      d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
      e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

E. Plastic Channel Drainage Systems :
   1. HDPE or PE Channel Drainage Systems:
   2. PP Channel Drainage Systems:
   3. PVC Channel Drainage Systems:
   4. HDPE, PE, PP, or PVC Channel Drainage Systems:
   5. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
      a. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, HDPE or PE PP or PVC modular units, with end caps. Include flat, rounded, or inclined bottom, with level invert and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
         1) Dimensions: 4 inches (102 mm) wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
      b. Grates: With slots or perforations and widths and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
         1) Material: Fiberglass Galvanized steel Gray iron Stainless steel .
      c. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
      d. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

2.06 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves :
   1. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
   2. Housing: Plastic.
   3. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
   4. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

B. Stack Air-Admittance Valves :
   1. Standard: ASSE 1050 for vent stacks.
   2. Housing: Plastic.
   3. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.

4. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

C. Wall Box :
1. Description: White plastic housing with white plastic grille, made for recessed installation. Include bottom pipe connection and space to contain one air-admittance valve.
2. Size: About 9 inches wide by 8 inches high by 4 inches deep (230 mm wide by 200 mm high by 100 mm deep).

2.07 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies :
1. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch- (1.6-mm-) 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches (150 mm) 8 inches (200 mm) 10 inches (250 mm) from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

2.08 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies :
1. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
2. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
3. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
4. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
5. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.09 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains :
1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps :
1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
a. NPS 2 (DN 50): 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum water seal.
b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: 5-inch- (125-mm-) minimum water seal.

C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings :
1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) side inlet.

D. Air-Gap Fittings :
1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

E. Sleeve Flashing Device :
   1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch (25 mm) 2 inches (51 mm) above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
   2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

F. Stack Flashing Fittings :
   1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
   2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

G. Vent Caps :
   1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
   2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

H. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals :
   1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
   2. Design: To provide 1-inch (25-mm) enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.

I. Expansion Joints :
   1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
   2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
   3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
   4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

2.010 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness.
   2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft. (15-kg/sq. m), 0.0469-inch (1.2-mm) thickness.
   3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness.

B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).
   2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft. (2.5 kg/sq. m or 0.27-mm thickness).

C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.

E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.

B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
   2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
   3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
   4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
   2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
      a. Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch (6.35-mm) total depression.
      b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
      c. Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch (25-mm) total depression.
   3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
   4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Assemble and install ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage systems according to ASME A112.3.1. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with surface.

H. Assemble non-ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.

I. Assemble FRP channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.

J. Assemble plastic channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.

K. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.

L. Install stack air-admittance valves at top of stack vent and vent stack piping.

M. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall.

N. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

O. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

P. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.

Q. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch (25 mm) 2 inches (51 mm) above floor.

R. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

S. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
   1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
   2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

T. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

U. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

V. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.

W. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch (25-mm) clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.

X. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.

Y. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch (25-mm) clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.

Z. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

AA. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.03 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
   1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
   2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
   1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm), and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
   2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
   3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.04 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.06 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 14 13
FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
   2. Specialty pipe fittings.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa)

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow, siphonic roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, and details.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm-Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm-drainage service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm-drainage service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.02 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. ANACO-Husky.
      b. Clamp-All Corp.

c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
d. MIFAB, Inc.
e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
f. Stant.
g. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Provide fitting restraints by holdrite or equivalent manufacturer at all changes in direction

2.03 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Fittings:
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:
a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
2) Central Plastics Company.
3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
4) Jomar International Ltd.
5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
b. Description:
1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa), 250 psig (1725 kPa) at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric Flanges:
a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
2) Central Plastics Company.
3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
4) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
5) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
b. Description:
1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
3) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa), 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum, 300 psig (2070 kPa).
4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

a. M Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
   2) Calpico, Inc.
   3) Central Plastics Company.
   4) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
b. Description:
   1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
   2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa)
   3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
   4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
   5) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.

5. Dielectric Nipples:
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) Elster Perfection.
      2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
      3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
      4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
      5) Victaulic Company.
   b. Description:
      1) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
      2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C)
      3) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping at indicated slopes.

F. Install piping free of sags and bends.

G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

H. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

I. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

J. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
   2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.

K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
   1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

L. Plumbing Specialties:
   1. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

M. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

B. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

C. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.

3.04 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:
   1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
   2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
   3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.

4. In Underground Force-Main Piping:
    a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:
1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples, unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) : Use dielectric flanges, flange kits, nipples.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.05 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install stainless-steel, fiberglass pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
6. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
6. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and

H. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.06 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
   1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
   2. Comply with requirements for cleanouts, and, drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.07 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
   2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
   1. Test for leaks and defects
   2. in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
   3. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   4. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
   5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
   6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.09 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground storm drainage piping shall be hubless, cast iron soil pipe and fittings with heavy duty couplings

C. Underground storm drainage piping shall be schedule 40 DWV PVC pipe and fittings with glued joints

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 14 23
STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Roof drains.
2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Backwater valves.
5. Trench drains.
6. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
7. Flashing materials.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL ROOF DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron .
3. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch (357-mm) diameter.
4. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required Required.
5. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom Side .
7. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
8. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
9. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
10. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.
11. Dome Material: Aluminum Cast iron PE Stainless steel .
12. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel Not required.
13. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required Required.
14. Water Dam: Not required 2 inches (51 mm) high.
15. .

B. Cast-Iron, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
3. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch (203- to 305-mm) diameter.
4. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required Required.
5. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom Side .
7. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
8. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
9. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.

10. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.
11. Dome Material: Aluminum Cast iron Copper PE Stainless steel .
12. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome Not required.
13. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel Not required.
14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required Required.
15. Water Dam: Not required 2 inches (51 mm) high.
16. .

C. Copper, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
2. Body Material: Copper.
3. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch (203- to 305-mm) diameter.
4. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required Required.
5. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom Side .
7. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
8. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
9. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
10. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.
11. Dome Material: Aluminum Cast iron Copper PE Stainless steel .
12. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome Not required.
13. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel Not required.
14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required Required.
15. Water Dam: Not required 2 inches (51 mm) high.
16. .

D. Cast-Iron, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
3. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
4. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required Required.
5. Outlet: Bottom Side .
6. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
7. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
8. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
9. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.
10. Dome Material: Cast iron .
11. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome Not required.
12. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required Required.

E. Copper, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
2. Body Material: Copper.
3. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
4. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required Required.
5. Outlet: Bottom Side .
6. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
7. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
8. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
9. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.
10. Dome Material: Cast iron .
11. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome Not required.
12. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required Required.

F. Metal, Cornice and Gutter Roof Drains :

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for cornice and gutter roof drains.
2. Body Material: Metal.
3. Dimension of Body: Nominal 6-inch (152-mm) diameter.
4. Outlet: Bottom Side 45-degree angle.
5. Dome Material: Bronze <Insert material and finish>.
6. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required Required.

G. Metal, Parapet Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for parapet roof drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron .
3. Outlet: Back Angle .
4. Grate Material: Bronze Cast iron Nickel-bronze alloy .
5. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required Required.

H. Metal, Large-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron .
3. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch (357-mm) diameter.
4. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 14 inches (357 mm) square.
5. Outlet: Bottom.
6. Grate Material: Bronze Cast iron Nickel-bronze alloy .
7. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required Required.
8. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.

I. Metal, Medium-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron .
3. Dimension of Body: 11- to 12-inch (280- to 305-mm) diameter.
4. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 12 inches (305 mm) square.
5. Outlet: Bottom.
6. Grate Material: Bronze Cast iron Nickel-bronze alloy .
7. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required Required.
8. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.

J. Metal, Small-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron .
3. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
4. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 8 inches (203 mm) square.
5. Outlet: Bottom.
6. Grate Material: Bronze Cast iron Nickel-bronze alloy .
7. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required Required.
8. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.

K. Metal, Medium-Sump, Deck Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for deck roof drains; ASME A112.6.3, for floor drains.
2. Body Material: Metal.

3. Flange: Anchor Anchor with weep holes Not required.
4. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
5. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom End Side .
7. Grate Material: Cast iron .
8. Grate Finish: Painted Not required <Insert finish>.
9. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 14 inches (357 mm) round square.
10. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty Heavy Duty.
11. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required Required.

L. Metal, Small-Sump, Deck Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for deck roof drains; ASME A112.6.3, for floor drains.
2. Body Material: Metal.
3. Flange: Anchor Anchor with weep holes Not required.
4. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
5. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom End Side .
7. Grate Material: Cast iron .
8. Grate Finish: Painted Not required <Insert finish>.
9. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 8 inches (203 mm) round square.
10. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty Heavy Duty Light Duty Medium Duty.
11. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required Required.

2.02 PLASTIC ROOF DRAINS

A. Plastic Roof Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for plastic roof drains.
2. Body Material: ABS or PVC .
3. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required Required.
4. Outlet: Bottom .
5. Extension Collars: Not required Required.
6. Underdeck Clamp: Not required Required.
7. Expansion Joint: Not required Required.
8. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required Required.
9. Dome Material: Aluminum Cast iron PE Stainless steel .
10. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required Required.

2.03 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Downspout Adaptors :
1. Description: Manufactured, gray-iron casting, for attaching to horizontal-outlet, parapet roof drain and to exterior, sheet metal downspout.
2. Size: Inlet size to match parapet drain outlet.

B. Downspout Boots :
1. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 (DN 100) outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
2. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 (DN 100) outlet.

C. Conductor Nozzles :
1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

2.04 CLEANOUTS

A. Floor Cleanouts :
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for adjustable housing cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule heavy-duty, adjustable housing threaded, adjustable housing cleanouts.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.

3. Type: Adjustable housing Cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule Heavy-duty, adjustable housing Threaded, adjustable housing.
4. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron Stainless steel .
5. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
6. Outlet Connection: Inside calk Spigot Threaded.
7. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket Brass plug with tapered threads Cast-iron plug Plastic plug.
8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron Plastic with threads set-screws or other device.
9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy Painted cast iron Polished bronze Rough bronze Stainless steel <Insert material and finish>.
10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round Square <Insert shape>.
11. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty Heavy Duty Light Duty Medium Duty.
12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

B. Test Tees :
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head, brass .
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

C. Wall Cleanouts :
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch Hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk Countersunk or raised-head Raised-head, drilled-and-threaded brass cast-iron plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round Square, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts :
1. Size: Same as connected branch.
2. Body Material: PVC.
3. Closure Plug: PVC.
4. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

2.05 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves :
1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
5. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
6. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
7. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Cast-Iron, Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves :

1. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
2. Body Material: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
3. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
4. Inlet: Threaded.
5. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

C. Plastic, Horizontal Backwater Valves :
1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body Material: ABS PVC.
4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
6. End Connections: Socket type.

2.06 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains :
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.3, for trench drains.
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
3. Flange: Anchor Anchor with weep holes Not required.
4. Clamping Device: Not required Required.
5. Outlet: Bottom End Side .
6. Grate Material: Ductile iron or gray iron stainless steel .
7. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty Heavy Duty Light Duty Medium Duty.

2.07 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies :
1. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
2. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA <Insert testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction> for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
3. Size: Same as connected pipe.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.08 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M,12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).

B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.

D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
   2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
   3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.

C. Install downspout boots at grade with top 6 inches (152 mm) 12 inches (305 mm) 18 inches (457 mm) above grade. Secure to building wall.

D. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.

E. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
   2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
   3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
   4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

F. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

G. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

H. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.

I. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.

J. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.

K. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.

L. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.

M. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.

N. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.03 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
   1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
   2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm) and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.04 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 14 29
SUMP PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Submersible sump pumps.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMERSIBLE SUMP PUMPS

A. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Sump Pumps:
   1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
   2. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   3. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
   4. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron and ASTM B 584, cast bronze, semiopen design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
   5. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel or steel, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
   6. Seal: Mechanical.
   7. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
      a. Motor Housing Fluid: Air Oil.
   8. Controls:
      a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 4X .
      b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
      c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.

d. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
e. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

9. Controls:
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 4X ; pedestal wall-mounted.
b. Switch Type: Mechanical-float Mercury-float Pressure type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
d. High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

10. Control-Interface Features:
a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
1) On-off status of pump.
2) Alarm status.

B. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Sump Pumps:
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
2. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
3. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
4. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron and ASTM B 584, cast bronze, semiopen design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
5. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel or steel, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
6. Seals: Mechanical.
7. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
8. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
a. Motor Housing Fluid: Air Oil.

9. Controls:
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 4X .
b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
d. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
e. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

10. Controls:
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 4X ; pedestal wall-mounted.
b. Switch Type: Mechanical-float Mercury-float Pressure type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
d. High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

11. Control-Interface Features:
    a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
        1) On-off status of pump.
        2) Alarm status.

2.2 SUMP-PUMP BASINS AND BASIN COVERS

A. Basins: Factory-fabricated, watertight, cylindrical, basin sump with top flange and sidewall openings for pipe connections.
    1. Material: Cast iron Fiberglass Polyethylene <Insert material>.
    2. Reinforcement: Mounting plates for pumps, fittings, and accessories.
    3. Anchor Flange: Same material as or compatible with basin sump, cast in or attached to sump, in location and of size required to anchor basin in concrete slab.

B. Basin Covers: Fabricate metal cover with openings having gaskets, seals, and bushings; for access to pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, vent connections, and power cables.
    1. Reinforcement: Steel or cast iron, capable of supporting foot traffic for basins installed in foot-traffic areas.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
    1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

B. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and filling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump pump installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of sump pumps.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.
    1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:
    1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
    2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Adjust control set points.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 34 00

FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Commercial, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
   2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Commercial domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 .
   1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, gas-fired, gas-fired, tankless, residential, gas-fired, commercial, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.

C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. ASME Compliance:
1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.

D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
b. Faulty operation of controls.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1) Storage Tank: Three years.
2) Controls and Other Components: One year(s).
b. Gas-Fired, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
2) Controls and Other Components: One year(s).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 COMMERCIAL, GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Power-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
2. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
c. Lining: Cement Glass Nickel plate Phenolic coating Sheet copper complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
3. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.

f. Burner: For use with power-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
g. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 199, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
i. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

4. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
5. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.

2.02 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:
1. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
2. Construction:
a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
3. Capacity and Characteristics:
a. Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) 150 psig (1035 kPa) .
b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. (7.6 L) 4 gal. (15.1 L) 7 gal. (26.5 L) 10 gal.

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 (DN 20) with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

E. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and calibrated memory-stop balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.

F. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
1. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

G. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.

H. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include 1/2-psig (3.5-kPa) 2-psig (13.8-kPa) 5-psig (34.5-kPa) pressure rating as required to match gas supply.

I. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.

J. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

K. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.
   1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

L. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

M. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

N. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters and storage tanks specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
   2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
   3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
   4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
   5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
   1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.

1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Section 231126 "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."

D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

G. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

H. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping,"and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

I. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

J. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.

K. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

B. Comply with requirements for fuel-oil piping specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."

C. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Section 231126 "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."

D. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

E. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
   2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
   4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, commercial, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 42 13.13
COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Water closets.
   2. Flushometer valves.
   3. Toilet seats.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
   2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of the amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one six of each type.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets : Floor mounted, floor outlet, close coupled (gravity tank), vitreous china.
   1. Bowl:
      a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.5, and ASSE 1037.
      b. Bowl Type: Siphon jet.
      c. Height: Standard Child Handicapped/elderly.
      d. Rim Contour: Elongated Regular.
      e. Water Consumption: Water saving Low.
      f. Color: White.
   2. Toilet Seat: see section 2.02 TOILET SEATS
   3. Supply Fittings:
      a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
      b. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated-copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated wall flange.
      c. Stop: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
         1) Operation: Loose key Wheel handle.
      d. Riser:
         1) Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15).

2) Material: Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel flexible hose riser.

B. Water Closets: Floor mounted, floor outlet, close coupled (flushometer tank), vitreous china.
1. Bowl:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Bowl Type: Siphon jet.
c. Height: Standard Child Handicapped/elderly.
d. Rim Contour: Elongated Regular.
e. Water Consumption: 1.1 GPF Max -Water saving Low.
f. Color: White.
2. Toilet Seat: see section 2.02 TOILET SEATS
3. Supply Fittings:
a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
b. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated-copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated wall flange.
c. Stop: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
1) Operation: Loose key Wheel handle.
d. Riser:
1) Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
2) Material: Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel flexible hose riser.

C. Water Closets, Floor Mounted, Bottom outlet, top spud, vitreous china
1. Bowl:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Bowl Type: Siphon jet.
c. Style: Flushometer valve
d. Height: Standard Handicapped/elderly.
e. Rim Contour: Elongated Regular.
f. Water Consumption: 1.28 GPF Max.
g. Color: White.
2. Toilet Seat: see section 2.02 TOILET SEATS
3. Supply Fittings:
a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
b. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated-copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated wall flange.
c. Stop: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
1) Operation: Loose key Wheel handle.
d. Riser:
1) Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
2) Material: Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel flexible hose riser.

D. Water Closets, Floor Mounted, Bottom outlet, top spud, child, vitreous china
1. Bowl:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Bowl Type: Siphon jet.
c. Style: Flushometer valve
d. Height: Child
e. Rim Contour: Modified elongated.
f. Water Consumption: 1.28 GPF Max.

g. Color: White.
2. Toilet Seat: see section 2.02 TOILET SEATS
3. Supply Fittings:
a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
b. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated-copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated wall flange.
c. Stop: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
1) Operation: Loose key Wheel handle.
d. Riser:
1) Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
2) Material: Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel flexible hose riser.

E. Water Closets, Wall Mounted, Back outlet, Top spud, vitreous china
1. Bowl:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Bowl Type: Siphon jet.
c. Style: Flushometer valve
d. Height: Standard
e. Rim Contour: Elongated.
f. Water Consumption: 1.28 GPF Max.
g. Color: White.
2. Toilet Seat: see section 2.02 TOILET SEATS
3. Supply Fittings:
a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
b. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated-copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated wall flange.
c. Stop: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
1) Operation: Loose key Wheel handle.
d. Riser:
1) Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
2) Material: Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel flexible hose riser.

2.02 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats :
1. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
2. Material: Plastic.
3. Type: Residential Commercial (Standard).
4. Shape: Regular rim (Open front) Regular rim (Closed front) Elongated rim (Open front) Elongated rim (Closed front).
5. Configuration: Closed Open front with without cover.
6. Size: Elongated Regular.
7. Hinge Type: Check Self-sustaining Self-sustaining, check Self-raising.
8. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal Plastic.
9. Seat Cover: Required Not required.
10. Color: White.

2.03 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves
1. Standard: ASSE 1037

2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig
3. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
4. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
5. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated
6. Style: Exposed.
7. Consumption: 1.28 gal (4.8L).
8. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1 (DN 25).
9. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32).

B. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves
1. Standard: ASSE 1037
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig
3. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
4. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
5. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated
6. Style: Exposed.
7. Consumption: 1.28 gal (4.8L).
8. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1 (DN 25).
9. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32).

2.04 SUPPORTS

A. Water Closet Carrier:
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
2. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:
1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:
1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
4. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:
1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 42 16.13
COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Lavatories.
   2. Faucets.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
   2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
   1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
      a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 number percent of amount of each type and size installed.
   2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 number percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory : Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.
   1. Fixture:
      a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
      b. Type: For wall hanging.
      c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm), 22 by 14 inches (559 by 356 mm), 23 by 15 inches (584 by 381 mm) .
      d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole, Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers, Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
      e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
      f. Color: White .
      g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
   2. Faucet: lavatory faucet designation from "Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets" or "Solid-Brass, Automatically Operated Lavatory Faucets" Article.

3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, exposed-arm lavatory carrier, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with escutcheons. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

B. Lavatory : Ledge back, vitreous china, wall mounted.
   1. Fixture:
      a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
      b. Type: For wall hanging.
      c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm), 22 by 14 inches (559 by 356 mm), 23 by 15 inches (584 by 381 mm) .
      d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole, Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers, Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
      e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
      f. Color: White .
      g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
   2. Faucet: lavatory faucet designation from "Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets" or "Solid-Brass, Automatically Operated Lavatory Faucets" Article.
   3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, exposed-arm lavatory carrier, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with escutcheons. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

C. Lavatory : Slab type, vitreous china, wall mounted.
   1. Fixture:
      a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
      b. Type: For wall hanging.
      c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm), 22 by 14 inches (559 by 356 mm), 23 by 15 inches (584 by 381 mm) .
      d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole, Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers, Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
      e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
      f. Color: White .
      g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
   2. Faucet: lavatory faucet designation from "Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets" or "Solid-Brass, Automatically Operated Lavatory Faucets" Article.
   3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, exposed-arm lavatory carrier, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with escutcheons. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

D. Lavatory : Wheelchair, vitreous china, wall mounted.
   1. Fixture:
      a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
      b. Type: Slab or wheelchair.
      c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 27 by 20 inches (686 by 508 mm).
      d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole, Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) dimension centers. Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
      e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
      f. Color: White .
      g. Mounting: For concealed-arm carrier.
   2. Faucet: lavatory faucet designation from "Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets" or "Solid-Brass, Automatically Operated Lavatory Faucets" Article.
   3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with rectangular, steel uprights.

E. Lavatory : Corner type, vitreous china, wall mounted.
   1. Fixture:
      a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

b. Type: Three-sided-front apron with three-sided back.
c. Nominal Size: Corner, 16 by 16 inches (406 by 406 mm).
d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole, Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers. Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
e. Faucet-Hole Location: Back wall.
f. Color: White .
g. Mounting Materials: Wall brackets.

2. Faucet: Manufacturer's standard; solid brass; factory installed.
3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type III, lavatory carrier with two hanger plates made for corner lavatories. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

F. Lavatory : Rectangular, self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted..
1. Fixture:
a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 16 by 16 inches (406 by 406 mm).
d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole, Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers. Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
f. Color: White .
g. Mounting Materials: Sealant.
2. Faucet: Manufacturer's standard; solid brass; factory installed.

G. Lavatory : Oval, Round, self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted.
1. Fixture:
a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm), 22 by 14 inches (559 by 356 mm), 23 by 15 inches (584 by 381 mm).
d. Nominal Size: Round, 19 inches (483 mm).
e. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole, Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers, Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
f. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
g. Color: White .
h. Mounting Material: Sealant.
2. Faucet: lavatory faucet designation from "Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets" or "Solid-Brass, Automatically Operated Lavatory Faucets" Article.

H. Lavatory : Oval, vitreous china, undrercounter mounted.
1. Fixture:
a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: For undercounter mounting.
c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm), 22 by 14 inches (559 by 356 mm), 23 by 15 inches (584 by 381 mm).
d. Faucet-Hole Punching: No Holes
e. Faucet-Hole Location: On countertop.
f. Color: White .
g. Mounting Material: Sealant and undercounter mounting kit.
2. Faucet: lavatory faucet designation from "Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets" or "Solid-Brass, Automatically Operated Lavatory Faucets" Article.

2.02 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Lavatory Faucets: Manual-type, single-control mixing, single-control nonmixing, two-handle mixing, commercial, general-duty, solid-brass valve.
   1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
   2. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
   3. Body Type: Centerset, Widespread, Single hole .
   4. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
   5. Finish: Polished chrome plate finish.
   6. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm (1.5 L/min.) value.
   7. Maximum Flow: 0.25 gal. (0.95 L) value per metering cycle.
   8. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed, Deck, concealed, Back/wall, exposed, Back/wall, concealed.
   9. Valve Handle(s): Single lever, Knob, Knob, nonmetallic, Cross, three arm, Cross, four arm, Wrist blade, 4 inches (102 mm), Elbow, 6 inches (152 mm), Push button .
   10. Spout: Rigid, Swing, Rigid, gooseneck, Swivel, gooseneck type.
   11. Spout Outlet: Aerator, Laminar flow, Spray .
   12. Operation: Compression, manual, Noncompression, manual.
   13. Drain: Not part of faucet .

2.03 SOLID-BRASS, AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Lavatory Faucets: Automatic-type,battery-powered, hard-wired, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing, solid-brass valve.
   1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
   2. Electrical Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
   3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
   4. Body Type: Single hole.
   5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
   6. Finish: Polished chrome plate finish.
   7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm (1.5 L/min.) value.
   8. Maximum Flow: 0.25 gal. (0.95 L) value per metering cycle.
   9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed, Deck, concealed, Back/wall, exposed, Back/wall, concealed.
   10. Spout: Rigid, Swing, Rigid, gooseneck, Swivel, gooseneck type.
   11. Spout Outlet: Aerator, Laminar flow, Spray .
   12. Drain: Not part of faucet .

2.04 LAMINAR-FLOW, FAUCET-SPOUT OUTLETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout-outlet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Description: Chrome-plated-brass, faucet-spout outlet that produces non-aerating, laminar stream. Include external or internal thread that mates with faucet outlet for attachment to faucets where indicated and flow-rate range that includes flow of faucet.

2.05 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

E. Operation: Loose key, Wheel handle .

F. Risers:
   1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10), NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
   2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper-pipe and brass straight or offset tailpieces, Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube, ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

2.06 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) offset and straight tailpiece.

C. Trap:
   1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4 (DN 40 by DN 32), NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32).
   2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube to wall, two-piece, cast-brass trap and ground-joint swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube to wall, one-piece, cast-brass trap with swivel 0.029-inch- (73-mm-) thick tubular brass wall bend trap type; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
   3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- (0.30-mm-) thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.

B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 42 16.16

COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Service basin
   2. Utility Sink
   3. Kitchen sinks.
   4. Handwash sinks.
   5. Sink faucets.
   6. Supply fittings.
   7. Waste fittings.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
   2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 <Insert number> percent of amount of each type and size installed.
   2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 <Insert number> percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basin: Molded Stone, Floor Mounted
   1. Fixture:
      a. Standards: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
      b. Shape: Square.
      c. Nominal Size: 24 by 24 by 10 inches (610 by 610 by 255 mm).
   2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
   3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
   4. Mounting: On floor and Flush to wall
   5. Faucet: Service sink faucet designation from “Manually Operated Sink Faucets” Article.

B. Service Basin: Terrazzo, Floor Mounted
   1. Fixture:
      a. Standards: IAPMO PS 99.
      b. Shape: Square.

c. Nominal Size: 24 by 24 by 10 inches (610 by 610 by 255 mm).
2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
4. Mounting: On floor and Flush to wall
5. Faucet: Service sink faucet designation from “Manually Operated Sink Faucets” Article.

C. Service Basin: Plastic, Floor Mounted
1. Fixture:
a. Standards: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.6.
b. Shape: Square.
c. Nominal Size: 24 by 24 by 10 inches (610 by 610 by 255 mm).
2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
4. Mounting: On floor and Flush to wall
5. Faucet: Service sink faucet designation from “Manually Operated Sink Faucets” Article.

2.02 UTILITY SINKS

A. Utility Sinks : Plastic, Pedestal mounted.
1. Fixture:
a. Standards: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.6
b. Type: Basin with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
c. Nominal Size: 25 by 23 by 15 inches (635 by 584 by 381 mm).
2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
4. Mounting: Unit provided legs
5. Faucet: Utility sink faucet designation from “Manually Operated Sink Faucets” Article

B. Utility Sinks : Vitreous China, Trap Standard Mounted.
1. Fixture:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1
b. Type: Service sink with back.
c. Back: Two faucet holes, Plain
d. Nominal Size: 25 by 23 by 15 inches (635 by 584 by 381 mm).
2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
4. Mounting: Unit provided legs
5. Faucet: Utility sink faucet designation from “Manually Operated Sink Faucets” Article
6.

2.03 KITCHEN SINKS

A. Kitchen Sinks : Stainless steel, top mount.
1. Fixture:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
b. Type: Stainless steel, sel-rimming, with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
c. Number of Compartments: One
d. Nominal Size: 25 by 22 by 6 inches (635 by 559 by 152 mm).
2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
4. Mounting: On counter with sealant

B. Kitchen Sinks : Stainless steel, top mount, two bowl.
1. Fixture:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.

b. Type: Stainless steel, sel-rimming, with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
c. Number of Compartments: Two
d. Nominal Size: 25 by 22 by 6 inches (635 by 559 by 152 mm).
2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
4. Mounting: On counter with sealant.

2.04 HANDWASH SINKS

A. Handwash Sinks : Stainless steel, wall mounted.
1. Fixture:
a. Standards: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 and NSF/ANSI 2.
b. Type: Stainless steel, sel-rimming, with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
c. Number of Compartments: One
d. Nominal Size: 25 by 22 by 6 inches (635 by 559 by 152 mm).
2. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
3. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
4. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, sink carrier.

2.05 SINK FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Sink Faucets : Manual type, single-control, two-lever-handle mixing valve.
1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
2. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
3. Body Type: Centerset, Widespread, Single hole .
4. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass, General-duty, solid brass, Copper or brass underbody.
5. Finish: Chrome plated, Polished chrome plate.
6. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm (8.3 L/min.).
7. Handle(s): Lever, Cross, four arm, Wrist blade, 4 inches (102 mm), Elbow, 6 inches (152 mm), Not applicable <Insert handles>.
8. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed, Deck, exposed, Back/wall, exposed.
9. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass, Rigid, solid brass with wall brace, Swing, round tubular, Swing, shaped tube, Swing, solid brass, Rigid gooseneck, Swivel gooseneck .
10. Vacuum Breaker: Required, Not required for hose outlet.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator, Laminar flow, Hose thread according to ASME B1.20.7, Plain end, Spray .

2.06 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

E. Operation: Loose key, Wheel handle .

F. Risers:
1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10), NPS 1/2 (DN 15)

2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper pipe, Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube, ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

2.07 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) offset and straight tailpiece.

C. Trap:
1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube to wall, two-piece, cast-brass trap and ground-joint swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube to wall, one-piece, cast-brass trap with swivel 0.029-inch- (73-mm-) thick tubular brass wall bend ; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- (0.30-mm-) thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

2.08 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.

B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.

E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 42 23
COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Individual shower receptors.
   2. Shower faucets.
   3. Shower basins.
   4. Grout.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for showers and basins.
   2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For shower faucets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
   2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INDIVIDUAL SHOWERS

1. Coordinate with architectural drawings.

2.02 SHOWER FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for shower materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Shower Faucets:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
   2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
      a. American Standard America.
      b. Chicago Faucets.
      c. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
      d. Kohler Co.
      e. Lawler Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      f. Leonard Valve Company.
      g. Matco-Norca.
      h. Moen Incorporated.
      i. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
      j. Speakman Company.

k. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.

3. Description: Single-handle, pressure-balance mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and shower head.
4. Faucet:
   a. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
   b. Body Material: Solid brass.
   c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
   d. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.) unless otherwise indicated.
   e. Mounting: Concealed.
   f. Operation: Single-handle, twist or rotate control.
   g. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
   h. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
5. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Shower Head:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
   b. Type: Ball joint with arm and flange
   c. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
   d. Spray Pattern: Adjustable, Fixed.
   e. Integral Volume Control: Required.
   f. Temperature Indicator: Integral with faucet.

2.03 SHOWER BASINS

1. Coordinate with architectural drawings.

2.04 GROUT

1. Coordinate with architectural drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before shower installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where showers will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.
   1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with shower. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
   2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

D. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.

E. Set shower receptors and shower basins in leveling bed of cement grout.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheons requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between showers and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with traps and soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of showers and basins, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean showers and basins, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of showers and basins for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 47 13
DRINKING FOUNTAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes drinking fountains and related components.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of drinking fountain.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
   2. Include operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

A. Drinking Fountains : Concrete Painted cast iron or steel, pedestal wheelchair accessible.
   1. Standards: Comply with ICC A117.1 and NSF 61.
   2. Pedestal: Rectangular Round , with offset to receptor with side receptor(s).
   3. Receptor(s):
      a. Number: One Two Three.
      b. Material: Bronze Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel .
      c. Shape: Rectangular Round Rounded front .
      d. Bubbler: One for each receptor, with adjustable stream regulator.
      e. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) tailpiece.
   4. Controls: Foot pedal Push bar Push button .
   5. Access to Internal Components: Panel in pedestal.
   6. Supply Piping: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) NPS 1/2 (DN 15) with shutoff valve.
   7. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) minimum trap and waste.

B. Drinking Fountains : Antifreeze, pedestal.
   1. Standard: Comply with NSF 61.
   2. Designed to operate without draining into ground.
   3. Pedestal: Rectangular, painted cast iron or steel.
   4. Receptor: Rectangular, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with bubbler.
   5. Control: Foot pedal with control valve assembly.
   6. Supply Fittings: Underground shutoff and flow-control valve assembly.
   7. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1 (DN 25) NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) <Insert pipe size> minimum waste.
   8. Bury Depth, Grade to Valve Components: 36 inches (915 mm) 48 inches (1220 mm) 60 inches (1525 mm) .
   9. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
   10. Waste Piping: NPS 2 (DN 50) minimum trap and waste.

C. Drinking Fountains : Bronze Stainless steel Vitreous china, wall mounted.
   1. Standards:
      a. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
      b. Comply with NSF 61.
   2. Type Receptor: Slab With back On horizontal support.

3. Receptor Shape: Rectangular Round .
4. Back Panel: Stainless-steel wall plate behind drinking fountain.
5. Bubblers: One Two Three, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
6. Control: Push button Push bar .
7. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) tailpiece.
8. Supply: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) with shutoff valve.
9. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) chrome-plated brass P-trap and waste.
10. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type III lavatory carrier.

D. Drinking Fountains : Stainless steel Vitreous china, wall mounted, semirecessed.
1. Standards: Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
2. Standards: Comply with NSF 61.
3. Receptor Shape: Concave with projecting bowl.
4. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
5. Control: Push button Push bar .
6. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) tailpiece.
7. Supply: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) with shutoff valve.
8. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) brass P-trap.
9. Support: Mounting frame or brackets for attaching to wood blocking or substrate.

E. Drinking Fountains : Stainless steel, recessed.
1. Standard: Comply with NSF 61.
2. Receptor Shape: Concave with flush wall flange.
3. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
4. Control: Push button Push bar .
5. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum horizontal waste and trap, complying with ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
6. Supply: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) with shutoff valve.
7. Support: Mounting frame or brackets for attaching to substrate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Set pedestal drinking fountains on floor.

C. Install recessed drinking fountains secured to wood blocking in wall construction.

D. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

E. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball or gate valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Install ball or gate shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

3.05 CLEANING

A. After installing fixtures, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.

D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 00 00

BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Division 1 – General Acoustic Considerations – Definitions including:
   1. Acoustically Isolated Construction (AIC)
   2. Acoustically Sensitive Room (ASR)
   3. Noise Producing Room (NPR)

B. Division 9 – Joint Sealants

C. Division 23 – Vibration and Seismic Controls for Mechanical Systems

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Provide acoustical wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations as specified herein and as shown on the Contract Drawings. Verify all dimensions and requirements and coordinate with other trades as necessary to complete the work on schedule.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide complete submittal including the following:
   1. Manufacturer cut sheets for all products.
      a. Provide for approval a list of alternative products proposed for use to achieve the requirements for airtight seal and no rigid connection between the pipe and the penetrated construction.

B. Shop Drawings: Provide shop drawings for all Penetration Sleeve Assemblies not made by a pre-approved manufacturer listed herein showing the use of alternative products to achieve an airtight closure and no rigid connection between the pipe and the penetrated construction. Additionally, include a narrative for approval which describes specific construction sequencing associated with Alternative Penetration Sleeve Assemblies that will be implemented for:
   1. Conditions when the penetrating pipe is installed prior to the future wall, floor, or ceiling construction.
   2. Conditions when the penetrating pipe is installed following construction of wall, floor, or ceiling elements.

C. Samples: Provide sample of sleeve construction, complete with sample pipe, to Architect, Mechanical Engineer, and Acoustic Consultant if product is not made by a pre-approved manufacturer listed herein.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

A. Mason Industries (Mason), Hauppauge, NY – www.mason-ind.com

B. Kinetics Noise Control (Kinetics), Dublin, OH – www.kineticsnoise.com

C. Amber-Booth Company (ABC), Houston, TX – www.amberbooth.com

D. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc. (VMC), Bloomingdale, NJ – www.thevmcgroup.com

E. Armacell LLC (Armacell), Mebane, NC – www.armacell.com

F. Owens Corning (OC), Toledo, OH – www.owenscorning.com

G. Anvil International (Anvil), Exeter, NH – www.anvilintl.com

H. Johns Manville (JM), Denver, CO – www.specjm.com

2.2 DESCRIPTION OF PRODUCTS

A. Resilient Penetration Sleeves for Pipes and Conduit

1. Where specified, resilient pipe and conduit penetrations shall be sleeved to avoid rigid connection between the building structure and the penetrating element.
2. Sleeve assembly shall consist of 1/2 inch (13mm) to 3/4 inch (19mm) formed closed cell neoprene foam or semi-rigid glass fiber liner with a metal surround. Inner diameter of sleeve assembly shall match the outer diameter of the associated pipe/conduit. Sleeve assembly may be split to allow it to be clamped once the pipe/conduit is installed.
3. Acceptable products:
   a. SWS Split Acoustical Wall Seal (Mason)
   b. NSW Sleeve (ABC)
   c. VCS Sleeve (VMC)
   d. Approved alternative products which follow the execution requirements identified within this specification section.

B. Alternative Penetration Sleeve Assembly

1. Where specified, resilient pipe and conduit penetrations shall be sleeved to avoid rigid connection between the building structure and the penetrating element.
2. Alternative Penetration Sleeve Assembly shall consist of a formed closed cell neoprene foam or semi-rigid glass fiber liner with a steel surround. Inner diameter of sleeve assembly shall match the outer diameter of the associated pipe/conduit. Sleeve assembly may be split to allow it to be clamped once the pipe is installed.
   a. Liner shall be a minimum 1/2 inch (13mm) thick with density of 6 to 10 pounds per cubic foot (96 to 160 kg/m^3)
   b. Surround shall be minimum 22 gauge steel. Surround may be split to allow it to be clamped once the pipe/conduit is installed.
3. Acceptable products (Metal Surround):
   a. Roundup Pipe Insulation Saddles (Buckaroos)
   b. Pipe Saddles (Anvil)
4. Acceptable products (Liner):
   a. Armaflex (Armacell)
   b. Micro-Lok (JM)
   c. Approved Equivalent

C. Perimeter Isolation Board

1. Where specified, ducts and group penetrations shall be sleeved using a 7 to 10 pound per cubic foot (112 to 160 kg/m^3) semi-rigid fiber or foam board.
2. Acceptable products:
   a. P7 (Mason)
   b. PIB (Kinetics)
   c. FIBERGLAS Type 707 (Owens Corning)
   d. Approved equivalent

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall notify the Architect and the Acoustics Consultant prior to the installation of millwork, walls, ceilings, or other requirements which would obscure visual inspection of these acoustical products and will provide these parties with an opportunity to review the condition of the mounts prior to any such construction.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Duct, Conduit, and Piping Installation, General

1. All duct, conduit, and piping that cross the Extent of AIC shall be supported on vibration isolators for a distance of 8 feet (2.5m) measured linearly along the penetrating element.
2. Vibration isolate duct, conduit, and piping that is connected to vibration isolated equipment, as per Division 23 “Vibration and Seismic Control for Mechanical Systems.”
3. Coordinate locations of pipe and conduit penetrations that require sleeves prior to installing pipe/conduit to ensure sleeves are installed with the pipe/conduit. Installer shall be liable for any additional cost due to revision work or product changes due to sleeves not being initially provided.

B. Duct, Conduit, and Pipe Penetrations at Acoustic Applications:

1. Penetration Type A: Resilient and Airtight Penetration.
   a. Type A Penetrations are required for all:
      i. Acoustically Sensitive Rooms with a background noise level of RC-30 or less.
      ii. Penetrations through walls or slabs crossing and within 8 feet (2.5m) crossing of Acoustically Isolated Construction.
      iii. Penetrations through walls, floors, or ceilings of Noise Producing Rooms.
      iv. Wall, floor, or ceiling penetrations within 30 feet (9m) of a connection to vibration isolated equipment.
   b. Type A Penetrations shall be installed as follows, providing an airtight and resilient penetration:
      i. Wall, floor, or ceiling openings for Type A penetrations shall be oversized and sleeved to provide an inner diameter 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50mm) greater than the outside dimension of the sleeve or penetrating element.
      ii. The penetrating element shall be centered in the opening and shall not contact the wall, floor, or ceiling, even after filling.
      iii. The resulting gap shall be packed with glass fiber packing material and foam backer rod on both sides of the wall, floor, or ceiling.
      iv. The gap shall be caulked to an airtight seal using permanently flexible acoustical sealant on both sides of the wall, floor, or ceiling.
   c. For duct penetrations, provide framed opening with perimeter isolation board surround in lieu of sleeves. Stuff gap between the duct and perimeter isolation board with batt insulation. See contract drawings.
2. Penetration Type B: Fire Rated Resilient and Airtight Penetration.

a. Where the use of Firestop is required in the conditions noted above, the packing materials and sealant indicated for Type A penetrations may be replaced with an approved permanently flexible Firestop sealant, creating a resilient and airtight penetration that is also compliant with fire code.

b. In locations not common to Acoustically Sensitive Rooms requiring airtight and resilient penetrations of multiple pipes passing through a wall, floor, or ceiling, it is acceptable to utilize the penetration Type B detail for multiple pipes, as shown on the Contract Drawings.

3. Penetration Type C: Airtight Penetration

a. Duct, Pipe, and, Conduit penetrations of walls, floors, and ceilings of Acoustically Sensitive Rooms which do not meet the conditions for Type A or B pipe penetrations shall utilize Type C Penetrations. Requirements for CMU, Concrete, Gypsum Board, or other walls are typical for both sides of the wall.

b. CMU or Concrete walls, floors, and ceilings: Penetrations shall be grouted and caulked into the structure as follows, forming an airtight penetration:

i. Oversize penetration to provide an inner diameter 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50mm) greater than the outside dimension of the penetrating element.

ii. Before grout has set, rake a groove around the penetrating element on each side of the wall or slab.

iii. The groove shall be 1/2 inch (13mm) wide and 1/2 inch (13mm) deep.

iv. After grout has set, fill the groove full depth with permanently flexible acoustical sealant.

c. Gypsum and wood walls, floors, and ceilings: Penetrations shall be mudded or caulked as follows, forming an airtight penetration:

i. Mud all gaps between gypsum wallboard and penetrating element using joint compound.

ii. After joint compound has set, caulk all gaps to an airtight seal using approved permanently flexible acoustical sealant.

3.3 PROTECTION

A. Products that would be exposed to the weather shall be wrapped in temporary protective plastic or other weather-tight coating until building is weather tight.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 13

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.03 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.04 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 17

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.02 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.05 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with approved firestop materials.

3.02 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with approved firestop materials.

3.03 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.04 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 18

ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated, and, rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated, and, rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed, and, exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.02 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
    d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated, rough-brass finish.

i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated, rough-brass finish.

k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:

a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed, or, exposed-rivet hinge.

c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed, or, exposed-rivet hinge.

e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed, or, exposed-rivet hinge.

g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated, rough-brass finish.

h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed, or, exposed-rivet hinge.

i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated, rough-brass finish.

j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed, or, exposed-rivet hinge.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 19

METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.
5. Test plugs.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 231123 "Facility Natural- Piping" for meters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Trerice, H. O. Co.

3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4. Case: Cast aluminum ; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
5. Case Form: Back angle, Straight unless otherwise indicated.
6. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
7. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C), deg F and deg C.
8. Window: Glass or plastic.
9. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

10. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

B. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Flo Fab Inc.
    b. Miljoco Corporation.
    c. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    d. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    e. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    f. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
    g. Winters Instruments - USA.

3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4. Case: Plastic ; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
5. Case Form: Back angle, Straight unless otherwise indicated.
6. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
7. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
8. Window: Glass or plastic.
9. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

10. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

C. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Flo Fab Inc.
b. Miljoco Corporation.
c. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
d. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
e. Trerice, H. O. Co.
f. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
g. Winters Instruments - U.S.

3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4. Case: Cast aluminum ; 7-inch (178-mm), 9-inch (229-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
5. Case Form: Adjustable angle, Back angle, Straight unless otherwise indicated.
6. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
7. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C), deg F and deg C.
8. Window: Glass, or, plastic .
9. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

10. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

D. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Ernst Flow Industries.
b. Marsh Bellofram.
c. Miljoco Corporation.
d. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
e. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.

f. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

g. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

h. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.

i. .

3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4. Case: Plastic ; 7-inch (178-mm), 9-inch (229-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
5. Case Form: Adjustable angle, Back angle, Straight unless otherwise indicated.
6. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
7. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C), deg F and deg C.
8. Window: Glass, or, plastic .
9. Stem: Aluminum, Brass, Stainless steel, Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel and of length to suit installation.

   a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.

   b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

10. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR, or, CUNI .
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES, CSA .
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.

9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin .

2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Ashcroft Inc.
    c. Ernst Flow Industries.
    d. Flo Fab Inc.
    e. Marsh Bellofram.
    f. Miljoco Corporation.
    g. Noshok.
    h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    k. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
    o. Winters Instruments - U.S.

3. Standard: ASME B40.100.

4. Case: Liquid-filled, Sealed, Open-front, pressure relief, Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm), 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
5. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
6. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
7. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
8. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa), psi and kPa.
9. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
10. Window: Glass, or, plastic .
11. Ring: Metal, Brass, Stainless steel.
12. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of, Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of, Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of, Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Ashcroft Inc.
    c. Flo Fab Inc.
    d. Marsh Bellofram.
    e. Miljoco Corporation.
    f. Noshok.
    g. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    h. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    i. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    j. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    l. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.

m. Winters Instruments - U.S.

3. Standard: ASME B40.100.
4. Case: Sealed type; plastic ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm), 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
5. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
6. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
7. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
8. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa), psi and kPa.
9. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
10. Window: Glass, or, plastic .
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of, Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of, Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of, Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
b. Ashcroft Inc.
c. Ernst Flow Industries.
d. Flo Fab Inc.
e. Marsh Bellofram.
f. Miljoco Corporation.
g. Noshok.
h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
k. Trerice, H. O. Co.

l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.

o. Winters Instruments - U.S.

3. Standard: ASME B40.100.
4. Case: Liquid-filled, Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel, metal ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm), 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter with back, front flange and holes for panel mounting.
5. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
6. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
7. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
8. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa), psi and kPa.
9. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
10. Window: Glass, or, plastic .
11. Ring: Metal, Stainless steel .
12. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of, Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of, Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of, Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.

b. Ashcroft Inc.

c. Miljoco Corporation.

d. Noshok.

e. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.

f. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
g. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
h. Trerice, H. O. Co.
i. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
j. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
k. Winters Instruments - U.S.
l. .

3. Standard: ASME B40.100.
4. Case: Sealed type; plastic ; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm), 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter with back, front flange and holes for panel mounting.
5. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
6. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
7. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
8. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa), psi and kPa.
9. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
10. Window: Glass, or, plastic .
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of, Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of, Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of, Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale range.

2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston, porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass, stainless-steel, steel pipe with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe threads.

C. Valves: Brass ball, Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. Miljoco Corporation.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

C. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

D. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and keted and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

E. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8), or, NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

F. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C)

G. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic, and, EPDM self-sealing rubber.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid, one-third of pipe diameter, to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.

H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.

J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except).

K. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for .

L. Install test plugs in piping tees.

M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.

N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.

P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.

Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.

R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.

T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.

U. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic ber.
3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic c in air-handling units.
5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.

V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
3. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa.

B. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa.

C. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

D. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa.

E. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa.

F. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

END SECTION

SECTION 23 05 23

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Iron ball valves.
3. Bronze swing check valves.
4. Iron swing check valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5, 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.

5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Kitz Corporation.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. DynaQuip Controls.
d. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.

e. Hammond Valve.
f. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
g. Jomar International, LTD.
h. Kitz Corporation.
i. Legend Valve.
j. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
l. NIBCO INC.
m. Red-White Valve Corporation.
n. RuB Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
f. Kitz Corporation.
g. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
i. RuB Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Hammond Valve.
    b. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
    c. Legend Valve.
    d. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
    e. Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    d. Body Design: Two piece.
    e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    f. Ends: Threaded.
    g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    h. Stem: Brass.
    i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    j. Port: Regular.

E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
    b. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    d. Body Design: Two piece.
    e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
    f. Ends: Threaded.
    g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    h. Stem: Stainless steel.
    i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    j. Port: Regular.

F. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Jomar International, LTD.
b. Kitz Corporation.
c. Red-White Valve Corporation.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

G. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Jomar International, LTD.
b. Kitz Corporation.
c. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

2.3 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.

c. Kitz Corporation.
d. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel.
i. Port: Full.

2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Hammond Valve.
f. Kitz Corporation.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.
j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
i. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Hammond Valve.

d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
e. NIBCO INC.
f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.5 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Legend Valve.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.
j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Composition.
h. Seat Ring: Bronze.
i. Disc Holder: Bronze.
j. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
k. Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
f. NIBCO INC.
g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for ball, butterfly, gate, globe, and, plug valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Center-Guided, and, Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate, , gate, or plug valves.
2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:

    a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze, or, nonmetallic disc.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal, or, resilient-seat check valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
7. flanged.

3.5 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, Class 150, bronze, nonmetallic disc.
3. Ball Valves: One, Two, Three piece, full, regular, reduced port, brass, or, bronze with brass, bronze, stainless-steel trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, Class 150, bronze, nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, Class 150, NRS, RS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, Class 150, bronze, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze, ductile-iron, stainless-steel disc.
4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 150 CWP, EPDM, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze, ductile-iron, stainless-steel disc.
5. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 175, 300 CWP.
6. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, Class 300, single flange.
7. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, Class 250, metal, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
8. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring, weight.
9. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.
10. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, Class 150, Class 250, Class 300, compact-wafer, globe, metal, resilient seat.
11. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125, Class 150, Class 250, Class 300; single, dual plate; metal, resilient seat.
12. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, Class 250, NRS, OS&Y.
13. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, Class 250.

END SECTION

SECTION 23 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe stands.
6. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Pipe stands.
4. Equipment supports.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel stainless steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel stainless steel.

2.02 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.03 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.04 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Plastic Stainless steel.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.05 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.06 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

D. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

M. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 : 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.02 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.04 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are required.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.05 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

G. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.

5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb .
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

M. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 48

VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Work Specified Elsewhere:

1. Division 23 – Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods

a. Requirements for resilient penetrations

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section is intended to address vibration isolation of all mechanical systems and equipment associated with the project.

B. For the purposes of this specification, an Isolator is considered to be any equipment used for the resilient support of mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and fire-protection systems equipment including bases, roof-curb rails, hangers, and mounts.

C. This section includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. Vibration isolation concrete inertia bases
2. Elastomeric and spring isolation for base-mounted support
3. Elastomeric and spring isolation for hanging supports
4. Elastomeric pipe riser supports and guides

D. Vibration isolator sizes and layout shall be determined by the vibration isolator supplier, accounting for anticipated loads and the possible non-uniform weight distribution of equipment. Supplier's selection shall comply with the vibration isolator equipment composition and type, material durometer and/or static deflection as specified herein. Supplier's recommendations for alternate equipment shall be presented in writing to the Architect, Mechanical Engineer and Acoustics Consultant for approval.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittal Package

1. All submittals shall be submitted as a package to facilitate review. Submittals should include all product data in the initial submittal.

B. Product Data

1. Submitted product data shall include:

a. The model number and corresponding specification classification

b. Dimensions (uncompressed)

c. Load vs. deflection curves or tables

d. Rated load capacity and rated deflection

2. For products which are not listed as approved manufacturers and products, submittals shall include the information required above, plus the following information:

a. Samples of all acoustic isolation products.

b. Corporate information indicating that the manufacturer has been in business for at least five (5) continuous years and has provided acoustic isolation products on at least three (3) projects of similar scope.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to the requirements of the specification, supply products specified from the following approved manufacturers:

1. Mason Industries, Inc. (Mason), Hauppauge, NY – www.mason-ind.com
2. Kinetics Noise Control (Kinetics), Dublin, OH – www.kineticsnoise.com
3. Amber-Booth Company (ABC), Houston, TX – www.amberbooth.com
4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc. (VMC), Bloomingdale, NJ – www.thevmcgroup.com
5. Vibro-Acoustics (VBA), Scarborough, ON, Canada – www.vibro-acoustics.com
6. Metraflex Company (Metraflex), Chicago, IL – www.metraflex.com

B. Single Source: All vibration isolation Mounts and Hangers provided for the project shall be from one approved manufacturer.

2.2 DESCRIPTION OF PRODUCTS

A. General

1. Exterior Applications

a. All isolators protected from the outdoor elements shall utilize neoprene of bridge bearing quality. All isolators exposed to the outdoor elements shall utilize natural rubber with a durometer as specified herein.

b. All isolators that are to be installed outdoors or exposed to the weather shall be hot-dipped galvanized and shall be furnished with neoprene mounting washers and bushings for hold-down bolts to prevent any metal to metal contact.

2. Identification

a. Provide isolators with visible color identification or other mark to indicate load capacity range.

B. Type 1 Base

1. Type 1 Bases shall be a structural steel frame with clearance holes located to correspond to the mounting bolt holes of the equipment mounted on the base. A minimum 2 inch (50mm) clearance shall be provided between the base and the supporting structural slab.

2. Bases shall have built-in motor slide rails, and shall be reinforced as necessary to withstand belt pull without drive misalignment or base distortion. The bases shall be constructed with deep angle steel sections with a minimum vertical angle leg of the following:

Motor Size	Minimum Vertical Angle Leg
7.5 hp (5.6 kW) or Less	4 inches (100mm)
7.5 to 20 hp (5.6 14.9 kW)	5 inches (125mm)
Greater than 20 hp (14.9 kW)	6 inches (150mm)

3. Products:

a. Type WFSLFSW Base (Mason)

b. Type SFB Base (Kinetics)

c. Type WSB-HS Base (ABC)

d. Type WFB Base (VMC)

e. Type CTB or IFB Base (VBA)

C. Type 2 Base

1. Type 2 Bases shall consist of an integral rectangular structural steel form into which concrete is poured. Perimeter members shall be beams of depth equal to 10% of the longest span of the base, but not more than 12 inches (300mm) nor less than 6 inches (150mm) deep. Forms shall include motor slide base and all reinforcing steel. Where anchor bolt locations fall in concrete, the reinforcing steel shall include drilled members with sleeves welded below the steel to accept the anchor bolts. Height saving steel brackets shall be used in all mounting locations. A minimum 2 inch (50mm) clearance shall be provided between the base and the supporting structural slab.

2. When the concrete base is "T" shaped, isolators shall be located under the projections as well as under the main body in order to prevent cantilever distortion.

3. Products:

a. Type KSLFSW Base (Mason)

b. Type CIB Base (Kinetics)

c. Type CPF Base (ABC)

d. Type MPF Base (VMC)

e. Type CIB Base (VBA)

D. Type 2 Mount

1. Type 2 Mounts shall be pads manufactured of neoprene or encapsulated glass fiber.

2. Materials:

a. Neoprene isolation mounts shall be 3/4 inch (19mm) thick neoprene pads waffled on both sides. The pads shall be manufactured with bridge bearing quality neoprene and selected for a maximum durometer of 50 and designed for strain of 10 to 15% pad thickness. Where required, steel load-spreading plates shall be incorporated between the equipment and the neoprene isolation pad.

b. Glass fiber isolation mounts shall consist of high density molded glass fiber pads individually coated with a flexible elastomeric membrane. Pads shall be manufactured from annealed glass fibers stabilized by pre-compression during manufacture. The deflection of the pad while under load shall range from 10 to 15% of the pad thickness, but shall not exceed the rated maximum strain of the pad.

3. If the isolator is bolted to the structure, a neoprene vibration isolation washer and bushing shall be installed under the bolt head between the steel washer and the base plate.

4. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):

a. Super W Pad (Mason)

b. Type NGS / NGD Pad(Kinetics)

c. Type NRC Pad (ABC)

d. Maxi-Flex Pads (VMC)

e. Type NSN Pad (VBA)

E. Type 3 Mount

1. Type 3 Mounts shall be laterally stable, double deflecting, molded neoprene isolators. All metal surfaces shall be covered with neoprene. The top and bottom surfaces shall be ribbed and bolt holes shall be provided in the base. The Mounts shall have leveling bolts rigidly secured to the equipment.
2. The isolator shall be manufactured with bridge bearing quality neoprene, selected for a maximum durometer of 50, and designed for strain of 10 to 15% of the pad thickness, but shall not exceed the rated maximum strain of the pad. Type 3 Mounts shall be selected for a minimum static deflection of 0.3 inch (9mm) unless otherwise specified.
3. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):
   a. Type ND Mount (Mason)
   b. Type RD Mount (Kinetics)
   c. Type RVD Mount (ABC)
   d. Type RD Mount (VMC)
   e. Type RD Mount (VBA)

F. Type 4 Mount

1. Type 4 Mounts shall have a free-standing and laterally stable steel spring without any housing. Springs shall be designed so that the ratio of the horizontal to vertical spring constant is between 1 and 2. The spring diameter shall not be less than 0.8 times the compressed height of the spring at rated load. Loaded springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the specified static deflection.
2. Unless otherwise specified, the minimum static deflection of Type 4 Mounts for equipment mounted on slabs on-grade shall be 1 inch (25mm), and the minimum static deflection for equipment mounted above grade level shall be 2 inches (50mm).
3. A minimum 1/4 inch (6mm) thick neoprene pad shall be bonded to the isolator base plate.
4. Unless otherwise specified, isolators need not be bolted to the floor for indoor installations. If the base plates are bolted to the structure, a neoprene vibration isolation washer and bushing shall be installed under the bolt head between the steel washer and the base plate.
5. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):
   a. Type SLF Mount (Mason)
   b. Type FDS Mount (Kinetics)
   c. Type SW Mount (ABC)
   d. Type AC or ADC Mounts (VMC)
   e. Type FS Mount (VBA)
6. Where seismic code requirements dictate the use of a restraining mechanism, Type 5 Mounts shall be utilized beneath equipment identified to be mounted on Type 4 Mounts in the Contract Documents.

G. Type 5 Mount (Not Used)

H. Type 1 Hanger (Not Used)

I. Type 2 Hanger (Not Used)

J. Type 3 Hanger

1. Type 3 Hangers shall consist of a molded neoprene or encapsulated glass fiber isolating element in a steel hanger box. A neoprene sleeve shall be provided where the lower hanger rod passes through the steel hanger box, such that the hanger rod cannot contact the steel hanger.
2. The isolator shall be manufactured with bridge bearing quality neoprene, and selected for a maximum durometer of 50 and 10% to 15% strain. Unless otherwise specified, the static deflection shall be 0.3 inches (8mm).
3. The diameter of the clear hole in the hanger box shall be at least 3/4 inch (19mm) larger than the diameter of the hanger rod, or an alternative design approach shall be incorporated to permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30 degree arc without defeating the vibration isolation effectiveness of the hanger.
4. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):
    a. Type HD or WHD Hanger (Mason)
    b. Type RH Hanger (Kinetics)
    c. Type BRD Hanger (ABC)
    d. Type RHD Hanger (VMC)
    e. Type NH Hanger (VBA)

K. Type 4 Hanger

1. Type 4 Hangers shall consist of a steel spring in series with a neoprene or encapsulated glass fiber isolating element. The spring shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the specified deflection. The neoprene element shall have a static deflection of not less than 0.3 inches (8mm) with a strain not exceeding 15%.
2. Unless otherwise specified, the static deflection of Type 4 Hangers shall be 1 inch (25mm).
3. The spring diameter and hanger box hole size shall be large enough to permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30 degree arc without defeating the vibration isolation effectiveness of the hanger. A neoprene sleeve shall be provided where the lower hanger rod passes through the steel hanger box, or an alternative design approach shall be incorporated, such that the hanger rod cannot contact the steel hanger. The diameter of the clear hole in the hanger box shall be at least 3/4 inch (19mm) larger than the diameter of the hanger rod.
4. When installed, the spring element shall not be cocked, and the hanger box shall be allowed to rotate through a full 360 degree arc without encountering any obstructions.
5. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):
    a. 30N or W30N Hanger (Mason)
    b. Type SRH Hanger (Kinetics)
    c. Type BSRA Hanger (ABC)
    d. Type RSH-30A Hanger (VMC)
    e. Type SHR Hanger (VBA)

L. Resilient Pipe/Duct Riser Supports And Guides

1. Resilient Pipe/Duct Riser Support

a. All-directional, acoustical pipe/duct anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2 inch (13mm) thick, 60-durometer neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig (3.45 MPa) and for equal resistance in all directions.

b. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):

i ADA (Mason)

ii KRG (Kinetics)

iii AG (ABC)

iv MDPA (VMC)

v As approved by other manufacturers

2. Resilient Pipe/Duct Guides

a. Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2 inch (13mm) thick, 60-durometer neoprene. Factory set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

b. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):

i VSG (Mason)

ii KRG (Kinetics)

iii AG (ABC)

iv RPG (VMC)

v As approved by other manufacturers

M. Neoprene Mounting Washers and Bushings

1. Neoprene Mounting Washers and Bushings for hold-down applications of equipment with vibration isolators shall be of bridge bearing quality neoprene.

2. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):

a. HG Washer-Bushings (Mason)

b. HLW Washer and HLB Bushing (Mason)

c. TG Isolation Grommet (Kinetics)

d. Elastomeric Grommet (ABC)

e. GW Washer (VBA)

N. Flexible Connections

1. Flexible Pipe Connections: Flexible Spherical Rubber Expansion Fittings

a. EPDM elastomer and Kevlar cord impregnated liner with solid steel constraining ring.

b. Control rods or cables shall not be used to connect across flexible pipe connectors. Pipes shall be supported or hung using isolators specified herein.

c. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):

i Safeflex (Mason)

ii Kinflex series (Kinetics)

iii Type 2600 Flexible Connectors (ABC)

iv Quiet-Sphere type Flexible Connectors (VMC)

2. Flexible Pipe Connections: Flexible Straight-Wall Rubber Expansion Fittings
   a. Straight-Wall connectors shall be used for sewage ejector pumps only, all others shall be spherical style.
   b. EPDM elastomer impregnated liner with solid steel constraining ring and Kevlar cord reinforcement.
   c. Control rods or cables shall not be used to connect across flexible pipe connectors. Pipes shall be supported or hung using isolators specified herein.
   d. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):
      i 400HT Flexible Rubber Pipe (Metraflex)
3. Flexible Pipe Connections: Braided Metal Hoses
   a. Braided metal hoses shall only be used where conditions exceed the service capabilities of spherical rubber expansion fittings.
   b. Corrugated hose body surrounded by metallic braided hose
   c. Products (subject to the requirements of this specification):
      i BBS or BBF (Mason)
      ii Kinflex series (Kinetics)
4. Expansion fittings shall be selected by the manufacturer based on pipe movement and service pressure rating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into base. Concrete reinforcement and formwork are specified in Division 3.

B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with work specified in Division 7.

3.2 SITE CONDITIONS / EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General

1. Unless otherwise indicated, all equipment mounted on interior, open vibration isolation bases shall have a minimum operating clearance of 2 inches (50mm) between the bottom of the equipment or inertia base (and height-saving bracket) and the concrete housekeeping pad (or bolt heads) beneath the equipment. A minimum 4 inch (100mm) clearance shall be maintained between isolated equipment and the walls, ceiling, floors, columns, and any other equipment not installed on vibration isolators.

2. Piping, ductwork, conduit, or mechanical equipment shall not be hung from or supported on other equipment, conduit, pipes, or ductwork installed on vibration isolators. It shall only be supported on or suspended from building structure.

3. Install hangers plumb so that threaded rod does not contact hanger housing.

4. Equipment connected to water or other fluid piping shall be erected on mounts, hangers, or isolated foundations at correct operating heights prior to connection of piping. Equipment should be blocked-up with temporary shims to final operating height. When the system is assembled and fluid is added, the mounts or hangers shall be adjusted to allow removal of the shims.

5. All mechanical equipment not specifically identified in this specification that contains rotating or vibrating elements, and any associated electrical apparatus installed by this division that contains transformers or inductors shall be installed on Type 3 Mounts or Hangers as appropriate. Provide supporting steel structure between Mounts or Hangers and equipment if isolator does not readily connect to equipment.

6. Install Neoprene Mounting Washers and Bushings on equipment anchor bolts.

B. Resilient Support Of Vibrating Equipment

1. Compressors

a. Each unit shall be mounted on Type 4 Mounts. In the event that the unit has either (1) a severe overhang with respect to the base mounting points, (2) a high center of gravity or (3) insufficient structural strength to prevent either distortion or relative motion when installed on isolators, the equipment shall also be installed on a Type 1 or a Type 2 Base. This includes Absorption Machines as well as other types of Chillers.

2. Base Mounted and Package Pumps

a. Base Mounted and the framework of Package Pumps 5 horsepower (3.75 kW) and over shall be bolted and grouted to prefabricated, reinforced Type 2 Bases, which shall weigh not less than 1.5 times the combined weight of the fluid filled pump(s) and motor(s). The minimum thickness of the concrete base shall be as follows:

Pump Size	Minimum Thickness of Inertia Base
5 to 20 Horsepower	6 inches (150mm)
25 to 50 Horsepower	8 inches (200mm
60 to 100 Horsepower	10 inches (250mm)
Greater than 100 Horsepower	12 inches (300mm)

b. Any rigid pipe elbows at the pump suction and discharge connections shall be supported from the inertia base. The inertia base shall be supported on a minimum of four Type 4 Mounts.

c. Pumps under 5 horsepower (3.75 kW) and installed on floors above grade shall be installed on Type 1 Bases with a minimum of four Type 4 Mounts.

d. Pumps under 5 horsepower (3.75 kW) and located on grade shall be mounted directly on a concrete housekeeping pad, and shall be supported on a minimum of four Type 3 Mounts.

e. All pump connections to piping shall be with a flexible pipe connector. The vertical load shall be carried by the equipment supports, not by the flexible connector.

3. Field-Installed Motors

a. Field-installed motors less than 5 horsepower (3.75 kW) shall be supported on Type 3 Mounts.

b. Field-installed motors greater than 5 horsepower (3.75 kW) shall be bolted and grouted to a Type 2 Base. Bases shall be supported on a minimum of four Type 4 Mounts. Thickness of concrete within inertia base shall be as follows:

Motor Size	Minimum Thickness of Inertia Base
5 to 20 Horsepower	6 inches (150mm)
25 to 50 Horsepower	8 inches (200mm)
60 to 100 Horsepower	10 inches (250mm)
Greater than 100 Horsepower	12 inches (300mm)

4. Fan Isolation - General

a. Fans and Air Handlers not described herein or indicated on the equipment schedule shall be mounted Type 4 Mounts.

b. Fans and air handling units shall be leveled with the fans operating before the flexible connectors are attached.

c. There shall be at least a 4 inch (100mm) gap between the fan housing and the main supply and return ducts. Flexible duct connectors that exceed the size of the gap by at least 3 inches (75mm) in length shall connect the fan section with the main supply and return ducts. Flexible connectors shall not be taut or fully compressed allowing housing/duct contact during start-up, operation, or shut-down of the fan(s).

d. All fan bases, mounts, and hangers shall be sized so that thrust restraints (which would act against turning moment caused by static pressure) are not required.

e. Fan expansion plenums, coil or filter casings, air mixing plenums, package air handler plenums, and other contiguous plenum or unit casing elements shall be installed on Type 2 Mounts above 4 inch (100mm) high reinforced concrete housekeeping pad or curb furnished by the General Contractor. Gaps beneath the plenum or casing elements shall be sealed airtight with approved rod backer and permanently flexible acoustical sealant.

f. Fans or Air Handling Units and their respective mounts or hangers shall be directly mounted on or suspended from primary structural slabs or steel. Units and isolators shall not be mounted on resiliently-supported concrete slabs, un-reinforced steel cabinets, plenum floors, or other flexible construction.

5. Floor Mounted Fans and Factory-Assembled Air Handling Units

a. Each Floor-Mounted Fan or Factory-Assembled Air Handling Unit shall be mounted on a Type 1 or Type 2 Base with Type 4 Mounts unless internal restrained spring isolation is specified.

b. The casing of Factory-Assembled Air-Handling Units with approved, internal restrained spring isolation shall be supported from Type 2 Mounts.

c. Drain pipes for Air Handling Units shall be supported only from the isolated Air Handling Unit frame. The condensate shall drip into a funnel that is supported from the floor or floor drain. A gap of at least 2 inches (50mm) shall be maintained between the end of the air handling unit drain pipe and funnel or floor drain.

d. When Factory-Assembled Air Handling Units are provided with internal spring isolators, these shall be locked down with shipping bolts for shipping. Once installed these bolts shall be removed.

6. Floor-Mounted Custom Built-Up Air-Handling Units

a. The casing of Custom Air-Handling Units with approved, internal restrained spring isolation shall be supported from Type 2 Mounts.

b. When Custom Air-Handling Units are provided with internal spring isolators, these shall be locked down with shipping bolts for shipping. Once installed these bolts shall be removed.

7. Suspended Fans and Air-Handling Units

a. Fans suspended from overhead structure shall be hung on Type 4 Hangers. Should the fan not contain a frame with mounting brackets of suitable rigidity and strength, or if there exists an extreme overhang condition, then a Type 1 Base shall be used. Thrust restraint shall be provided by pre-compressed isolators.

b. Fans and Air-Handling Units shall not be supported on any other piece of equipment, but shall be supported independently from building structure.

C. Resilient Support Of Pipes And Ducts Connected To Isolated Equipment

1. Pipes and Ducts shall be supported on Type 4 Mounts or Hangers under the following conditions:

a. Ducts and pipes within the Mechanical Equipment Room or any other NPR that are connected to equipment that is vibration isolated with spring-type isolators.

b. Ducts and pipes beyond the Mechanical Equipment Room or any other NPR but still within 30 feet (9m) from connection to equipment that is vibration isolated with spring-type isolators.

i This includes ducts, heating, compressed air, hydraulic fluid, steam, and chilled water pipes, etc. The only exclusions are roof and floor drains and sprinkler piping.

c. The first isolator both upstream and downstream of equipment on springs shall have a static deflection equal to 1.5 times that of the equipment isolators, up to a maximum of 2 inches (50mm). The static deflection of the remaining pipe isolators within the Mechanical Equipment Room or any other NPR or within 30 feet (9m) of the equipment or within 50 pipe diameters of the equipment (whichever distance is greater) shall be 1 inch (25mm).

2. Pipes and Ducts shall be supported on Type 3 Mounts or Hangers under the following conditions:

a. Ducts and pipes within the Mechanical Equipment Room or any other NPR that are connected to equipment that is vibration isolated with neoprene-type isolators.

b. Ducts and pipes beyond the Mechanical Equipment Room or any other NPR but still within 30 feet (9m) from connection to equipment that is vibration isolated with neoprene-type isolators.

3. Pipes and Ducts shall be supported with Resilient Riser Supports and Guides under the following conditions:

a. Where Type 3 and 4 Mounts and Hangers are required as specified above but the pipes or duct are routed vertically and cannot be feasibly supported by a Type 3 or 4 Hanger or Mount.

4. Pipes with Multiple Connections

a. Where a pipe run connects multiple items of equipment in the Mechanical Equipment Room or any other NPR, the pipe Mounts and Hangers for the entire run shall be chosen to suit the connected equipment of greatest static deflection.

D. Resilient Support Of Pipes And Ducts At Special Construction

1. All building services that cross the extent of AIC shall be suspended or mounted on vibration isolators for a distance of 8 feet (2.5m) measured linearly along the penetrating element.

E. Flexible Connectors

1. Ducts shall be connected to fans via flexible connectors.

2. A neoprene flexible hose shall be installed to connect a pipe on Mounts or Hangers to a piece of equipment on Mounts or Hangers of less static deflection than the pipe.

a. Install expansion joints of neoprene or EPDM and Kevlar cord as connections to equipment that is supported from vibration isolators.

b. Where neoprene rubber or EPDM Mounts are not approved for the particular service, provide two metal bellows or flexible metal hoses at 90-degree orientation to each other.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. All Other Vibration Isolators

1. The vibration isolation manufacturer shall inspect and approve the installation of the vibration isolators, and shall submit a report to the Architect and Acoustics Consultant which verifies that all of the isolators have been properly installed and that the installation is in full conformance with the specification. The report shall contain the type and measured static deflection of any spring isolators provided.

2. Upon completing installation and adjustment for suitable operation of all work specified under this section, the Contractor shall notify in writing the Architect, who will schedule an inspection by the Acoustics Consultant. The letter shall certify that all work specified under this section is complete, operational and adjusted in every respect, and that all work is ready for the completion checkout. Defective equipment and installation shall be repaired at the cost of the Contractor, and another inspection shall be scheduled.

3. For each inspection, workmen shall be furnished to perform such functions as are necessary for inspection of the equipment at no additional cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 53

IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Pipe labels.
3. Stencils.
4. Valve tags.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch stainless steel, 0.025-inch aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F .
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.02 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.

2. Lettering Size: [Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.03 STENCILS

A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Lettering Size: [Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances].
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

B. Stencils for Access Panels and Door Labels, Equipment Labels, and Similar Operational Instructions:

1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. .

2.04 VALVE TAGS

A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch, stainless steel, 0.025-inch, aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.03 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.04 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

3.05 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    a. Refrigerant: 2 inches, square.
    b. Hot Water: 2 inches, square.
    c. Gas: 2 inches, square.
2. Valve-Tag Colors:
    a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
    b. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
    c. Combustible Fluids: White letters on a safety-brown background.
    d. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
    e. Compressed Air: White letters on a safety-blue background.
    f. Defined by User: White letters on a safety-purple background, black letters on a safety-white background, white letters on a safety-gray background, and white letters on a safety-black background

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 93

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:

a. Constant-volume air systems.

b. Induction-unit systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. Certified TAB reports.

E. Sample report forms.

F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.

2. Serial number.

3. Application.

4. Dates of use.

5. Dates of calibration.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC, NEBB, or, TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC, NEBB, or, TABB.

2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC, NEBB, or, TABB as a TAB technician.

B. TAB Conference: Meet with Architect, Owner, Construction Manager, Commissioning Authority on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Agenda Items:

a. The Contract Documents examination report.

b. The TAB plan.

c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.

d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.

2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Architect

E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

G. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.

L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.

2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.

3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.

4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.

5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.

6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.

7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.

8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.03 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.

2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.04 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.05 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
    a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
    d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
6. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.06 PROCEDURES FOR INDUCTION-UNIT SYSTEMS

A. Balance primary-air risers by measuring static pressure at the nozzles of the top and bottom units of each riser to determine which risers must be throttled. Adjust risers to indicated airflow within specified tolerances.

B. Adjust each induction unit.

3.07 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.08 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record compressor data.

3.09 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.

4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Balance each air outlet.

3.10 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

3.11 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare monthly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.12 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.

5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.

7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and unit size.
    e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    f. Unit arrangement and class.
    g. Discharge arrangement.
    h. Sheave make, size in inches , and bore.
    i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
    a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    b. Horsepower and rpm.
    c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches , and bore.
    f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
    b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    c. Fan rpm.
    d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    j. Return airflow in cfm.
    k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    l. Return-air damper position.
    m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
    a. System identification.

b. Location.
c. Coil type.
d. Number of rows.
e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
f. Make and model number.
g. Face area in sq. ft..
h. Tube size in NPS.
i. Tube and fin materials.
j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Air flow rate in cfm.
b. Average face velocity in fpm.
c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
h. Water flow rate in gpm.
i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Fuel type in input data.
g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
h. Ignition type.
i. Burner-control types.
j. Motor horsepower and rpm.

k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.

l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.

m. Sheave make, size in inches , and bore.

n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total air flow rate in cfm.

b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.

c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

d. Air temperature differential in deg F.

e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.

f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.

g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.

h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.

i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.

j. Manifold pressure in psig.

k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.

l. Operating set point in Btu/h.

m. Motor voltage at each connection.

n. Motor amperage for each phase.

o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.

b. Location.

c. Coil identification.

d. Capacity in Btu/h.

e. Number of stages.

f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.

g. Rated amperage.

h. Air flow rate in cfm.

i. Face area in sq. ft..

j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Heat output in Btu/h.

b. Air flow rate in cfm.

c. Air velocity in fpm.

d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.

e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

f. Voltage at each connection.

g. Amperage for each phase.

I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.

b. Location.

c. Make and type.

d. Model number and size.

e. Manufacturer's serial number.

f. Arrangement and class.

g. Sheave make, size in inches , and bore.

h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.

b. Horsepower and rpm.

c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

d. Full-load amperage and service factor.

e. Sheave make, size in inches , and bore.

f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.

b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.

c. Fan rpm.

d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.

e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

a. System and air-handling-unit number.

b. Location and zone.

c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.

d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.

e. Duct size in inches.

f. Duct area in sq. ft..

g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.

h. Indicated velocity in fpm.

i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.

j. Actual average velocity in fpm.

k. Barometric pressure in psig.

K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.

b. Location and zone.

c. Apparatus used for test.

d. Area served.

e. Make.

f. Number from system diagram.

g. Type and model number.

h. Size.

i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Air flow rate in cfm.

b. Air velocity in fpm.

c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.

d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.

e. Final air flow rate in cfm.

f. Final velocity in fpm.

g. Space temperature in deg F.

L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling-unit identification.

b. Location and zone.

c. Room or riser served.

d. Coil make and size.

e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Air flow rate in cfm.

b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.

c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.

d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.

e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.

f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:
    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Service.
    d. Make and size.
    e. Model number and serial number.
    f. Water flow rate in gpm.
    g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
    h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
    i. Pump rpm.
    j. Impeller diameter in inches.
    k. Motor make and frame size.
    l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
    m. Voltage at each connection.
    n. Amperage for each phase.
    o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
    b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
    c. Actual impeller size in inches.
    d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
    e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
    f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
    g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
    h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
    i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
    j. Voltage at each connection.
    k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:
1. Report Data:
    a. Instrument type and make.
    b. Serial number.
    c. Application.
    d. Dates of use.
    e. Dates of calibration.

3.13 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
2. Check the following for each system:
    a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
    b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
    c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
    d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
    e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:
1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect.
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect.
3. Architect shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:
1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.14 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 13
DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
3. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
5. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor performance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.08 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.

G. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

a.

2.02 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.03 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.04 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Color: White.

2.05 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.06 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.07 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering ducts.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for ducts.

2.08 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

2.09 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
2. Color: Color as selected by Architect.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing Factory cut and rolled to size.
    b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
    d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
    a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing Factory cut and rolled to size.
    b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
    d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.

2.10 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 500 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.11 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel Aluminum Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
    c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

2.12 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
    1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
    2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

    1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
    2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
    3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

    1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
    2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
    3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.

        a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

    4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
    5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.05 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation

joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.

c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.

d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.

e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.

f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.

   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.

6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 50 <Insert number> percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.

2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.

3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.

   b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.

   c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.

   d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.

e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.07 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

   1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
   2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

   1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
   5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

   1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.08 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.09 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

    a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
3. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
5. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

H. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

I. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

J. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.13 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

G. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

H. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

I. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

J. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

K. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

L. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

M. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

N. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:

1. None.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. PVC : 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
2. Aluminum, Corrugated : 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
3. Painted Aluminum, Corrugated : 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Corrugated : 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):

1. Aluminum, Corrugated : 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
2. Painted Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
3. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Corrugated : 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):

1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth , with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 14

ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Division 23 - Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit to the Architect and Acoustics Consultant cut sheets of the acoustical sealant products to be used.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

A. United States Gypsum (USG), Chicago, IL – www.usg.com
B. Hilti (Hilti), Tulsa, OK – www.hilti.com
C. Dow Corning (DC), Midland, MI – www.dowcorning.com
D. 3M (3M), St. Paul, MN – www.3m.com
E. Pecora (Pecora), Harleysville, PA – www.pecora.com
F. Tremco (Tremco), Toronto, Ontario, Canada – www.tremco.com
G. Specified Technologies, Inc. (STI), Somerville, NJ – www.stifirestop.com
H. OSI Sealants (OSI), Inc, Mentor, OH – www.ositough.com
I. BASF Construction Chemicals (BASF), Shakopee, MN – www.master-builders-solutions.basf.com

2.02 APPROVED PRODUCTS

A. For non-fire rated penetrations and joints in Acoustically Sensitive Rooms:
   1. DynaTrol II (Pecora)
   2. Dymonic (Tremco)
   3. 795 Silicone Building Sealant (DC)
   4. SC-175 (OSI)
   5. Approved permanently flexible equivalents for specific applications.
B. For fire-rated Floor/Wall/Ceiling penetrations and joints in Acoustically Sensitive Rooms:
   1. Sheetrock® Brand Acoustical Sealant (USG)
   2. 2000 Silicone Sealant (3M)
   3. CFS-S SIL GG (Hilti)
   4. Pecora 864 (Pecora)
   5. Pensil 300 (STI)
   6. SpecSeal ES (STI)
   7. Sonolastic NP 2 (BASF)

2.03 DESCRIPTION OF PRODUCTS

A. The acoustical sealant shall be a permanently resilient, permanently flexible, non-bleeding caulking material. Acoustical sealant shall be capable of ±25% flexible movement after curing.

B. Appropriate permanently flexible sealant materials shall be selected as is appropriate for various substrates, gap thicknesses and applicable fire codes. All sealants for non-standard or unique applications shall be submitted to the Acoustics Consultant for review and approval

C. Sealants for use in vertical applications shall be 'non-sag' type.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Before commencing installation examine the substrate and surrounding conditions to insure that there is nothing to prevent proper and timely execution of the installation. Start of work shall indicate acceptance of the substrate and surrounding conditions.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. The caulking shall be applied according to the manufacturer's guidelines so as to achieve a uniform, minimum 1/4 inch (6mm) thick bead and to achieve an airtight and light-tight seal. Unless additional beads are specified in the Contract Drawings, all acoustically-rated assemblies shall be sealed around their perimeter with at least two beads of acoustical sealant. Rod backer shall be used as a backing material for cracks greater than 1/4 inch (6mm) wide.

B. The bases, heads and ends of all walls in all Acoustically Sensitive Rooms and Noise Producing Rooms shall be caulked as needed to achieve an airtight and light tight closure.

C. All gaps between window frames and wall systems and between door frames and wall systems in all Acoustically Sensitive Rooms and Noise Producing Rooms shall be caulked as needed to achieve an airtight and light tight closure.

D. Electrical boxes, electrical conduits, pipes, ducts, structure, and other penetrations of walls, floors, and slabs within all Acoustically Sensitive Rooms and Noise Producing Rooms of all types shall be caulked to achieve an airtight and light tight closure.

E. All work shall be complete in every detail, and the finished work shall be clean for the Architect prior to final acceptance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 16

HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:

1. Heating, hot-water pumps.
2. Expansion/compression tanks.
3. Air separators.
4. Piping system filtration unit housings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
6. Detail field application for each equipment type.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

B. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

E. Calcium Silicate:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.

2. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.

2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet and K-FLEX LS.

H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
b. Johns Manville; Microlite.

c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

I. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); MinWool-1200 Flexible Batt.
b. Johns Manville; HTB 26 Spin-Glas.
c. Roxul Inc.; Roxul RW.

J. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. Provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; CertaPro Commercial Board.
b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

K. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); MinWool-1200 Industrial Board.
b. Rock Wool; Delta Board.
c. Roxul Inc.; RHT and RockBoard.
d. Thermafiber, Inc.; Thermafiber Industrial Felt.

L. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.

c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

M. Phenolic:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Kingspan Tarec Industrial Insulation NV; Koolphen K.
b. Resolco International BV; Insul-phen.

2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
4. Factory-Applied Jacket: ASJ. Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

N. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Trymer 2000 XP.
b. Duna USA Inc.; Corafoam.
c. Dyplast Products; ISO-25.
d. Elliott Company of Indianapolis; Elfoam.

2. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1 inch (25 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
4. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
5. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

a. Equipment Applications: ASJ.

O. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK, IMCOSHEET, NOMALOCK, and NOMAPLY.

P. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Styrofoam.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.

C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
    b. - Marathon Industries; 290.
    c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
    d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
    e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C).

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-96.
   b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
   b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
   d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
   b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

G. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-96.
   b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60.

H. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
   b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

I. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H .B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
b. - Marathon Industries; 501.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
   b. - Marathon Industries; 570.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
   b. - Marathon Industries; 550.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
   e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of <Insert value> g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
b. - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

2. Joint Sealants for Polystyrene Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-70.
b. - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
4. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
6. Color: White or gray.
7. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    b. - Marathon Industries; 405.
    c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
    d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm (0.013 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm (0.007 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering equipment.

    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for equipment.

    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

E. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm (0.013 metric perm) when tested according to

ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Dow Chemical Company (The), Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film.

F. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm (0.007 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Dow Chemical Company (The), Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

G. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
    d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
    b. Compac Corporation; 130.
    c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    c. Compac Corporation; 120.
    d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.

2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm).
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Tape.

2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Film Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
2) GEMCO; CD.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
        2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
        4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
        2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

    b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
        2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

    b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
    d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers, Series.
        2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.

    b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel Aluminum Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel aluminum stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
        2) GEMCO; R-150.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
        4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

    b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) GEMCO.
        2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. C & F Wire.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.

3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

    a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
    c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.

f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Wrap pump body (not motor) in Armaflex.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

B. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.

2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
2. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.7 FINISHES

A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.9 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

C. Chillers: Insulate cold surfaces on chillers, including, but not limited to, evaporator bundles, condenser bundles, heat-recovery bundles, suction piping, compressor inlets, tube sheets, water boxes, and nozzles with one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
7. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

D. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. mnominal density.
3. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

E. Dual-service heating and cooling pump insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

F. Heating-hot-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

G. Dual-service heating and cooling expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inch (50 mm) thick.thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inch (50 mm) thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

H. Dual-service heating and cooling air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inch (50 mm) thick.thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inch (50 mm) thick.thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inch (50 mm) thick.thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m nominal density.
4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inch (50 mm) thick.thick.
5. Phenolic: 2 inch (50 mm) thick.thick.

I. Piping system filter-housing insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

3.10 NDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Equipment, Concealed:
1. PVC : 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.

D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
1. PVC : 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 230716

SECTION 23 07 19 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Mechanical Contractor provide HVAC piping insulation for equipment and piping including the following:

1. Insulation Materials:

a. Flexible elastomeric.

b. Mineral Fiber

2. Mineral fiber.

a. Adhesives.
b. Sealants.
c. Factory-applied jackets.
d. Tapes.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 23 Section “Refrigerant Piping”.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ASJ: All-service jacket.

B. FSK: Foil, scrim, kraft paper.

C. FSP: Foil, scrim, polyethylene.

D. PVDC: Polyvinylidene chloride.

E. SSL: Self-sealing lap.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, identify thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Insulation materials and accessories shall be installed in a workmanlike manner by skilled and experienced workers who are regularly engaged in commercial insulation work.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. All of the insulation materials and accessories covered by this specification shall be delivered to the job site and stored in a safe, dry place with appropriate labels and/or other product identification.

B. The contractor shall use whatever means are necessary to protect the insulation materials and accessories before, during and after installation. No insulation material shall be installed that has become damaged in any way. The contractor shall also use all means necessary to protect work and materials installed by other trades.

C. If any insulation material has become wet because of transit or job site exposure to moisture or water, the contractor shall not install such material, and shall remove it from the job site.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Refer to Part 3 schedule articles for requirements about where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

1. Products:

a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.

G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-

applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; Duct Wrap.
    b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    c. Knauf Insulation; Duct Wrap.
    d. Owens Corning; All-Service Duct Wrap.

H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    b. Knauf Insulation; 1000 Pipe Insulation.
    c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semi-rigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
    b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
    c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
    d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated.

B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 COMMON INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this Article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C): (Insulation not required for A/C condensate drain piping located on roof)

1. All Pipe Sizes: Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

B. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F, and below:

1. NPS 1-1/4” and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

2. NPS 1-1/2” and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inches thick.

C. Refrigerant Suction and Liquid:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Piping exposed to the outdoors to have insulation with factory applied jacket with the following characteristics:

a. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 23 07 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 08 00

COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.

B. CxA: Commissioning Authority.

C. HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.

D. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates of readiness.

B. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

1.05 ALLOWANCES

A. Labor, instrumentation, tools, and equipment costs for technicians for the performance of commissioning testing

1.06 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.

B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.

C. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.

D. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.

E. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

F. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.07 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.

B. Direct commissioning testing.

C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.

D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.08 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:

1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
5. Certificate of readiness certifying that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
7. Corrective action documents.
8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

PART 2 EXECUTION

2.01 TESTING PREPARATION

A. Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.

B. Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C. Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.

D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.

F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.

G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

2.02 TESTING AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

A. Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.

B. Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.

C. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of HVAC&R systems at the direction of the CxA.

1. The CxA will notify testing and balancing Contractor 10 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
2. The testing and balancing Contractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
3. Failure of an item includes, other than sound, a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report. For sound pressure readings, a deviation of 3 dB shall result in rejection of final testing. Variations in background noise must be considered.
4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

2.03 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.

B. Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each conditioned space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.

C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.

D. The CxA along with the HVAC&R Contractor, testing and balancing Contractor , and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control Contractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.

E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.

F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.

G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.

H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.

I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 00

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1- GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping" for measuring equipment that relates to this Section.
2. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to this Section.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct digital control.

B. I/O: Input/output.

C. LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.

D. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.

E. PC: Personal computer.

F. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.

G. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.04 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Comply with the following performance requirements:

1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.
3. Mobile phone graphics built into programming so that complete access to system from smart phone and tablet is possible.
4. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
5. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.
6. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
7. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
8. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.

9. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:
    a. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
    b. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
    c. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1.0 deg C).
    d. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F (1.5 deg C).
    e. Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F (0.15 deg C).
    f. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
    g. Airflow (Pressurized Spaces): Plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.
    h. Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
    i. Airflow (Terminal): Plus or minus 10 percent of full scale.
    j. Air Pressure (Space): Plus or minus 0.01-inch wg (2.5 Pa).
    k. Air Pressure (Ducts): Plus or minus 0.1-inch wg (25 Pa).
    l. Carbon Monoxide: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.
    m. Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
    n. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.
    1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
    2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
    3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
    1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
    2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
    3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
    4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
    5. Written description of sequence of operation.
    6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
    7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
    8. DDC System Hardware:

a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.

b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.

c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.

9. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.

10. Controlled Systems:

a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.

b. Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.

c. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

d. Points list.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each color required, of each type of thermostat/sensor cover with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each color required, of each type of thermostat/sensor cover.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

B. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with LonWorks.

C. Qualification Data: For Installer.

D. Software Upgrade Kit: For Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed-air station.

2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.

3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.

4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.

5. Calibration records and list of set points.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.

2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.

3. Device address list.

4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

5. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Replacement Materials: One replacement diaphragm or relay mechanism for each unique thermostat

2. Maintenance Materials: One thermostat adjusting key(s).

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.

B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.

B. Coordinate equipment with Section 281600 "Intrusion Detection" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system and with building master clock.

C. Coordinate equipment with Section 281300 "Access Control" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

D. Coordinate equipment with Section 275313 "Clock Systems" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

E. Coordinate equipment with Section 284619 "PLC Electronic Detention Monitoring and Control Systems" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

F. Coordinate equipment with Section 260943.13 "Addressable-Fixture Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

G. Coordinate equipment with Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" and Section 283112 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

H. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units and operator workstation.

I. Coordinate equipment with Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" to achieve compatibility of communication interfaces.

J. Coordinate equipment with Section 262416 "Panelboards" to achieve compatibility with starter coils and annunciation devices.

K. Coordinate equipment with Section 262419 "Motor-Control Centers" to achieve compatibility with motor starters and annunciation devices.

L. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.02 CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Johnson Controls, Inc.; Controls Group.

B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, and accessories to control mechanical systems.

C. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

D. Control system shall include the following:

1. Building intrusion detection system specified in Section 281600 "Intrusion Detection."

2. Building clock control system specified in Section 275313 "Clock Systems."

3. Building lighting control system specified in Section 260943.13 "Addressable-Fixture Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

4. Fire alarm system specified in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" and Section 283112 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System."

2.03 DDC EQUIPMENT

A. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:

a. Global communications.

b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.

c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.

d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.

e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.

3. Standard Application Programs:

a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.

b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.

c. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.

d. Remote communications.

e. Maintenance management.

f. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).

4. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

5. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.

6. LonWorks Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.

B. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:

a. Global communications.

b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.

c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.

3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.

5. LonWorks Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.

C. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:

1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.

2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.

3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.

D. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:

1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.

2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.

3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.

4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.04 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.

1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.

2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform scheduling with real-time clock. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.

3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.

4. LonWorks Compliance: Communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol using LonTalk protocol.

5. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 50 deg C).

6. Enclosure: Waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F (5 to 65 deg C).

2.05 ALARM PANELS

A. Unitized cabinet with suitable brackets for wall or floor mounting. Fabricate of 0.06-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, furniture-quality steel or extruded-aluminum alloy, totally enclosed, with hinged doors and keyed lock and with manufacturer's standard shop-painted finish. Provide common keying for all panels.

B. Indicating light for each alarm point, single horn, acknowledge switch, and test switch, mounted on hinged cover.

1. Alarm Condition: Indicating light flashes and horn sounds.

2. Acknowledge Switch: Horn is silent and indicating light is steady.

3. Second Alarm: Horn sounds and indicating light is steady.

4. Alarm Condition Cleared: System is reset and indicating light is extinguished.

5. Contacts in alarm panel allow remote monitoring by independent alarm company.

2.06 ANALOG CONTROLLERS

A. Step Controllers: 6- or 10-stage type, with heavy-duty switching rated to handle loads and operated by electric motor.

B. Electric, Outdoor-Reset Controllers: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range, adjustable set point, scale range minus 10 to plus 70 deg F (minus 23 to plus 21 deg C), and single- or double-pole contacts.

C. Electronic Controllers: Wheatstone-bridge-amplifier type, in steel enclosure with provision for remote-resistance readjustment. Identify adjustments on controllers, including proportional band and authority.

1. Single controllers can be integral with control motor if provided with accessible control readjustment potentiometer.

D. Fan-Speed Controllers: Solid-state model providing field-adjustable proportional control of motor speed from maximum to minimum of 55 percent and on-off action below minimum fan speed. Controller shall briefly apply full voltage, when motor is started, to rapidly bring motor up to minimum speed. Equip with filtered circuit to eliminate radio interference.

E. Receiver Controllers: Single- or multiple-input models with control-point adjustment, direct or reverse acting with mechanical set-point adjustment with locking device, proportional band adjustment, authority adjustment, and proportional control mode.

1. Remote-control-point adjustment shall be plus or minus 20 percent of sensor span, input signal of 3 to 13 psig (21 to 90 kPa).
2. Proportional band shall extend from 2 to 20 percent for 5 psig (35 kPa).
3. Authority shall be 20 to 200 percent.
4. Air-supply pressure of 18 psig (124 kPa), input signal of 3 to 15 psig (21 to 103 kPa), and output signal of zero to supply pressure.
5. Gages: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), 2-1/2 inches (64 mm), 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) in diameter, 2.5 percent wide-scale accuracy, and range to match transmitter input or output pressure.

2.07 TIME CLOCKS

A. Manufacturers:

1. ATC-Diversified Electronics.
2. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
3. Paragon Electric Co., Inc.
4. Precision Multiple Controls, Inc.
5. SSAC Inc.; ABB USA.
6. TCS/Basys Controls.
7. Theben AG - Lumilite Control Technology, Inc.
8. Time Mark Corporation.

B. Seven-day, programming-switch timer with synchronous-timing motor and seven-day dial; continuously charged, nickel-cadmium-battery-driven, eight-hour, power-failure carryover; multiple-switch trippers; minimum of two and maximum of eight signals per day with two normally open and two normally closed output contacts.

C. Solid-state, programmable time control with 4 separate programs each with up to 100 on-off operations; 1-second resolution; lithium battery backup; keyboard interface and manual override; individual on-off-auto switches for each program; 365-day calendar with 20

programmable holidays; choice of fail-safe operation for each program; system fault alarm; and communications package allowing networking of time controls and programming from PC.

2.08 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.

B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:

1. Manufacturers:
    a. BEC Controls Corporation.
    b. Ebtron, Inc.
    c. Heat-Timer Corporation.
    d. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.
    e. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
    f. RDF Corporation.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C), 0.36 deg F (0.2 deg C) at calibration point.
3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches (200 mm), 18 inches (460 mm) long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 36 inches (915 mm) long, flexible, 72 inches (1830 mm) long, flexible, 18 inches (460 mm) long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft. (1 sq. m).
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
7. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
9. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

C. RTDs and Transmitters:

1. Manufacturers:
    a. BEC Controls Corporation.
    b. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
    c. RDF Corporation.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point.
3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 18 inches (460 mm) long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 48 inches (1200 mm) long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m); length as required.
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).

7. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
8. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

D. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. BEC Controls Corporation.
      b. General Eastern Instruments.
      c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
      d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
      e. TCS/Basys Controls.
      f. Vaisala.
   2. Accuracy: 5 percent full range with linear output.
   3. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
   4. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   5. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
   6. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 50 deg C), minus 22 to plus 185 deg F (minus 30 to plus 85 deg C), minus 40 to plus 170 deg F (minus 40 to plus 76 deg C).
   7. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.

E. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. BEC Controls Corporation.
      b. General Eastern Instruments.
      c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
      d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
      e. TCS/Basys Controls.
      f. Vaisala.
   2. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
      a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
      b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
      c. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg (0 to 62 Pa).
      d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa).
   3. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig (1034-kPa) operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

4. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig (1034-kPa) operating pressure and tested to 300-psig (2070-kPa); linear output 4 to 20 mA.

5. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.

6. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

F. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.

G. Room sensor accessories include the following:

1. Insulating Bases: For sensors located on exterior walls.

2. Guards: Locking; heavy-duty, transparent plastic; mounted on separate base

3. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.

2.09 STATUS SENSORS

A. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa).

B. Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig (55 to 414 kPa), piped across pump.

C. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.

D. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.

E. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.

F. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.

G. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

2.10 GAS DETECTION EQUIPMENT

A. Manufacturers:

1. B. W. Technologies.

2. CEA Instruments, Inc.

3. Ebtron, Inc.

4. Gems Sensors Inc.

5. Greystone Energy Systems Inc.

6. Honeywell International Inc.; Home & Building Control.

7. INTEC Controls, Inc.

8. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.

9. MSA Canada Inc.

10. QEL/Quatrosense Environmental Limited.

11. Sauter Controls Corporation.

12. Sensidyne, Inc.
13. Toxalert
14. TSI Incorporated.
15. Vaisala.
16. Vulcain Inc.

B. Carbon Monoxide Detectors: Single or multichannel, dual-level detectors using solid-state plug-in sensors with a 3-year minimum life; suitable over a temperature range of 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C); with 2 factory-calibrated alarm levels at [50 and 100] [35 and 200] ppm.

C. Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F (minus 5 to plus 55 deg C) and calibrated for 0 to 2 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output;, for wall mounting.

D. Oxygen Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state zircon cell sensing; suitable over a temperature range of minus 32 to plus 1100 deg F (0 to 593 deg C) and calibrated for 0 to 5 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting.

E. Occupancy Sensor: Passive infrared, with time delay, daylight sensor lockout, sensitivity control, and 180-degree field of view with vertical sensing adjustment; for flush mounting.

2.11 FLOW MEASURING STATIONS

A. Duct Airflow Station: Combination of air straightener and multiport, self-averaging pitot tube station.

1. Manufacturers:s
    a. Air Monitor Corporation.
    b. Wetmaster Co., Ltd.
    c. Ebtron
2. Casing: Galvanized-steel frame.
3. Flow Straightener: Aluminum honeycomb, 3/4-inch (20-mm) parallel cell, 3 inches (75 mm) deep.
4. Sensing Manifold: Copper manifold with bullet-nosed static pressure sensors positioned on equal area basis.

2.12 THERMOSTATS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Erie Controls.
2. Danfoss Inc.; Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Div.
3. Heat-Timer Corporation.
4. Sauter Controls Corporation.
5. tekmar Control Systems, Inc.
6. Theben AG - Lumilite Control Technology, Inc.
7. *Installed manufacturer of DOAS, RTU, VRF, baseboards, and cabinet heaters can be used, as long as they’re ordered with ports for GBMS tie in.

B. Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with push-button or lever-operated fan switch.

1. Mount on single electric switch box.

C. Electric, solid-state, microcomputer-based room thermostat with remote sensor.

1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
3. Set up for four separate temperatures per day.
4. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from 1 hour to 31 days.
5. Short-cycle protection.
6. Programming based on every day of week.
7. Selection features include degree F or degree C display, 12- or 24-hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, and fan on-auto.
8. Battery replacement without program loss.
9. Thermostat display features include the following:
    a. Time of day.
    b. Actual room temperature.
    c. Programmed temperature.
    d. Programmed time.
    e. Duration of timed override.
    f. Day of week.
    g. System mode indications include "heating," "off," "fan auto," and "fan on."

D. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.

E. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.

1. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
2. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.

F. Remote-Bulb Thermostats: On-off or modulating type, liquid filled to compensate for changes in ambient temperature; with copper capillary and bulb, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Bulbs in water lines with separate wells of same material as bulb.
2. Bulbs in air ducts with flanges and shields.
3. Averaging Elements: Copper tubing with either single- or multiple-unit elements, extended to cover full width of duct or unit; adequately supported.
4. Scale settings and differential settings are clearly visible and adjustable from front of instrument.
5. On-Off Thermostat: With precision snap switches and with electrical ratings required by application.
6. Modulating Thermostats: Construct so complete potentiometer coil and wiper assembly is removable for inspection or replacement without disturbing calibration of instrument.

G. Immersion Thermostat: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range and adjustable set point.

H. Airstream Thermostats: Two-pipe, fully proportional, single-temperature type; with adjustable set point in middle of range, adjustable throttling range, plug-in test fitting or permanent pressure gage, remote bulb, bimetal rod and tube, or averaging element.

I. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- or automatic- reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or below set point.

1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet (6 m).

2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. (2 sq. m) of coil surface.

J. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- or automatic- reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or above set point.

1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet (6 m).

2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. (2 sq. m) of coil surface.

K. Heating/Cooling Valve-Top Thermostats: Proportional acting for proportional flow, with molded-rubber diaphragm, remote-bulb liquid-filled element, direct and reverse acting at minimum shutoff pressure of 25 psig (172 kPa), and cast housing with position indicator and adjusting knob.

2.13 HUMIDISTATS

A. Manufacturers:

1. MAMAC Systems, Inc.

2. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.

B. Pneumatic Room Humidistats: Wall-mounting, proportioning type with adjustable throttling range, 20 to 90 percent operating range, and cover matching room thermostat cover.

C. Duct-Mounting Humidistats: Electric insertion, 2-position type with adjustable, 2 percent throttling range, 20 to 80 percent operating range, and single- or double-pole contacts.

D. Pneumatic Duct-Mounting Humidistats: Proportioning type with adjustable throttling range, 20 to 90 percent operating range, in galvanized-steel duct box.

2.14 ACTUATORS

A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.

3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).

4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).

5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).

6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).

B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.

2. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.

3. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:

a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. (86.8 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.

b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. (62 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.

c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft (49.6 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.

d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. (37.2 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.

e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm (5 to 13 m/s): Increase running torque by 1.5.

f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm (13 to 15 m/s): Increase running torque by 2.0.

4. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.

5. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.

6. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.

7. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 -V ac.

8. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.

9. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.

10. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 50 deg C).

11. Temperature Rating (Smoke Dampers): Minus 22 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 121 deg C).

12. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed.

C. Pneumatic Valve Operators: Rolling-diaphragm, spring-loaded, piston type with spring range as required and start-point adjustment and positioning relay. Operator shall maintain full shutoff at maximum pump differential pressure.

D. Pneumatic Damper Operators: Rolling-diaphragm, piston type with adjustable stops and spring return, sized to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action. Where actuators operate in sequence, provide pilot positioners.

1. Pilot Positioners: With the following characteristics:

a. Start Point: Adjustable from 2 to 12 psig (14 to 83 kPa).

b. Operating Span: Adjustable from 5 to 13 psig (35 to 90 kPa).

c. Linearity: Plus or minus 10 percent of output signal span.

d. Hysteresis: 3 percent of span.

e. Response: 0.25-psig (1723-Pa) input change.

f. Maximum Pilot Signal Pressure: 20 psig (140 kPa).

g. Maximum Control Air-Supply Pressure: 60 psig (410 kPa).

2. Actuator Housing: Molded or die-cast zinc or aluminum. Terminal unit actuators may be high-impact plastic with ambient temperature rating of 50 to 140 deg F (10 to 60 deg C) unless located in return-air plenums.

3. Inlet-Vane Operators: High pressure, with pilot positioners.

2.15 DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Air Balance Inc.

2. Don Park Inc.; Autodamp Div.

3. Pottorff

4. TAMCO (T. A. Morrison & Co. Inc.).

5. United Enertech Corp.

6. Vent Products Company, Inc.

B. Dampers: AMCA-rated, parallel-blade design; 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches (200 mm) and length of 48 inches (1220 mm).

1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

3. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.

4. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. (50 L/s per sq. m) of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf (5.6 N x m); when tested according to AMCA 500D.

2.16 AIR SUPPLY

A. Manufacturers:

1. Drainview Products.

2. Pneuline Controls.

B. Control and Instrumentation Tubing: Copper tubing complying with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) or ASTM B 280 Type ACR.

1. Fittings: Cast-bronze solder fittings complying with ASME B16.18; or wrought-copper solder fittings complying with ASME B16.22, except forged-brass compression-type fittings at connections to equipment.

2. Joining Method: Soldered or brazed.

C. Control and Instrumentation Tubing: ASTM D 2737 Type FR plenum-rated polyethylene, flame-retardant, nonmetallic tubing rated for 30 psig (207 kPa) and ambient temperature range of 10 to 150 deg F (minus 13 to plus 65 deg C) with flame-retardant harness for multiple tubing.

1. Fittings: Compression or push-on polyethylene fittings.

D. Tank: ASME storage tank with drain test cock, automatic moisture removal trap, tank relief valve, and rubber-cork vibration isolation mounting pads.

E. Duplex Air Compressor: Capacity to supply compressed air to temperature-control system.

1. Pressure control with adjustable electric contacts, set to start and stop both compressors at different pressures.

2. Electrical alternation set with motor starters and disconnect to operate compressors alternately or on time schedule.

F. Simplex Air Compressor: Tank-mounting compressor with capacity to supply compressed air to temperature-control system, with starter and disconnect.

1. Pressure control with adjustable electric contacts, set to start and stop compressor.

G. Size compressor and tank to operate compressor not more than **30** minutes during a 60-minute period.

H. Compressor Accessories: Low-resistance intake-air filter, and belt guards.

I. System Accessories: Air filter rated for 97 percent efficiency at rated airflow, and combination filter/pressure-reducing station or separate filter and pressure-reducing station.

J. Refrigerated Air Dryer: Self-contained, refrigerated air dryer complete with heat exchangers, moisture separator, internal wiring and piping, and with manual bypass valve.

1. Heat Exchangers: Air-to-refrigerant coils with centrifugal-type moisture separator and automatic trap assembly.

2. Refrigeration Unit: Hermetically sealed, operating to maintain dew point of 13 deg F (minus 11 deg C) at 20 psig (140 kPa), housed in steel cabinet with access door and panel.

3. Accessories: Air-inlet temperature gage, air-inlet pressure gage, on-off switch, high-temperature light, power-on light, refrigerant gage on back, air-outlet temperature gage, air-outlet pressure gage, and with contacts for remote indication of power status and high-temperature alarm.

K. Desiccant Dryer: Obtains dew point in pneumatic air piping between compressor and tank at least 15 deg F (minus 9 deg C) below inlet-air dew point at design conditions.

L. Pressure Gages: Black letters on white background, 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) in diameter, flush or surface mounting, with front calibration screw to match sensor, and having a graduated scale in psig (kPa).

M. Instrument Pressure Gages: Black letters on white background, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter, stem mounted, with suitable dial range.

N. Diaphragm Control and Instrument Valves: 1/4-inch (6-mm) forged-brass body with reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene diaphragm, stainless-steel spring, and color-coded phenolic handle.

O. Gage Cocks: Tee or level handle, bronze, rated for 125 psig (860 kPa).

P. Relays: For summing, reversing, and amplifying highest or lowest pressure selection; with adjustable I/O ratio.

Q. Switches: With indicating plates and accessible adjustment; calibrated and marked.

R. Pressure Regulators: Zinc or aluminum castings with elastomeric diaphragm, balanced construction to automatically prevent pressure buildup, and producing flat reduced-pressure curve.

S. Particle Filters: Zinc or aluminum castings with 97 percent filtration efficiency at rated airflow, quick-disconnect service devices, and aluminum or plastic bowl with metal guard and manual drain cock.

T. Combination Filter/Regulators: Zinc or aluminum castings with elastomeric diaphragm, balanced construction to automatically prevent pressure buildup, and producing flat reduced-pressure curve; with threaded pipe connections, quick-disconnect service devices, and aluminum or plastic bowl with metal guard and manual drain cock.

U. Airborne Oil Filter: Filtration efficiency of 99.9 percent for airborne lubricating oil particles of 0.025 micron or larger.

V. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and labeled.

1. High Pressure: Size for installed capacity.

2. Low Pressure: Size for installed capacity of pressure regulators and set at 20 percent above low pressure.

W. Pressure-Reducing Stations: Two parallel pressure regulators.

2.17 CONTROL CABLE

A. Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3- EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that conditioned power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.

B. Verify that duct-mounted, and equipment-mounted devices are installed before proceeding with installation.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.

B. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

C. Mount compressor and tank unit on elastomeric mounts, spring isolators with 1-inch (25 mm) static deflection, restrained spring isolators with 1-inch (25-mm) static deflection. Vibration isolators are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.", Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC." Isolate air supply with wire-braid-reinforced rubber hose. Secure and anchor according to manufacturer's written instructions and seismic-control requirements.

1. Pipe manual and automatic drains to nearest floor drain.

2. Supply instrument air from compressor units through filter, pressure-reducing valve, and pressure relief valve, with pressure gages and shutoff and bypass valves.

D. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches (1220 mm), 60 inches (1530 mm) above the floor.

1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.

E. Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:

1. Entrances.

2. Public areas.

3. Where indicated.

F. Install automatic dampers according to Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

G. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.

H. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

I. Install hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties."

J. Install steam and condensate instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according toSection 232216 Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties."

K. Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."

L. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts."

M. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.03 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Install building wire and cable according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Install signal and communication cable according to Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.

2. Install exposed cable in raceway.

3. Install concealed cable in raceway.

4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.

5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.

6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.

7. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.

D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.

E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
3. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
4. Pressure test control air piping at 30 psig (207 kPa) or 1.5 times the operating pressure for 24 hours, with maximum 5-psig (35-kPa) loss.
5. Pressure test high-pressure control air piping at 150 psig (1034 kPa) and low-pressure control air piping at 30 psig (207 kPa) for 2 hours, with maximum 1-psig (7-kPa) loss.
6. Test calibration of electronic controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
7. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
8. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
9. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
10. Test software and hardware interlocks.

C. DDC Verification:

1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
5. Check installation of air supply for each instrument.
6. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
7. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
8. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
9. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
10. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
11. Check DDC system as follows:
    a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
    b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.

c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.

d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.

2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.

3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.

4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:

a. Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.

b. Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.

c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.

d. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.

e. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

5. Flow:

a. Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.

b. Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.

6. Pressure:

a. Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.

b. Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.

7. Temperature:

a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.

b. Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.

8. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.

9. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.

10. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.

11. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.06 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 20

BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the installation of a building automation system (BAS) for control and monitoring of mechanical systems as indicated.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. The distributed digital control (DDC) and building automation system (BAS) defined herein shall provide a complete BACnet® Building Automation System (BAS) for all mechanical systems and other facility systems as included in the project documents. The contractor shall provide a complete and operational system to perform all sequences of operations stated in the Article "Sequence of Operation" or as shown on the control drawings.

B. The BAS shall utilize electronic sensing, microprocessor-based digital control, and electronic actuation of dampers and valves to perform the control sequences and functions specified. The BAS for this project shall consist of monitoring and control of the systems indicated.

C. The BAS system shall include a webserver (control system server CSS), a separate operator workstation (OWS), a laptop (portable operator terminal POT), all the software tools required to maintain or configure the server, OWS, and any local devices.

D. All interlock wiring for mechanical system equipment shall be by this contractor unless specifically stated otherwise. This shall include, but not be limited to, items such as thermostats for unit heaters, interlock wiring to central boiler control panels, chiller flow switches, and duct smoke detectors.

1.03 APPLICATION OF OPEN PROTOCOLS

A. Subject to the detailed requirements provided throughout the specification, the BAS and digital control and communications components installed, as work of this contract shall be an integrated distributed processing system utilizing one of the following standards:

1. BACnet: System components shall communicate using native BACnet in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 135 and current addenda and annexes, including all workstations, all BACnet building controllers (B-BC), advanced application controllers (B-AAC) and all application specific controllers (B-ASC). Gateways to other communication protocols are not acceptable. All controllers must be BACnet Testing Labs listed for their required profile (B-BC, B-AAC or B-ASC).

B. Throughout these specifications, there are parallel requirements for BACnet systems. Such requirements shall be interpreted in light of whether the contractor is installing a BACnet, or a hybrid system.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications: Of the following companies approved to bid, they must have service techs within 60 miles of the site to be a qualified bidder and must provide proof of location within 60 miles for service tech location. The following are acceptable to install a web-based BAS system:

1. Automated Logic Co.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) Standards:

1. 90.1: Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
2. 62.1: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.
3. 135: BACnet - A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks, current version including all annexes and addenda.
4. 55: Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy.

B. Electronics Industries Alliance:

1. EIA-709.1-A-99: Control Network Protocol Specification.
2. EIA-709.3-99: Free-Topology Twisted-Pair Channel Specification.
3. EIA-232: Interface Between Data Terminal Equipment and Data Circuit-Terminating Equipment Employing Serial Binary Data Interchange.
4. EIA-458: Standard Optical Fiber Material Classes and Preferred Sizes.
5. EIA-485: Standard for Electrical Characteristics of Generator and Receivers for use in Balanced Digital Multipoint Systems.
6. EIA-472: General and Sectional Specifications for Fiber Optic Cable.
7. EIA-475: Generic and Sectional Specifications for Fiber Optic Connectors and all Sectional Specifications.
8. EIA-573: Generic and Sectional Specifications for Field Portable Polishing Device for Preparation Optical Fiber and all Sectional Specifications.
9. EIA-590: Standard for Physical Location and Protection of Below-Ground Fiber Optic Cable Plant and all Sectional Specifications.
10. EIA-852: Tunneling of Component Network Data over IP Channels.

C. Underwriters Laboratories

1. UL 916: Energy Management Systems.

D. NEMA Compliance

1. NEMA 250: Enclosure for Electrical Equipment.
2. NEMA ICS 1: General Standards for Industrial Controls.

E. NFPA Compliance

1. NFPA 90A: "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems" where applicable to controls and control sequences.
2. NFPA 70: National Electrical Code (NEC).

F. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)

1. IEEE 142: Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.
2. IEEE 802.3: CSMA/CD (Ethernet – Based) LAN.
3. IEEE 802.4: Token Bus Working Group (ARCNET – Based) LAN.

1.06 DEFINITIONS

A. Acknowledged: Data is broadcast repeatedly until an acknowledgement is received. Used for critical data using one to one bindings only. This type of service shall not be used for one to many bindings.

B. Adjustable (ADJ): A characteristic of a control logic parameter such that it can be varied by the operator without downloading the program.

C. Analog Calibration Offsets: For all analog input measured variables, with the exception of velocity pressure, the value measured by the hardware based analog input point shall be adjusted to match the value reported by a certified test instrument. An analog calibration offset is a parameter that can be added or subtracted from the raw value measured by the sensor to produce a calibrated value used by the control logic and reported to the operator workstations. The initial value of this parameter is set at zero and it is adjusted when the calibration process is executed. This adjustment is referred to as a single point calibration. These parameters are mandatory for all analog inputs except velocity pressure sensors. These offset values are configuration parameters and shall be written to EEPROM. It shall be possible to change the value of these parameters from a graphic page.

D. Advanced Application Controller (AAC): A device with limited resources relative to the Building Controller (BC). It may support a level of programming and may also be intended for application specific applications. A fully programmable control module. This control module shall be capable of certain advanced features found in Building Controllers (e.g. storing trends, and initiating read and write requests) but it shall not serve as a master controller. Advanced Application Controllers may reside on either the Ethernet/IP backbone or on a subnet. A BACnet device to be used as an AAC will meet the requirements of ASHRAE 135, Annex L and will be listed as an AAC by BACnet Testing Labs. A BTL listed device will carry the BTL Mark.

E. Application Programming Tool: A vendor unique software tool used to create applications for programmable controllers.

F. Application Protocol Data Unit (APDU): A unit of data specified in an application protocol and consisting of application protocol control information and application user data (ISO 9545).

G. Application Specific Controller (ASC): A device with limited resources relative to the Advanced Application Controller (AAC). A pre-programmed control module, intended for use in a specific application. ASCs shall have limited configurability, allowing the user to select various pre-programmed options, but it shall not be fully customizable. A BACnet device used as an ASC will meet the requirements of ASHRAE 135, Annex L and will be listed as an ASC by BACnet Testing Labs. A BTL listed device will carry the BTL Mark.

H. BACnet/BACnet Standard: BACnet communication requirements, as defined by ASHRAE/ANSI 135, current version including all annexes and addenda.

I. Bandwidth Utilization: The average utilization of the network capacity. Network loading is controlled by the use of event driven broadcast based data propagation and the use of appropriate binding services.

J. Binding Services: When the network management tool within Niagara or Plexus is used to establish a binding, one of the following three types of binding services shall be selected:

1. Unacknowledged: The data being broadcast is sent one time and an acknowledgement of receipt is not required. Used for non-critical data where there is no significant impact should the receiving device have to wait for the next broadcast.
2. Unacknowledged Repeated: The data being broadcast is sent three times and an acknowledgement of receipt is not required. Used for most process control related data requiring timely receipt of the data.
3. Acknowledged: The data is broadcast repeatedly until an acknowledgement is received. Used for critical data using one to one bindings only. This type of service shall not be used for one to many bindings.

K. Binding: The concept of associating an output network variable from one device to the input network variable of a second device. There are three types of bindings:

1. One to One: A single output network variable is bound to a single input network variable

2. One to Many: A single output network variable is bound to input network variables on multiple devices.
3. Many to One: Output network variables from multiple devices are bound to a single input network variable on a different device.

L. Broadcasting: The propagation of data from a device to the control network. Software objects that broadcast data to the network shall include the following parameters:

M. Building Automation System (BAS): The entire integrated energy management and control system.

N. Building Controller (BC): A fully programmable control module capable of storing trends and schedules, serving as a router to devices on a subnet, and initiating read and write requests to other controllers. Typically this controller is located on the Ethernet/IP backbone of the BAS. A BACnet device to be used as a BC shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE 135, Annex L and will be listed as a BC by BACnet Testing Labs. A BTL listed device will carry the BTL Mark.

O. Bus Topology: A term used to describe the sequential connection of devices on a LON segment. The communication cable runs from device to device with no tees or stubs from the main communication cable to a device.

P. Change of Value (COV): An event that occurs when a measured or calculated analog value changes by a predefined amount (ASHRAE/ANSI 135-1995).

Q. Channel: A LON network consisting of two segments connected by a physical layer repeater or router configured as a repeater. Each segment can support a theoretical limit of 64 connections.

R. Client: A device that is the requestor of services from a server. A client device makes requests of, and receives responses from, a server device.

S. Configuration Parameter: An input network variable to a controller that is written to the EEPROM.

T. Connection: Made when a device is physically connected to the FTT-10 communication cable. Devices that count against the number of connections limit include LON Talk Adapters (PCLTA, PCC 10 etc.), any sensor, actuator, or controller with a FTT-10 transceiver and Neuron chip, and a router or repeater. Terminators are not considered to be a connection.

U. Continuous Monitoring: Sampling and recording of a variable based on time or change of state (e.g. trending an analog value, monitoring a binary change of state).

V. Control System Server (CSS), Web Server (WS): Provides access to the control system. This device will allow access to the control system with a web browser over the WAN. As the BAS network devices are stand-alone, the CSS is not required for communications to occur. The webserver will have two NIC cards so that is functions as the bridge between the local supervisory LAN and the LAN.

W. Controller or Control Unit (CU): Intelligent stand-alone control panel. Controller is a generic reference and is a PCU.

X. WAN: Reference to Information Technology network, used for normal business-related e-mail and Internet communication.

Y. Direct Digital Control (DDC): Microprocessor-based control including Analog/Digital conversion and program logic

Z. Enumerated SNVT: Defines the format of a single piece of data using a state description concept. The data will consist of a series of integers and each integer shall convey a defined condition or state.

AA. Error Rate: A measurement of communication quality that assesses the number of defective data packets as a percentage of the total number of data packets. Defective data packets are generally the result of poor installation practices or improper cable selection.

BB. Event Driven Communication: A term used to describe the propagation of data from a device to the network based on broadcasting rather than polling. The send on delta parameter is used to define the event and the data propagation is further controlled by the minimum and maximum send time parameters.

CC. Free Topology: A data wiring topology that allows for loops, tees, y-connections etc. When this topology is used only one terminator of a specific design is required and allowable cable lengths are significantly reduced.

DD. Functional Profile: A collection of variables required to define a the key parameters for a standard application. As this applies to the HVAC industry, this would include applications like VAV terminal, fan coil units, and the like.

EE. Gateway (GTWY): A device, which contains two or more dissimilar networks/protocols, permitting information exchange between them (ASHRAE/ANSI 135-1995).

FF. Hand Held Device (HHD): Manufacturer's microprocessor based device for direct connection to a Controller.

GG. Local Supervisory LAN Interface Device (LANID): Device used to facilitate communication and sharing of data throughout the BAS and WAN

HH. Media Access Control address (MAC): Hardware address that uniquely identifies each node of a network. Each different type of network medium requires a different MAC layer.

II. Managed Communication: Transmission of data from a controller to a data manager, which in turn re-broadcasts the data to a second controller.

JJ. Manual Control: Where the operator takes control of an end device and forces a specific position or state. The manual mode and the desired manual position or states are parameters that are set by the operator.

KK. Many to One: Output network variables from multiple devices are bound to a single input network variable on a different device.

LL. Maximum Send Time Parameter: Parameter used to ensure the periodic update of network data. If a time period equal to the value of this parameter has expired without a broadcast of the variable, a re-broadcast of the current value shall be executed. See also "Send on Delta" and "Maximum Send Time."

MM. Maximum Send Time: Adjustable parameter that defines the maximum time period between broadcasts of a software object's data to the network. Should the value of a software object remain constant over an extended period of time, the value will be rebroadcast once every maximum time period.

NN. Minimum Send Time Parameter: Parameter used to control unnecessary broadcasting of data onto the network. Broadcast of an updated value shall not occur unless a time period equal to the value of this parameter has expired. The expiration of the time period does not mandate a re-broadcast. See also "Send on Delta" and "Maximum Send Time" definitions.

OO. Minimum Send Time: Adjustable parameter that defines a mandatory time period during which no broadcasting of data will occur. Once this time period has been exceeded without a broadcast, the send on delta parameter or the maximum send time parameter shall determine when a broadcast is initiated.

PP. Multiple Controller Integrated Control (MCIC): Where multiple controllers with I/O are used to control a single mechanical system, which is sub-divided into a collection of processes to be controlled. All primary measured variables and the end device associated with a single process along with the primary control logic for the process shall be contained within a single controller. Secondary data from one process that affects the control of another process may be sent from one controller to the primary controller controlling the process. When data is sent from one controller to another controller, broadcasting concepts as defined above must be used. If the data being received over the network only affects the general thermodynamic or psychometric performance of the process but does not have a significant affect on safety or equipment protection then unacknowledged repeated binding services shall be used. If the data being received over the network has a safety or equipment protection impact, then acknowledged repeated binding services shall be used. In both cases peer-to-peer communication is mandatory. All controllers must be on the same channel. Managed communication shall not be used to move data between the multiple controllers.

QQ. One to Many: A single output network variable is bound to input network variables on multiple devices.

RR. One to One: A single output network variable is bound to a single input network variable.

SS. Open Database Connectivity (ODBC): Open standard application-programming interface (API) for accessing a database, making access to any data, regardless of which database management system (DBMS) is handling the data, possible.

TT. Operator Interface (OI): A device used by the operator to manage the BAS.

UU. Operator Workstation (OWS): Used to interface with the BAS system via the internet or the Local Supervisory LAN.

VV. Peer-to-Peer Communication: Data is broadcast from its origin and is received by the final device requiring the data without being received and retransmitted by a third device.

WW. Polling Communication: The concept of a control device requesting a network variable from a second control device at a specified interval. Polling communication is typically used to populate dynamic data on an active graphic page and for temporary or short term trending of data where the trend data is not stored at the controller level.

XX. Portable Operators Terminal (POT): Laptop PC used both for direct connection to a controller and for remote dial up connection.

YY. Primary Control Unit (PCU): A fully programmable device capable of carrying out a number of tasks including control and monitoring via direct digital control (DDC) of specific systems.

ZZ. Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS): A written document, created by the manufacturer of a device, identifying the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in the device.

AAA. Repeater: A physical device used to connect two segments and isolate physical problems. Typically required to allow the use of additional devices or additional cable length.

BBB. Router: A device that connects two or more networks at the network layer.

CCC. Segment: A single section of a network that contains no routers or repeaters.

DDD. Send on Delta Parameter: A parameter used to control unnecessary broadcasting of data onto the network. For binary data the send on delta parameter is assumed to be a change of state.

EEE. Send on Delta: Adjustable parameter that defines a requirement to broadcast when the data generated by the software object changes by an amount that exceeds this parameter's value.

For binary data this parameters defaults to a change of state. The broadcast of data is initiated when this criteria and the minimum send time requirement have been met.

FFF. Simple SNVT: Defines the format of a single piece of data. The definition of a simple SNVT in the master list of SNVTs will include the type of variable being measured (temperature, electric current, power etc.), the data type (signed integer, unsigned integer, floating point etc.), the data range, the resolution of the data and the engineering units.

GGG. Smart Device: A control I/O device such as a smart sensor (SS) or smart actuator (SA) that can directly communicate with the controller network to which it is connected rather than through a binary or analog signal.

HHH. Standardized Query Language (SQL): Standardized means for requesting information from a database.

III. Stand-Alone Controller: A stand-alone controller has provisions for all of the physical inputs and physical outputs associated with a single mechanical component such as a terminal unit, air handling unit, chiller or boiler. The controller shall also have embedded in it all of the control logic that associated the physical inputs to the physical outputs. A stand-alone controller may rely on other networked devices for time schedule inputs and trend data storage.

JJJ. Structured SNVT: Defines the format of a network variable that contains several different data elements. A simple SNVT or an enumerated SNVT may define each data element within a structured SNVT.

KKK. Supervisory Logic: The concept of gathering performance data from multiple terminal units to determine if a specific condition exists within the family of terminal devices.

LLL. Terminator: An electronic component that consists of a resistive and capacitive circuit specifically designed to enhance the quality of communications on a segment. On a bus topology, a terminator is connected to each end of a segment. For a channel consisting of two bus topology segments, a total of 4 terminators are required, one at each end of each segment.

MMM. Test Mode: A concept where the operator from the operator workstation can interrupt the flow of data from a sensor to the control logic and insert a mandatory test value or test state to be used by the control logic. The test mode and the desired test value or states are parameters that are set by the operator.

NNN. Unacknowledged Repeated: The data being broadcast is sent three times and an acknowledgement of receipt is not required. This type of service shall be used for most process control related data requiring timely receipt of the data.

OOO. Unacknowledged: The data being broadcast is sent one time and an acknowledgement of receipt is not required. This type of service shall be used for non-critical data where there is no significant impact should the receiving device have to wait for the next broadcast.

PPP. Web Server: Refer to "Control System Server."

QQQ. XML (Extensible Markup Language): A specification developed by the World Wide Web Consortium.

1.07 FUNCTIONAL INTENT

A. Where detailed functional or performance requirements are specified, products intended for the Project, conforming to the specified requirements, must be submitted to, and approved by, Client prior to shipment to the Project site.

1.08 SUBMITTALS

A. Electronic Submittals: While all requirements for hard copy submittal apply, control submittals and O&M information shall also be provided in electronic format as follows.

1. Drawings and Diagrams: Shop drawings shall be provided on electronic media as an AutoCAD 2000 or later version drawing file and/or Adobe Portable Document Format file. All ‘x reference’ and font files must be provided with AutoCAD files.
2. Other Submittals: All other submittals shall be provided in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF). Provide documents, such as Cheat Sheets and Trouble Shooting Guide, in rich text format (rtf) or Microsoft Word format as required.

B. Product Data: For each control device, panel, and accessory indicated or furnished. Include dimensions, capacities, performance and electrical characteristics, and material finishes. Include installation and start-up instructions. When manufacturer's cutsheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, clearly indicate applicable data by highlighting or by other meansGeneral catalogs shall not be accepted as cutsheets to fulfill submittal requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for each control system, including a complete drawing for each air handling unit, system, pump, device, etc. with all point descriptors, addresses and point names indicated. Each shop drawing shall contain the following information:

1. System Architecture and System Layout:
    a. One-line diagram indicating schematic locations of all control units, workstations, LAN interface devices, gateways, etc. Indicate network number, device ID, address, device instance, MAC address, drawing reference number, and controller type for each control unit. Indicate media, protocol, baud rate, and type of each LAN. Indicate media, protocol, baud rate, and type of each LAN. All optical isolators, repeaters, end-of-line resistors, junctions, terminators, ground locations etc. shall be located on the diagram.
    b. Provide floor plans locating all control units, workstations, servers, LAN interface devices, gateways, etc. Include all WAN and LAN communication wiring routing, power wiring, power originating sources, and low voltage power wiring. Indicate network number, device ID, address, device instance, MAC address, drawing reference number, and controller type for each control unit. Indicate media, protocol, baud rate, and type of each LAN. All optical isolators, repeaters, end-of-line resistors, junctions, ground locations etc. shall be located on the floor plans. Wiring routing as-built conditions shall be maintained accurately throughout the construction period and the drawing shall be updated to accurately reflect accurate, actual installed conditions.
2. Schematic flow diagram of each air and water system showing fans, coils, dampers, valves, pumps, heat exchange equipment and control devices. Include contractor written description of sequence of operation.
3. All physical points on the schematic flow diagram shall be indicated with names, descriptors, and point addresses identified as listed in the point summary table.
4. With each schematic, provide a point summary table listing building number and abbreviation, system type, equipment type, full point name, point description, Ethernet backbone network number, network number, device ID, object ID (object type, instance number). See Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) - Software and Programming," PART 3 for additional requirements.
5. Label each control device with setting.
6. Label each input and output with the appropriate range.
7. Provide a Bill of Materials with each schematic. Indicate device identification to match schematic and actual field labeling, quantity, actual product ordering number, manufacturer, description, size, voltage range, pressure range, temperature range, etc. as applicable. Also identify the specification section and specification reference.

8. Provide a valve or damper and the associated actuator information including size, Cv, design flow, design pressure drop, manufacturer, model number, close off rating, etc. Indicate normal (fail) positions of spring return valves and dampers. This is the valve or damper position with no power to the actuator.
9. Indicate all required electrical wiring. Electrical wiring diagrams shall include both ladder logic type diagram for motor starter, boiler burner, chiller, RTU, control, and safety circuits and detailed digital interface panel point termination diagrams with all wire numbers and terminal block numbers identified. Provide panel termination drawings on separate drawings. Ladder diagrams shall appear on system schematic. Clearly differentiate between portions of wiring, which are existing, factory-installed and portions to be field-installed. For all devices with safety circuits, incuding burners and chillers, field wiring will be labeled and all added devices will be properly mounted. Any internal wiring changes shall be approved by the manuafacturer in writing. If for example a gas booster needs to be tied into the burner circuit the manaufacturer shall identify the terminal points and provide an updated control diagram.
10. Sample Operator Interface Graphic Screens for each unique type of system, with final screens to be received 60 days prior to system startup.
11. Details of control panels, including controls, instruments, and labeling shown in plan or elevation indicating the installed locations.
12. Sheets shall be consecutively numbered.
13. Each sheet shall have a title indicating the type of information included and the HVAC system controlled.
14. Table of Contents listing sheet titles and sheet numbers.
15. Legend and list of abbreviations.
16. Provide an operating schedule for review. The schedule will have a schedule for each AHU/RTU and the associated equipment. Terminal units serving the principals office and associated administrative areas will have a separate schedule from the classrooms.

D. Product Line Demonstrated History: The product line being proposed for the project must have an installed history of demonstrated satisfactory operation for a length of 1 year since date of final completion in at least 10 installations of comparative size and complexity. Submittals shall document this requirement with references.

E. Qualifications: For manufacturer, companies, Contractor and key personnel.

F. Checkout and Testing Forms: Submit a blank copy of the forms that will be used during Point-to-Point Checkout, Prefunctional Checkout, and Functional Performance Testing as outlined in Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) - Commissioning." Those forms should be structured to capture the following information at a minimum during each particular testing phase.

1. Point-to-Point Checkout Form containing the following information:
    a. Each point is addressed, labeled and that proper communication exists between the controller and the field device.
    b. Documents that installed condition match the control drawings and that any changes or differences are noted on the drawings.
2. Prefunctional Checkout Forms containing the following information:
    a. Documents correct voltage and or current present as well as verifying circuits are free from grounds or faults for each control device.
    b. Obtain and Record Test and Balance settings and incorporate into the BAS. Information from the TAB contractor shall include:

1) Water and air system differential pressure and flow settings.
2) AHU minimum outside air control point or damper setting.

c. Calibration data for all sensing and actuating devices recording final measured and displayed value. Record the type and model of the meter(s) that determined the measured value for analog inputs.

d. For analog outputs record both the displayed output as well state of the receiving device.

e. For digital input/outputs record the signal at the controller and the state of the sensing/control device.

f. For actuators:

1) Check to ensure that actuated device moves smoothly and results are repeatable thru full range and seals tightly when the appropriate signal is applied to the operator.
2) Check for appropriate fail position, and that the stroke and range is as required.
3) For sequenced electronic actuators, calibrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to required ranges. Record final settings.

g. For all valves and actuators, verify the actual position against the Operator Interface readout. Set pumps to normal operating mode. With command valve closed, verify that valve is closed, and adjust output zero signal as required. With command valve open, verify position is full open and adjust output signal as required. Command the valve to not less than three (3) intermediate positions. If actual valve position doesn't correspond correctly, replace actuator.

h. Valve leak check: Verify proper close-off of the valves. Ensure the valve seats properly by simulating the maximum anticipated pressure difference across the circuit.

i. For air and water flow measuring stations the data recorded will include the independent flow measurement, area, and the independently measured output of the flow station. The BAS input from the flow station and any factors used to calculate the flow including area and any constants used in the calculation of flow. Two sets of data shall be collected. The first at design flow and the second at 50% of design flow. It is not acceptable to simply add a correction factor to address differences between the flow station and the independent reading.

j. For Operator Interfaces and Web accessible display:

1) Verify that all elements on the graphics are functional and are properly bound to physical devices and/or virtual points, and that hot links or page jumps are functional and logical.
2) Output all specified BAS reports for review and approval.
3) Verify that the alarm pop ups, printing, and logging are functional and in accordance with requirements.
4) Verify that all points are trended and are archiving to disk. Provide a sample to the Commissioning Authority and Client for review.
5) Verify that paging/dial-out alarm annunciation is functional.
6) Verify the functionality of remote Operator Interfaces and that a robust connection can be established consistently.
7) Verify that required third party software applications required with the bid are installed and are functional.

k. For all actuating devices record final settings for device.

l. Document verification of point to graphics binding for all points displayed on the workstation and that webserver display have been mapped correctly, and display the correct information.
m. Document that the webserver is on the LAN and can be viewed from off site, that the modem is connected, and that the BAS is accessible via modem by the contractor.

3. Functional Performance Forms shall contain:

a. List of all sequences, modes of operation and setpoint that initiates each sequence and/or mode. For each confirm that proper sequence of operation. Document any variance between designed sequence and actual condition.
b. Record tuning parameters and response time for each control loop.
c. Document all alarm and safeties test and final results.
d. Results of trends including controlled points, setpoints, actual readings and other point defined by the Boards Authorized Representative.

G. Testing Plan:

1. Submit a plan for executing all phases of testing and completion of checkout forms. This includes the following: manufacturers' normal testing, point-to-point testing, pre-functional testing, and functional performance testing. The testing plan shall show the overall milestones of the controls work and testing of the controls system.
2. Provide the schedule for completing each phase of testing for each system or set of equipment including, but not limited to, air handlers, chillers, boilers, unit-vents, VAV boxes, network wiring, and operator workstations. Schedules shall show the time frame needed to complete the tasks.
3. The testing plan shall identify other trade milestones that impact the successful completion of during each phase of testing.
4. This plan is not meant to take precedence over any other plan but is intended to provide coordination assistance to all trades as the project is scheduled.

H. Open Protocol Information:

1. General: Provide all information necessary for review of the proposed system, including information required by the authority maintaining the protocol standard to determine if the product selected for implementation complies with the protocol standards specified.
2. BACnet Systems:

a. BACnet object description, object ID, and device ID, for each I/O point.
b. Documentation for any non-standard BACnet objects, properties, or enumerations used detailing their structure, data types, and any associated lists of enumerated values.
c. Submit PICS indicating the standardized BACnet device profile, functionality and configuration of each controller along with proof of BTL listing.

I. Framed Control Drawings: After completion of installation and check out, but prior to training, laminated control drawings including system control schematics, sequences of operation, and panel termination drawings, shall be provided in panels for major pieces of equipment. Terminal unit drawings shall be located in the central plant equipment panel or mechanical room panel.

J. Control Logic Documentation (to be received and updated prior to training):

1. Submit control logic program listings (for graphical programming) and logic flow charts illustrating (for line type programs) to document the control software of all control units.

2. Control logic shall be annotated to describe how it accomplishes the sequence of operation. Annotations shall be sufficient to allow an operator to relate each program component (block or line) to corresponding portions of the specified Sequence of Operation.
3. Include written description of each control sequence.
4. Include control response, settings, setpoints, throttling ranges, gains, reset schedules, adjustable parameters, and limits.
5. Sheets shall be consecutively numbered.
6. Each sheet shall have a title indicating the controller designations and the HVAC system controlled.
7. Include Table of Contents listing sheet titles and sheet numbers
8. Submit one complete set of programming and operating manuals for all digital controllers concurrently with control logic documentation. This set will count toward the required number of Operation and Maintenance materials specified below.

K. Training Plan:

1. Training shall be provided in eight, four-hour sessions. A training plan is not required for opposite season or refresher training.
2. The material to be covered shall be further sub-divided into descriptions of the material to be covered in every 15 minutes. See Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) – Commissioning," for specific items to be addressed.
3. The descriptions shall include not only the material to be covered but also its location in the Operation and Maintenance Manual or the Training Manual including Section and page number.

L. Operation and Maintenance Manual: (All documentation to be received and updated prior to training)

1. In addition to other copies required, submit one copy of the materials directly to Client operation staff.
2. Submit maintenance instructions and spare parts lists for each type of control device, control unit, and accessory.
3. Submit BAS User's Guides (Operating Manuals) for each controller type and for all workstation hardware and software and workstation peripherals.
4. Submit BAS advanced Programming Manuals for each controller type and for all workstation software.
5. Include all as built submittals (product data, shop drawings, control logic documentation, hardware manuals, software manuals, installation guides or manuals, maintenance instructions, and spare parts lists) in maintenance manual, in accordance with requirements of Division 01 Section "Operations and Maintenance Manual."

M. Training Manual: Submit training manual electronically for review. Once accepted, provide three hard copies and one electronic copy of the training manual at the start of training. Note only the initial 8 hours of training which include the Cheat Sheets will occur before the demonstration is completed. Include the following:

1. Cheat Sheets or quick reference section with step-by-step guidance with a level of detail that will allow someone with no experience with the control system to follow the instructions. The quick reference guidance can be provided one of two ways: screen prints with bubbled text describing the navigation required or written description of the steps to be taken with screen prints provided to facilitate the written explanation. The required cheat sheets shall include:

a. Logins and logoffs.
b. Adjust and restore setpoints.
c. Overrides and releasing overrides. Include instructions for running a report to list all points currently overriden.
d. Start, group, plot and export Trends.
e. Adjust schedules and add holidays.
f. Processing of alarms including acknowledgement, review of alarm report, and clearing of alarm history.
g. Backup and restoration of system data.
h. Demonstrate how to clear/reset all field devices that may require manual intervention.
i. Demonstrate how to reset motor starter and the significance of Hand-Off-Auto switch position on motor starters.
j. Demonstration of each input and output device. Provide a picture of each input or output device with a brief narrative on its operation.
k. Demonstrate how to place the boiler or chiller system into manual control and boiler control, and how to restore the system to BAS control.

2. Operating instructions including system startup and shutdown, seasonal and emergency instruction.
3. Trouble Shooting Guide. Include actions to be taken to trouble shoot problems with the OWS, PCU's CSS, and local control devices.
4. Setpoint Table.
5. Preventative maintenance instructions.
6. Color print of each unique screen.
7. Final Sequence of Operations. This document shall be printed but shall also be provided electronically in rich text format (rtf). The sequence shall provide not only the original design sequence from the specifications and drawings but also the any changes to the sequence.
8. Complete set of the design control drawings (provided by the Architect on 11"x17" sheets). The manual will have a TAB for these drawings. The printed drawings will come from the Architect or Engineer.
9. List of all alarm points and alarm priority.

N. Video Training: The following training shall be recorded on a CD using screen capture software. Any files required to run the CD will be provided along with a file with the instruction on how to view the CD. The cadence of the video training shall be such that an inexperienced person can listen to the narrative and execute those steps on controls system while watching the CD. Include a screen view recording the actual video feed to the monitor for the work station penetration while narrating the associated steps.

1. Quick reference procedures. The taping of these procedures must include both a screen view preferably recording the actual video feed to the monitor while narrating the associated steps.

a. Login and logoff to control system as well as Microsoft XP login;
b. Adjust and restore setpoints.
c. Overrides and releasing overrides, as well as running a report to list all points currently overriden.
d. Start, group, plot and export Trends.
e. Adjust schedules and add holidays.

f. Processing of alarms including acknowledgement, review of alarm report and clearing of alarm history.
g. Backup and restoration of system data.
h. Demonstrate workstation menu penetration and broad overview of the various workstation features.
i. Demonstrate all operations and functions that can be performed at the supervisory or local controllers as well as system display artifacts such as the indication that a point has failed or lost communication.

O. Demonstration of portable operator interface device display capabilities.

P. Manufacturers Certificates: For all listed and/or labeled products, provide certificate of conformance.

Q. Product Warranty Certificates: Submit manufacturers product warranty certificates covering the hardware provided.

1.09 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. The Project Record documents that have not already been submitted as part of the Operating and Maintenance Manual or Training Manual are to be submitted with the Record Documents. Any documents in the Operating and Maintenance Manual or Training Manual that have changed since they were submitted will need to be re-submitted as part of the Project record documents. All of these documents maybe submitted electronically.

B. Record copies of product data and control shop drawings updated to reflect the final installed condition.

C. Record copies of approved control logic programming and database on CDs. The CDs will contain all information required to reinstall the control system program. It will include actual setpoints and settings of controls, final sequence of operation, including changes to programs made after submission and approval of shop drawings and including changes to programs made during specified testing. One set of CD's will be stored with the Client in the main control panel and the second set will be provided to Client Operations.

D. Graphic Software: Record copies of approved project specific graphic software on CDs.

E. Include individual floor plans with controller locations with all interconnecting wiring routing including space sensors, LAN wiring, power wiring, low voltage power wiring. Indicate device instance, MAC address and drawing reference number.

F. Provide record riser diagram showing the location of all controllers.

G. Maintain project record documents throughout the warranty period and submit final documents at the end of the warranty period

1.10 OPERATOR INTERFACE

A. The Operator Interface (OI) shall provide for overall system supervision, graphical user interface, management report generation, alarm annunciation, remote monitoring, and trend reporting. . Refer to Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) - Operator Interfaces."

1.11 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. Application of Open Protocols:

1. Subject to the detailed requirements provided throughout the specifications, the BAS and digital control and communications components installed, as work of this contract shall be an integrated distributed processing system utilizing the following standards:

a. BACnet or Hybrid System: The system architecture shall consist of a BACnet IP Router, a single Local Area Network (LAN) or two-level LANs that support BCs, AACs, ASCs, Operator Workstations (OWS), Smart Devices (SD), and Remote Communication Devices (RCDs) as applicable. In no event shall there be more than two levels of LAN topology within the system, excluding wiring to sensors with no control intelligence.

B. The system provided shall incorporate hardware resources sufficient to meet the functional requirements specified. The Contractor shall include all items not specifically itemized in these Specifications that are necessary to implement, maintain, and operate the system in compliance with the functional intent of these Specifications.

C. The system shall be configured as a distributed processing network(s) capable of expansion as specified below. Refer to the network architecture on the BAS drawings for other requirements and details.

D. The system architecture shall consist of an Ethernet-based, wide area network (WAN), a single Local Area Network (LAN) or multi-leveled LANs that support PCUs, Operator Workstations (OWS), and Remote Communication Devices (RCDs) as applicable. The following indicates a functional description of the BAS structure.

1. WAN: Intranet-based network connecting multiple facilities with a central data warehouse and server, accessible via standard web-browser. This is an existing infrastructure and contractor is not required to configure any components of this WAN.
2. Local BAS Supervisory LAN: The Local BAS Supervisory LAN shall be an Ethernet-based, 100 Mbps LAN connecting Primary Control LANs and OWSs. The LAN serves as the inter-PCU gateway and OWS-to-PCU gateway and communications path and as the connection point for the WAN. LAN shall be IEEE 802.3 Ethernet over Fiber or Category 5 cable with switches and routers that support 100 Mbps throughput. Power-line carrier communication shall not be acceptable for communications. The higher level layers of this network shall be the following:

    a. BACnet Local Supervisory LAN: BACnet/IP as defined in Addendum A (Annex J) of the BACnet standard, and shall share a common network number for the Ethernet backbone, as defined in BACnet.

3. Primary Controller LAN ('Primary LAN'): High-speed, peer-to-peer communicating LAN used to connect and Primary Control (PCUs) and communicate exclusively control information. Acceptable technologies include:

    a. BACnet: Network used to connect AACs, ASCs or SDs. These can be Master Slave/ Token Passing or polling, or ARCnet in accordance with IEEE 802.4, in addition to those allowed for Primary Controller LANs. Network speed vs. the number of controllers on the LAN shall be dictated by the response time and trending requirements. The primary network shall communicate at a minimum of 38 kbps. Each secondary network may support up to 32 communicating devices without segmentation or repeaters subject to the requirements for response time, trending and bandwidth utilization.

E. Dynamic Data Access: Any data throughout any level of the network shall be available to and accessible by all other devices, Controllers and OWS, whether directly connected or connected remotely.

F. Remote Data Access: The system shall support the following methods of remote access to the building data.

1. Dial-in via minimum of a 56k modem. The purpose of the remote access via phone is to allow for the contractor to access the control system. Dial-in connection shall allow access to all control system facilities and graphics with appropriate password. Client shall provide and pay for the voice grade phone line to support this remote connection.

    a. Browser-based access: A remote user, connecting via the WAN and using a standard browser shall be able access all control system facilities and graphics with proper password. The remote access user will not need to load Java or other applications to view the web pages.

G. Network Performance: The communication speed between the controllers, control LAN interface devices, and operator interface devices shall be sufficient to ensure fast system response time under any loading condition. Contractor shall submit guaranteed response times with shop drawings including calculations to support the guarantee. In no case shall delay times between an event, request, or command initiation and its completion be greater than those listed herein. Contractor shall reconfigure LAN as necessary to accomplish these performance requirements. The performance will also include the trending of all AI, AO and DI points at 15-minute intervals. Generally requirements do not apply when a remote connection must be established via modem:

1. 5 seconds between a Level 1 (critical) alarm occurrence and annunciation at operator workstation.
2. 10 seconds between a Level 2 alarm occurrence and annunciation at operator workstation.
3. 20 seconds between and a Level 3-5 alarm occurrence and annunciation at operator workstation.
4. 10 seconds between an operator command via the operator interface to change a setpoint and the subsequent change in the controller.
5. 5 seconds between an operator command via the operator interface to start/stop a device and the subsequent command to be received at the controller.
6. 10 seconds between a change of value or state of an input and it being updated on the operator interface.
7. Graphic Display, 10 seconds between an operator selection of a graphic and it completely painting the screen and updating all points.
8. Graphic Refresh, every 15 seconds the graphic shall automatically refresh all graphic data.

H. Control Systems Server (CSS) and Operator Work Station (OWS): These are two separate computers that maintain the systems configuration and programming database and is the operating platform for the operator interface (OI). It shall hold the backup files of the information downloaded into the individual controllers and as such support uploading and downloading that information directly to/from the controllers. It shall be located within each facility. It shall also act as a control information server to non-control system based programs. It shall allow secure multiple-access to the control information. Refer to Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) - Operator Interfaces," for requirements.

I. The PCUs shall monitor, control, and provide the field interface for all points specified. Each PCU shall be capable of performing all specified energy management functions, and all DDC functions, independent of other PCUs and operator interface devices as more fully specified in Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) - Field Panels."

J. Systems Configuration Database: The system architecture shall support maintaining the systems configuration database on a server or workstation on the Local Supervisory LAN. User

tools provided to Client shall allow configuring, updating, and maintaining current configurations and settings whether they are initiated at the server or the end device.

1. Database Schema shall be published and provided to Client to facilitate easy access to the data.
2. Database shall be ODBC compliant or a data access driver shall be provided to act as an ODBC or OLE DB data provider.

K. Interruptions or fault at any point on any Primary Controller LAN shall not interrupt communications between other nodes on the network. If a LAN is severed, two separate networks shall be formed and communications within each network shall continue uninterrupted.

L. All line drivers, repeaters, terminators, signal boosters, and signal conditioners shall be provided as necessary for proper data communication.

M. Anytime any controller's database or program is changed in the field, the controller shall be capable of automatically uploading the new data to the OWS and CSS.

1.12 WARRANTY MAINTENANCE

A. Contractor shall warrant all products and labor for a period of one (1) year after Final Acceptance.

B. Client reserves the right to make changes to the BAS during the warranty period. Such changes do not constitute a waiver of warranty. The Contractor shall warrant parts and installation work regardless of any such changes made by Client, unless the Contractor provides clear and convincing evidence that a specific problem is the result of such changes to the BAS.

C. At no cost to Client, during the warranty period, the Contractor shall provide maintenance services for software and hardware components as specified below:

1. Maintenance services shall be provided for all devices and hardware specified in Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS)" Sections. Service all equipment per the manufacturer's recommendations. All devices shall be calibrated within the last month of the warranty period.
2. Emergency Service: Any malfunction, failure, or defect in any hardware component or failure of any control programming that would result in property damage or loss of comfort control shall be corrected and repaired following telephonic notification by Client to the Contractor.
    a. Response by telephone to any request for service shall be provided within two (2) hours of the initial telephone request for service.
    b. In the event that the malfunction, failure, or defect is not corrected through the telephonic communication, at least one (1) hardware and software technician, trained in the system to be serviced, shall be dispatched to the site within eight (8) hours of the initial telephone request for such services, as specified.
    c. Emergency service shall be available on a 24-hour, 7-day-a-week basis.
3. Normal Service: Any malfunction, failure, or defect in any hardware component or failure of any control programming that would not result in property damage or loss of comfort control shall be corrected and repaired following telephonic notification by Client to the Contractor.
    a. Response by telephone to any request for service shall be provided within eight (8) working hours (contractor specified 40 hr/week normal working period) of the initial telephone request for service.

b. In the event that the malfunction, failure, or defect is not corrected through the telephonic communication, at least one (1) hardware and software technician, trained in the system to be serviced, shall be dispatched to the site within three (3) working days of the initial telephone request for such services, as specified.

4. Telephonic Request for Service: Contractor shall provide up to three telephone numbers for Client to call in the event of a need for service. At least one of the lines shall be attended 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Alternatively, pagers can be used for technicians trained in system to be serviced. A technician shall respond to every call within 15 minutes.
5. Technical Support: Contractor shall provide technical support by telephone throughout the warranty period.
6. Preventive maintenance shall be provided throughout the warranty period in accordance with the hardware component manufacturer's requirements.

1.13 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Provide factory-shipping cartons for each piece of equipment and control device. Maintain cartons during shipping, storage and handling as required to prevent equipment damage, and to eliminate dirt and moisture from equipment. Store equipment and materials inside and protect from weather.

1.14 LISTING AND LABELING

A. The BAS and components shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories (UL 916) as an Energy Management System.

B. BACnet controllers, B-BC, B-AAC, B-ASC, etc. shall carry the BTL Mark for their device profile.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Materials shall be new, the best of their respective kinds without imperfections or blemishes, and not be damaged in any way. Used equipment shall not used in any way for the permanent installation except where drawings or specs specifically allow existing materials to remain in place.

2.02 UNIFORMITY

B. To the extent practical, all equipment of the same type serving the same function shall be identical and from the same manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine areas and conditions under which control systems are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL SYSTEMS

B. General: Install systems and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, roughing-in drawings and details shown on drawings.

3.03 DIGITAL CONTROL STATIONS, CONTROLLER QUANTITY AND LOCATION

C. Individual Digital Control Stations (DCS) are referenced to indicate allocation of points to each DCS and DCS location. Digital control stations shall consist of one or multiple controllers to meet requirements specified.

D. Where a DCS is referenced, Contractor shall provide at least one (1) controller, and additional controllers as required and in sufficient quantity to meet the requirements of this Specification. Restrictions in applying controllers are specified in Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) - Field Panels." This Contractor shall extend power to the DCS from an acceptable power panel. If the contractor wishes to further distribute panels to other locations, contractor is responsible for extending power to that location also. Furthermore, contractor is responsible for ensuring adequate locations for the panels that do not interfere with other requirements of the project and maintain adequate clearance for maintenance access.

E. Contractor shall locate DCSs as required. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide enough controllers to ensure a completely functioning system, according to the point list, trending requirements and sequence of operations.

F. Contractor shall provide the following, as a minimum:

1. One DCS (including at least one controller) in each heating water and chilled water plant mechanical room.
2. One DCS (including at least one controller) for each air handler located in an applicable mechanical room.
3. One controller shall be provided for each terminal unit unless indicated otherwise.

3.04 SURGE PROTECTION

G. The Contractor shall furnish and install any power supply surge protection, filters, and other equipment as necessary for proper operation and protection of all PCUs, operator interfaces, printers, routers, gateways and other hardware and interface devices. All equipment shall be capable of handling voltage variations 10% above or below measured nominal value, with no affect on hardware, software, communications, and data storage.

3.05 DEMOLITION AND REUSE OF EXISTING MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

H. See scope notes on drawings

3.06 CONTROL POWER SOURCE AND SUPPLY

I. Extend all power source wiring required for operation of all equipment and devices provided under Division 23 Building Automation System (BAS) Sections and Sequences of Operation.

1. Control panels shall not share a power circuit. Power supplied to the panels shall have dedicated circuits and the circuit location shall be documented in the panel.

3.07 STARTUP, COMMISSIONING, AND TRAINING

J. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Commissioning."

3.08 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

K. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Sequences of Operation."

3.09 IDENTIFICATION STANDARDS

L. Controller Identification. All controllers shall be identified by a plastic engraved nameplate securely fastened to the outside of the controller enclosure.

M. Panel Identification. All local control panels shall be identified by a plastic engraved nameplate securely fastened to the outside of the controller enclosure.

N. Field Devices. All field devices shall be identified by a typed (not handwritten) securely attached tag label.

O. Panel Devices. All panel devices shall be identified by a typed label securely fastened to the backplane of the local control panel.

P. Raceway Identification. All the covers to junction and pull boxes of the control system raceways shall be painted blue or have identification labels stating "Control System Wiring" affixed to the covers. Labels shall be typed, not hand written.

Q. Wire Identification. All low and line voltage control wiring shall be identified by a number, as referenced to the associated control diagram, at each end of the conductor or cable. Identification number shall be permanently secured to the conductor or cable and shall be typed

3.10 EXHIBITS

R. Exhibits A through E are attached.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 21
BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) - BASIC MATERIALS, INTERFACE DEVICES, AND SENSORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following:
   1. Wiring.
   2. Control Dampers and Actuators.
   3. Field Panels.
   4. Sensors.
   5. Flow Meter.
   6. Electric Control Components (Switches, Thermostats, Relays, Smoke Detectors, etc.).
   7. Transducers.
   8. Air Flow Measuring Stations.
   9. Current Switches.
   10. Nameplates.
   11. Testing Equipment.

1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS)" for general requirements.

B. Refer to other Division 23 Sections for installation of instrument wells, and dampers in mechanical systems; not work of this Section.

C. Provide the following electrical work as work of this Section, complying with requirements of Division 26 Sections:
   1. Control wiring between field-installed controls, indicating devices, and unit control panels.
   2. Interlock wiring between electrically interlocked devices, sensors, and between a hand or auto position of motor starters as indicated for all mechanical and controls.
   3. Wiring associated with indicating and alarm panels (remote alarm panels) and connections to their associated field devices.
   4. All other necessary wiring for fully complete and functional control system as specified.
   5. Power wiring from spare circuits in electrical panels to Digital Control System Field Panels.

1.03 WORK BY OTHERS

A. Control Dampers furnished under this Section shall be installed under the applicable air distribution or air handling equipment Section under the direction of the Digital Control System Contractor who will be fully responsible for the proper operation of the damper

B. Controlled Equipment Power Wiring shall be furnished and installed under Division 26. Where control involves 120V control devices controlling 120V equipment, Division 26 Contractor shall extend power wiring to the equipment. Digital Control System Contractor shall extend it from the equipment to the control device.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. General: Provide electronic control products in sizes and capacities indicated, consisting of dampers, thermostats, clocks, controllers, sensors, and other components as required for complete installation. Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard materials and components as published in their product information; designed and constructed as recommended by manufacturer, and as required for application indicated.

B. Instrument Pipe and Tube
   1. Low Pressure Air Instrument Sensing Lines
      a. Connections: Use suitable bulkhead type fitting and static sensing tip for static pressure connections. Adapt tubing to instrument connection.

b. Tubing: Virgin polyethylene non-metallic tubing type FR, ASTM D 2737, and with flame-retardant harness for multiple tubing. Use compression or push-on brass fittings.

C. Communication Wiring: All wiring shall be in accordance with National Electrical Codes and Division 26 of this specification.
   1. Contractor shall supply all communication wiring between Building Controllers (BC), Routers, Gateways, Advanced Application Controllers (AAC), Application Specific Controllers (ASC) and local and remote peripherals (e.g., operator workstations, printers, and modems).
   2. Local Supervisory LAN: For any portions of this network required under this Section of the specification, contractor shall use Fiber or Category 5 of standard TIA/EIA 68 (10BaseT). Network shall be run with no splices and separate from any wiring over thirty (30) volts.
   3. Primary and Secondary Controller LANs: Communication wiring shall be individually 100% shielded pairs per manufacturers recommendations for distances installed, with overall PVC cover, Class 2, plenum-rated run with no splices and separate from any wiring over thirty (30) volts. Shield shall be terminated and wiring shall be grounded as recommended by BC manufacturer.

D. Signal Wiring: Contractor shall run all signal wiring in accordance with National Electric Codes and Division 26 of this Specification.
   1. Signal wiring to all field devices, including, but not limited to, all sensors, transducers, transmitters, switches, etc. shall be twisted, 100% shielded pair, minimum 18-gauge wire, with PVC cover. Signal wiring shall be run with no splices and separate from any wiring above thirty (30) volts.
   2. Signal wiring shield shall be grounded at controller end only unless otherwise recommended by the controller manufacturer.

E. Low Voltage Analog Output Wiring: Contractor shall run all low voltage control wiring in accordance with National Electric Codes and Division 26 of this Specification.
   1. Low voltage control wiring shall be minimum 16-gauge, twisted pair, 100% shielded, with PVC cover, Class 2 plenum-rated. Low voltage control wiring shall be run with no splices separate from any wiring above thirty (30) volts.

F. Control Panels: Provide control panels with suitable brackets for wall mounting for each control system. Locate panel adjacent to systems served.
   1. Fabricate panels of 16-gage furniture-grade steel, or 6063-T5 extruded aluminum alloy, totally enclosed on four sides, with hinged door and keyed lock, with manufacturer's standard shop- painted finish and color.
   2. Provide UL-listed cabinets for use with line voltage devices.
   3. All gauges and control components shall be identified by means of nameplates.
   4. All control tubing and wiring shall be run neatly and orderly in open slot wiring duct with cover.
   5. Complete wiring and tubing termination drawings shall be mounted in or adjacent to panel.

2.02 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General: Provide factory fabricated automatic control dampers of sizes, velocity and pressure classes as required for smooth, stable, and controllable air flow. Provide parallel or opposed blade dampers as recommended by manufacturers sizing techniques. Provide parallel blade dampers for dampers providing two-position control (for multi zone dampers a parallel blade application with lower torque requirements should be submitted as an alternate). For dampers located near fan outlets, provide dampers rated for fan outlet velocity and close-off pressure, and recommended by damper manufacturer for fan discharge damper service.

B. For zone dampers and other applications with duct or opening areas less that 5 square feet that do not provide isolation to out doors and function in a general isolation and modulating control service in rectangular ducts at velocities not greater than 1500 fpm , differential pressure not greater than 2.5" w.c.:
   1. Performance: Test in accordance with AMCA 500.
   2. Frames: Galvanized steel, 16-gauge minimum thickness, welded or riveted with corner reinforcement.
   3. Blades: Stainless steel in lab exhausts and galvanized steel elsewhere, maximum blade size 8 inches wide by 48 inches long, attached to minimum 1/2 inch shafts with set screws, 16 gauge minimum thickness.
   4. Blade Seals: Synthetic elastomer, mechanically attached, field replaceable.
   5. Jamb Seals: None.
   6. Shaft Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze, graphite impregnated nylon sleeve or other molded synthetic sleeve, with thrust washers at bearings.
   7. Linkage: Concealed in frame if parallel.
   8. Linkage Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze or graphite impregnated nylon.
   9. Leakage: Less than one percent based on approach velocity of 1500 ft./min. and 1 inch wg.
   10. Maximum Pressure Differential: 2.5 inches wg.
   11. Temperature Limits: -40 to 200 °F.
   12. Where two dampers are to be mechanically interlocked such as a face and bypass arrangement, the manufacturer will provide required torque values for the combined damper assembly.
   13. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements approved manufacturers are as follows:
      a. Johnson Controls D-1100
      b. Ruskin CD36
      c. Vent Products 5800

C. For applications with duct or opening areas greater than 5 square feet that do not provide isolation to out doors and function in a general isolation and modulating control service in rectangular ducts at velocities exceeding 1500 fpm , differential pressure greater than 2.5" w.c.:
   1. Performance: Test in accordance with AMCA 500.
   2. Frames: Galvanized steel, 16-gauge minimum thickness, welded or riveted with corner reinforcement.
   3. Blades: Galvanized steel or extruded aluminum hollow airfoil shape, maximum blade size 8 inches wide by 48 inches long, attached to minimum 1/2 inch shafts, 14 gauge minimum extrusion thickness.
   4. Blade Seals: Synthetic elastomeric, mechanically attached, field replaceable.
   5. Jamb Seals: Stainless steel.
   6. Shaft Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze sleeve, graphite impregnated nylon sleeve, molded synthetic sleeve, or stainless steel sleeve, with thrust washers at bearings.
   7. Linkage: Concealed in frame if parallel.
   8. Linkage Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze or graphite impregnated nylon.
   9. Leakage: Less than 0.1 percent based on approach velocity of 4000 ft./min. and 1 inch wg. .
   10. Maximum Pressure Differential: 6 inches wg.
   11. Temperature Limits: -40 to 200 °F.
   12. Where opening size is larger than 48 inches wide, or 72 inches high, provide dampers in multiple sections, with appropriately intermediate frames, and jackshafts. For multiple

dampers driven by a jackshaft the shaft will rigid in torsion and driven by at least two actuators located at either end of the shaft.

13. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements approved manufacturers are as follows:
    a. TAMCO 1000
    b. Ruskin CD60
    c. CESCO Products AGA or AGB

D. For all outside air intake or exhaust control dampers that provide isolation to out doors or otherwise need to provide thermal isolation:
1. Performance: Test in accordance with AMCA 500.
2. Frames: Galvanized steel, 16-gauge minimum thickness, welded or riveted with corner reinforcement.
3. Blades: Extruded aluminum hollow airfoil shape, maximum blade size 8 inches wide by 48 inches long, attached to minimum 1/2 inch shafts, 14 gauge minimum extrusion thickness.
4. Blade Seals: Synthetic elastomeric, mechanically attached, field replaceable.
5. Jamb Seals: Non-metallic seal.
6. Shaft Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze sleeve, graphite impregnated nylon sleeve, molded synthetic sleeve, or stainless steel sleeve, with thrust washers at bearings.
7. Linkage: Concealed in frame if parallel.
8. Linkage Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze or graphite impregnated nylon.
9. Leakage: Less than 0.1 percent based on approach velocity of 4000 ft./min. and 1 inch wg. .
10. Maximum Pressure Differential: 6 inches wg.
11. Temperature Limits: -40 to 200 °F.
12. Where opening size is larger than 48 inches wide, or 72 inches high, provide dampers in multiple sections, with appropriately intermediate frames, and jackshafts. For multiple dampers driven by a jackshaft the shaft will rigid in torsion and driven by at least two actuators located at either end of the shaft.
13. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements approved manufacturers are as follows:
    a. TAMCO 9000
    b. Ruskin CDTI50
14. For general isolation and modulating control service in round ducts up to 40 inches in size at velocities not greater than 2500 fpm , differential pressure not greater than 4” w.c.:
15. Performance: Test in accordance with AMCA 500.
16. Frames: rolled 12 gauge steel strip for sizes 6 inch and smaller, rolled 14 gauge steel channel for larger sizes, galvanized or aluminum finish.
17. Blades: Steel construction, 12 gauge minimum thickness for dampers less than 18 inches in size, 10 gauge minimum thickness for larger dampers.
18. Blade Seals: Full circumference neoprene.
19. Shaft: ½ inch diameter zinc or cadmium plated steel.
20. Shaft Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze or stainless steel, pressed into frame, with thrust washers at bearings.
21. Leakage: Less than 0.2 percent based on approach velocity of 4000 ft./min. and 1 inch wg. differential pressure.
22. Maximum Pressure Differential: 4 inches wg.
23. Temperature Limits: -40 to 300 °F.

E. For general isolation and modulating control service in round ducts up to 60 inches in size at velocities not greater than 4000 fpm (20.3 m/s), differential pressure not greater than 6" w.c. (1492 Pa):
   1. Performance: Test in accordance with AMCA 500.
   2. Frames: rolled 10-gauge steel channel for sizes 48 inch and smaller, rolled 3/16 inch thick steel channel for larger sizes, galvanized or aluminum finish.
   3. Blades: Steel construction, 10-gauge minimum thickness for dampers not greater than 48 inches in size, ¼ inch minimum thickness for larger dampers.
   4. Blade stops: ½ inch x ¼ inch full circumference steel bar.
   5. Blade Seals: Full circumference neoprene.
   6. Shaft: zinc or cadmium plated steel, angle reinforcing as necessary.
   7. Shaft Bearings: Oil impregnated sintered bronze or stainless steel, pressed into frame, with thrust washers at bearings.
   8. Leakage: Less than 0.4 percent based on approach velocity of 4000 ft./min. and 1 inch wg. differential pressure.
   9. Maximum Pressure Differential: 6 inches wg.
   10. Temperature Limits: -40 to 250 °F.

2.03 ACTUATORS

A. General: Size actuators and linkages to operate their appropriate dampers with sufficient reserve torque or force to provide smooth modulating action or 2-position action as specified. Select spring-return actuators with manual override to provide positive shut-off of devices as they are applied.

B. Damper Actuators
   1. Ambient Operating Temperature Limits: -10 to 122°F
   2. Two Position Electric Actuators: Line voltage with spring return
   3. Electronic Actuators: Provide actuators with spring return for two-position (24v), 0-5 Vdc, 0-10 Vdc, 2-10Vdc, 4-20 mA, as required. Actuators shall travel full stroke in less than 90 seconds, unless prior approval is obtained. Actuators shall be designed for a minimum of 60,000 full cycles at full torque and be UL 873 listed. Provide stroke indicator. Actuators shall have positive positioning circuit. Where two actuators are required in parallel, or in sequence, provide an auxiliary actuator driver. Actuators shall have current limiting motor protection. Actuators shall have manual override . Modulating actuators shall have minimum rangeability of 40 to 1.
      a. Close-Off Pressure: Provide the minimum torque required, and spring return for fail positioning (unless otherwise specifically indicated) sized for required close-off pressure. Required close-off rating of air damper applications shall be shutoff pressure of associated fan, plus 10 percent. When shutoff does not apply the actuator will be sized based on the manufactures required torque plus 30%.
      b. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements approved manufacturers are as follows:
         1) Belimo
         2) Delta
         3) InvensysGENERAL FIELD DEVICES

C. Provide field devices for input and output of digital (binary) and analog signals into controllers (BCs, AACs, ASCs). Provide signal conditioning for all field devices as recommended by field device manufacturers, and as required for proper operation in the system.

D. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to assure that all field devices are compatible with controller hardware and software.

E. Field devices specified herein are generally 'two-wire' type transmitters, with power for the device to be supplied from the respective controller. If the controller provided is not equipped to provide this power, or is not designed to work with 'two-wire' type transmitters, or if field device

is to serve as input to more than one controller, or where the length of wire to the controller will unacceptably affect the accuracy, the Contractor shall provide 'four-wire' type equal transmitter and necessary regulated DC power supply or 120 VAC power supply, as required.

F. For field devices specified hereinafter that require signal conditioners, signal boosters, signal repeaters, or other devices for proper interface to controllers, Contractor shall furnish and install proper device, including 120V power as required. Such devices shall have accuracy equal to, or better than, the accuracy listed for respective field devices.

G. Accuracy: As stated in this Section, accuracy shall include combined effects of nonlinearity, nonrepeatability and hysteresis.

2.04 TEMPERATURE SENSORS (TS)

A. Sensor range: When matched with A/D converter of BC, AAC/ASC, or Smart Sensor (SS), sensor range shall provide a resolution of no worse than 0.3°F (unless noted otherwise). Where thermistors are used, the stability shall be better than 0.25°F over 5 years.

B. Matched Sensors: The following applications shall require matched sensors:
   1. Building Loop Connections: Provide matched loop and building supply sensors where control sequence requires controlling to a temperature rise (differential).
   2. Hydronic Temperature Difference Calculations: Provide matched supply and return temperature sensors where the pair is used for calculating temperature difference for use in load calculations or sequencing such as across chillers and plants.
   3. Air Handling Unit Sequencing: Provide matched pair for the cooling and heating coil leaving sensors where the sequence includes calculating an offset from the supply air setpoint to maintain a leaving heating coil temperature.

C. Room Temperature Sensor: Shall be a stainless steel wall plate sensor. An electronic thermostat with manual override will be provided in the principal and main office areas and in select administrative areas as approved by Client. Provide ¼" medical grade closed cell foam insulating material. The following sensing elements are acceptable:
   1. Sensing element shall be platinum RTD, thermistor, or integrated circuit, +/- 0.3°F accuracy at calibration point.

D. Single-Point Duct Temperature Sensor: Shall consist of sensing element, junction box for wiring connections and gasket to prevent air leakage or vibration noise. Temperature range as required for resolution indicated in paragraph A. Sensor probe shall be 316 stainless steel.
   1. Sensing element shall be platinum RTD, thermistor, or integrated circuit, +/- 0.3°F accuracy at calibration point

E. Averaging Duct Temperature Sensor: Shall consist of an averaging element, junction box for wiring connections and gasket to prevent air leakage. Provide sensor lengths and quantities to result in one lineal foot of sensing element for each three square feet of cooling coil/duct face area. Temperature range as required for resolution indicated in paragraph A.
   1. Sensing element shall be platinum RTD, or thermistor, +/- 0.3°F accuracy at calibration point.

F. Liquid immersion temperature sensor shall include thermowell, sensor and connection head for wiring connections. Provide thermally conductive paste in well to ensure good contact with the well. Temperature range shall be as required for resolution of 0.15°F.
   1. Sensing element (other systems) shall be platinum RTD, thermistor, or integrated circuit, +/- 0.4°F accuracy at calibration point. Temperature range shall be as required for resolution of 0.3°F.

G. Pipe Surface-Mount Temperature Sensor: Sensor are only for use in applications specifically identified on the drawings. Shall include metal junction box and clamps and shall be suitable for sensing pipe surface temperature and installation under insulation. Provide thermally conductive paste at pipe contact point. Temperature range shall be as required for resolution indicated in paragraph A.

1. Sensing element shall be platinum RTD, thermistor, or integrated circuit, +/- 0.4°F accuracy at calibration point.

H. Outside air sensors shall consist of a sensor, an aspirated enclosure, utility box, and watertight gasket to prevent water seepage. Temperature range shall be as required for resolution indicated in Paragraph A
1. Sensing element shall be platinum RTD, thermistor, or integrated circuit, +/- 0.4°F accuracy at calibration point.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Kele A21 or equal

2.05 TEMPERATURE TRANSMITTERS

A. Where required by Controller, or where wiring runs are over 50 feet, sensors as specified above may be matched with transmitters outputting 4-20 mA linearly across the specified temperature range. Transmitters shall have zero and span adjustments, an accuracy of 0.1°F when applied to the sensor range.

2.06 HUMIDITY TRANSMITTERS

A. Units shall be suitable for duct, wall (room) or outdoor mounting. Unit shall be two-wire transmitter utilizing bulk polymer resistance change or thin film capacitance change humidity sensor. Unit shall produce linear continuous output of 4-20 mA for percent relative humidity (% RH). A combination temperature and humidity sensor may be used for zone level monitoring. Sensors shall have the following minimum performance and application criteria:
1. Input Range: 0 to 100% RH.
2. Accuracy (% RH): +/- 2% (when used for enthalpy calculation, dewpoint calculation or humidifier control) or +/- 3% (monitoring only) between 20-90% RH at 77°F, including hysteresis, linearity, and repeatability.
3. Sensor Operating Range: As required by application
4. Long Term Stability: Less than 1% drift per year.

B. Acceptable Manufacturers: Units shall be Vaisala HM Series, General Eastern, Microline, or Hy-Cal HT Series, Kele H_20K.

2.07 PRESSURE AND DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS (DP)

A. General Purpose Low Pressure Air: Generally for use in static measurement of duct pressure or constant volume air velocity pressure measurement where the range is applicable.
1. General: Loop powered two-wire differential capacitance cell-type transmitter.
2. Output: two wire 4-20 mA output with zero adjustment.
3. Overall Accuracy: Plus or minus 1% of reading.
4. Minimum Range: 0.1 in. w.c.
5. Maximum Range: 10 inches w.c.
6. Housing: Polymer housing suitable for surface mounting.
7. Acceptable Manufacturers: Modus T30.
8. Static Sensing Element: Pitot-type static pressure sensing tips similar to Dwyer model A-301 and connecting tubing.
9. Range: Select for specified setpoint to be between 25% and 75% full-scale.

B. General Purpose Low Pressure/Low Differential Air: Generally for use in static measurement of space pressure or constant volume air velocity pressure measurement where the range is applicable.
1. General: Loop powered, two-wire differential capacitance cell type transmitter.
2. Output: Two-wire 4-20 mA output with zero adjustment.
3. Overall Accuracy: Plus or minus 1% of reading.
4. Minimum Range: 0 in. w.c.
5. Maximum Range: 0.1, 0.25, or 0.5 inches w.c.
6. Housing: Polymer housing suitable for surface mounting.
7. Acceptable Manufacturers: Modus T30 or Setra.

8. Static Sensing Element: Pitot-type static pressure sensing tips similar to Dwyer model A-301 and connecting tubing.
9. Range: Select for specified setpoint to be between 25% and 75% full-scale.

C. Velocity Pressure: Generally for use in air velocity pressure measurement where the range is applicable.
1. General: Loop powered two-wire differential capacitance cell type transmitter.
2. Output: Two-wire, 4-20 mA output with zero adjustment.
3. Overall Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.25%
4. Minimum Range: 0 in. w.c.
5. Maximum Range: 1 inch w.c.
6. Housing: Polymer housing suitable for surface mounting.
7. Acceptable Manufacturers: Setra 264 with optional FS accuracy above or equal. .
8. Range: Select for minimum range that will accept the maximum velocity pressure expected.

2.08 DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SWITCHES (DPS)

A. General Service - Air: Diaphragm with adjustable setpoint and differential and snap acting form C contacts rated for the application. Provide manufacturer's recommended static pressure sensing tips and connecting tubing

2.09 PRESSURE SWITCHES (PS)

A. Diaphragm or bourdon tube with adjustable setpoint and differential and snap-acting Form C contacts rated for the application. Pressure switches shall be capable of withstanding 150% of rated pressure.

B. Acceptable Manufacturers: Square D, ITT Neo-Dyn, ASCO, Penn, Honeywell, and Johnson Controls.

2.10 TRANSDUCERS

A. Binary to Analog Transducers or Tri-State-to-Voltage or -Current:
1. Adjustable zero and span.
2. Failure Mode on Power Loss: Shall be provided with memory feature to allow the transducer to return to last value on power failure.
3. Accuracy: ± 1% of span
4. Output Span: 4-20 mA, 0-5 Vdc, 1-5 Vdc, 0-10Vdc, 2-10Vdc, 0-15Vdc, 3-15Vdc
5. Input: 4-20 mA, pulse width modulated or tri-state input.
6. Tri-state Input Time Base: Dip switch selectable.
7. Enclosure: Polymer designed for surface or panel mount.
8. Failure Mode on Power Loss: Non-failsafe transducers shall have no output air loss. Failsafe transducers shall exhaust output upon power loss.
9. Acceptable Manufacturers: RE Technologies Model PWA Series.

B. Electronic-to Electronic (Voltage or Current to Current or Voltage):
1. Adjustable zero and span.
2. Failure Mode on Power Loss: Memory feature to allow the transducer to return to last value on power failure.
3. Accuracy: ± 1% of span.
4. Output Span: 4-20 mA, 0-5 Vdc, 1-5 Vdc, 0-10 Vdc, 2-10 Vdc, 0-15 Vdc, 3-15 Vdc.
5. Input: 0-20 Vdc, 0-20 ma, 0-10 kOhm.
6. Enclosure: Polymer enclosure designed for surface or panel mount.
7. Acceptable Manufacturers: RE Technologies Model PWA Series.

2.11 CURRENT SWITCHES (CS)

A. Clamp-On or Solid-Core Design Current Operated Switch (for Constant Speed Motor Status Indication)
1. Range: 1.5 to 150 amps.
2. Trip Point: Adjustable.

3. Switch: Solid state, normally open, 1 to 135 Vac or Vdc, 0.3 Amps. Zero off state leakage.
4. Lower Frequency Limit: 6 Hz.
5. Trip Indication: LED
6. Approvals: UL, CSA
7. Max. Cable Size: 350 MCM
8. Acceptable Manufacturers: Veris Industries H-708/908; Inc., RE Technologies SCS1150A-LED.

B. Clamp-on or Solid-Core Wire Through Current Switch (CS/CR) (for Constant Speed Motors): Same as CS with 24v command relay rated at 5A @ 240 Vac resistive, 3A @ 240 Vac inductive, load control contact power shall be induced from monitored conductor (minimum conductor current required to energize relay 5A, max. rating of 135A). Acceptable Manufacturers shall be Veris Industries, Inc., Model # H938/735; or RE Technologies RCS 1150.
1. Where used for single-phase devices, provide the CS/CR in a self-contained unit in a housing similar with override switch to Kele RIBX.

C. Clamp-On Design Current Operated Switch for Variable Speed Motor Status Indication
1. Range: 1.5 to 135 Amps.
2. Trip Point: Self-calibrating based on VA memory associated with frequency to detect loss of belt with subsequent increase of control output to 60 Hz.
3. Switch: Solid state, normally open, 1 to 135 Vac or Vdc, 0.3 Amps. Zero off state leakage.
4. Frequency Range: 5-75 Hz
5. Trip Indication: LED
6. Approvals: UL, CSA
7. Max. Cable Size: 350 MCM
8. Acceptable Manufacturers: Veris Industries, Inc. H-904.

D. Clamp-On Wire Through Current Switch (CS/CR) (for Variable Speed Motors): Same as CS with 24v command relay rated at 5A @ 240 Vac resistive, 3A @ 240 Vac inductive, load control contact power shall be induced from monitored conductor (minimum conductor current required to energize relay 5A, max. rating of 135A). Acceptable manufacturer shall be Veris Industries, Inc., Model # H934.

E. Variable Speed Status: Where current switches are used to sense the status for variable speed devices, the CT shall include on-board VA/Hz memory to allow distinction between a belt break and subsequent ramp up to 60 Hz, versus operation at low speed. The belt break scenario shall be indicated as a loss of status and the operation at low speed shall indicate normal status.

2.12 CURRENT TRANSFORMERS (CT)

A. Clamp-On Design Current Transformer (for Motor Current Sensing)
1. Range: 1-10 amps minimum, 20-200 amps maximum
2. Trip Point: Adjustable
3. Output: 0-5 VDC.
4. Accuracy: ±0.2% from 20 to 100 Hz.
5. Acceptable Manufacturers: KELE SA100, Veris Hawkeye 720.

2.13 OUTDOOR AIR STATIC PRESSURE SENSING TIP

A. Pressure sensor: Pressure sensing tip shall be designed to minimize the effects of wind and resulting velocity pressure up to 80 mph. Acceptable manufacturers shall be Dwyer A-306.

B. Low Air Pressure Surge Dampener: 30-second time constant. Acceptable manufacturer shall be Modus SD030.

2.14 CONTINUOUS LEVEL TRANSMITTERS

A. Capacitance Type
1. Provide a loop powered, continuous capacitance type level transmitter with adjustable span and zero.

2. Output: 4-20 mA.
3. Probe: Fluoropolymer coated stainless steel rod or cable. Provide cable probe with end attachment hardware or weight.
4. Electrical Enclosure: NEMA-4, -7.
5. Approvals: UL or CSA.
6. Accuracy: ±1% of calibrated span.
7. Process Connection: MPT or ANSI Flange as required.
8. Acceptable Manufacturers: Drexelbrook, Endress & Hauser.

B. Hydrostatic Pressure
1. Two wire smart d/p cell type transmitter
2. 4-20 mA or 1 to 5 volt user selectable linear or square root output
3. Adjustable span and zero
4. Stainless steel wetted parts
5. Environmental limits: –40 to 250 °F (-40 to 121°C), 0 to 100% RH
6. Accuracy: less than 0.1 percent of span
7. Output Damping: time constant user selectable from 0 to 36 seconds
8. Vibration Effect: Less than ±0.1% of upper range limit from 15 to 2000 Hz in any axis relative to pipe mounted process conditions.
9. Electrical Enclosure: NEMA 4, 4X, 7, 9
10. Approvals: FM, CSA
11. Acceptable Manufacturers: Rosemount Inc. 3051 Series, Foxboro, and Johnson-Yokagawa.

2.15 VORTEX SHEDDING FLOW METER FOR GAS SERVICE:

A. Output: Pulse output, field selectable pulse per units selected
B. Maximum Fluid Temperature: 800 °F
C. Wetted Parts: Stainless Steel
D. Housing: NEMA 4X
E. Turndown: 10:1 minimum.
F. Accuracy: 0.5% of calibrated span for liquids, 1% of calibrated span for gases.
G. Body: Wafer style or ANSI flanged to match piping specification.
H. Acceptable Manufacturers: Foxboro 83 series, Johnson-Yokagawa, and Rosemount.

2.16 AIRFLOW MEASURING STATIONS (AFMS)

A. General Requirements
1. Sensor Accuracy: ±1.5%
2. Electronics Accuracy: ±0.5%
3. Range: Select minimum range to accommodate the expected flow range of the project
4. Temperature Limits: 20-140°F
5. Velocity Range: 750 to 9000 fpm
6. Operating Range: Select minimum range to accommodate the expected flow range of the project

B. Pitot Tube Grids: Provide an array of velocity pressure sensing elements with averaging manifolds and air straightening vanes packaged in a sheet metal casing. Distribute sensing elements in accordance with ASHRAE for traversing ducts. Provide taps to connect tubing from instrumentation. Label AFM with drawing number designation, design flow, velocity pressure, and pressure drop. Application of pitot grids shall be allowed only where minimum expected flow is greater than 30% of maximum flow and greater than manufacturer's minimum flow to achieve accuracy.
1. Acceptable Manufacturer:
a. Tek-Air TFP-5000
b. Kele KMS-DS flow station

C. Hot Wire Grid: Provide an array of hot wire anemometer with air straightening package in a sheet metal casing. Provide averaging circuitry and transmitter to transmit a linear signal proportional to airflow.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturer:
      a. Ebtron
      b. Dybek
      c. Kurtz

D. Vortex Shedding Grid: Provide an array of vortex shedding elements designed to produce stable 'Karmen Vortices' that are linear with air velocity. Provide the electronics to totalize the pulses and output average velocity proportional to an output signal of 4-20ma.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturer: Tek-Air Systems Inc. 'Vortek' Model.

E. Fan Inlet: Provide multi-sensor probes which are installed in the inlet of the fan. Individual sensors on the probe provide direct proportional and linear signals to airflow velocity.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturer: Tek-Air Systems Inc. 'Vortek' Model 7000, 8000, or Approved Equal.

2.17 AIR VELOCITY PRESSURE SENSORS (INSERTION TYPE)

A. Single or Multi-Point Averaging (as indicated): Sensing tip shall be for insertion into duct with mounting flange and push on tube connections. Material shall be suitable to the application.

2.18 CO_2 SENSORS/TRANSMITTERS (CARBON DIOXIDE)

A. CO_2 sensors shall use silicon based, diffusion aspirated, infrared single beam, dual-wavelength sensor.
B. Range: 0-2000 ppm
C. Accuracy: ±36ppm at 800 ppm and 68°F.
D. Stability: 5% over 5 years.
E. Output: 4-20 mA, 0-10 Vdc or relay.
F. Mounting: Duct as indicated
G. Acceptable Manufacturer: Vaisala, Inc. GMD20 (duct) or GMW20 (wall), MSA, Inc, Kele 8000 series.

2.19 CO SENSORS/TRANSMITTERS (CARBON MONOXIDE)

A. CO sensors shall use electrochemical sensor.
B. Accuracy: 3% at 0-250 ppm
C. Display & Horn: Progressive or digital display and audible alarm, 65dBA @ 3'.
D. Output: 4-20 mA, 0-10 Vdc .
E. Mounting: Wall mounted between 3' and 5' above the floor in the boiler room.
F. Acceptable Manufacturer: Kele GMT-CO-S1A, MSA, Inc.

2.20 ELECTRIC CONTROL COMPONENTS

A. Limit Switches (LS): Limit switches shall be UL listed, SPDT or DPDT type, with adjustable trim arm. Limit switches shall be as manufactured by Square D, Allen Bradley.
B. Low Temperature Detector ('Freezestat') (FZ): Low temperature detector shall consist of a 'cold spot' element which responds only to the lowest temperature along any one foot of entire element, minimum bulb size of 1/8" x 20', junction box for wiring connections and gasket to prevent air leakage or vibration noise, DPST (4 wire, 2 circuit) with manual reset. Temperature range 15 to 55°F , factory set at 38°F.
C. High Temperature Detectors ('Firestat') (FS): High temperature detector shall consist of 3-pole contacts, a single point sensor, junction box for wiring connections and gasket to prevent air leakage of vibration noise, triple-pole, with manual reset. Temperature range 25 to 215°F.
D. Surface-Mounted Thermostat: Surface-mounted thermostat shall consist of SPDT contacts, operating temperature range of 50 to 150°F , and a minimum 10°F fixed setpoint differential.

E. Low Voltage Wall Thermostat: Wall-mounted thermostat shall consist of SPDT sealed mercury contacts, operating temperature range of 50 to 90°F , switch rating of 24 Vac (30 Vac max.), and both manual and automatic fan operation in both the heat and cool modes.

F. Control Relays: All control relays shall be UL listed, with contacts rated for the application, and mounted in minimum NEMA-1 enclosure for indoor locations, NEMA-4 for outdoor locations.
   1. Control relays for use on electrical systems of 120 volts or less shall have, as a minimum, the following:
      a. AC coil pull-in voltage range of +10%, -15% or nominal voltage.
      b. Coil sealed volt-amperes (VA) not greater than four (4) VA.
      c. Silver cadmium Form C (SPDT) contacts in a dustproof enclosure, with 8 or 11 pin type plug.
      d. Pilot light indication of power-to-coil and coil retainer clips.
      e. Coil rated for 50 and 60 Hz service.
      f. Acceptable Manufacturers: Relays shall be Potter Brumfield, Model KRPA.
   2. Relays used for across-the-line control (start/stop) of 120V motors, 1/4 HP, and 1/3 HP, shall be rated to break minimum 10 Amps inductive load. Relays shall be IDEC.
   3. Relays used for stop/start control shall have low voltage coils (30 VAC or less), and shall be provided with transient and surge suppression devices at the controller interface.

G. General Purpose Power Contactors: NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose magnetic contactor. ANSI/NEMA ICS 6, NEMA type 1enclosure. Manufacturer shall be Square 'D', Cutler-Hammer or Westinghouse.

H. Control Transformers: Furnish and install control transformers as required. Control transformers shall be machine tool type, and shall be US and CSA listed. Primary and secondary sides shall be fused in accordance with the NEC. Transformer shall be proper size for application, and mounted in minimum NEMA-1 enclosure.
   1. Transformers shall be manufactured by Westinghouse, Square ‘D’, or Jefferson.

I. Time Delay Relays (TDR): TDRs shall be capable of on or off delayed functions, with adjustable timing periods, and cycle timing light. Contacts shall be rated for the application with a minimum of two (2) sets of Form C contacts, enclosed in a dustproof enclosure.
   1. TDRs shall have silver cadmium contacts with a minimum life span rating of one million operations. TDRs shall have solid state, plug-in type coils with transient suppression devices.
   2. TDRs shall be UL and CSA listed, Crouzet type.

J. Electric Push Button Switch: Switch shall be momentary contact, oil tight, push button, with number of N.O. and/or N.C. contacts as required. Contacts shall be snap-action type, and rated for minimum 120 Vac operation. Switch shall be 800T type, as manufactured by Allen Bradley.

K. Pilot Light: Panel-mounted pilot light shall be NEMA ICS 2 oil tight, transformer type, with screw terminals, push-to-test unit, LED type, rated for 120 VAC. Unit shall be 800T type, as manufactured by Allen-Bradley.

L. Alarm Horn: Panel-mounted audible alarm horn shall be continuous tone, 120 Vac Sonalert solid-state electronic signal, as manufactured by Mallory.

M. Electric Selector Switch (SS): Switch shall be maintained contact, NEMA ICS 2, oil-tight selector switch with contact arrangement, as required. Contacts shall be rated for minimum 120 Vac operation. Switch shall be 800T type, as manufactured by Allen-Bradley.

2.21 DUCT SMOKE DETECTOR

A. Photoelectric detector with sampling tube that spans the entire width of duct. .

B. Velocity Rating : 100 to 4000 fpm or 500 to 4000fpm depending on the minimum velocity in the duct. Provide the 100 to 4000 fpm detector if the min duct velocity is below 550 fpm.

C. Output Contact: . Alarm, two sets form “C” rated at 10amps 115V resistive. One set of alarm contacts for BAS monitoring and fan shutdown. Trouble, one set of contacts.

D. Temperature & RH limits: 32 to 120°F and 10 to 85% relative humidity.

E. Acceptable Manufacturer:
   1. Invensys FIREX model 2650
   2. Sensor Systems DH100ACDCLP
   3. Air Products and Controls SL-2000

2.22 ELECTRICAL SUBMETERING

A. The submetering device will monitor current and voltage on all three phases and provide a pulse output.
B. Accuracy: ±1% from 7% to 100% of rated current (temperature range 0-60C)
C. Transducer: Conform to ANSI C12.1 metering accuracy standards.
D. Output: Pulse with field selectable pulse per kWh.
E. Mounting: In panel or as indicated on the drawing
F. Acceptable Manufacturer: Veris. H8053 for 3 phase loads and Veris H8051 for 1 phase loads.

2.23 REFRIGERANT MONITOR

A. General: Contractor shall provide a refrigerant sensitive infrared-based stationary refrigerant gas leak monitor system designed to continuously measure refrigerants. Refrigerant monitor shall be coordinated to detect refrigerants used in chiller or other refrigeration equipment. The alarm system shall comply with ANSI/ASHRAE 15-1994 and local code requirements.
B. The refrigerant monitor shall be capable of monitoring multiple refrigerant gas compounds at multiple locations in concentrations of 0 PPM to a minimum of 1000 PPM. The Monitor shall have a low range resolution of 1 PPM in the range of 1 PPM through 100 PPM. Readings above 100 PPM must be accurate to within ±5% of reading. Accuracy shall be maintained within ambient environmental ranges of 0ºC through 50ºC, (32ºF through 122ºF) and 5% through 90% relative humidity, non-condensing.
C. The refrigerant monitor shall automatically and continuously monitor the areas through a sample draw type tubular pick up system with an internal pump and filter. The installation of the monitoring control and the tubing shall be in strict accordance with the manufactures instructions. The location, routing, and final position of the sample tubes shall be submitted to the engineer with all necessary shop drawings and monitor specifications and installation instructions. Tubing size, tubing material, and tube length limitations shall be within the specifications of the monitor manufacture. The location and method of tube support and hangers must be identified on the shop drawings. Each of the sampling tubes shall have end of line filters.
D. The analyzer will be based on infrared detection technology, and will be factory tested and calibrated for the specified refrigerant or refrigerants. Factory certification of the calibrations shall be provided with the O&M manuals. . The analyzer shall provide a menu driven or automatic method of checking both zero, span calibration for each sensor, and allow for adjustment.
E. The monitor shall be equipped with 4 outputs. Three relays shall energize at an adjustable user defined set point based on refrigerant concentration levels. The relay threshold adjustment shall be protected by keyed or password access controls. Adjustments and observations shall be made at the front panel operator interface. The relay threshold values can be viewed without a password. The digital display will continuously display the refrigerant concentration level and alarm status. The fourth output shall indicate a monitor malfunction alarm. The monitor shall also have an analog output that will provide a liner scaled reference to the refrigerant concentration in parts per million. The analog output signal shall be an industry standard DC voltage, or mA current signal.
F. The monitor shall have a NEMA-4 moisture resistant enclosure with a gasketed, hinged front cover. Conduits and tube connections shall be located on the bottom of the enclosure. The enclosure shall have a rust and corrosion resistant finish.
G. The following alarm modes will be provided by the refrigerant monitor:
   1. An audible alarm shall be placed directly outside the machinery room.

2. A visual alarm, a flashing yellow light, shall be placed directly over the above the door or doors to the machinery room.
3. A sign, with 2" high letters, shall be provided at each door that states

DANGER
DO NOT ENTER WHEN LIGHT IS FLASHING
PELIGRO
NO ENTRAR CUANDO LA LUZ ESTE

4. ALARM LEVEL ONE – Low level of refrigerant concentration at one of the sampling points has detected the presence of a possible refrigerant leak. The initial alarm threshold shall be set to 5 PPM (adj.) and increased if there are nuisance alarms. This alarm level shall be displayed on the refrigerant monitor interface panel, indicating which sensor has triggered the alarm, and the associated concentration of refrigerant in PPM. This event will also send an Alarm Level One signal to the BAS through a digital output from the monitor relay. This alarm will remain active until the refrigerant concentration is reduced below set point.
5. ALARM LEVEL TWO – This alarm shall indicate that one of the sensors has detected a refrigerant concentration that is approaching dangerous levels in the area being monitored. This alarm shall be set to 25% below the maximum calculated refrigerant level specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 15-1994 and ASHRAE 34-1992. This alarm will be displayed on the monitor interface, and will indicate which of the sensors has caused the alarm, and the highest concentration in PPM. This event will also activate the beacon and audible alarm mounted on the refrigerant monitoring enclosure. This alarm will also be sent to the BAS through the digital output of the relay. In this mode the audible alarm can be silenced, but the beacon shall remain active until the fault is cleared
6. ALARM LEVEL THREE – This alarm shall be set at the maximum calculated refrigerant level specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 15-1994 and ASHRAE 34-1992 whichever is the lowest concentration. The refrigerant monitor interface will display which sensor has caused the alarm, and the associated concentration in PPM. This event will also activate the beacon and audible alarm mounted on the refrigerant monitoring enclosure. If the audible alarm had been silenced by an earlier alarm, the activation of this level three alarm will cause the audible alarm to be activated again. The relay in the refrigerant monitoring panel shall activate the space ventilation system, and will disable all combustion or flame-producing equipment via hardwired control interlocks. In addition, this event and will de-energize the energy source for any hot surface (850°F or 454°C) located in the space. Interlocks must also be provided to close any normally open doors or openings to the space for proper ventilation and isolation during this alarm condition. This alarm level will also signal the BAS through the digital output through the same relay. In this mode, the audible alarm can be silenced, but the beacon shall remain active until the fault is cleared.

H. All alarm conditions shall be report to the BAS system as follows:
1. ALARM LEVEL ONE - The lowest refrigerant alarm level shall detect the presence of refrigerant in low concentrations and energize a relay to signal a low level alarm to the BAS operator terminal(s). The alarm shall display an alarm message stating that there is a potential refrigerant leak in the designated area.
2. ALARM LEVEL TWO - The second refrigerant level alarm shall be a high refrigerant alarm alert. This alarm shall energize a relay to signal the BAS system indicating a high level alarm on the BAS operator terminal(s). This BAS alarm shall state that high levels of refrigerant have been detected in the designated area.
3. FAULT ALARM – Reports a high level alarm to the BAS operator terminal(s) that there is a fault in the refrigerant monitoring alarm system.

2.24 NAMEPLATES

A. Provide engraved phenolic or micarta nameplates for all equipment, components, and field devices furnished. Nameplates shall be 1/8 thick, black, with white center core, and shall be minimum 1" x 3", with minimum 1/4" high block lettering. Nameplates for devices smaller than 1" x 3" shall be attached to adjacent surface.

B. Each nameplate shall identify the function for each device.

2.25 TESTING EQUIPMENT

A. Contractor shall test and calibrate all signaling circuits of all field devices to ascertain that required digital and accurate analog signals are transmitted, received, and displayed at system operator terminals, and make all repairs and recalibrations required to complete test. Contractor shall be responsible for test equipment required to perform these tests and calibrations. Test equipment used for testing and calibration of field devices shall be at least twice as accurate as respective field device (e.g., if field device is +/-0.5% accurate, test equipment shall be +/-0.25% accurate over same range).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine areas and conditions under which control systems are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Contractor.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL SYSTEMS

A. General: Install systems and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, roughing-in drawings and details shown on drawings. Install electrical components and use electrical products complying with requirements of National Electric Code and all local codes.

B. Main Control Air Piping: All main air piping between the compressors and the control panels shall be copper, run per ASTM B88

C. Branch Control Air Piping: Accessible tubing is defined as that tubing run in mechanical equipment rooms; inside mechanical equipment enclosures, such as heating and cooling units, instrument panels; across roofs, in pipe chases, etc. Inaccessible tubing is defined as that tubing run in concrete slabs; furred walls; or ceilings with no access.

1. Provide copper tubing with maximum unsupported length of 3'-0", for accessible tubing run exposed to view. Polyethylene tubing may be used in lieu of above, when run within adequately supported, rigid enclosure, such as metallic raceways, or EMT. Terminal single-line connections less than 18 in length may be copper tubing, or polyethylene tubing run inside flexible steel protection. Accessible tubing run in concealed locations, such as pipe chases, suspended ceilings with easy access, etc. may be copper or polyethylene bundled and sheathed tubing.
2. Provide copper or polyethylene tubing for inaccessible tubing, other than in concrete pour. If polyethylene tubing is used, install in EMT or vinyl-jacketed polyethylene tubing.
3. Polyethylene piping may be used above suspended ceiling without conduit provided it is run in a neat and orderly fashion, bundled where applicable, and completely suspended (strapped to rigid elements or routed through wiring rings) away from areas of normal access. Tubing shall not be laid on the ceiling or duct.
4. Pressure test control air piping at 30 psi (207 kPa) for 24 hours. Test fails if more than 2 psi loss occurs.
5. Fasten flexible connections bridging cabinets and doors, neatly along hinge side, and protect against abrasion. Tie and support tubing neatly.
6. Number-code or color-code tubing, except local individual room control tubing, for future identification and servicing of control system. Code shall be as indicated on approved installation drawings.

D. Control Wiring: The term "control wiring" is defined to include providing of wire, conduit and miscellaneous materials as required for mounting and connection of electric control devices.

1. Wiring System: Install complete wiring system for electric control systems. Install all control wiring external to panels in electric metallic tubing or raceway. On Renovation projects, wiring in finished areas shall be routed in wire mold. The routing of wiring in finished areas must be specifically approved by the AOR/EOR. Installation of wiring shall generally follow building lines. Install in accordance with National Electrical Code and Division 26 of this Specification. Fasten flexible conductors bridging cabinets and doors, neatly along hinge side, and protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors neatly.
2. Control Wiring Conductors: Install control wiring conductors, without splices between terminal points, color-coded. Install in neat workmanlike manner, securely fastened. Install in accordance with National Electrical Code and Division 26 of this Specification.
3. Communication wiring, signal wiring and low voltage control wiring shall be installed separate from any wiring over thirty (30) volts. Signal wiring shield shall be grounded at controller end only, unless otherwise recommended by the controller manufacturer.
4. All WAN and LAN Communication wiring shield shall be terminated as recommended by controller manufacturer. All WAN and LAN Communication wiring shall be labeled with a network number, device ID at each termination and shall correspond with the WAN and LAN system architecture and floor plan submittals. All WAN and LAN cabling shall comply with applicable Division 26 requirements.
5. Number-code or color-code conductors appropriately for future identification and servicing of control system. Code shall be as indicated on approved installation drawings.

E. Freezestats: Install freezestats in a serpentine fashion where shown on drawing. Provide one foot of element for each square foot of coil face area. The length of element not just down stream of the coil will not be included in the coverage calculation. Where coil face area exceeds required length of element, provide multiple devices, wired in parallel for normally open close on trip application, wired in series for normally closed, open on trip application. Adequately support with coil clips such that sensor is not in direct contact with equipment. Coordinate the location of the switch such that it is normally accessible.

F. Room Temperature Sensors: Install sensors as shown on the drawings. Provide approved security screws for mounting, matching those installed in other areas of the project. Provide 3 tools to the Owner for installation and removal of the security screws. Seal conduit penetrations at the wall box airtight. Install batt insulation in the wall box to completely fill the box. Electrical connections shall be made using a twist-on sealant filled connectors suitable for the installation.

G. Averaging Temperature Sensors: Cover no more than three square feet per linear foot of sensor length except where indicated. Generally the sensor will be located where flow is sufficiently homogeneous/adequately mixed , consult AE for requirements.

H. Airflow Measuring Stations: Install per manufacturer's recommendations in an unobstructed straight length of duct (except those installations specifically designed for installation in fan inlet). For installations in fan inlets, provide on both inlets of double inlet fans and provide inlet cone adapter as recommended by AFM station manufacturer.

I. Fluid Flow Sensors: Install per manufacturer's recommendations in an unobstructed straight length of pipe.

J. Relative Humidity Sensors: Provide element guard as recommended by manufacturer for high velocity installations. For high limit sensors, position remote enough to allow full moisture absorption into the air stream before reaching the sensor.

K. Flow Switches: Where possible, install in a straight run of pipe at least 15 diameters in length to minimize false indications.

L. Current Switches for Motor Status Monitoring: Adjust so that setpoint is below minimum operating current and above motor no load current.

M. Supply Duct Pressure Transmitters:

1. General: Install pressure tips with at least 4 'round equivalent' duct diameters of straight duct with no takeoffs upstream. Install pressure tips securely fastened with tip facing upstream in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Locate the transmitter at an accessible location to facilitate calibration.
2. VAV System 'Down-Duct' Transmitters: Locate pressure tips approximately 2/3 of the hydraulic distance to the most remote terminal in the air system.

N. Cutting and Patching Insulation: Repair insulation to maintain integrity of insulation and vapor barrier jacket. Use hydraulic insulating cement to fill voids and finish with material matching or compatible with adjacent jacket material.

3.03 REFRIGERANT MONITOR

A. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Place sensing tips in locations to maximize effectiveness.

B. Hard wire interlocks to the emergency ventilation and shutdown of combustion devices.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 23
BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) - FIELD PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following:
   1. Building Controllers (BC).
   2. Application Specific Controllers (ASC).
   3. Advanced Application Controllers (AAC).

1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Furnish and install DDC Control units and/or Smart Devices required to support specified building automation system functions.

B. Refer to Division 23 Section “Building Automation System (BAS)” for general requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 STAND-ALONE FUNCTIONALITY

A. General: These requirements clarify the requirement for stand-alone functionality relative to packaging I/O devices with a controller. Stand-alone functionality is specified with the controller and for each Application Category specified in PART 3. This item refers to acceptable paradigms for associating the points with the processor.

B. Functional Boundary: Provide controllers so that all points associated with and common to one unit or other complete system/equipment shall reside within a single control unit. The boundaries of a standalone system shall be as dictated in the contract documents. Generally systems specified for the Application Category will dictate the boundary of the standalone control functionality. See related restrictions below. When referring to the controller as pertains to the standalone functionality, reference is specifically made to the processor. One processor shall execute all the related I/O control logic via one operating system that uses a common programming and configuration tool.

C. The following configurations are considered acceptable with reference to a controller’s standalone functionality:
   1. Points packaged as integral to the controller such that the point configuration is listed as an essential piece of information for ordering the controller (having a unique ordering number).
   2. Controllers with processors and modular back planes that allow plug in point modules as an integral part of the controller.
   3. I/O point expander boards, plugged directly into the main controller board to expand the point capacity of the controller.
   4. I/O point expansion devices connected to the main controller board via wiring and as such shall be remote from the controller and that communicate via a sub LAN protocol. These arrangements to be considered standalone shall have a sub LAN that is dedicated to that controller and include no other controller devices. All wiring to interconnect the I/O expander board shall be:
      a. Contained in the control panel enclosure;
      b. Or run in conduit. Wiring shall only be accessible at the terminations.

2.02 BUILDING CONTROLLER (BC)

A. General Requirements:
   1. The BC(s) shall provide fully distributed control independent of the operational status of the OWSs and CSS. All necessary calculations required to achieve control shall be executed within the BC independent of any other device. All control strategies performed

by the BC(s) shall be both operator definable and modifiable through the Operator Interfaces.

2. BCs shall perform overall system coordination, accept control programs, perform automated HVAC functions, control peripheral devices and perform all necessary mathematical and logical functions. BCs shall share information with the entire network of BCs and AACs/ASCs for full global control. Each controller shall permit multi-user operation from multiple workstations and portable operator terminals connected either locally or over the Primary Controller LAN. Each unit shall have its own internal RAM, non-volatile memory, microprocessor, battery backup, regulated power supply, power conditioning equipment, ports for connection of operating interface devices, and control enclosure. BCs shall be programmable from an operator workstation, portable operator's terminal, or hand held operating device. BC shall contain sufficient memory for all specified global control strategies, user defined reports and trending, communication programs, and central alarming.
3. BCs shall be connected to a controller network that qualifies as a Primary Controlling LAN.
4. All BCs shall be protected from any memory loss due to a loss of power by one or a combination of the following:
    a. Volatile RAM shall have a battery backup using a lithium battery with a rated service life of fifty (50) hours, and a rated shelf life of at least five years. Self-diagnostic routine shall report an alarm for a low battery condition.
    b. EEPROM, EPROM, or NOVROM non-volatile memory
5. In addition BCs shall provide intelligent, standalone control of HVAC functions. Each BC shall be capable of standalone direct digital operation utilizing its own processor, non-volatile memory, input/output, wiring terminal strips, A/D converters, real-time clock/calendar and voltage transient and lightning protection devices. Refer to standalone functionality specified above.
6. The BC shall provide for point mix flexibility and expandability. This requirement shall be met via either a family of expander boards, modular input/output configuration, or a combination thereof. Refer to stand alone functionality specified above.
7. All BC point data, algorithms and application software shall be modifiable from the Operator Workstation.
8. Each BC shall execute application programs, calculations, and commands via a microprocessor resident in the BC. The database and all application programs for each BC shall be stored in non-volatile or battery backed volatile memory within the BC and will be able to upload/download to/from the OWS and/or CSS.
9. BC shall provide buffer for holding alarms, messages, trends etc.
10. Each BC shall include self-test diagnostics, which allow the BC to automatically alarm any malfunctions, or alarm conditions that exceed desired parameters as determined by programming input.
11. Each BC shall contain software to perform full DDC/PID control loops.
12. For systems requiring end-of-line resistors those resistors shall be located in the BC, if it has I/O capability.
13. Input-Output Processing
    a. Digital Outputs (DO): Outputs shall be rated for a minimum 24 Vac or Vdc, 1 amp maximum current. Each shall be configurable as normally open or normally closed. Each output shall have an LED to indicate the operating mode of the output and Each DO shall be discrete outputs from the BC's board (multiplexing to a separate manufacturer's board is unacceptable). Provide suppression to limit transients to acceptable levels.
    b. Analog Inputs (AI): AI shall be O-5 Vdc, 0-10 Vdc, 0-20 Vdc, and 0-20 mA. Provide signal conditioning, and zero and span calibration for each input. Each

input shall be a discrete input to the BC's board (multiplexing to a separate manufacturers board is unacceptable unless specifically indicated otherwise). A/D converters shall have a minimum resolution of 12 bits.

c. Digital Inputs (DI): Monitor dry contact closures. Accept pulsed inputs of at least one per second. Source voltage for sensing shall be supplied by the BC and shall be isolated from the main board. Software multiplexing of an AI and resistors shall only be done in non-critical applications and only with prior approval of Architect/Engineer.

d. Universal Inputs (UI-AI or DI): To serve as either AI or DI as specified above.

e. Electronic Analog Outputs (AO): Voltage mode: 0-5 Vdc and 0-10 Vdc; Current mode: 4-20 mA. Provide zero and span calibration and circuit protection. Pulse Width Modulated (PWM) analog via a DO and transducer is acceptable only with client approval (PWM will not be allowed on loops with a short time constant such as discharge temperature loops, economizer loops, pressure control loops and the like. They are generally acceptable for standard room temperature control loops). Where these are allowed, transducer/actuator shall be programmable for normally open, normally closed, or hold last position and shall allow adjustable timing. PWM controlled devices will have an automatically initiated function that resets the device position tracking on a scheduled basis. The controllers shall initially be set up to perform this function once every 24 hours. The purpose of this required function is to recalibrate the position tracking to assure the device will open and close completely when commanded. Each AO shall be discrete outputs from the PCU's board (multiplexing to a separate manufacturers board is unacceptable). D/A converters shall have a minimum resolution of 10 bits.

f. Analog Output Pneumatic (AOP), 0-20 psi: Pneumatic outputs via an I/P transducer, or digital to pneumatic transducer are acceptable. Multiplexed digital to pneumatic transducers are acceptable provided they are supplied as a standard product and part of the BC and provide individual feedback. Multiplexed pneumatic outputs of a separate manufacturer are unacceptable.

g. Pulsed Inputs: Capable of counting up to 8 pulses per second with buffer to accumulate pulse count. Pulses shall be counted at all times.

14. A communication port for operator interface through a terminal shall be provided in each BC. It shall be possible to perform all program and database back-up, system monitoring, control functions, and BC diagnostics through this port. Standalone BC panels shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected modems, printers, or workstations.

15. Each BC shall be equipped with loop tuning algorithm for precise proportional, integral, derivative (PID) control. Loop tuning tools provided with the Operator Workstation software is acceptable. In any case, tools to support loop tuning must be provided such that P, I, and D gains are automatically calculated.

16. Slope intercepts and gain adjustments shall be available on a per-point basis.

17. BC Power Loss:

a. Upon a loss of power to any BC, the other units on the primary controlling network shall not in any way be affected.

b. Upon a loss of power to any BC, the battery backup shall ensure that the energy management control software, the Direct Digital Control software, the database parameters, and all other programs and data stored in the RAM are retained for a minimum of fifty (50) hours.

c. Upon restoration of power within the specified battery backup period, the BC shall resume full operation without operator intervention. The BC shall automatically reset its clock such that proper operation of any time dependent function is possible without manual reset of the clock. All monitored functions shall be updated.

d. Should the duration of a loss of power exceed the specified battery back-up period or BC panel memory be lost for any reason, the panel shall automatically report the condition (upon resumption of power) and be capable of receiving a download via the network, and connected computer. In addition, the owner shall be able to upload the most current versions of all energy management control programs, Direct Digital Control programs, database parameters, and all other data and programs in the memory of each BC to the operator workstation via the local area network, or via the telephone line dial-up modem where applicable, or to the laptop PC via the local RS-232C port.

18. BC Failure:
    a. Building Controller LAN Data Transmission Failure: BC shall continue to operate in stand-alone mode. BC shall store loss of communication alarm along with the time of the event. All control functions shall continue with the global values programmable to either last value or a specified value. Peer BCs shall recognize the loss, report alarm and reconfigure the LAN.
    b. BC Hardware Failure: BC shall cease operation and terminate communication with other devices.
19. Each BC shall be equipped with firmware resident self-diagnostics for sensors and be capable of assessing an open or shorted sensor circuit and taking an appropriate control action (close valve, damper, etc.).
20. BCs shall include LAN communications interface functions for controlling secondary controlling LANs Refer to Division 23 Section " Building Automation System (BAS) - Communications Devices" for requirements if this function is packaged with the BC.
21. A minimum of four levels of password protection shall be provided at each BC.
22. BCs shall be mounted on equipment, in packaged equipment enclosures, or locking wall mounted in a NEMA 1 enclosure.

B. BACnet Building Controller Requirements:
1. The BC(s) shall support all BIBBs defined in the BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) device profile as defined in the BACnet standard.
2. BCs shall communicate over the BACnet Building Controller LAN.
3. Each BC shall be connected to the BACnet Building Controller LAN communicating to/from other BCs.

2.03 ADVANCED APPLICATION SPECIFIC CONTROLLER (AAC) AND APPLICATION SPECIFIC CONTROLLER (ASC)

A. General Requirements:
1. AACs and ASCs shall provide intelligent, standalone control of HVAC equipment. Each unit shall have its own internal RAM, non-volatile memory and will continue to operate all local control functions in the event of a loss of communications on the ASC LAN or sub-LAN. Refer to standalone requirements by application specified in PART 3 of this Section. In addition, it shall be able to share information with every other BC and AAC /ASC on the entire network.
2. Each AAC and ASC shall include self-test diagnostics that allow the AAC /ASC to automatically relay to the BC, LAN Interface Device or workstation, any malfunctions or abnormal conditions within the AAC /ASC or alarm conditions of inputs that exceed desired parameters as determined by programming input.
3. AACs and ASCs shall include sufficient memory to perform the specific control functions required for its application and to communicate with other devices.
4. Each AAC and ASC must be capable of stand-alone direct digital operation utilizing its own processor, non-volatile memory, input/output, minimum 8 bit A to D conversion, voltage transient and lightning protection devices. All volatile memory shall have a battery backup of at least fifty- (50) hrs with a battery life of five years.

5. All point data; algorithms and application software within an AAC /ASC shall be modifiable from the Operator Workstation.
6. AAC and ASC Input-Output Processing
    a. Digital Outputs (DO): Outputs shall be rated for a minimum 24 VAC or VDC, 1 amp maximum current. Each shall be configurable as normally open or normally closed. Each output shall have an LED to indicate the operating mode of the output and Each DO shall be discrete outputs from the AAC/ASC's board (multiplexing to a separate manufacturer's board is unacceptable). Provide suppression to limit transients to acceptable levels.
    b. Analog Inputs (AI): AI shall be 0-5 Vdc, 0-10Vdc, 0-20Vdc, and 0-20 mA. Provide signal conditioning, and zero and span calibration for each input. Each input shall be a discrete input to the BC's board (multiplexing to a separate manufacturers board is unacceptable unless specifically indicated otherwise). A/D converters shall have a minimum resolution of 8-10 bits depending on application.
    c. Digital Inputs (DI): Monitor dry contact closures. Accept pulsed inputs of at least one per second. Source voltage for sensing shall be supplied by the BC and shall be isolated from the main board. Software multiplexing of an AI and resistors shall only be done in non-critical applications and only with prior approval of Architect/Engineer
    d. Universal Inputs (UI-AI or DI): To serve as either AI or DI as specified above.
    e. Electronic Analog Outputs (AO): Voltage mode: 0-5 Vdc and 0-10 Vdc; Current mode: 4-20 mA. Provide zero and span calibration and circuit protection. Pulse Width Modulated (PWM) analog via a DO and transducer is acceptable only with client approval (PWM will not be allowed on loops with a short time constant such as discharge temperature loops, economizer loops, pressure control loops and the like. They are generally acceptable for standard room temperature control loops). Where these are allowed, transducer/actuator shall be programmable for normally open, normally closed, or hold last position and shall allow adjustable timing. PWM controlled devices will have an automatically initiated function that resets the device position tracking on a scheduled basis. The controllers shall initially be set up to perform this function once every 24 hours. The purpose of this required function is to recalibrate the position tracking to assure the device will open and close completely when commanded. Each AO shall be discrete outputs from the PCU's board (multiplexing to a separate manufacturers board is unacceptable). D/A converters shall have a minimum resolution of 10 bits.
    f. Analog Output Pneumatic (AOP), 0-20 psi: Pneumatic outputs via an I/P transducer, or digital to pneumatic transducer are acceptable. Multiplexed digital to pneumatic transducers are acceptable provided they are supplied as a standard product and part of the AAC /ASC and provide individual feedback. Multiplexed pneumatic outputs of a separate manufacturer are unacceptable.

B. BACnet AAC(s) and ASC(s) Requirements:
1. The AAC(s) and ASC(s) shall support all BIBBs defined in the BACnet Building Controller (B-AAC and B-ASC) device profile as defined in the BACnet standard.
2. AAC(s) and ASC(s) shall communicate over the BACnet Building Controller LAN or the ASC LAN or sub-LAN.
3. Each BC shall be connected to the BACnet Building Controller LAN communicating to/from other BCs.

C. Terminal Box Controllers:
1. Terminal box controllers controlling damper positions to maintain a quantity of supply or exhaust air serving a space shall have an automatically initiated function that resets the volume regulator damper to the fully closed position on a scheduled basis. The controllers shall initially be set up to perform this function once every 24 hours. The purpose of this required function is to reset and synchronize the actual damper position

with the calculated damper position and to assure the damper will completely close when commanded. The software shall select scheduled boxes randomly and shall not allow more than 5% of the total quantity of controllers in a building to perform this function at the same time. When possible the controllers shall perform this function when the supply or exhaust air system is not operating or is unoccupied.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION:

A. Examine areas and conditions under which control systems are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Contractor.

3.02 SYSTEM ACCESS:

A. Provide an Ethernet connection and 5 port hub at each panel housing a controller or controllers, that provides access to the Local Supervisory LAN and to the Control System Server for all Controllers, other than an Application Category 1 Controllers. The user shall be able to access each controller on the system using this connection via the Control System Server database for graphics, schedules, programming, controller configuration etc.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL SYSTEMS:

A. General: Install systems and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, specifications roughing-in drawings and details shown on drawings. Contractor shall install all controllers in accordance with manufacturer’s installation procedures and practices.

3.04 HARDWARE APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Here is where you assert your concept of optimal mix of power/quality/cost effectiveness. There are multiple levels of controller/application defined, the higher Category numbers being more powerful and expensive. The AE defines - within each category - what system(s) must be controlled (in standalone fashion) by controllers that meet that category. This item needs specific attention on every project.

B. General: The functional intent of this specification is to allow cost effective application of manufacturers standard products while maintain the integrity and reliability of the control functions. Specific requirements indicated below are required for the respective application. Manufacturer shall apply the most cost-effective unit that meets the requirement of that application.

C. Standalone Capability: Each Control Unit shall be capable of performing the required sequence of operation for the associated equipment. All physical point data and calculated values required to accomplish the sequence of operation shall originate within the associated CU with only the exceptions enumerated below. Refer to Item 2.01 above for physical limitations of standalone functionality. Listed below are functional point data and calculated values that shall be allowed to be obtained from or stored by other CUs or SDs via LAN.

D. Where associated control functions involve functions from different categories identified below, the requirements for the most restrictive category shall be met.

E. Application Category Type 0 (Distributed monitoring)

1. Applications in this category include the following:
    a. Monitoring of variables that are not used in a control loop, sequence logic, or safety.
2. Points on BCs, AACs, and ASCs may be used in these applications as well as Ds and/or general-purpose I/O modules.
3. Where these points are trended, contractor shall verify and document that the network bandwidth is acceptable for such trends and is still capable of acceptable and timely control function.

4. LAN Restrictions: These points may reside on any controller

F. Application Category Type 1
   1. Applications in this category include the following:
      a. Fan Coil Units
      b. Airflow Control Boxes (VAV and Constant Volume Terminal Units)
      c. Terminal Control Dampers/Reheat Vales
      d. Unitary equipment <15 tons (Package Terminal AC Units, Package Terminal Heat Pumps, Split-System AC Units, Split-System Heat Pumps, and Water-Source Heat Pumps)
      e. Induction Units
   2. Standalone Capability: Provide capability to execute control functions for the application for a given setpoint or mode, which shall generally be occupied mode control. Only the following data (as applicable) may be acquired from other controllers via LANs. In the event of a loss of communications with any other controller, or any fault in any system hardware that interrupts the acquisition of any of these values, the ASC shall use the last value obtained before the fault occurred. If such fault has not been corrected after the specified default delay time, specified default value(s) shall then be substituted until such fault has been corrected.

Physical/Virtual Point	Default Value
Scheduling Period	Normal
Morning Warm-Up	Off (cold discharge air)
Load Shed	Off (no shedding)
Summer/Winter	Winter
Trend Data	N/A

   3. Mounting:
      a. ASCs that control equipment located above accessible ceilings shall be mounted on the equipment in an accessible enclosure and shall be rated for plenum use.
      b. ASCs that control equipment mounted in a mechanical room shall either be mounted in, on the equipment, or on the wall of the mechanical room at an adjacent, accessible location.
      c. ASCs that control equipment mounted outside or in occupied spaces shall either be located in the unit or in a proximate mechanical/utility space.
      d. Contractor for this Section may furnish ASCs to the terminal unit manufacturer for factory mounting.
   4. LAN Segment Restrictions:
      a. BACnet Systems: Limit the number of AAC's/ASC's servicing any one of these applications on the LAN Segment to 32.

G. Application Category Type 2
   1. Applications in this category include the following:
      a. Constant Volume Air Handlers
      b. Unitary Equipment >= 15 tons (Air Conditioners, Heat Pumps, Packaged Heating/Cooling Units, and the like)
      c. Constant Volume Pump Start/Stop
      d. Misc. Equipment (Exhaust Fan) Start/Stop
      e. Misc. Monitoring (not directly associated with a control sequence and where trending is not critical)
      f. Variable Speed Drive (VSD) controllers not requiring safety shutdowns of the controlled device
      g. Multizone Air handlers with fewer than 5 zones
   2. Standalone Capability: Only the following data (as applicable) may be acquired from other AACs via LANs. In the event of a loss of communications with any other AACs, or any fault in any system hardware that interrupts the acquisition of any of these values,

the AAC shall use the last value obtained before the fault occurred. If such fault has not been corrected after the specified default delay time, specified default value(s) shall then be substituted until such fault has been corrected.

Physical/Virtual Point	Default Delay Time	Default Value
Outside Air Temperature	3 minutes	80°F
Outside Air Humidity	3 minutes	60%RH
Outside Air Enthalpy	3 minutes	30 Btu/lb
Trend Data		N/A
Cooling/Heating Requests	3 minutes	None

3. Mounting:
   a. AACs that control equipment located above accessible ceilings shall be mounted on the equipment in an accessible enclosure and shall be rated for plenum use.
   b. AACs that control equipment mounted in a mechanical room may either be mounted in, on the equipment, or on the wall of the mechanical room at an adjacent, accessible location.
   c. AACs that control equipment mounted outside or in occupied spaces shall either be located in the unit or in a proximate mechanical/utility space.
4. LAN Segment Restrictions:
   a. BACnet Systems: Limit the number of AAC's servicing any one of these applications on the LAN Segment to 32.

H. Application Category Type 3
1. Applications in this category include the following:
   a. VAV Air Handlers
   b. Dual Duct Air Handlers
   c. Multizone Air Handlers with 5 or more zones
   d. Self Contained VAV Units
   e. Central Cooling Plant
   f. Central Heating Plant
   g. Cooling Towers
   h. Sequenced or Variable Speed Pump Control
   i. Local Chiller Control (unit specific)
   j. Local Free Cooling Heat Exchanger Control
2. BACnet Systems: BCs shall be used in these applications.

3.05 CONTROL UNIT REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS)" for requirements pertaining to control unit quantity and location.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 24

BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) - COMMUNICATION DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes network integration devices.

1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

B. Contractor shall provide all interface devices and software to provide an integrated system connecting Advanced Application Controllers, Application Specific Controllers, Building Controllers, Gateways, and Operator Work Station & Control System Server. The Control System Server will also be connected to the WAN.

C. Refer to Division 23 Section “Building Automation System (BAS),” for general requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 NETWORK CONNECTION

A. WAN: Internet-based network connecting multiple facilities with a central data warehouse and server, accessible via standard web-browser. This is an existing infrastructure and Contractor is not required to configure any components of this WAN. Contractor is however required to provide data and services via BACnet over IP to the WAN.

B. Refer Division 23 Section “BAS Software and Programming” for the naming convention.

2.02 BUILDING CONTROLLER (BC), BACNET

C. The BC shall be a microprocessor-based communications device which acts as a router between the Primary LAN and Supervisory LAN

D. The BC shall perform information translation between the Primary LAN and the Supervisory LAN, supervise communications on a polling supervisory LAN, and shall be applicable to systems in which the same functionality is not provided in the BC.

E. BC shall support interrogation, full control, and all utilities associated with all AACs and ASCs under the Primary Controller LAN.

F. All BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs) are required to be supported for each native BACnet device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION:

A. Examine areas and conditions under which control systems are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL SYSTEMS:

B. General: Install systems and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, roughing-in drawings and details shown on drawings.

C. Contractor shall fully configure and provide all interface devices and software to provide an integrated system.

D. Contractor shall closely coordinate with client, or designated representative, to establish IP addresses and communications to assure proper operation of the building control system with the WAN, CSS’s/OWS’s and OWSs.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 25

BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) - SOFTWARE AND PROGRAMMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following:

1. System Software.
2. Programming Description.
3. Control Algorithms.
4. Energy Management Applications.
5. Password Protection.
6. Alarm Reporting.
7. Trending.
8. Data Acquisition and Storage.
9. Point Structuring.
10. Dynamic Color Graphics.

1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Fully configure systems and furnish and install all software, programming and dynamic color graphics for a complete and fully functioning system as specified.

B. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS)" for general requirements.

C. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Sequence of Operation" for specific sequences of operation for controlled equipment.

1.03 LICENSING

A. Include licensing for all software packages at all required Control System Server (CSS Operator Work Stations (OWS) and Portable Operator Terminal (POT).

B. Any operator interface, programming environment, networking, database management and any other software used by the Contractor to install the system or needed to operate the system to its full capabilities shall be licensed and provided to Client.

C. Include licensing for all software packages at all required Web Server and OWS's and POT's. Licensing shall allow access to all aspects of the system including system access, workstations, points, programming, database management, graphics etc. No restrictions shall be placed on the licensing. All operator interfaces, programming environment, networking, database management and any other software used by the Contractor to install the system or needed to operate the system to its full capabilities shall be licensed and provided to Client

D. All software should be available on all Web Servers and OWS's provided, and on all Portable Operator Terminals. Hardware and software keys to provide all rights shall be installed on all workstations. At least 2 sets of CDs shall be provided with backup software for all software provided, so that Client may reinstall any software as necessary. Include all licensing for workstation operating systems, and all required third-party software licenses. These backup disks will include a backup of all program data files, graphics etc. and shall allow the owner to completely restore the system in the case of a computer malfunction

E. Provide evidence of licensing including version and original software copies for each WEB Server OWS's and POT's. Licenses shall allow for access to any site device and shall not be restricted to accessing, database management, configuring, etc. the LANs included in this

project. The licensing and registration proof will be provided when the system is installed on site.

F. Upgrade all software packages to the release (version) in effect at the end of the Warranty Period and provide a letter indicating the current release/version date at the end of the warranty.

G. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS)" for further requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM SOFTWARE-GENERAL

A. Functionality and Completeness: The Contractor shall furnish and install all software and programming necessary to provide a complete and functioning system as specified. The Contractor shall include all software and programming not specifically itemized in these Specifications, which is necessary to implement, maintain, operate, and diagnose the system in compliance with these Specifications.

2.02 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

A. All bindings, SNVT's, configuration values, addresses, calibration values, parameters, variables, tuning values, gains, test values, etc. for all software, programs, network configurations etc. shall be exposed and be available for setup, manipulation, adjustment, calibration, testing, etc. at all workstations, CSS's/OWS's, POT's for use as allowed via applicable password protection for all controllers and devices throughout all networks and the entire BAS.

B. Building Controller (BC) Software Residency: Each BC as defined below shall be capable of control and monitoring of all points physically connected to it. All software including the following shall reside and execute at the BC:

1. Real-Time Operating System software
2. Real-Time Clock/Calendar and network time synchronization
3. BC diagnostic software
4. LAN Communication software/firmware
5. Direct Digital Control software
6. Alarm Processing and Buffering software
7. Energy Management software
8. Data Trending, Reporting, and Buffering software
9. I/O (physical and virtual) database
10. Remote Communication software

C. Advanced Aplication Controller (AAC) Application Specific Controller (ASC) Software Residency: Each AAC/ASC as defined below shall be capable of control and monitoring of all points physically connected to it. As a minimum, software including the following shall reside and execute at the AAC/ASC. Other software to support other required functions of the AAC/ASC may reside at the BC or LAN interface device (specified in Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Communication Devices") with the restrictions/exceptions per application provided in Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Field Panels":

1. Real-Time Operating System software
2. AAC/ASC diagnostic software
3. LAN Communication software
4. Control software applicable to the unit it serves that will support a single mode of operation
5. I/O (physical and virtual) database to support one mode of operation

D. Stand Alone Capability: BC shall continue to perform all functions independent of a failure in other BC/AAC/ASC or other communication links to other BCs/AACs/ASCs. Trends and runtime totalization shall be retained in memory. Runtime totalization shall be available on all digital input points that monitor electric motor status. Refer also to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Field Panels" for other aspects of stand alone functionality..

E. Operating System: Controllers shall include a real-time operating system resident in ROM. This software shall execute independently from any other devices in the system. It shall support all specified functions. It shall provide a command prioritization scheme to allow functional override of control functions. Refer also to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Field Panels" for other aspects of the controller's operating system.

F. Network Communications: Each controller shall include software/firmware that supports the networking of CUs on a common communications trunk that forms the respective LAN. Network support shall include the following:

1. Controller communication software shall include error detection, correction, and re-transmission to ensure data integrity.
2. Operator/System communication software shall facilitate communications between other BCs, all subordinate AACs/ASCs, Gateways and LAN Interface Devices or Operator Workstations. Gateways and LAN Interface Devices or CSS's/OWS's. Software shall allow point interrogation, adjustment, addition/deletion, and programming while the controller is on line and functioning without disruption to unaffected points. The software architecture shall allow networked controllers to share selected physical and virtual point information throughout the entire system.

G. Point Database/Summary Table: All points included in the typical equipment point list must be represented in a common, open protocol format. Naming conventions for these points and network addressing are discussed in PART 3 of this Section. Point/system database creation and modification shall be via a user-friendly, menu-driven program. System software shall support virtual or logic point (points not representing a physical I/O) creation. Software shall support virtual points with all services specified herein. Database software shall support definition of all parameters specified in PART 3 of this Section for a given point type. If database does not support all these parameters, software module shall be created and attached to the points which accomplish the respective function.

H. Diagnostic Software: Controller software shall include diagnostic software that checks memory and communications and reports any malfunctions

I. Alarm/Messaging Software: Controller software shall support alarm/message processing and buffering software as more fully specified below.

J. Application Programs: CUs shall support and execute application programs as more fully specified below:

1. All Direct Digital Control software, Energy Management Control software, and functional block application programming software templates shall be provided in a 'ready-to-use' state, and shall not require (but shall allow) Client programming.
2. Line programs shall supply preprogrammed functions to support these energy management and functional block application algorithms. All functions shall be provided with printed narratives and/or flow diagrams to document algorithms and how to modify and use them.

K. Security: Controller software shall support multiple level password access restriction as more fully specified below.

L. Direct Digital Control: Controller shall support application of Direct Digital Control Logic. All logic modules shall be provided pre-programmed with written documentation to support their application. Provide the following logic modules as a minimum:

1. Proportional-Integral-Derivative (PID) control with analog, PWM and floating output
2. Two Position control (Hi or Low crossing with deadband)
3. Single-Pole Double-Throw relay
4. Delay Timer (delay-on-make, delay-on-break, and interval)
5. Hi/Low Selection
6. Reset or Scaling Module
7. Logical Operators (And, Or, Not, Xor)

M. Psychrometric Parameters: Controller software shall provide preprogrammed functions to calculated and present psychrometric parameters (given temperature and relative humidity) including the following as a minimum: Enthalpy, Wet Bulb Temperature.

N. Updating/Storing Application Data: Site-specific programming residing in volatile memory shall be uploadable/downloadable from an OWS or CSS connected locally, to the Primary LAN, to the Local Supervisory LAN and remotely via the internet and modem and telephone lines as applicable but all must be available. Initiation of an upload or download shall include all of the following methods; Manually, Scheduled, and Automatically upon detection of a loss or change.

O. Restart: System software shall provide for orderly shutdown upon loss of power and automatic restart upon power restoration. Volatile memory shall be retained; outputs shall go to programmed fail (open, closed, or last) position. Equipment restart shall include a user definable time delay on each piece of equipment to stagger the restart. Loss of power shall be alarmed at operator interface indicating date and time.

P. Time Synchronization: Operators shall be able to set the time and date in any device on the network that supports time-of-day functionality. The operator shall be able to select to set the time and date for an individual device, devices on a single network, or all devices simultaneously. Automatic time synchronization shall be provided.

Q. Misc. Calculations: System software shall automate calculation of psychometric functions, calendar functions, kWh/kW, and flow determination and totalization from pulsed or analog inputs, curve-fitting, look-up table, input/output scaling, time averaging of inputs and A/D conversion coefficients.

2.03 APPLICATION PROGRAMMING DESCRIPTION

A. The application software shall be user programmable.

B. This specification generally requires a programming convention that is logical, easy to learn, use, and diagnose. General approaches to application programming shall be provided by one, or a combination, of the following conventions:

1. Point Definition: provide templates customized for point type, to support input of individual point information.
2. Graphical Block Programming: Manipulation of graphic icon ‘blocks’, each of which represents a subroutine, in a functional/logical manner forming a control logic diagram. Blocks shall allow entry of adjustable settings and parameters via pop-up windows. Provide a utility that shall allow the graphic logic diagrams to be directly compiled into application programs. Logic diagrams shall be viewable either off-line, or on-line with real-time block output values.
3. Functional Application Programming: Pre-programmed application specific programs that allow/require limited customization via ‘fill-in-the-blanks’ edit fields. Typical values would be setpoints gains, associated point names, alarm limits, etc.

4. Line Programming: Textual syntax-based programming in a language similar to BASIC designed specifically for HVAC control. Subroutines or functions for energy management applications, setpoints, and adjustable parameters shall be customizable, but shall be provided preprogrammed and documented.

C. Provide a means for testing and/or debugging the control programs both off-line and on-line.

2.04 ENERGY MANAGEMENT APPLICATIONS

A. System shall have the ability to perform all of the following energy management routines via preprogrammed function blocks or template programs. As a minimum provide the following whether or not required in the software:

1. Time-of-Day Scheduling
2. Calendar-Based Scheduling
3. Holiday Scheduling
4. Temporary Schedule Overrides
5. Optimal Start/Optimal Stop-based on space temperature offset, outdoor air temperature, and building heating and cooling capacitance factors as a minimum
6. Night Setback and Morning Recovery Control, with ventilation only during occupancy
7. Economizer Control (enthalpy or dry-bulb)
8. Peak Demand Limiting and Load Shedding. The demand limiting function will use demand data as the basis for the function and the load shedding program will use space temperature adjustment or means acceptable to Client to provide load shedding response. The function selected for a given building will be made by Client.
9. Dead Band Control

B. All programs shall be executed automatically without the need for operator intervention, and shall be flexible enough to allow operator customization. For exmaple the load shedding program will allow the operator to determine the spaces to be included in the load shed as well as the duration of the event. Programs shall be applied to building equipment as described in the Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Sequence of Operation."

2.05 PASSWORD PROTECTION

A. Multiple-level password access protection shall be provided to allow the Client authorized BAS Administrator to limit workstation control, display and database manipulation capabilities as deemed appropriate for each user, based upon an assigned user name with a unique password.

B. All passwords for the system shall be provided to Client including administrator, dealer, or factory level passwords for the systems provided under this project.

C. Passwords shall restrict access to all Control Units.

D. Each user name shall be assigned to a discrete access level. A minimum of five levels of access shall be supported. Alternately, a comprehensive list of accessibility/functionality items shall be provided, to be enabled or disabled for each user.

E. A minimum of 20 user names shall be supported and programmed per Client direction. Provide abilty to deactivate passwords without removal of the login and password. Client will be provided with the highest level login and password so that Client controls the administrative passwords.

F. Operators shall be able to perform only those commands available for the access level assigned to their user name.

G. User-definable, automatic log-off timers of from 1 to 60 minutes shall be provided to prevent operators from inadvertently leaving interface device software on-line. This timer will not be the windows system screen saver feature.

2.06 ALARM AND EVENT MANAGEMENT REPORTING

A. Alarm management shall be provided to monitor, buffer, and direct alarms and messages to operator devices and memory files. Each BC shall perform distributed, independent alarm analysis and filtering to minimize operator interruptions due to non-critical alarms, minimize network traffic, and prevent alarms from being lost. At no time shall a BC's ability to report alarms be affected by either operator activity at an Operator Workstation or local handheld device, or by communications with other panels on the network.

1. Alarm Descriptor: Each alarm or point change shall include that point's English language description, and the time and date of occurrence. In addition to the alarm's descriptor and the time and date, the user shall be able to print, display and store an alarm message to more fully describe the alarm condition or direct operator response.
2. Alarm Prioritization: The software shall allow users to define the handling and routing of each alarm by their assignment to discrete priority levels. A minimum of ten priority levels shall be provided. For each priority level, users shall have the ability to enable or disable an audible tone whenever an alarm is reported and whenever an alarm returns to normal condition. Users shall have the ability to manually inhibit alarm reporting for each individual alarm and for each priority level. Contractor shall coordinate with Client on establishing alarm priority definitions.
3. Alarm Report Routing: Each alarm priority level shall be associated with a unique user-defined list of operator devices including any combination of local or remote workstations, printers and workstation disk files. All alarms associated with a given priority level shall be routed to all operator devices on the user-defined list associated with that priority level. For each priority level, alarms shall be automatically routed to a default operator device in the event that alarms are unable to be routed to any operator device assigned to the priority level.
4. Auto-Dial Alarm Routing: For alarm priority levels that include a remote workstation (accessed by modem) as one of the listed reporting destinations, the BC shall initiate a call to report the alarm, and shall terminate the call after alarm reporting is complete. System shall be capable of multiple retries and buffer alarms until a connection is made. If no connection is made, system shall attempt connection to an alternate dial-up workstation. System shall also be able to dial multiple pagers upon alarm activation.
5. Alarm Acknowledgment: For alarm priority levels that are directed to a workstation screen, an indication of alarm receipt shall be displayed immediately regardless of the application in use at the workstation, and shall remain on the screen until acknowledged by a user having a password that allows alarm acknowledgment. Upon acknowledgment, the complete alarm message string (including date, time, and user name of acknowledging operator) shall be stored in a selected file on the workstation hard disk.
6. Alarm Display: All alarms will popup as described in Alarm Acknowledgement. The owner will have the option to limit the pop up alarms based on alarm priority.

B. It shall be possible for any operator to receive a summary of all alarms, regardless of acknowledgement status; for which a particular recipient is enrolled for notification; based on current event state; based on the particular event algorithm (e.g., change of value, change of state, out of range, and so on); alarm priority; and notification class.

C. Alarm Historical Database: The database shall store all alarms and events object occurrences in an ODBC or an OLE database-compliant relational database. Provide a commercially

available ODBC driver or OLE database data provider, which would allow applications to access the data using standard Microsoft Windows Data Services.

2.07 TRENDING

A. The software shall display historical data in both a tabular and graphical format. The requirements of this trending shall include the following:

1. Trends may be buffered in the BC as long as the trend data in the BC and the historical data stored on hard disk is displayed seamlessly.
2. Provide trends for all physical points, virtual points and calculated variables.
3. Trend data shall be stored in relational database format as specified in herein under Data Acquisition and Storage.
4. In the graphical format, the trend shall plot at least 4 different values for a given time period superimposed on the same graph. The 4 values shall be distinguishable by using unique colors. In printed form the 4 lines shall be distinguishable by different line symbology. Displayed trend graphs shall indicate the engineering units for each trended value.
5. The sample rate and data selection shall be selectable by the operator.
6. The trended value range shall be selectable by the operator.
7. Where trended values on one table/graph are COV, software shall automatically fill the trend samples between COV entries.

B. Control Loop Performance Trends: Controllers incorporating PID control loops shall also provide high resolution sampling in less than six second increments for verification of control loop performance.

C. Data Buffering and Archiving: Trend data may be buffered at the BC, and uploaded to hard disk storage for archiving as needed based on the BC's memory constraints. All archived trends shall be transmitted to the on-site OWS as applicable. Uploads shall occur based upon a user-defined interval, manual command, or automatically when the trend buffers become full.

D. Time Synchronization: Provide a time master that is installed and configured to synchronize the clocks of all devices supporting time synchronization. Synchronization shall be done using Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). All trend sample times shall be able to be synchronized. The frequency of time synchronization message transmission shall be selectable by the operator.

2.08 DYNAMIC PLOTTING

A. Provide a utility to dynamically plot in real-time at least 4 values on a given 2-dimensional dynamic plot/graph with at least two Y-axes. At least 5 dynamic plots shall be allowed simultaneously.

2.09 DATA ACQUISITION AND STORAGE

A. All points included in the typical equipment point list must be represented in a common, open or accessible format. Naming conventions for these points and network addressing are discussed in the 'Point Naming Conventions' paragraph below.

B. Data from the BAS shall be stored in relational database format. The format and the naming convention used for storing the database files shall remain consistent across the database and across time. The relational structure shall allow for storage of any additional data points, which are added to the BAS in future. The metadata/schema or formal descriptions of the tables, columns, domains, and constraints shall be provided for each database.

C. The database shall allow applications to access the data while the database is running. The database shall not require shutting down in order to provide read-write access to the data. Data

shall be able to be read from the database without interrupting the continuous storage of trend data being carried by the BAS.

D. The database shall be ODBC or OLE database compliant. Provide a commercially-available ODBC driver or OLE database data provider, which would allow applications to access the data via Microsoft Windows standard data access services.

2.10 TOTALIZATION

A. The software shall support totalizing analog, digital, and pulsed inputs and be capable of accumulating, storing, and converting these totals to engineering units used in the documents. These values shall generally be accessible to the Operator Interfaces to support management-reporting functions.

B. Totalization of electricity use/demand shall allow application of totals to different rate periods, which shall be user definable.

C. When specified to provide electrical or utility Use/Demand, the Contractor shall obtain from the local utility all information required to obtain meter data, including k factors, conversion constants, and the like.

2.11 EQUIPMENT SCHEDULING

A. Provide a graphic utility for user-friendly operator interface to adjust equipment-operating schedules.

B. Scheduling feature shall include multiple seven-day master schedules, plus holiday schedule, each with start time and stop time. Master schedules shall be individually editable for each day and holiday.

C. Scheduling feature shall allow for each individual equipment unit to be assigned to one of the master schedules.

D. Timed override feature shall allow an operator to temporarily change the state of scheduled equipment. An override command shall be selectable to apply to an individual unit, all units assigned to a given master schedule, or to all units in a building. Timed override shall terminate at the end of an operator selectable time, or at the end of the scheduled occupied/unoccupied period, whichever comes first. A password level that does not allow assignment of master schedules shall allow a timed override feature.

E. A yearly calendar feature shall allow assignment of holidays, and automatic reset of system real time clocks for transitions between daylight savings time and standard time.

2.12 POINT STRUCTURING AND NAMING

A. General: The intent of this Section is to require a consistent means of naming points across the Client Enterprise. Contractor shall configure the systems from the perspective of the Enterprise, not solely the local project. The following requirement establishes a standard for naming points and addressing Buildings, Networks, Devices, Instances, and the like. The interface shall always use this naming convention. The naming convention shall be implemented as much as practical, and any deviations from this naming convention shall be approved by Client.

B. Point Summary Table

1. The term ‘Point’ is a generic description for the class of object represented by analog and binary inputs, outputs, and values.
2. With each schematic, Contractor shall provide a Point Summary Table listing:
    a. Building number and abbreviation
    b. System type
    c. Equipment type

d. Point suffix
e. Full point name (see Point Naming Convention paragraph)
f. English language point description
g. Ethernet backbone network number,
h. Network number
i. Device ID
j. Device MAC address
k. Engineering units

3. Point Summary Table shall be provided in both hard copy and in electronic format (ODBC-compliant).
4. Point Summary Table shall also illustrate Network Variables Bindings.
5. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Client representative and compile and submit a proposed Point Summary Table for review prior to any object programming or project startup.
6. The Point Summary Table shall be kept current throughout the duration of the project by the Contractor as the Master List of all points for the project. Project closeout documents shall include an up-to-date accurate Point Summary Table. The Contractor shall deliver to Client the final Point Summary Table prior to final acceptance of the system. The Point Summary Table shall be used as a reference and guide during the commissioning process.
7. The Point Summary Table shall contain all data fields on a single row per point. The Point Summary Table is to have a single master source for all point information in the building that is easily sorted and kept up-to-date. Although a relational database of Device ID-to-point information would be more efficient, the single line format is required as a single master table that will reflect all point information for the building. The point description shall be an easily understandable English-language description of the point.
8. Point Summary Table shall also illustrate Network Variables/BACnet Data Links.

Point Summary Table Example

Row Headers and Examples

(Transpose for a single point per row format)

Building Number	0000
System Type	Cooling
Equipment Type	Chiller
Point Suffix	CHLR1KW
*Point Name (Object Name)	0006.COOLING.CHILLER.CHLR1KW
*Point Description (Object Description)	Chiller 1 kW
Ethernet Network Number	600
Network Number	610
Device ID	1024006
Device MAC address	24
Point Type	AI
Instance Number	4
Engineering Units	KW
Network Variable?	True
Server Device	1024006
Client Devices	1028006

* Represents information that shall reside in the property for the point

C. Point Naming Convention

1. All point names shall adhere to the format as established below. Said objects shall include all physical I/O points, calculated points used for standard reports, and all application program parameters. For each BAS point, a specific and unique name shall be required.
2. For each point, four (4) distinct descriptors shall be linked to form each unique object name: Building, System, Equipment, and Point. All keyboard characters except a space are allowable. Each of the four descriptors must be bound by a period to form the entire object name. Reference the paragraphs below for an example of these descriptors.
3. Client shall designate the *Building* descriptor. The *System* descriptor shall further define the object in terms of air handling, cooling, heating, or other system. The *Equipment* descriptor shall define the equipment category; e.g., Chiller, Air Handler, or other equipment. The *Point* descriptor shall define the hardware or software type or function associated with the equipment; e.g., supply temperature, water pressure, alarm, mixed air temperature setpoint, etc. and shall contain any numbering conventions for multiples of equipment; e.g., CHLR1KW, CHLR2KW, BLR2AL (Boiler 2 Alarm), HWP1ST (Hot Water Pump 1 Status).
4. A consistent object (point) naming convention shall be utilized to facilitate familiarity and operational ease across the WAN. Inter-facility consistency shall be maintained to ensure transparent operability to the greatest degree possible. The table below details the object naming convention and general format of the descriptor string.

Point Name Requirements

Descriptors		**Comment**
Building Number	0006	The Master Building List also has the correct number for each building.
System	AIRHANDLING	
	EXHAUST	
	HEATING	Boilers and ancillary equipment
	COOLING	Chillers and ancillary equipment
	UTILITY	Main electrical and gas meters
	ENDUSE	Specific building loads by type
	MISC	
Equipment	AHU-1	
	BOILERS	Non-specific boiler system points
	CHILLERS	Non-specific chiller system points
	FACILITY	
	TOWERS	
	WEATHER	
Point Suffix	See Input/Output point summary table for conventions	

5. Examples: Within each point name, the descriptors shall be bound by a period. Within each descriptor, words shall not be separated by dashes, spaces, or other separators as follows:
   a. 0006.COOLING.CHILLERS.CHWP1ST
   b. 0006.HEATING.BOILERS.BLR1CFH

D. Device Addressing Convention:

1. BACnet - Network numbers and Device Object IDs shall be unique throughout the network.
2. BACnet - For each BAS object, a specific and unique BACnet object name shall be required.
3. All assignment of network numbers and Device Object IDs shall be coordinated with Client.
4. Each Network number shall be unique throughout all facilities and shall be assigned in the following manner unless specified otherwise:
   a. **BBBFF**, where: BBB = 1-655 assigned to each building, FF = 00 for building backbone network, 1-35 indicating floors or separate systems in the building.
5. Each Device Identifier property shall be unique throughout the system and shall be assigned in the following manner unless specified otherwise:
   a. **XXFFBBB**, where: XX = number 0 to 40, FF = 00 for building backbone network, 1-35 indicating floors or separate systems in the building. BBB = 1-655 assigned to each building.

6. The Contractor shall coordinate with Client or a designated representative to ensure that no duplicate Device Object IDs occur.
7. Alternative Device ID schemes or cross project Device ID duplication if allowed shall be approved before project commencement by Client.

2.13 OPERATOR INTERFACE GRAPHIC SOFTWARE

A. Graphic software shall facilitate user-friendly interface to all aspects of the System Software specified above. The intent of this specification is to require a graphic package that provides for intuitive operation of the systems without extensive training and experience. It shall facilitate logical and simple system interrogation, modification, configuration, and diagnosis.

B. Graphic software shall support multiple simultaneous screens to be displayed and resizable in a 'Windows'-like environment. All functions excepting text entry functions shall be executable with a mouse.

C. Graphic software shall provide for multitasking such that third-party programs can be used while the OWS software is on line. Software shall provide the ability to alarm graphically even when operator is in another software package.

D. Operating system software shall be Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional or Microsoft Windows XP Professional.

E. The software shall allow for Client creation of user-defined, color graphic displays of geographic maps, building plans, floor plans, and mechanical and electrical system schematics. These graphics shall be capable of displaying all point information from the database including any attributes associated with each point (i.e., engineering units, etc.). In addition, operators shall be able to command equipment or change setpoints from a graphic through the use of the mouse.

F. Screen Penetration: The operator interface shall allow users to access the various system graphic screens via a graphical penetration scheme by using the mouse to select from menus or 'button' icons. All screens will be accessible out the use of outline type selection screens. Each graphic screen shall be capable of having a unique list of other graphic screens that are directly linked through the selection of a menu item or button icon.

G. Dynamic Data Displays: Dynamic physical point values shall automatically updated at a minimum frequency of 6 updates per minute without operator intervention. Point value fields shall be displayed with a color code depicting normal, abnormal, override and alarm conditions.

H. Point Override Feature: Provide the following:

1. An Operator from a work-station shall have the capability to place an end device under manual control, which shall prevent the control logic from making changes to the end device status, and provide the operator with the ability to position the end device. It must be possible to put a point under manual control and command the point to a specific state or value from a graphic page. Once under manual control the point will be able to be realeased to automatice operation from the same graphics page. See the definition of Manual Control in the definition of terms Article in this Section.
2. An Operator from the operator work-station shall have the capability to place a sensor input into test mode. When in test mode, any changes from the physical sensor will no longer be recognized and the value reported to control logic shall take a value that is assigned to it by the operator from the operator work-station. It must be possible to put a point in test and assign a test value from a graphic page. See the definition of Test Mode in the definition of terms Article of this Section.
3. Points that are overridden shall be reported as an alarm, and shall be displayed in a coded color. The alarm message shall include the operator's user name. A list of points

that are currently in an override state shall be available through menu selection. Such overrides or changes shall occur in the control unit, not just in the workstation software. The graphic point override feature shall be subject to password level protection.

I. Dynamic Symbols: Provide a selection of standard symbols that change in appearance based on the value of an associated point.

1. Analog symbol: Provide a symbol that represents the value of an analog point as the length of a line or linear bar.
2. Digital symbol: Provide symbols such as switches, pilot lights, rotating fan wheels, etc. to represent the value of digital input and output points.
3. Point Status Color: Graphic presentations shall indicate different colors for different point statuses. (For instance, green = normal, red = alarm, gray (or '???') for non-response.

J. Graphics Development Package: Graphic development and generation software shall be provided to allow the user to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays. The application of the graphic editing will be controlled by password level at the programmer level or higher.

1. The Contractor shall provide libraries of pre-engineered screens and symbols depicting standard air handling unit components (e.g. fans, cooling coils, filters, dampers, etc.), mechanical system components (e.g., pumps, chillers, cooling towers, boilers, etc.), complete mechanical systems (e.g. constant volume-terminal reheat, VAV, etc.) and electrical symbols.
2. The Graphic Development Package shall use a mouse or similar pointing device to allow the user to perform the following:

a. Define symbols
b. Position items on graphic screens
c. Attach physical or virtual points to a graphic
d. Define background screens
e. Define connecting lines and curves
f. Locate, orient and size descriptive text
g. Define and display colors for all elements
h. Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays.
i. Create hot spots or link triggers to other graphic displays or other functions in the software.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

A. Contractor shall thoroughly and completely configure the BAS software, supplemental software, network communications, CSS, OWS, printer, and remote communications for a fully complete operational system.

3.02 SITE-SPECIFIC APPLICATION PROGRAMMING

A. Provide all database creation and site-specific application control programming as required by these Specifications, national and local standards and for a fully functioning system. Contractor shall provide all initial site-specific application programming and thoroughly document programming. Generally meet the intent of the written sequences of operation. If a sequence is not clear, in the contractors opinion, it is the Contractor's responsibility to request clarification..

B. All site-specific programming shall be fully documented and submitted for review and approval, both prior to downloading into the panel, at the completion of functional performance testing, and at the end of the warranty period.

C. All programming, graphics and data files must be maintained in a logical system of directories with self-explanatory file names. All files developed for the project will be the property of Client and shall remain on the workstation(s)/server(s) at the completion of the project.

3.03 PASSWORD SETUP

A. Set up the following password levels to include the specified capabilities:

1. Level 1: (BAS Administrator)
    a. Level 2 capabilities
    b. View, add, change and delete user names, passwords, password levels
    c. All unrestricted system capabilities including all network management functions.
2. Level 2: (Programmer)
    a. Level 3 capabilities
    b. Configure system software
    c. Modify control unit programs
    d. Modify graphic software
    e. Essentially unrestricted except for viewing or modifying user names, passwords, password levels
3. Level 3: (Chief Engineer)
    a. Level 4 capabilities
    b. Override output points
    c. Change all setpoints and reset schedules.
    d. Exit BAS software to use third party programs
4. Level 4: (Assitant)
    a. Level 5 capabilities
    b. Acknowledge alarms
    c. Change equipment schedules
    d. Change room temperature setpoints
5. Level 5: (Veiw only Access)
    a. Display all graphic data
    b. Trend point data

B. Contractor shall assist Client operators with assigning user names, passwords and password levels. There may be multiple login name and passwords for a given password level. The contractor will be responsible for changing BAS administrator and Programmer level passwords if those are accidentally provided to other contractors or the building engineer.

3.04 POINT PARAMETERS

A. Provide the following minimum programming for each analog input:

1. Name
2. Address
3. Scanning frequency or COV threshold
4. Engineering units
5. Offset calibration and scaling factor for engineering units
6. High and low alarm values and alarm differentials for return to normal condition
7. High and low value reporting limits (reasonableness values), which shall prevent control logic from using shorted or open circuit values.

8. Default value to be used when the actual measured value is not reporting. This is required only for points that are transferred across the primary and/or secondary controlling networks and used in control programs residing in control units other than the one in which the point resides. Events causing the default value to be used shall include failure of the control unit in which the point resides, or failure of any network over which the point value is transferred. All default values will be provided in list format for evaluation by Client.
9. Selectable averaging function that shall average the measured value over a user selected number of scans for reporting.

B. Provide the following minimum programming for each analog output:

1. Name
2. Address
3. Output updating frequency
4. Engineering units
5. Offset calibration and scaling factor for engineering units
6. Output Range
7. Default value to be used when the normal controlling value is not reporting.

C. Provide the following minimum programming for each digital input:

1. Name
2. Address
3. Engineering units (on/off, open/closed, freeze/normal, etc.)
4. Debounce time delay
5. Message and alarm reporting as specified
6. Reporting of each change of state, and memory storage of the time of the last change of state
7. Totalization of on-time (for all motorized equipment status points), and accumulated number of off-to-on transitions.

D. Provide the following minimum programming for each digital output:

1. Name
2. Address
3. Output updating frequency
4. Engineering units (on/off, open/closed, freeze/normal, etc.)
5. Direct or Reverse action selection
6. Minimum on-time
7. Minimum off-time
8. Status association with a DI and failure alarming (as applicable)
9. Reporting of each change of state, and memory storage of the time of the last change of state.
10. Totalization of on-time (for all motorized equipment status points), and accumulated number of off-to-on transitions.
11. Default value to be used when the normal controlling value is not reporting.

3.05 TRENDS

A. Contractor shall establish and store trend logs. Trend logs shall be prepared for each physical input and output point. All dynamic virtual points such as setpoints subject to a reset schedule, intermediate setpoint values for cascaded control loops, and the like will be trended as directed by the Client.

B. Client will analyze trend logs of the system operating parameters to evaluate normal system functionality. Contractor shall establish these trends and ensure they are being stored properly.

1. Data shall include a single row of field headings and the data thereafter shall be contiguous. Each record shall include a date and time field or single date stamp. Recorded parameters for a given piece of equipment or component shall be trended at the same intervals and be presented in a maximum of two separate 2-dimensional formats with time being the row heading and field name being the column heading.

C. Sample times indicated as COV (±) or change-of-value mean that the changed parameter only needs to be recorded after the value changes by the amount listed. When outputting to the trending file, the latest recorded value shall be listed with any given time increment record. The samples shall be filled with the latest values also if the points include different time intervals. If the BAS does not have the capability to record based on COV, the parameter shall be recorded based on the interval common to the unit.

D. Trending intervals or COV thresholds shall be dictated by Client, or their representative, upon system start-up.

E. The Contractor shall demonstrate functional trends as specified for a period of 30 days after successful system demonstration before final acceptance of the system. The trend limit is 1 year from demonstration for LEED projects that require trend data for M&V purposes. The limit on the length of trend data will be a function of the storage capacity of the computer.

3.06 TREND GRAPHS

A. Prepare controller and workstation software to display graphical format trends. Trended values and intervals shall be the same as those specified

B. Lines shall be labeled and shall be distinguishable from each other by using either different line types, or different line colors.

C. Provide a legend identifying the line color and symbol along side the point noun name for each point in the trend. Aslo, indicate engineering units of the y-axis values; e.g. degrees F., inches w.g., Btu/lb, percent open, etc.

D. The y-axis scales shall be chosen so that all trended values are in a readable range. Do not mix trended values on one graph if their unit ranges are incompatible.

E. Trend outside air temperature, humidity, and enthalpy during each period in which any other points are trended except for control loop performance trends.

F. Allow point groups to be saved for future trends. For example HW supply and return temperatures along with HX stm valve position and pump status.

3.07 ALARMS

A. Override Alarms: Any point that is overridden through the override feature of the graphic workstation software shall be reported as a Level 3 alarm.

B. Analog Input Alarms: For each analog input, program an alarm message for reporting whenever the analog value is outside of the programmed alarm limits. Report a 'Return-to-Normal' message after the analog value returns to the normal range, using a programmed alarm differential. The alarm limits shall be individually selected by the Contractor based on the following criteria:

1. Space temperature, except as otherwise stated in sequence of operation: Level 3

a. Low alarm: 64°F
b. Low return-to-normal: 68°F
c. High alarm: 85°F

d. High return-to-normal: 80°F

2. Controlled media temperature other than space temperature (e.g. AHU discharge air temperature, steam converter leaving water temperature, condenser water supply, chilled water supply, etc.): Level 3 (If controlled media temperature setpoint is reset, alarm setpoints shall be programmed to follow setpoint)

a. Low alarm: 3°F below setpoint
b. Low return-to-normal: 2°F below setpoint
c. High alarm: 3°F above setpoint
d. High return-to-normal: 2°F above setpoint.

3. AHU mixed air temperature: Level 4

a. Low alarm: 45°F
b. Low return-to-normal: 46°F
c. High alarm: 90°F
d. High return-to-normal: 89°F

4. Duct Pressure:

a. Low alarm: 0.5”w.g. below setpoint
b. Low return-to-normal: 0.25”w.g. below setpoint
c. High alarm: 0.5”w.g. above setpoint
d. High return-to-normal: 0.25”w.g. above setpoint

5. Space humidity:

a) Low alarm: 35%

b) Low return-to-normal: 40%

c) High alarm: 75%

d) High return-to-normal: 70%

C. Status versus Command Alarms: The Sequences of Operation are based on the presumption that motor starter Hand-Off-Auto (HOA) switches are in the ‘Auto’ position. BAS shall enunciate the following Level 5 alarm message if status indicates a unit is operational when the run command is not present or vice versa:

1. *DEVICE XXXX* FAILURE: Status is indicated on *{the device}* even though it has been commanded to stop. Check the HOA switch, control relay, status sensing device, contactors, and other components involved in starting the unit. Acknowledge this alarm when the problem has been corrected.

D. Maintenance Alarms: Enunciate Level 5 alarms when runtime accumulation exceeds a value specified by the operator.

1. *DEVICE XXXX REQUIRES MAINTENANCE*. Runtime has exceeded specified value since last reset.

E. See requirements for additional equipment-specific alarms specified in Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Sequences of Operation."

3.08 GRAPHIC SCREENS

A. Main Screen: The Main screen will be the first screen displayed after login, no navigation required to get to the main screen (see Exhibit A for sample screens). This screen will have the following features:

1. There will be a link button to the floor plans, Summary screen, and system schematic screens. In the event that there are more 10 to 15 AHU, Boiler and Chiller screens a button to groups of AHU's will be provided.
2. Manufacturer/Installer Logo or information is not to be included in the screen.
3. Provide a global command to open heating or cooling valves to facilitate Test Adjust and Balance. The command will be grouped so that an AHU can be balanced as well as total system balancing. The same function will apply for VAV AHU's were all the boxes can be set at minimum or maximum flow.

B. Floor Plan Screens: The contract document drawings will be made available to the Contractor in AutoCAD format upon request. These drawings may be used only for developing backgrounds for specified graphic screens; however Client does not guarantee the suitability of these drawings for the Contractor's purpose (see Exhibit B for sample screens). .

1. Provide graphic floor plan screens for each floor and/or wing of the building. Indicate the location of all equipment that is not located on the equipment room screens.
    a. Indicate the location of temperature sensors associated with each temperature-controlled zone (i.e., VAV terminals, fan-coils, single-zone AHUs, etc.) on the floor plan screens.
    b. Display the space temperature point adjacent to each temperature sensor symbol along with the room set point. Use a distinct line symbol to demarcate each terminal unit zone boundary. Use distinct background colors for each zone to demarcate the air-handling unit to which it is associated.
    c. Verify final room number/name assignments, as these are often different than initially assigned room numbers on the contract drawings.
    d. Provide a drawing link from each space temperature sensor symbol and equipment symbol shown on the graphic floor plan screens to each corresponding zone equipment schematic graphic screen. Because the area available for the floor plans varies from system to system, the size of text used to display data such as room number and temperature will be at least 1/8" high on the screen when the entire floor plan section is displayed.
    e. The floor plan graphics will also indicate the location of control panels. For control devices such as duct smoke detectors, system pressure or differential pressure sensors (water or air), airflow stations that are located outside the equipment rooms. All of these devices will be linked to the associated system graphic. For terminal units the link to the associated system graphic is sufficient and the associated unit control devices do not need to be located on the floor plan.
2. Provide graphic floor plan screens for each mechanical equipment room and a plan screen of the roof. Indicate the location of each item of mechanical equipment. Provide a drawing link from each equipment symbol shown on the graphic plan view screen to each corresponding mechanical system schematic graphic screen.
3. Provide a graphic building key plan that will allow navigation at a floor level or from floor to floor. Use elevation views and/or plan views as necessary to graphically indicate the location of all of the larger scale floor plans. Link graphic building key plan to larger scale partial floor plans. Provide links from each larger scale graphic floor plan screen to the building key plan and to each of the other graphic floor plan screens.
4. When there is more than one building, provide a graphic site plan with links to and from each building plan.

C. System Schematic Screens: Provide graphic system schematic screen for each HVAC subsystem (AHU) controlled with each I/O point in the project appearing on at least one graphic screen. System graphics shall be have the same look as the submittal diagrams (do not use

three dimensional graphics) with status, setpoints, current analog input and output values, operator commands, etc. as applicable. Input/output devices shall be shown in their schematically correct locations with the associated value, noun name and engineering units. The position of valves or dampers will be % OPEN. For three way valves it will be %OPEN to the device. The noun name (English language descriptors) shall be included for each point on all graphics; this may be accomplished by the use of a pop-up window accessed by selecting the displayed point with the mouse. Indicate all adjustable setpoints on the applicable system schematic graphic screen or, if space does not allow, on a supplemental linked-setpoint screen. Similar AHU's will have the same organization of information. For example a single zone AHU will not put all the set points across the top and multizone put them on the side or bottom (see Exhibit C for sample screens).

1. Provide graphic screens for each air handling system. Indicate outside air temperature and enthalpy, and mode of operation as applicable (i.e., occupancy mode and heating, cooling, economizer etc based on the sequence of operations). Link screens for air handlers to the heating system and cooling system graphics. Link screens for supply and exhaust systems if they are not combined onto one screen.
2. Provide a graphic screen for each zone with the associated control devices or terminal unit with a link to the associated system schematic screen of the air handling unit that serves the zone.
3. Provide a cooling system graphic screen showing all points associated with the chillers, cooling towers and pumps. Indicate outside air dry-bulb temperature and calculated wet-bulb temperature. Link the chilled water and condenser water systems screens if they cannot fit onto one cooling plant graphic screen.
4. Link the heating and cooling system graphics to utility history reports showing current and monthly electric uses, demands, peak values, and other pertinent values.
5. For each system schematic screen, including AHU, Boiler, Chiller and terminal unit screen, provide a button linked to a text version of the sequence of operation for the device or system. The sequence will be updated with the as-built sequence following completion of the demonstration.

D. System Summary Screens: On each graphic System Screen, provide drawing links to the graphic air handling unit schematic screens (see Exhibit D for sample screens).

1. Provide a chilled water valve screen showing the analog output signal of all chilled water valves with signals expressed as percentage of fully open valve (percentage of full cooling). Indicate the discharge air temperature and setpoint of each air handling unit, cooling system chilled water supply and return temperatures and the outside air temperature and humidity on this graphic. Provide drawing links between the graphic cooling plant screen and this graphic screen.
2. Provide a heating water valve screen showing the analog output signal of all air handling unit heating water valves with signals expressed as percentage of fully open valve (percentage of full heating). Indicate the temperature of the controlled medium (such as AHU discharge air temperature or zone hot water supply temperature) and the associated setpoint and the outside air temperature and humidity.
3. When there are more than four AHU's on the system provide a summary screen with the following type of information for each AHU, each fan command, status, alarms (smoke, freeze, duct static), DAT and duct pressure if applicable. For the heating system provide status and supply water temp or steam pressure and for the chiller provide status and chilled water supply temperature.
4. Provide a BAS system summary screen using the control system riser diagram to show the communication status of all controllers (BC, AAC and ASC's) on the BAS as well as

all interface devices such as VFD's, chillers and boiler panels etcetera. Use green board concept, green means communicating, red is not communicating.

5. Provide a terminal unit summary screen grouped by floor or AHU. If the summary is grouped by floor then the AHU will be shown for each terminal unit and vice versa. The points shown will depend on the type of terminal unit and will include room name, floor or AHU, room set point and temperature, DAT, valve position, command status, alarm and occupancy state.
6. Exhaust fans will be show in a table format showing the command signal, the status, the alarm condition, and the occupancy state.

E. Alarms: Each programmed alarm shall appear on at least one graphic screen. In general, alarms shall be displayed on the graphic system schematic screen for the system that the alarm is associated with (for example, chiller alarm shall be shown on graphic cooling system schematic screen). For all graphic screens, display analog values that are in a 'high alarm' condition in a red color, 'low alarm' condition in a blue color. Indicate digital values that are in alarm condition in a red color. When an alarm first occurs it shall "popup" over the current screen so that the operator is imediatedly aware of an alarm.

1. Maintenance Alarms

    a. Runtime alarm screen will list all equipment with a BAS status. For each piece of equipment the screen will display the current run time (since the last reset), the runtime alarm limit (adj.), its alarm status (red / green) and the total accumulated runtime. The total accumulated runtime would only be zeroed out if the equipment were replaced. For equipment with internal runtime meters ensure that the total accumulative runtime is synchronized.

F. Utility Metering: Provide a graphic for the gas, electric and water utility data required in the sequence of operations. This may entail multiple screens if submetering of the gas or electric usage is included in the project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 25.01

BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) – SOFTWARE AND PROGRAMMING EXHIBITS – Alternative Bid

EXHIBIT A Main Screen Example Graphics

EXHIBIT B Floor Plan Example Graphics

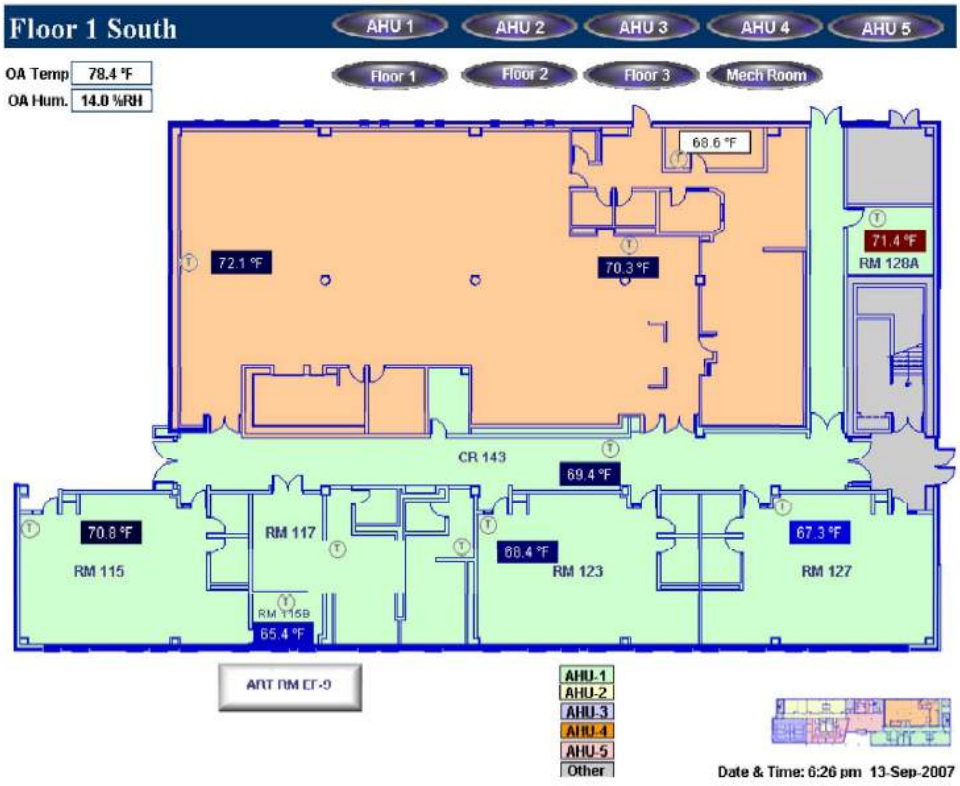
EXHIBIT C System Schematic Example Graphics

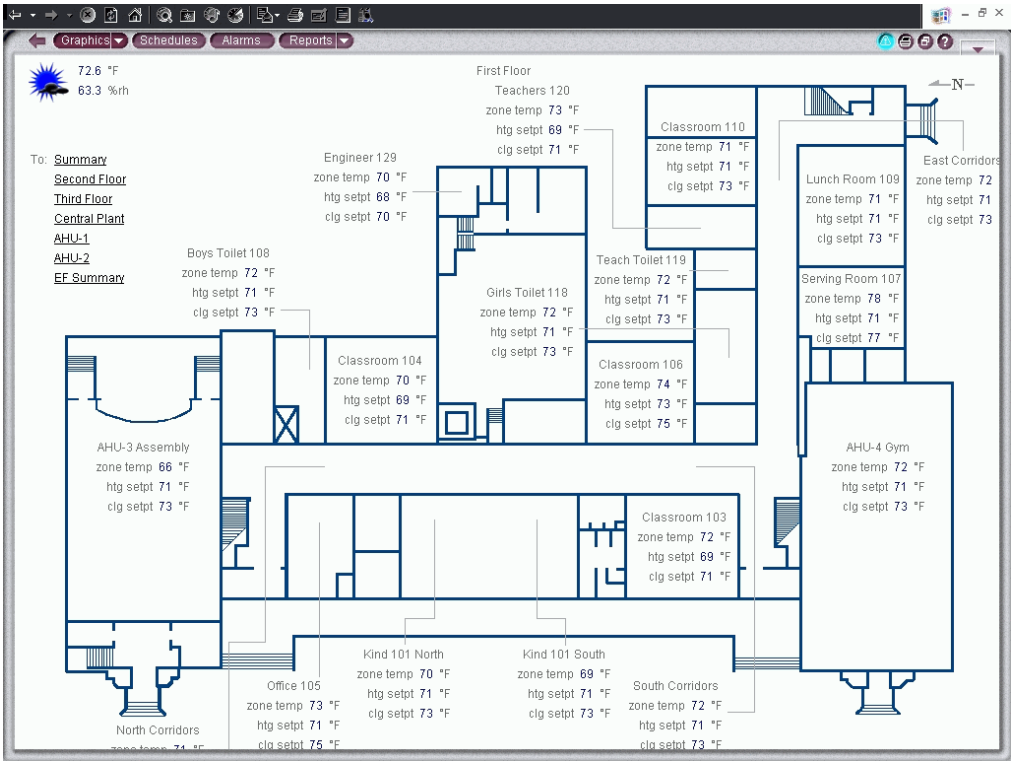
EXHIBIT D System Summary Example Graphics

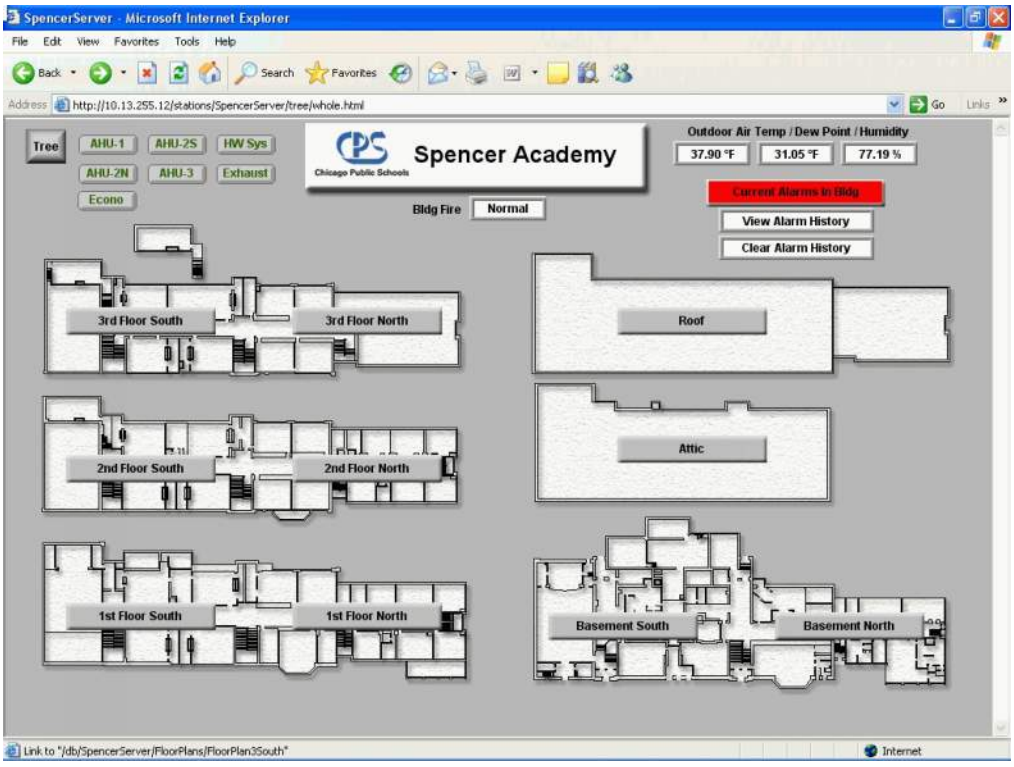
The following graphic screens are provided as examples that incorporate most of the requirements of Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) – Software and Programming." While few graphic screens meet all the requirements they are illustrative of the quality of graphic screen that the client expects on projects executed under this specification.

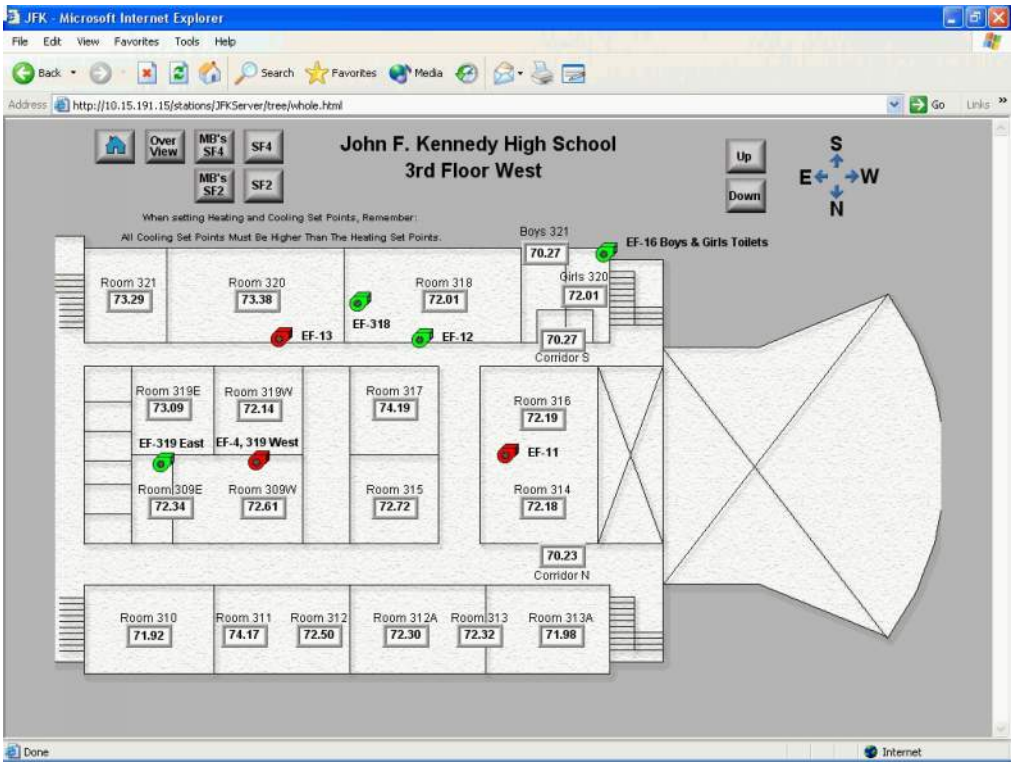
EXHIBIT A Main Screen Example Graphics

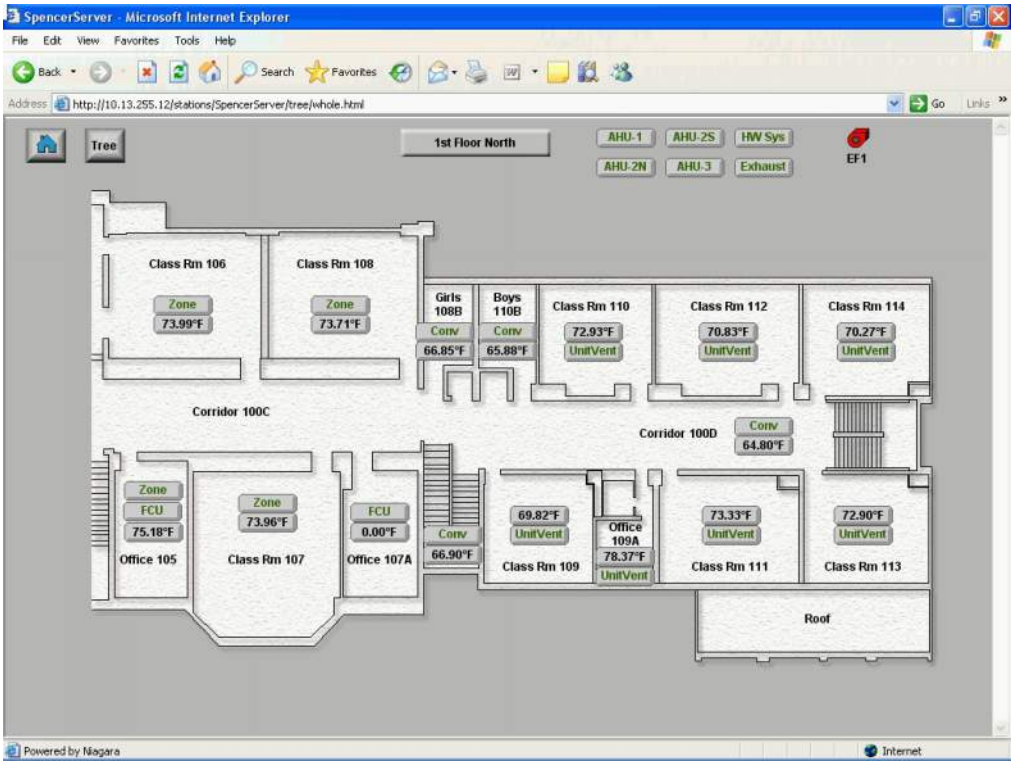
EXHIBIT B Floor Plan Example Graphics




Graphics
Schedules
Alarms
Reports
72.6 °F
63.3 %rh
To: Summary
Second Floor
Third Floor
Central Plant
AHU-1
AHU-2
EF Summary
First Floor
Teachers 120
zone temp 73 °F
htg setpt 69 °F
clg setpt 71 °F
Engineer 129
zone temp 70 °F
htg setpt 68 °F
clg setpt 70 °F
Classroom 110
zone temp 71 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
Lunch Room 109
zone temp 71 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
East Corridors
zone temp 72
htg setpt 71
clg setpt 73
Boys Toilet 108
zone temp 72 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
Girls Toilet 118
zone temp 72 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
Teach Toilet 119
zone temp 72 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
Serving Room 107
zone temp 78 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 77 °F
Classroom 104
zone temp 70 °F
htg setpt 69 °F
clg setpt 71 °F
Classroom 106
zone temp 74 °F
htg setpt 73 °F
clg setpt 75 °F
AHU-3 Assembly
zone temp 66 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
AHU-4 Gym
zone temp 72 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
Classroom 103
zone temp 72 °F
htg setpt 69 °F
clg setpt 71 °F
Kind 101 North
zone temp 70 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
Kind 101 South
zone temp 69 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
Office 105
zone temp 73 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 75 °F
South Corridors
zone temp 72 °F
htg setpt 71 °F
clg setpt 73 °F
North Corridors


SpencerServer - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Favorites
Address http://10.13.255.12/stations/SpencerServer/tree/whole.html
Go Links
Tree
AHU-1
AHU-2S
HW Sys
AHU-2N
AHU-3
Exhaust
Econo
Spencer Academy
Chicago Public Schools
Bldg Fire
Normal
Outdoor Air Temp / Dew Point / Humidity
37.90 °F
31.05 °F
77.19 %
Current Alarms in Bldg
View Alarm History
Clear Alarm History
3rd Floor South
3rd Floor North
Roof
2nd Floor South
2nd Floor North
Attic
1st Floor South
1st Floor North
Basement South
Basement North
Link to "/db/SpencerServer/FloorPlans/FloorPlan3South"
Internet


JFK - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Favorites Media
Address http://10.15.191.15/stations/JFKServer/tree/whole.html
Go Links
Over View
MB's SF4
SF4
MB's SF2
SF2
John F. Kennedy High School
3rd Floor West
Up
Down
S
E
W
N
When setting Heating and Cooling Set Points, Remember:
All Cooling Set Points Must Be Higher Than The Heating Set Points.
Boys 321
70.27
EF-16 Boys & Girls Toilets
Room 321
73.29
Room 320
73.38
Room 318
72.01
Girls 320
72.01
EF-318
EF-13
EF-12
70.27
Corridor S
Room 319E
73.09
Room 319W
72.14
Room 317
74.19
Room 316
72.19
EF-319 East
EF-4, 319 West
EF-11
Room 309E
72.34
Room 309W
72.61
Room 315
72.72
Room 314
72.18
70.23
Corridor N
Room 310
71.92
Room 311
74.17
Room 312
72.50
Room 312A
72.30
Room 313
72.32
Room 313A
71.98
Done
Internet


SpencerServer - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Favorites
Address http://10.13.255.12/stations/SpencerServer/tree/whole.html
Go Links
Tree
1st Floor North
AHU-1
AHU-2S
HW Sys
AHU-2N
AHU-3
Exhaust
EF1
Class Rm 106
Zone
73.99°F
Class Rm 108
Zone
73.71°F
Girls 108B
Conv
66.85°F
Boys 110B
Conv
65.88°F
Class Rm 110
72.93°F
UnitVent
Class Rm 112
70.83°F
UnitVent
Class Rm 114
70.27°F
UnitVent
Corridor 100C
Corridor 100D
Conv
64.80°F
Zone
FCU
75.18°F
Office 105
Zone
73.96°F
Class Rm 107
FCU
0.00°F
Office 107A
Conv
66.90°F
69.82°F
UnitVent
Class Rm 109
Office 109A
78.37°F
UnitVent
73.33°F
UnitVent
Class Rm 111
72.90°F
UnitVent
Class Rm 113
Roof
Powered by Niagara
Internet

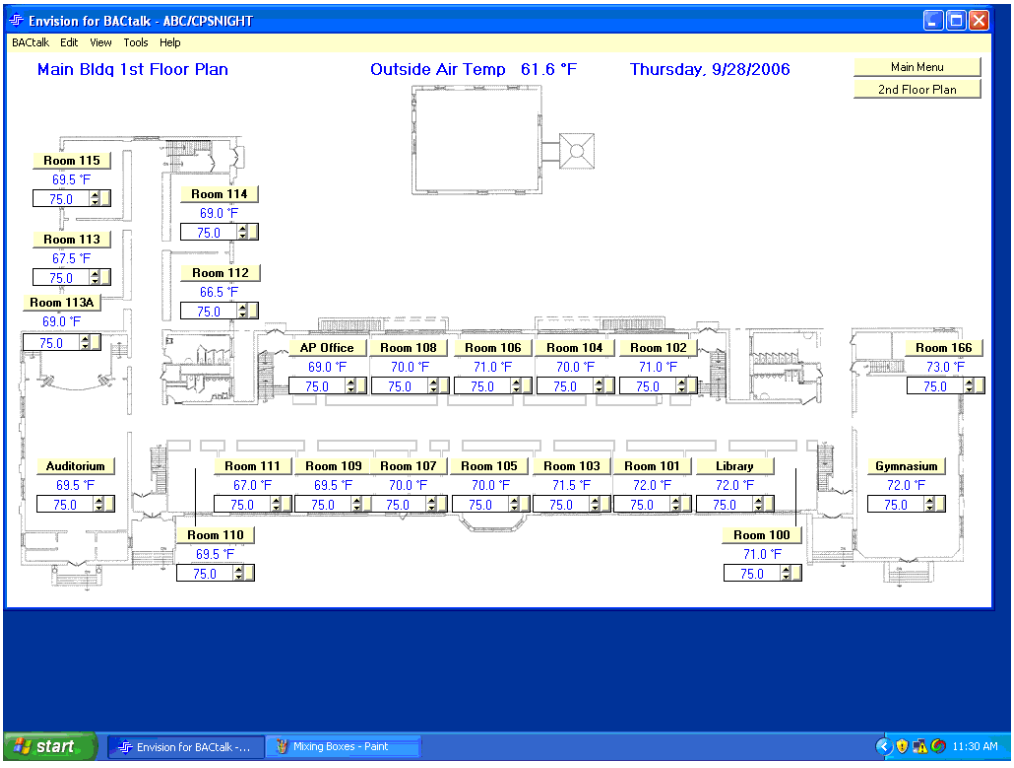
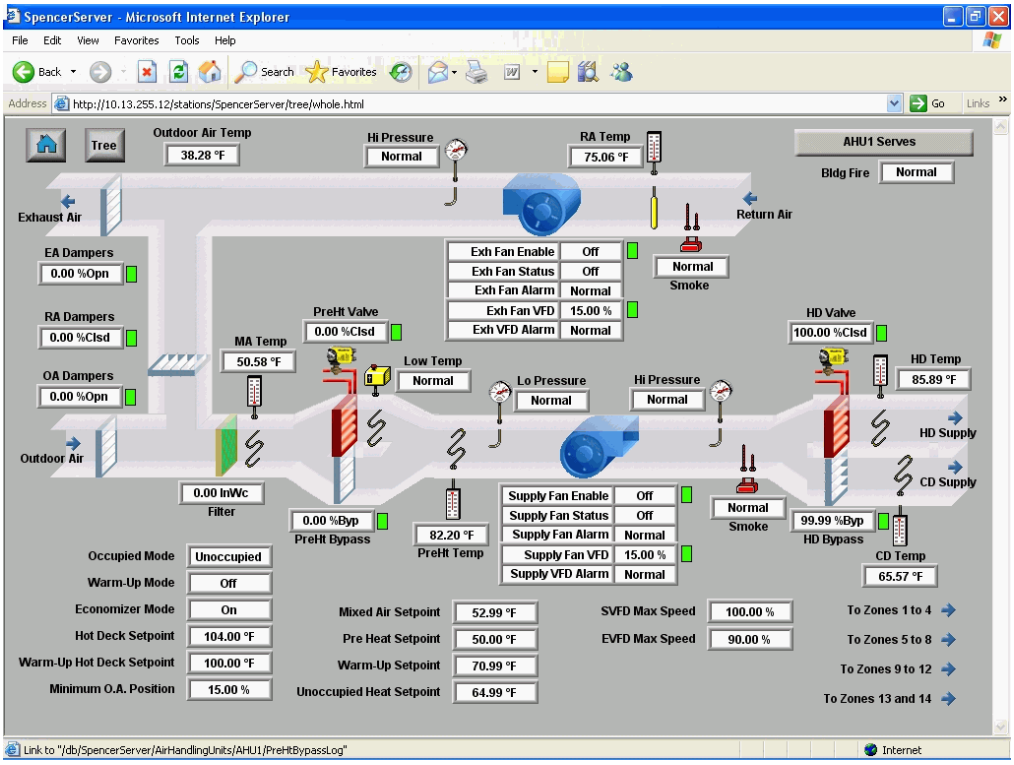
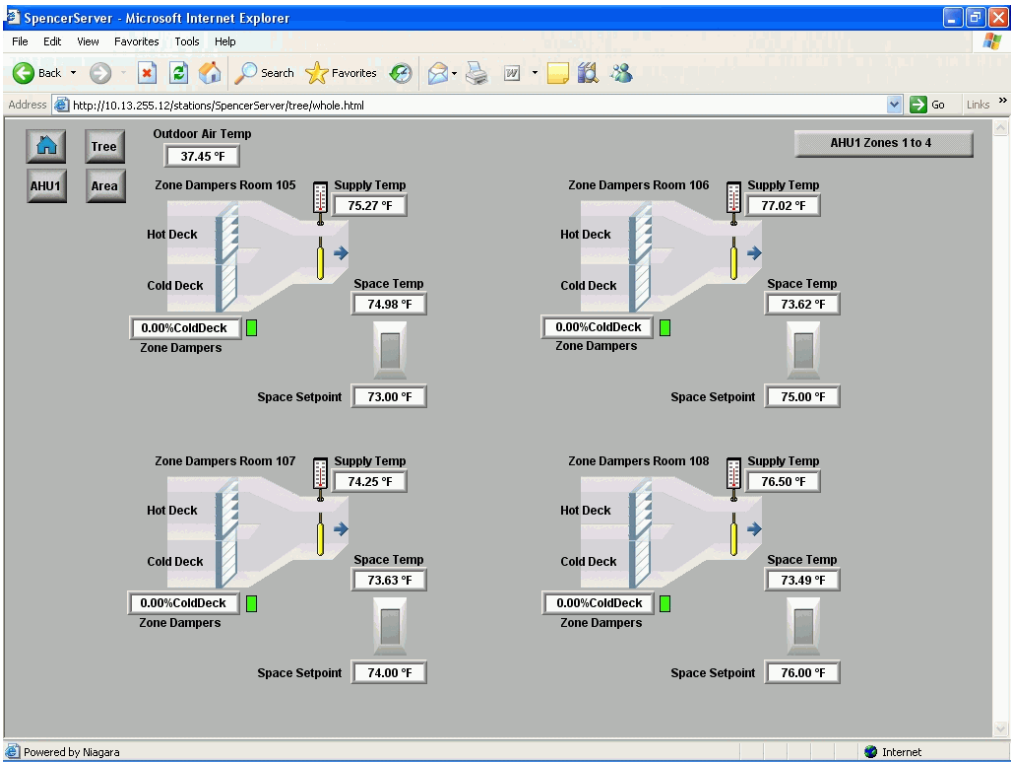
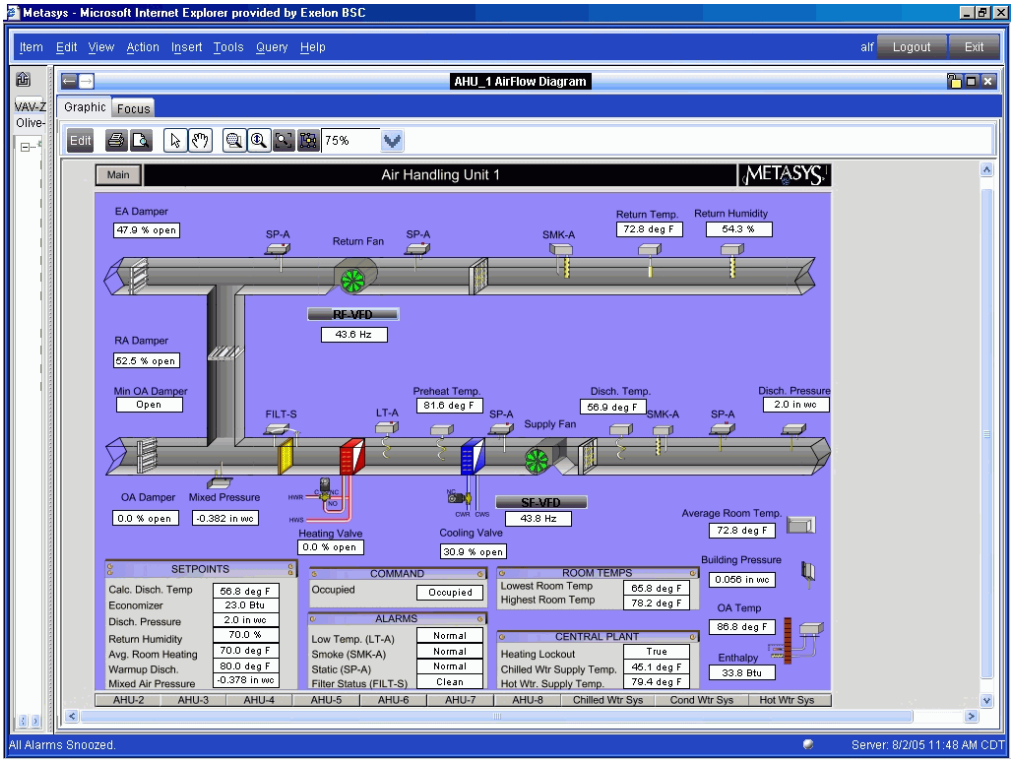
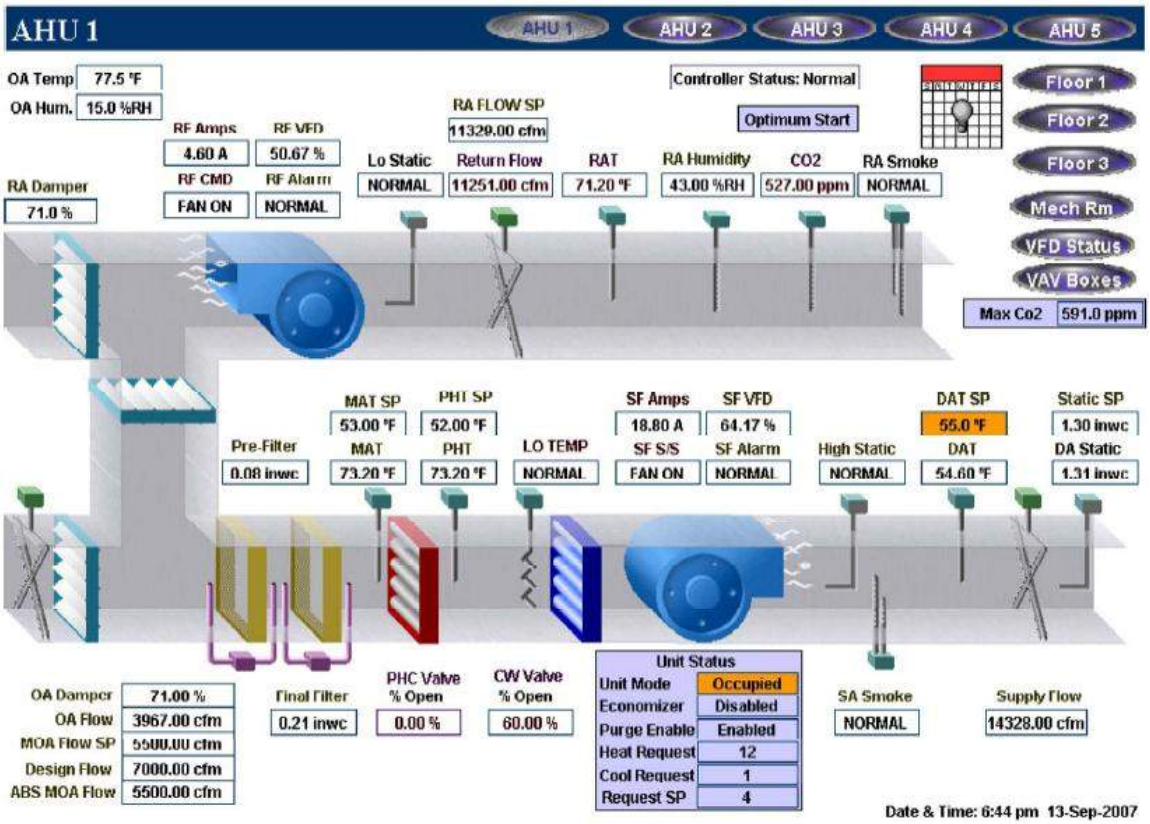

Envision for BACtalk - ABC/CPSNIGHT
BACtalk Edit View Tools Help
Main Bldg 1st Floor Plan
Outside Air Temp 61.6 °F
Thursday, 9/28/2006
Main Menu
2nd Floor Plan
Room 115
69.5 °F
75.0
Room 114
69.0 °F
75.0
Room 113
67.5 °F
75.0
Room 112
66.5 °F
75.0
Room 113A
69.0 °F
75.0
AP Office
69.0 °F
75.0
Room 108
70.0 °F
75.0
Room 106
71.0 °F
75.0
Room 104
70.0 °F
75.0
Room 102
71.0 °F
75.0
Room 166
73.0 °F
75.0
Auditorium
69.5 °F
75.0
Room 111
67.0 °F
75.0
Room 109
69.5 °F
75.0
Room 107
70.0 °F
75.0
Room 105
70.0 °F
75.0
Room 103
71.5 °F
75.0
Room 101
72.0 °F
75.0
Library
72.0 °F
75.0
Gymnasium
72.0 °F
75.0
Room 110
69.5 °F
75.0
Room 100
71.0 °F
75.0
start
Envision for BACtalk -...
Mixing Boxes - Paint
11:30 AM

EXHIBIT C System Schematic Example Graphics



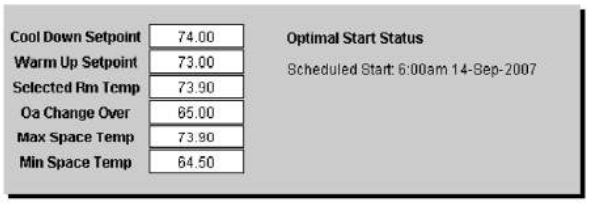



Metasys - Microsoft Internet Explorer provided by Exelon BSC
Item Edit View Action Insert Tools Query Help
alf Logout Exit
AHU_1 AirFlow Diagram
Graphic Focus
Edit 75%
Main
Air Handling Unit 1
METASYS
EA Damper
47.9 % open
SP-A
Return Fan
SP-A
SMK-A
Return Temp.
72.8 deg F
Return Humidity
54.3 %
RF VFD
43.6 Hz
RA Damper
52.5 % open
Min OA Damper
Open
FILT-S
LT-A
Preheat Temp.
81.6 deg F
SP-A
Supply Fan
Disch. Temp.
56.9 deg F
SMK-A
SP-A
Disch. Pressure
2.0 in wc
OA Damper
0.0 % open
Mixed Pressure
-0.382 in wc
Heating Valve
0.0 % open
Cooling Valve
30.9 % open
SF VFD
43.8 Hz
Average Room Temp.
72.8 deg F
Building Pressure
0.056 in wc
SETPOINTS
Calc. Disch. Temp 56.8 deg F
Economizer 23.0 Btu
Disch. Pressure 2.0 in wc
Return Humidity 70.0 %
Avg. Room Heating 70.0 deg F
Warmup Disch. 80.0 deg F
Mixed Air Pressure -0.378 in wc
COMMAND
Occupied Occupied
ALARMS
Low Temp. (LT-A) Normal
Smoke (SMK-A) Normal
Static (SP-A) Normal
Filter Status (FILT-S) Clean
ROOM TEMPS
Lowest Room Temp 65.8 deg F
Highest Room Temp 78.2 deg F
CENTRAL PLANT
Heating Lockout True
Chilled Wtr Supply Temp. 45.1 deg F
Hot Wtr. Supply Temp. 79.4 deg F
OA Temp
86.8 deg F
Enthalpy
33.8 Btu
AHU-2 AHU-3 AHU-4 AHU-5 AHU-6 AHU-7 AHU-8 Chilled Wtr Sys Cond Wtr Sys Hot Wtr Sys
All Alarms Snoozed.
Server: 8/2/05 11:48 AM CDT



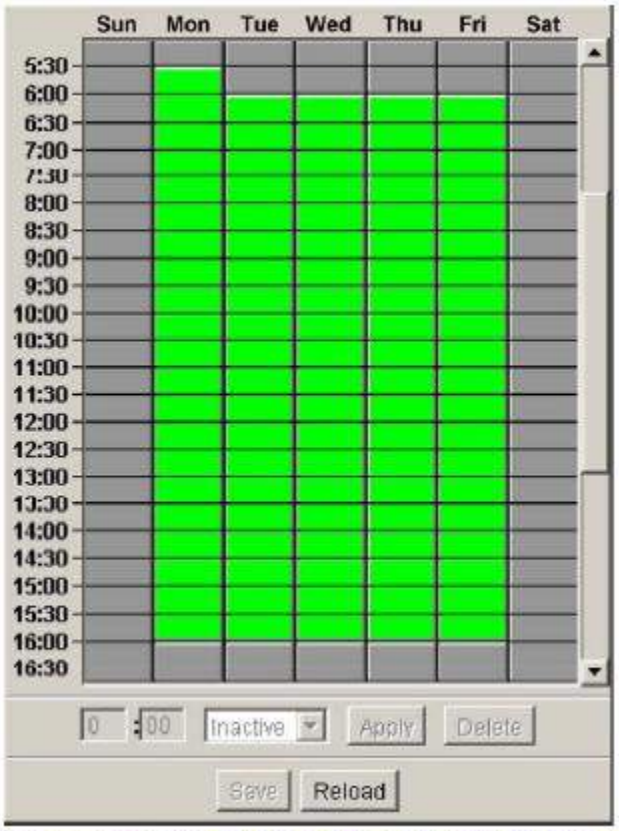
Additional Info pages

	SF VFD	RF VFD
Speed	64.17 %	50.67 %
Frequency	30.40 hz	29.00 hz
RPM	1135.00 rpm	887.00 rpm
Voltage	295.00 V	176.00 V
Run Hours	1636.00 hrs	1692.00 hrs
Power	6.30 kW	0.70 kW
Current	18.80 A	4.60 A
Fault	Normal	Normal
Running Status	Running	Running

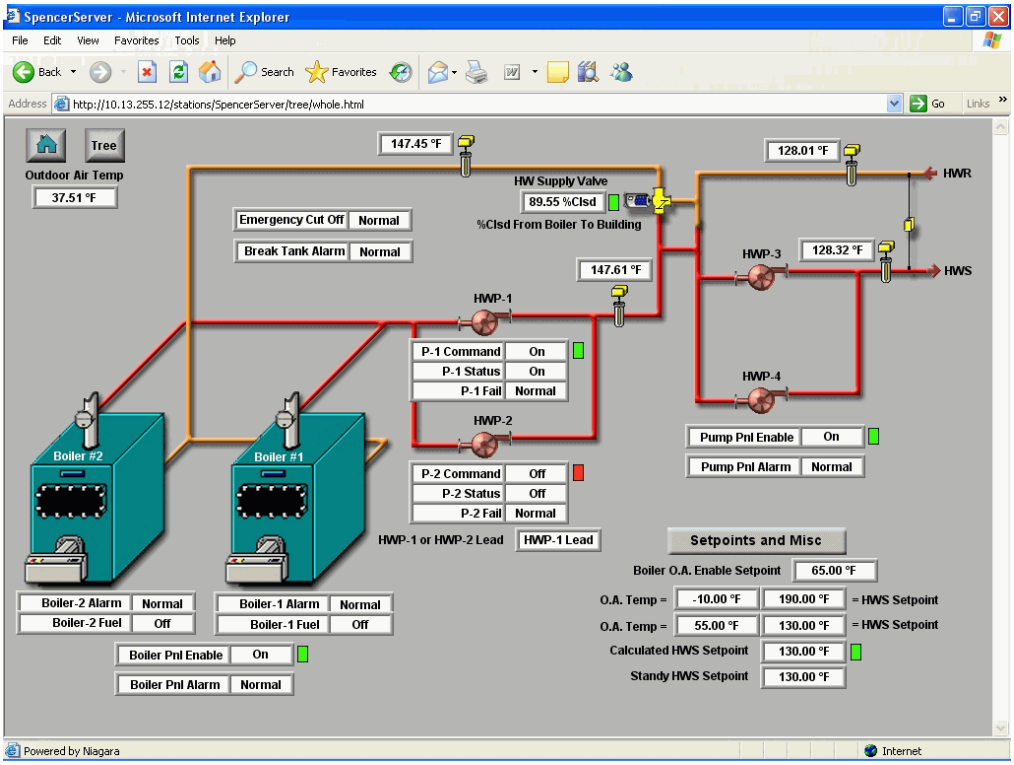


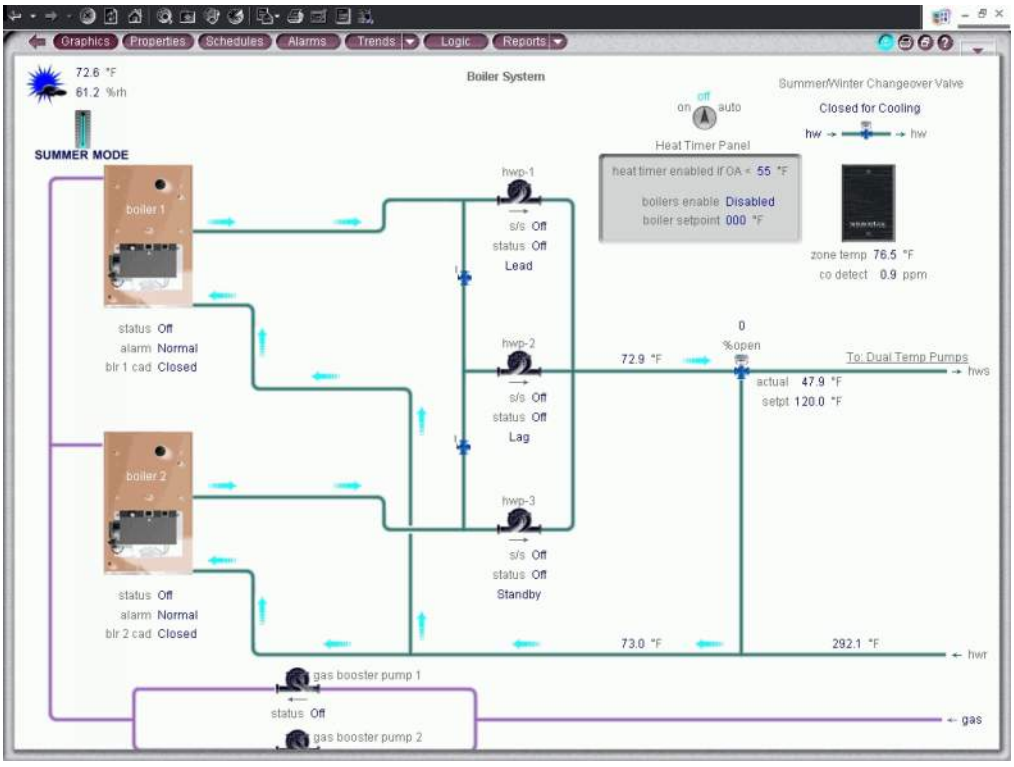
Schedule

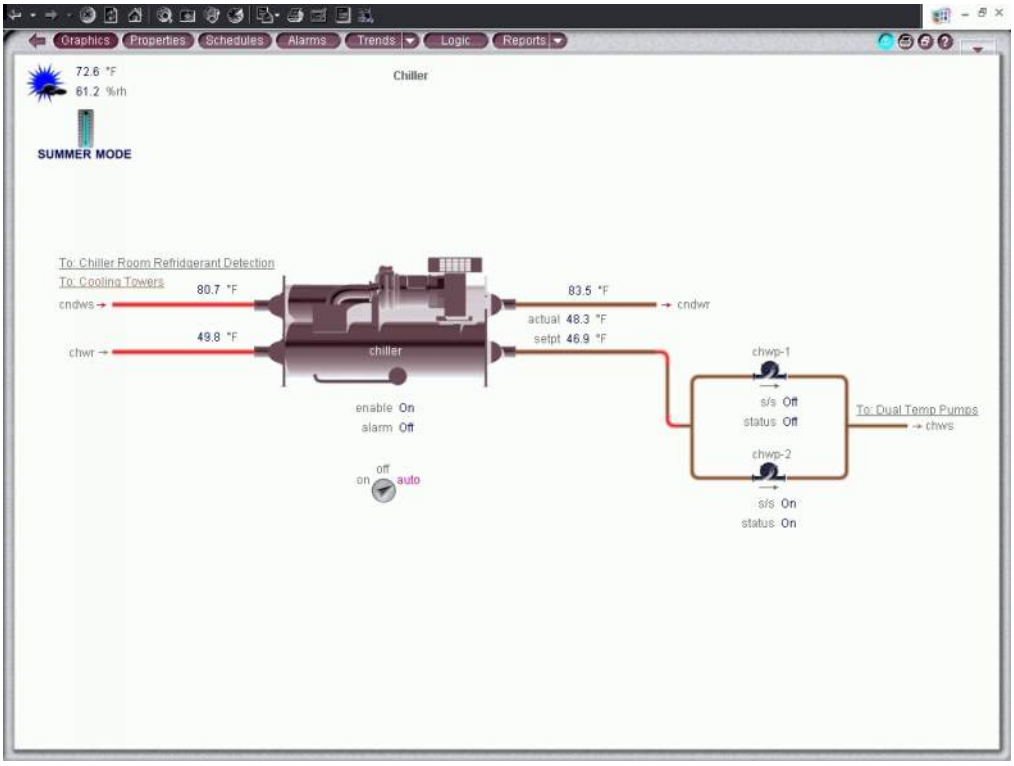
Weekly Schedule: /Albany_Park/Albany/AHU_1/Schedule

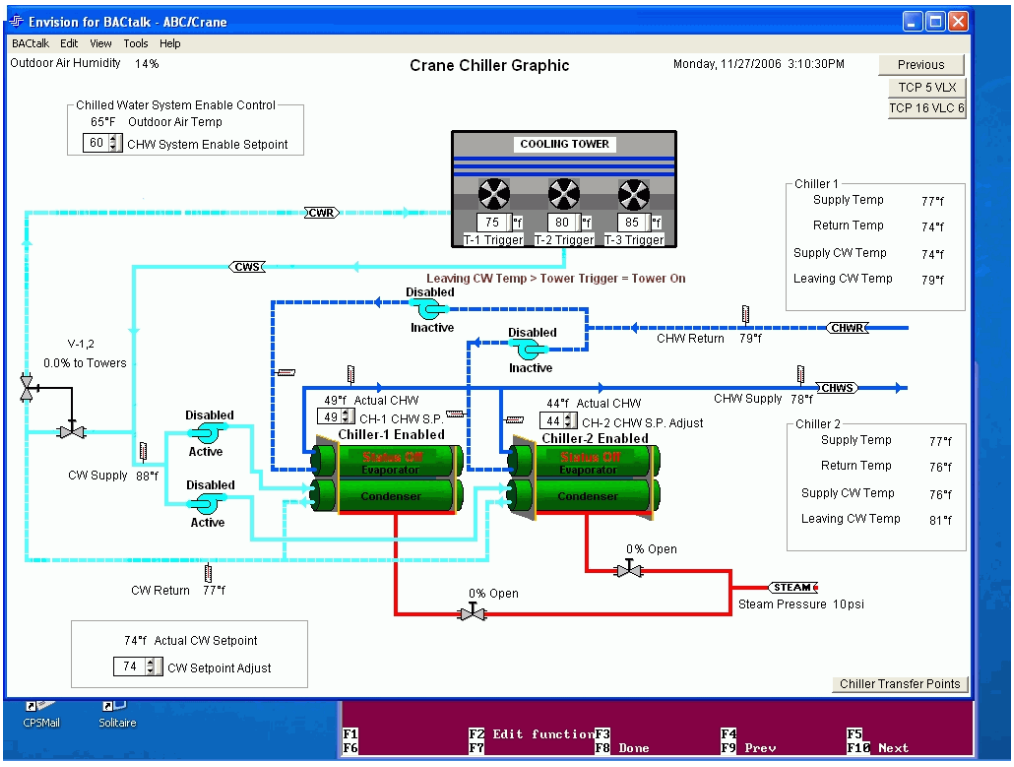


Summary Weekly Holiday Special Events Calendar


SpencerServer - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Favorites
Address http://10.13.255.12/stations/SpencerServer/tree/whole.html
Go Links
Tree
Outdoor Air Temp
37.51 °F
147.45 °F
HW Supply Valve
89.55 %Clsd
%Clsd From Boiler To Building
Emergency Cut Off Normal
Break Tank Alarm Normal
147.61 °F
128.01 °F
HWR
HWP-3
128.32 °F
HWS
HWP-1
P-1 Command On
P-1 Status On
P-1 Fail Normal
HWP-4
HWP-2
Pump Pnl Enable On
Pump Pnl Alarm Normal
Boiler #2
Boiler #1
P-2 Command Off
P-2 Status Off
P-2 Fail Normal
HWP-1 or HWP-2 Lead
HWP-1 Lead
Setpoints and Misc
Boiler O.A. Enable Setpoint 65.00 °F
O.A. Temp = -10.00 °F 190.00 °F = HWS Setpoint
O.A. Temp = 55.00 °F 130.00 °F = HWS Setpoint
Calculated HWS Setpoint 130.00 °F
Standy HWS Setpoint 130.00 °F
Boiler-2 Alarm Normal
Boiler-2 Fuel Off
Boiler-1 Alarm Normal
Boiler-1 Fuel Off
Boiler Pnl Enable On
Boiler Pnl Alarm Normal
Powered by Niagara
Internet


Graphics Properties Schedules Alarms Trends Logic Reports
72.6 °F
61.2 %rh
SUMMER MODE
Boiler System
Summer/Winter Changeover Valve
off
on auto
Closed for Cooling
hw hw
Heat Timer Panel
heat timer enabled if OA = 55 °F
boilers enable Disabled
boiler setpoint 000 °F
zone temp 76.5 °F
co detect 0.9 ppm
boiler 1
status Off
alarm Normal
blr 1 cad Closed
hwp-1
s/s Off
status Off
Lead
hwp-2
s/s Off
status Off
Lag
hwp-3
s/s Off
status Off
Standby
boiler 2
status Off
alarm Normal
blr 2 cad Closed
0
%open
72.9 °F
To: Dual Temp Pumps
hws
actual 47.9 °F
setpt 120.0 °F
73.0 °F
292.1 °F
hwr
gas booster pump 1
status Off
gas booster pump 2
gas


Graphics
Properties
Schedules
Alarms
Trends
Logic
Reports
Chiller
72.6 °F
61.2 %rh
SUMMER MODE
To: Chiller Room Refridgerant Detection
To: Cooling Towers
cndws
80.7 °F
chwr
49.8 °F
chiller
83.5 °F
cndwr
actual 48.3 °F
setpt 46.9 °F
enable On
alarm Off
off
on
auto
chwp-1
s/s Off
status Off
chwp-2
s/s On
status On
To: Dual Temp Pumps
chws


Envision for BACtalk - ABC/Crane
BACtalk Edit View Tools Help
Outdoor Air Humidity 14%
Crane Chiller Graphic
Monday, 11/27/2006 3:10:30PM
Previous
TCP 5 VLX
TCP 16 VLC 6
Chilled Water System Enable Control
65°F Outdoor Air Temp
60 CHW System Enable Setpoint
COOLING TOWER
75 °f T-1 Trigger
80 °f T-2 Trigger
85 °f T-3 Trigger
CWR
CWS
Leaving CW Temp > Tower Trigger = Tower On
Disabled
Inactive
Disabled
Inactive
CHW Return 79°f
CHWR
V-1,2
0.0% to Towers
49°f Actual CHW
49 CH-1 CHW S.P.
Chiller-1 Enabled
44°f Actual CHW
44 CH-2 CHW S.P. Adjust
Chiller-2 Enabled
CHW Supply 78°f
CHWS
Disabled
Active
Disabled
Active
CW Supply 88°f
Status Off
Evaporator
Condenser
Status Off
Evaporator
Condenser
0% Open
0% Open
STEAM
Steam Pressure 10psi
CW Return 77°f
74°f Actual CW Setpoint
74 CW Setpoint Adjust
Chiller 1
Supply Temp 77°f
Return Temp 74°f
Supply CW Temp 74°f
Leaving CW Temp 79°f
Chiller 2
Supply Temp 77°f
Return Temp 76°f
Supply CW Temp 76°f
Leaving CW Temp 81°f
Chiller Transfer Points
CPSMail
Solitaire
F1
F2 Edit function
F8 Done
F4 Prev
F5
F6
F7
F10 Next

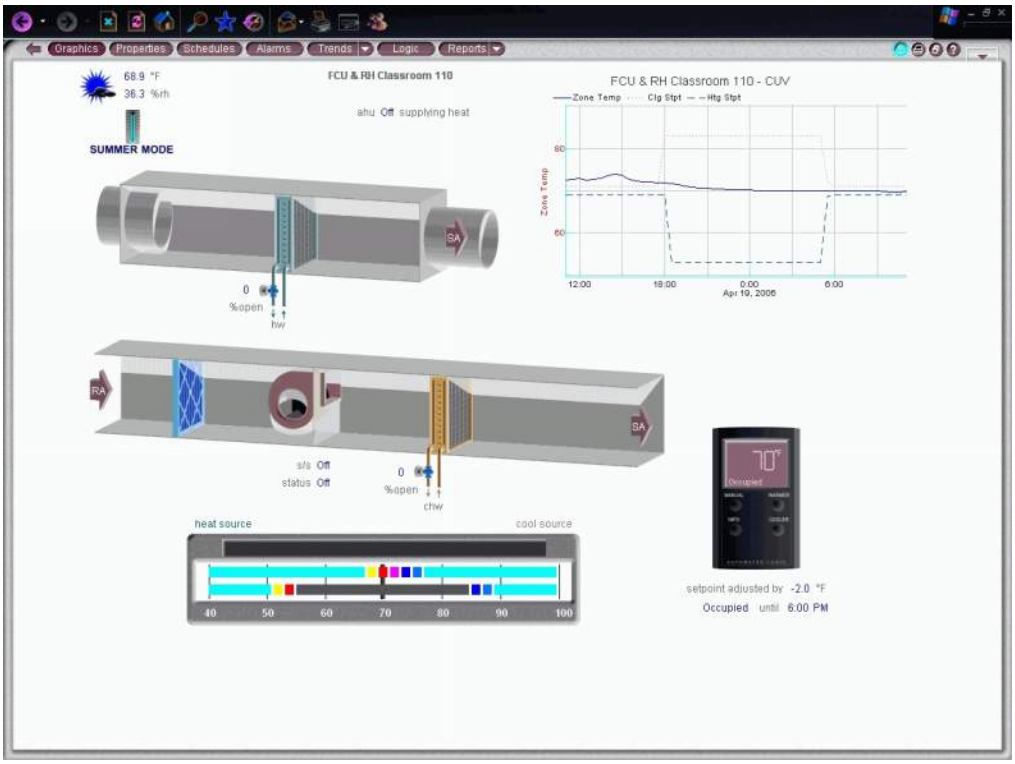
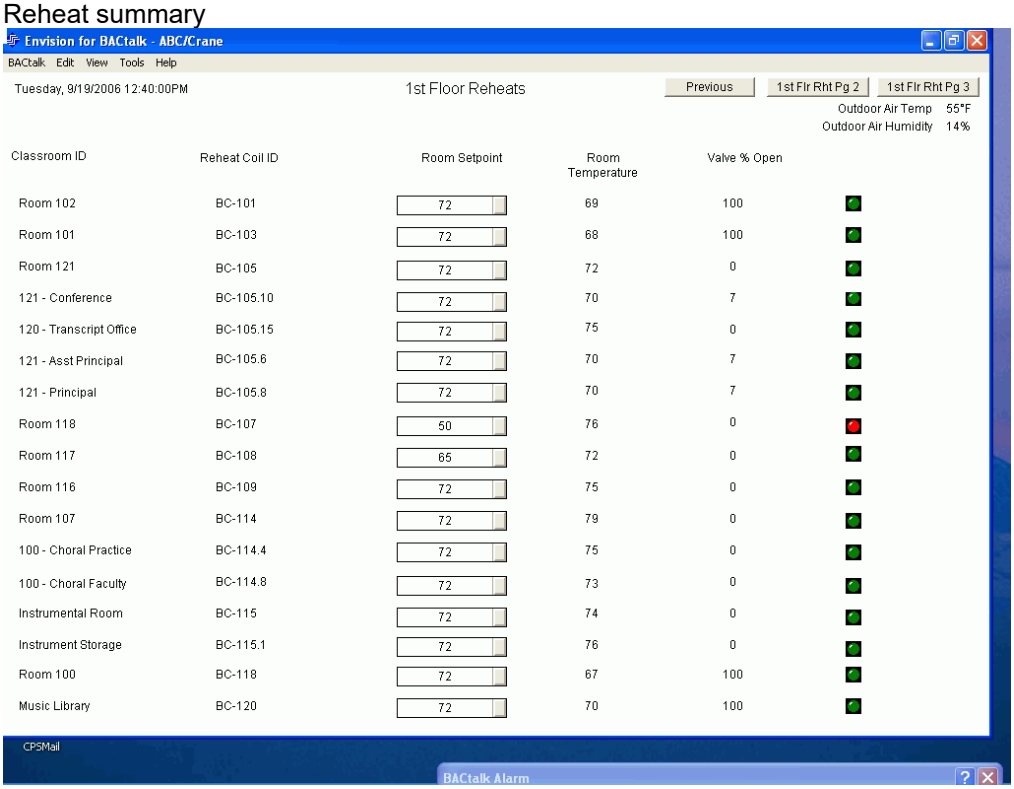
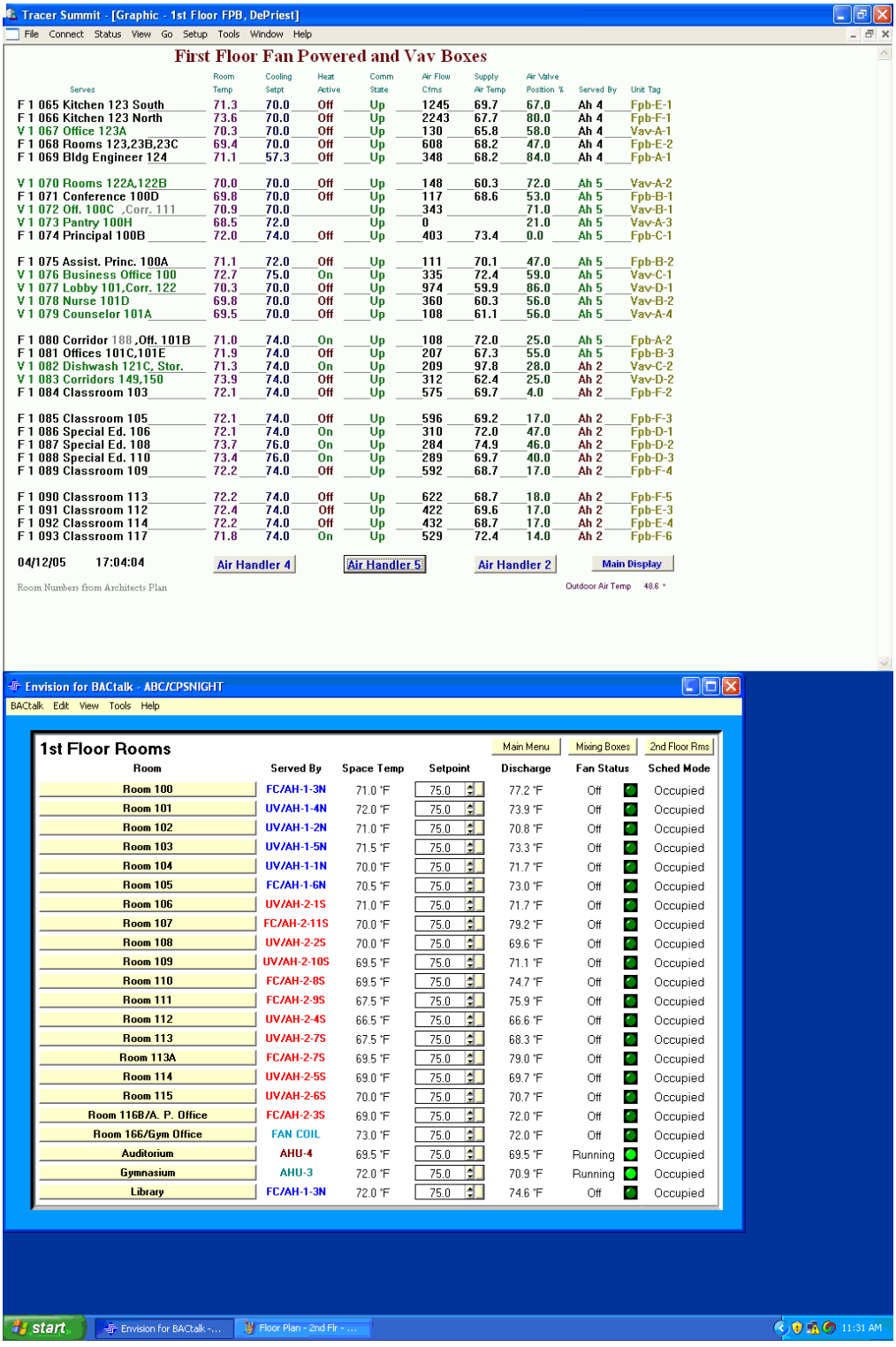

Graphics
Properties
Schedules
Alarms
Trends
Logic
Reports
68.9 °F
36.3 %rh
SUMMER MODE
FCU & RH Classroom 110
ahu Off supplying heat
FCU & RH Classroom 110 - CUV
Zone Temp
Clg Stpt
Htg Stpt
Zone Temp
12:00
18:00
0:00
Apr 19, 2006
6:00
SA
0
%open
hw
RA
SA
s/s Off
status Off
0
%open
chw
heat source
cool source
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
70°F
Occupied
setpoint adjusted by -2.0 °F
Occupied until 6:00 PM

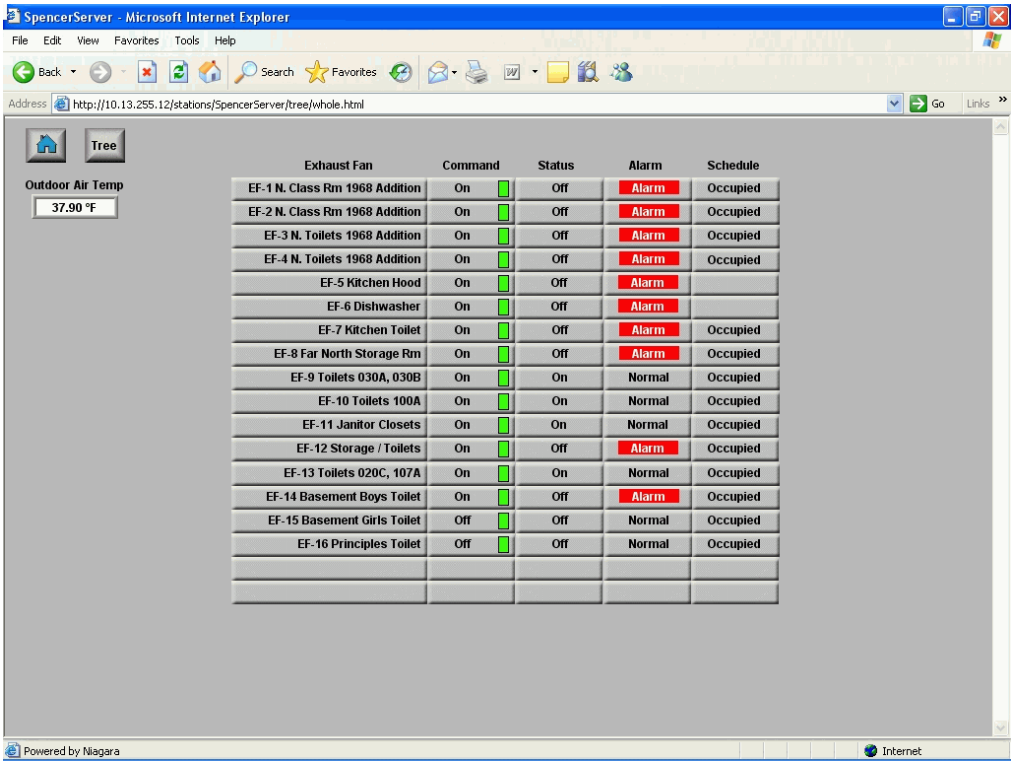
EXHIBIT D System Summary Example Graphics

Reheat summary



VAV Summary

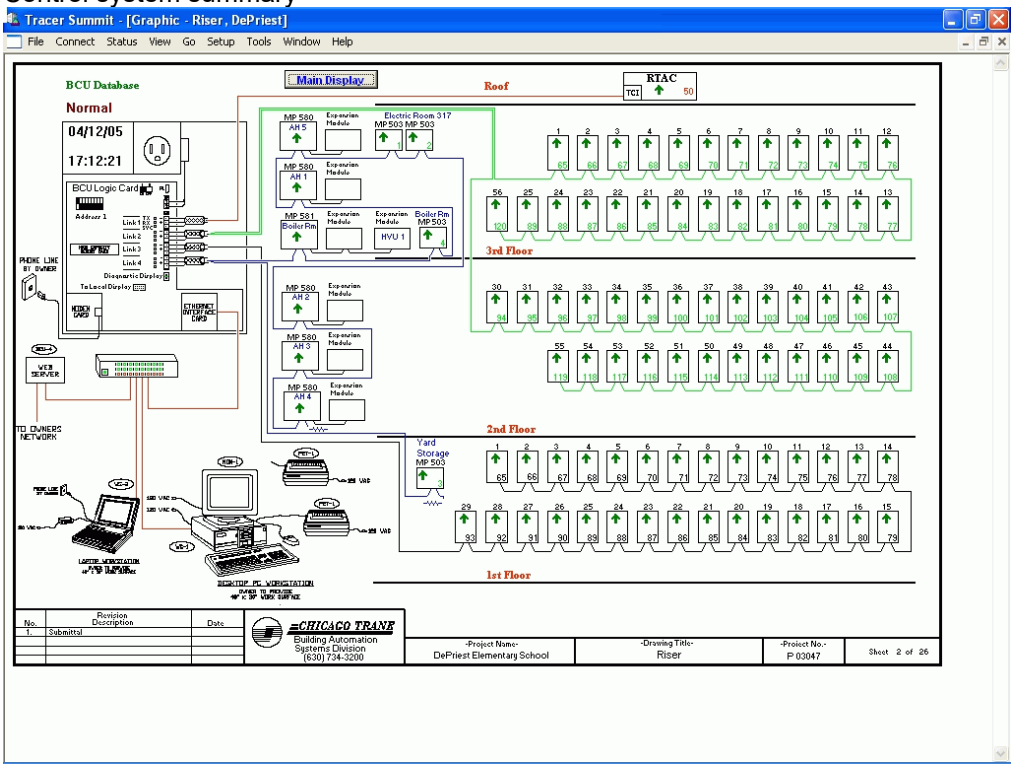

Tracer Summit - [Graphic - 1st Floor FPB, DePriest]
File Connect Status View Go Setup Tools Window Help
First Floor Fan Powered and Vav Boxes
Serves | Room Temp | Cooling Setpt | Heat Active | Comm State | Air Flow Cfms | Supply Air Temp | Air Valve Position % | Served By | Unit Tag
F 1 065 Kitchen 123 South 71.3 70.0 Off Up 1245 69.7 67.0 Ah 4 Fpb-E-1
F 1 066 Kitchen 123 North 73.6 70.0 Off Up 2243 67.7 80.0 Ah 4 Fpb-F-1
V 1 067 Office 123A 70.3 70.0 Off Up 130 65.8 58.0 Ah 4 Vav-A-1
F 1 068 Rooms 123,23B,23C 69.4 70.0 Off Up 608 68.2 47.0 Ah 4 Fpb-E-2
F 1 069 Bldg Engineer 124 71.1 57.3 Off Up 348 68.2 84.0 Ah 4 Fpb-A-1
V 1 070 Rooms 122A,122B 70.0 70.0 Off Up 148 60.3 72.0 Ah 5 Vav-A-2
F 1 071 Conference 100D 69.8 70.0 Off Up 117 68.6 53.0 Ah 5 Fpb-B-1
V 1 072 Off. 100C ,Corr. 111 70.9 70.0 Up 343 71.0 Ah 5 Vav-B-1
V 1 073 Pantry 100H 68.5 72.0 Up 0 21.0 Ah 5 Vav-A-3
F 1 074 Principal 100B 72.0 74.0 Off Up 403 73.4 0.0 Ah 5 Fpb-C-1
F 1 075 Assist. Princ. 100A 71.1 72.0 Off Up 111 70.1 47.0 Ah 5 Fpb-B-2
V 1 076 Business Office 100 72.7 75.0 On Up 335 72.4 59.0 Ah 5 Vav-C-1
V 1 077 Lobby 101,Corr. 122 70.3 70.0 Off Up 974 59.9 86.0 Ah 5 Vav-D-1
V 1 078 Nurse 101D 69.8 70.0 Off Up 360 60.3 56.0 Ah 5 Vav-B-2
V 1 079 Counselor 101A 69.5 70.0 Off Up 108 61.1 56.0 Ah 5 Vav-A-4
F 1 080 Corridor 188 ,Off. 101B 71.0 74.0 On Up 108 72.0 25.0 Ah 5 Fpb-A-2
F 1 081 Offices 101C,101E 71.9 74.0 Off Up 207 67.3 55.0 Ah 5 Fpb-B-3
V 1 082 Dishwash 121C, Stor. 71.3 74.0 On Up 209 97.8 28.0 Ah 2 Vav-C-2
V 1 083 Corridors 149,150 73.9 74.0 Off Up 312 62.4 25.0 Ah 2 Vav-D-2
F 1 084 Classroom 103 72.1 74.0 Off Up 575 69.7 4.0 Ah 2 Fpb-F-2
F 1 085 Classroom 105 72.1 74.0 Off Up 596 69.2 17.0 Ah 2 Fpb-F-3
F 1 086 Special Ed. 106 72.1 74.0 On Up 310 72.0 47.0 Ah 2 Fpb-D-1
F 1 087 Special Ed. 108 73.7 76.0 On Up 284 74.9 46.0 Ah 2 Fpb-D-2
F 1 088 Special Ed. 110 73.4 76.0 On Up 289 69.7 40.0 Ah 2 Fpb-D-3
F 1 089 Classroom 109 72.2 74.0 Off Up 592 68.7 17.0 Ah 2 Fpb-F-4
F 1 090 Classroom 113 72.2 74.0 Off Up 622 68.7 18.0 Ah 2 Fpb-F-5
F 1 091 Classroom 112 72.4 74.0 Off Up 422 69.6 17.0 Ah 2 Fpb-E-3
F 1 092 Classroom 114 72.2 74.0 Off Up 432 68.7 17.0 Ah 2 Fpb-E-4
F 1 093 Classroom 117 71.8 74.0 On Up 529 72.4 14.0 Ah 2 Fpb-F-6
04/12/05 17:04:04
Air Handler 4
Air Handler 5
Air Handler 2
Main Display
Room Numbers from Architects Plan
Outdoor Air Temp 48.6 °
Envision for BACtalk - ABC/CPSNIGHT
BACtalk Edit View Tools Help
1st Floor Rooms
Main Menu
Mixing Boxes
2nd Floor Rms
Room | Served By | Space Temp | Setpoint | Discharge | Fan Status | Sched Mode
Room 100 FC/AH-1-3N 71.0 °F 75.0 77.2 °F Off Occupied
Room 101 UV/AH-1-4N 72.0 °F 75.0 73.9 °F Off Occupied
Room 102 UV/AH-1-2N 71.0 °F 75.0 70.8 °F Off Occupied
Room 103 UV/AH-1-5N 71.5 °F 75.0 73.3 °F Off Occupied
Room 104 UV/AH-1-1N 70.0 °F 75.0 71.7 °F Off Occupied
Room 105 FC/AH-1-6N 70.5 °F 75.0 73.0 °F Off Occupied
Room 106 UV/AH-2-1S 71.0 °F 75.0 71.7 °F Off Occupied
Room 107 FC/AH-2-11S 70.0 °F 75.0 79.2 °F Off Occupied
Room 108 UV/AH-2-2S 70.0 °F 75.0 69.6 °F Off Occupied
Room 109 UV/AH-2-10S 69.5 °F 75.0 71.1 °F Off Occupied
Room 110 FC/AH-2-8S 69.5 °F 75.0 74.7 °F Off Occupied
Room 111 FC/AH-2-9S 67.5 °F 75.0 75.9 °F Off Occupied
Room 112 UV/AH-2-4S 66.5 °F 75.0 66.6 °F Off Occupied
Room 113 UV/AH-2-7S 67.5 °F 75.0 68.3 °F Off Occupied
Room 113A FC/AH-2-7S 69.5 °F 75.0 79.0 °F Off Occupied
Room 114 UV/AH-2-5S 69.0 °F 75.0 69.7 °F Off Occupied
Room 115 UV/AH-2-6S 70.0 °F 75.0 70.7 °F Off Occupied
Room 116B/A. P. Office FC/AH-2-3S 69.0 °F 75.0 72.0 °F Off Occupied
Room 166/Gym Office FAN COIL 73.0 °F 75.0 72.0 °F Off Occupied
Auditorium AHU-4 69.5 °F 75.0 69.5 °F Running Occupied
Gymnasium AHU-3 72.0 °F 75.0 70.9 °F Running Occupied
Library FC/AH-1-3N 72.0 °F 75.0 74.6 °F Off Occupied
start
Envision for BACtalk -...
Floor Plan - 2nd Flr - ...
11:31 AM


SpencerServer - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Favorites
Address http://10.13.255.12/stations/SpencerServer/tree/whole.html
Go Links
Tree
Outdoor Air Temp
37.90 °F
Exhaust Fan
Command
Status
Alarm
Schedule
EF-1 N. Class Rm 1968 Addition On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-2 N. Class Rm 1968 Addition On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-3 N. Toilets 1968 Addition On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-4 N. Toilets 1968 Addition On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-5 Kitchen Hood On Off Alarm
EF-6 Dishwasher On Off Alarm
EF-7 Kitchen Toilet On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-8 Far North Storage Rm On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-9 Toilets 030A, 030B On On Normal Occupied
EF-10 Toilets 100A On On Normal Occupied
EF-11 Janitor Closets On On Normal Occupied
EF-12 Storage / Toilets On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-13 Toilets 020C, 107A On On Normal Occupied
EF-14 Basement Boys Toilet On Off Alarm Occupied
EF-15 Basement Girls Toilet Off Off Normal Occupied
EF-16 Principles Toilet Off Off Normal Occupied
Powered by Niagara
Internet

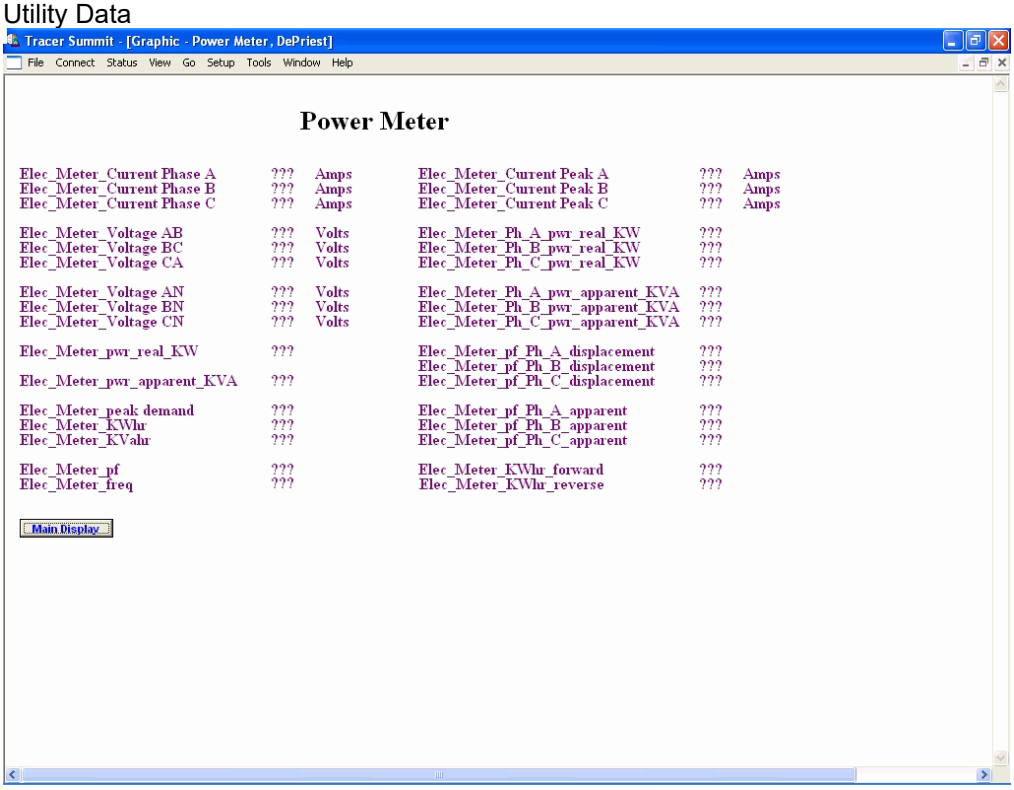
Fan Summary



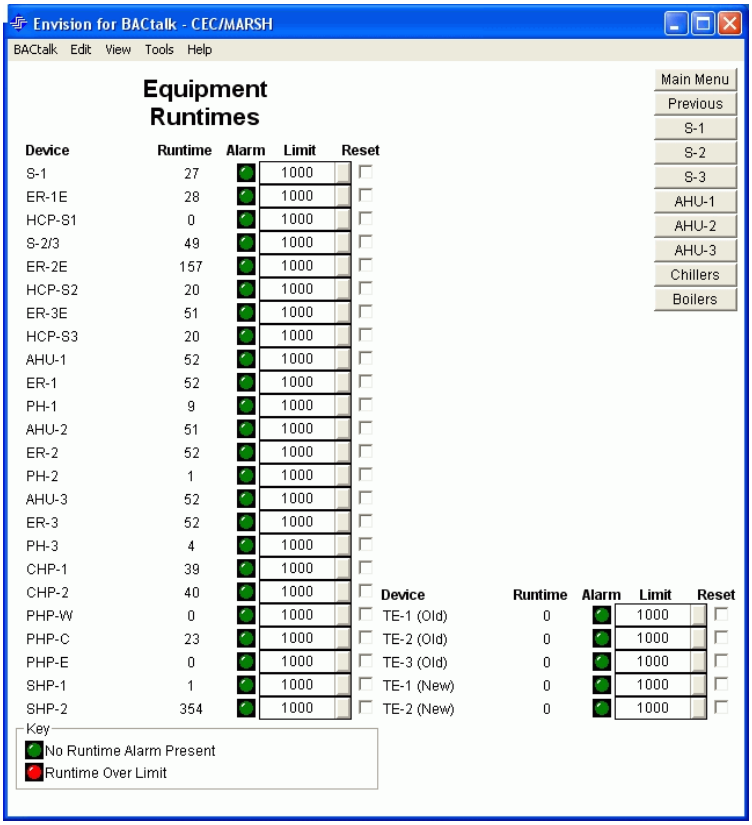
Control system summary



Utility Data



Runtime graphic


Envision for BACtalk - CEC/MARSH
BACtalk Edit View Tools Help
Equipment Runtimes
Main Menu
Previous
S-1
S-2
S-3
AHU-1
AHU-2
AHU-3
Chillers
Boilers
Device Runtime Alarm Limit Reset
S-1 27 1000
ER-1E 28 1000
HCP-S1 0 1000
S-2/3 49 1000
ER-2E 157 1000
HCP-S2 20 1000
ER-3E 51 1000
HCP-S3 20 1000
AHU-1 52 1000
ER-1 52 1000
PH-1 9 1000
AHU-2 51 1000
ER-2 52 1000
PH-2 1 1000
AHU-3 52 1000
ER-3 52 1000
PH-3 4 1000
CHP-1 39 1000
CHP-2 40 1000
PHP-W 0 1000
PHP-C 23 1000
PHP-E 0 1000
SHP-1 1 1000
SHP-2 354 1000
Device Runtime Alarm Limit Reset
TE-1 (Old) 0 1000
TE-2 (Old) 0 1000
TE-3 (Old) 0 1000
TE-1 (New) 0 1000
TE-2 (New) 0 1000
Key
No Runtime Alarm Present
Runtime Over Limit

SECTION 23 09 26

BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) - SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following:

1. Air Handling Units.
2. Mechanical systems with automatic control.
3. Cabinet Unit Heater Electric

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS)" for a description of the systems to be controlled.

B. This Section defines the manner and method by which controls function.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS)" and Division 01 Sections for requirements for control shop drawings, product data, Users Manual, etc.

B. Programming Manual: Provide DDC system programming manual as well as documentation of site specific programming prior to the start of Acceptance Phase.

1.04 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Within two weeks of the completion of commissioning, provide record documents to represent the final control configuration with actual setpoints and tuning parameters as existed at acceptance.

B. Record documents shall be modified control drawings with the actual installed information. Drawings shall be delivered in both reproducible hard copy and electronic format in AutoCAD v13 or later. Provide all supporting files, blocks, fonts, etc. required by the drawings.

C. Provide final points list

D. Provide final detailed wiring diagrams with all wire numbers and termination points indicated

E. Accurately record final sequences and control logic made after submission of shop drawings.

1.05 DEFINITIONS/ABBREVIATIONS

A. Absolute Minimum OA: Minimum flow rate setpoint to which the OA or primary air may throttle down. This value is acceptable as long as CO_2 levels are within acceptable limits.

B. AHU: Air Handling Unit

C. DDC: Direct Digital Control

D. Design Minimum OA: Minimum flow rate setpoint based on code requirements or designed system and coil capacities.

E. BAS: Building Automation System

F. MVR: Minimum required ventilation rate

G. OA: Outdoor Air

H. Physical Point: A point on the BAS that is physically connected to an I/O device such that a hardware point exists

I. Virtual Point: A point to store values (i.e.: a setpoint) that do not represent a physical device

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. Refer to control drawings for sequence of operations for each piece of equipment.

B. Sequences specified herein indicate the functional intent of the systems operation and may not fully detail every aspect of the programming that may be required to obtain the indicated operation. Contractor shall provide all programming necessary to obtain the sequences/system operation indicated.

C. When an air handling unit is not in operation, control devices shall remain in their “off” positions. “Off” positions may differ from the “normal” (meaning failed) position. Except as specified otherwise, “off” and “normal” positions of control devices shall be as follows:

Device	“Off” Position	“Normal” Position
Outside air damper	closed	open
Return air damper	open	open
Exhaust/relief air damper	closed	open
Var. Freq. Drive	Off	Min. Speed

D. Except as specified otherwise, throttling ranges, proportional bands, and cycle differentials shall be centered on the associated setpoint. All modulating feedback control loops shall include the capability of having proportional, integral, and derivative action. Unless the loop is specified “proportional only” or “P+I”, Contractor shall apply appropriate elements of integral and derivative gain to each control loop which shall result in stable operation, minimum settling time, and shall maintain the primary variable within the specified maximum allowable variance.

E. Scheduling Terminology: When air handlers are scheduled throughout the day, the following defines the terminology used:

1. Occupied Period: period of time when the building is in use and occupied. Generally systems will be fully operational throughout this period and ventilation air shall be continuously introduced. Space temperature setpoints will generally be in the “normal” range of 69°-76°F.
2. Unoccupied period: period of time when the building or zone is not in use and unoccupied. Ventilation air shall not be introduced.
3. Preoccupancy Period: Time prior to the Occupied period when the systems are returning the space temperatures from setback to “normal” or occupied setpoints (warm-up and cool-down). Ventilation air shall not be introduced unless outside air conditions permit free-cooling. Time period shall be determined by an optimum start strategy unless otherwise specified.
4. Setback Period: Setback start will typically coincide with the end of the occupied period and end with the start of the preoccupacy period, however it shall be provided with its own schedule. Generally systems will be off except to maintain a “setback” temperature.

F. Where any sequence or occupancy schedule calls for more than one motorized unit to start simultaneously, the BAS start commands shall be staggered by 5 second (adj.) intervals to minimize inrush current.

G. Alarm messages specified throughout the sequences are assigned to discrete priority levels. Priority levels dictate the handling and destination of alarm reports.

H. All setpoints shall be adjustable (adj.), they shall be modifiable, with the proper password level, from the operator interface or via a function block menu. For these points, it is unacceptable to have to modify programming statements to change the setpoint.

I. Where reset action is specified in a sequence of operation, but a reset schedule is not indicated on the drawings, one of the following methods shall be employed:

1. Contractor shall determine a fixed reset schedule which shall result in stable operation and shall maintain the primary variable within the specified maximum allowable variance.
2. A floating reset algorithm shall be used which increments the secondary variable setpoint (setpoint of control loop being reset) on a periodic basis to maintain primary variable setpoint. The recalculation time and reset increment shall be chosen to maintain the primary variable within the specified maximum allowable variance.
3. [Primary variable shall control the devices directly using a PID feedback control loop without resetting the secondary variable. However, the control devices shall still modulate as necessary to maintain upper and lower limits on the secondary variable. Proportional band, integral gain, and derivative term shall be selected to maintain the primary variable within the specified maximum allowable tolerance while minimizing overshoot and settling time. Contractor shall gain prior approval for implementing this method of reset.]

J. Where a supply air temperature or duct pressure setpoint is specified to be reset by the space temperature of the zones calling for the most cooling/heating, the following method shall be employed:

1. A floating reset algorithm shall be used which increments the secondary variable (e.g., supply air temperature or duct pressure) setpoint on a periodic basis to maintain primary variable (e.g. space temperature) setpoint. The reset increment shall be determined by the quantity of “need heat” or “need cool” requests from individual terminal units. A terminal unit’s “need heat” virtual point shall activate whenever the zone’s space temperature falls below the currently applicable (occupied or unoccupied) heating setpoint throttling range. A terminal unit’s “need cool” virtual point shall activate whenever the zone’s space temperature rises above the currently applicable (occupied, unoccupied, or economy) cooling setpoint throttling range. The recalculation time and reset increment shall be chosen to maintain the primary variable within the specified maximum allowable variance while minimizing overshoot and settling time. Reset range maximum and minimum values shall limit the setpoint range.

K. Where a supply air temperature, duct pressure, or differential water pressure setpoint is specified to be reset by valve or damper position of the zone or zones calling for the most cooling/heating, the following method shall be employed:

1. A floating reset algorithm shall be used which increments the secondary variable (e.g., supply air temperature, pipe or duct pressure) setpoint on a periodic basis to maintain primary variable (e.g. cooling valve, heating valve, damper position) setpoint of 85% open. The reset increment shall be calculated based on the average position of the quantity of the worst (most open valve/damper) zone(s) as specified. The recalculation time, reset increment and control device position influence shall be chosen to maintain the primary variable within the specified maximum allowable variance while minimizing

overshoot and settling time. The BAS analog output value shall be acceptable as indicating the position of the control device.

2. Alternatively to continuously calculating the average of the quantity of worst valve/damper positions, a method similar to the one described above may be employed whereby the "need heat" or "need cool" virtual point shall increment by one unit each time a zone's valve/damper position rises to greater than 95%. The quantity of "need heat" or "need cool" points shall then be the basis for reset.

L. Where "prove operation" of a device (generally controlled by a digital output) is indicated in the sequence, it shall require that the BAS, after an adjustable time delay & after the device is commanded to operate (feedback delay,) confirm that the device is operational via the status input. If the status point does not confirm operation after the time delay or anytime thereafter for an adjustable time delay (debounce delay) while the device is commanded to run, an alarm shall be enunciated audibly and via an alarm message at the operator interface and print at the alarm printers. A descriptive message shall be attached to the alarm message indicating the nature of the alarm and actions to be taken. Contractor shall provide messages to meet this intent.

M. The BAS shall provide for adjustable maximum rates of change for increasing and decreasing output from the following analog output points:

1. Speed control of variable speed drives

N. Wherever a value is indicated to be dependent on another value (i.e.: setpoint plus 5°F) the BAS shall use that equation to determine the value. Simply providing a virtual point that the operator must set is unacceptable. In this case three virtual points shall be provided. One to store the parameter (5°F), one to store the setpoint, and one to store the value which is the result of the equation.

Some sequences rely on integration with third-party manufacturer control equipment. See the control equipment specifications, equipment schedules and equipment specifications for more information on this integration.

3.02 AIR HANDLING UNITS - GENERAL

A. Logic Strategies: The BAS shall fully control the air handlers. Generally, the BAS shall energize the AH (start the fans and activate control loops) as dictated for each air handler. The following indicates when and how the BAS shall energize the AHs and control various common aspects of them. The following "logic strategies" shall be included by reference with each air handler with any specific clarifications required:

1. Scheduled Occupancy: BAS shall determine the occupancy periods (occupied, unoccupied, preoccupancy, and setback) as defined above. The following details the common control aspects related to the scheduled occupancy.

a. Occupied Period: BAS shall energize the AHU during all occupied periods.

b. Setback Period: the BAS shall deenergize the unit except as required to maintain a setback temperature of 55°F with a 5°F cycle differential. Generally, where setback temperatures apply in multiple zones, the worst zone shall control the system. Setback setpoints generally apply except during preoccupancy and night purge. If, during the unoccupied period, there is a request for occupancy override, the occupancy mode shall become active for an adjustable period.

c. Preoccupancy: BAS shall energize the AHU continuously during the preoccupancy period. Minimum OA flow shall be 0 CFM or the minimum OA damper position shall be 0%. "Normal" setpoints shall apply. Preoccupancy duration shall be one of the following as specified by reference:

1) Fixed: The duration of the preoccupancy period shall be fixed as scheduled by the operator.
2) Optimum: The duration of the morning warm-up period shall vary according to outside air temperature and space temperature such that the space temperature rises to occupied period heating setpoint at the beginning of, but not before, the scheduled occupied period.

2. Night Purge Cycle: The night purge cycle shall be allowed only when manually enabled via a graphic icon. Night purge cycle shall start and stop as listed below during the unoccupied mode to maintain the zone(s) at setpoint using OA only (economizer) for cooling. Mechanical cooling and heating shall be disabled during the night purge mode.

a. Night Purge Cycle Start: While the mode is enabled and during the unoccupied period, the BAS shall initiate the night purge cycle when:

1) The OA temperature falls to 10°F (adj.) below the space temperature(s) (highest space temperature served by the AHU if not a single zone unit)
2) And all space temperatures (served by the AHU if not a single zone unit) are greater than their occupied heating setpoint
3) And outdoor air temperature is below 60°F (adj.).

b. Night Purge Cycle Stop: BAS shall disable the mode and deenergize AHU when:

1) The space temperature (highest space temperature for AHUs served by the AHU if not a single zone unit) falls to within 5°F (adj.) of OA temperature
2) Or any space temperature(s) fall(s) below its occupied heating setpoint.
3) Or the outdoor air temperature rises above the night cycle setpoint (60˚F [adj.]) by 5°F.

3. Sequenced Heating: BAS shall control the heating and air side economizer detailed for the particular AH. Program logic shall directly prohibit the heating valve and economizer damper to be open (or above minimum) simultaneously.

B. Safeties

1. Freeze Safety: Upon operation of a freezestat, unit shall be deenergized with the exception of the heating loops. Typically supply and return fans where applicable shall be deenergized via a hardwired interlock[and an indication of the operation shall be sensed by the BAS. BAS shall enunciate appropriate alarm and remove and lock out the start command], [which shall initiate "fan failure" alarms]. OA dampers shall close and heating loops shall remain active.
2. Software Low-Limit Safety: Upon detection by the BAS of a unit supply temperature below a low limit setpoint (40°F unless specifically stated otherwise), unit shall be deenergized with the exception of the heating loops. BAS shall enunciate appropriate alarm and remove and lock out the start command]]. OA dampers shall close and heating loops shall remain active. Once disabled, unit shall require a manual reset via the Operator Interface before it is allowed to restart.
3. Smoke Safety: Upon indication of smoke by a duct smoke detector the unit will shut down via hard-wired interlock and an indication of the operation shall be sensed by the BAS. BAS shall enunciate appropriate alarm and remove and lock out the start command], [which shall initiate "fan failure" alarms]. OA dampers shall close and heating loops shall remain active.
4. High or Low Pressure Safety: In VAV systems, upon activation of a high or low pressure safety switch, AHU shall be deenergized, fans shall be deenergized via a hard wired interlock[, and an indication of the operation shall be sensed by the BAS. BAS shall

enunciate appropriate alarm and remove and lock out the start command], [which shall initiate "fan failure" alarms].

5. The detailed “Safety logic strategies” above shall be required by reference to them in each of the individual sequences specified below.

C. Diagnostics

1. Diagnostic Strategies: In addition to the standard alarm limits specified for all sensed variables the BAS monitor and diagnose anomalies in the operation of the air handlers. The following “diagnostic strategies” shall be included by reference with each air handler with any specific clarifications required:

   a. Run Time Limit: BAS shall accumulate the runtime of the status of associated rotating equipment and enunciate a level 5 alarm to indicate that the unit is in need of service.

   b. DP Switch Filter Monitoring: BAS shall monitor the differential pressure switch across the filter bank(s). An alarm shall be reported when pressure drop exceeds the switch’s setting.

   c. DP Transmitter Filter Monitoring: BAS shall monitor the differential pressure across the filter bank(s). An alarm shall be reported when pressure drop exceeds the alarm setting.

2. System Condition Alarming: BAS shall monitor the following parameters and enunciate an alarm under any of the following conditions in addition to other monitor and alarm functions specified above. These may not be specifically referenced in the individual sequences, but shall be provided wherever applicable.

   a. Enunciate a Level 2 alarm when any active (air flowing) discharge temperature goes above or below its setpoint plus ±8°F (adj.) for 15 min. continuously as follows:

      1) Sensor XXX is indicating that the discharge temperature is outside of acceptable limits.

   b. Enunciate a Level 2 alarm when any active (air flowing) heating duct or heating coil leaving temperature falls below its setpoint minus 8°F (adj.) for 15 min. continuously as follows:

      1) Sensor XXX is indicating that the heating air temperature is below acceptable limits.

   c. During the occupied period, enunciate a Level 2 alarm when any space temperature falls below its active heating setpoint minus 5°F (adj.) for 15 min. continuously.

      1) Zone XXX appears to be outside of acceptable limits.

   d. Enunciate a Level 2 alarm when any active (air flowing) CO_2 reading rises above 1,200 PPM for 10 min. continuously as follows:

      1) Sensor XXX is indicating that the CO_2 levels are above acceptable limits.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 09 27

BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) – COMMISSIONING – Alternative Bid

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements that apply to implementation of commissioning of the Building Automation System (BAS).

1.02 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

A. Section defines responsibilities of the Controls Contractor to commission the BAS.

B. At the Client's expense, shall retain a Commissioning Authority (CA) who shall work with the Contractor to ensure that the systems, equipment, and interfaces are installed, tested, and operate in accordance with the design intent; that the systems are adequately documented; and that the Client is adequately trained on system intent, operation, and maintenance.

C. The BAS contractor will provide support the commissioning authority in the form of information, both written and verbal, concerning the installation and operation of the control system.

D. The BAS contractor shall allow time and allocate resources to conduct their own testing including; Point-to-Point Testing, Prefunctional Performances Testing, Functional Performance Testing and finally Demonstration Testing, to the Owner's designated personnel and Commissioning Agent, the operation of all sequences of operation and other control system functions described in this specification, its attachments or drawing references. The tests are intended to provide documentation that all aspects of the temperature control system have been properly installed to meet the design intent of the Owner. The contractor performs all testing, documents all the testing, and submits the documentation prior to approval for conducting Demonstration Testing to the Owner.

E. Air and water balancing shall be completed, and discrepancies resolved prior to conducting Demonstration Testing. Controls contractor will coordinate with the Testing & Balancing Contractor if their support is required for the demonstration. The completed testing forms shall be presented to the Owner's representative upon completion of each commissioning step.

1.03 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Perform all testing. This will generally include the following:

1. Attend Commissioning (Cx) progress and coordination meetings.
2. Prepare and submit required draft forms and systems information as required by specification.
3. Establish trend logs and graphs of system operation as specified herein.
4. Demonstrate system operation.
5. Manipulate systems and equipment to facilitate testing.
6. Provide instrumentation necessary for verification and performance testing.
7. Manipulate control systems to facilitate verification and demonstration testing.
8. Train the Client Representatives as specified in PART 3 of this Section.

B. Provide a BAS Technician to work at the direction of Commissioning Authority for software optimization assistance for a minimum of 16 hours Refer to PART 3 for a description of the software optimization.

C. Compensation for Retesting: Contractor shall compensate the Client for site time necessitated by incompleteness of systems or equipment at time of functional performance testing. All testing failures, which require on-site time for retesting, will be considered actual damages to

the Client. All parties under contract with the Client who are affected by the retesting shall be included in the contract modification.

1.04 GENERAL MILESTONES – TEMPERATURE CONTROL WORK

A. The following list outlines the general sequence of events for Temperature Controls commissioning throughout the project:

1. Submittals:
    a. Submit product data, including manufacturers' installation and startup procedures, and shop drawings, and receive approval.
    b. Submit BAS logic documentation, and receive approval.
    c. Submit sample testing forms, and receive approval.
    d. Submit O&M Manuals.
    e. Submit Training Plan.
    f. Submit "The Testing Plan" for review and receive approval.
2. Construction:
    a. Begin system installation.
    b. Conduct Point-to-Point Testing.
    c. Conduct Prefunctional Performance Testing.
    d. Work with TAB contractor to complete checking of systems.
    e. Conduct Functional Performance Testing.
    f. Initiate trend logs.
    g. Compile all testing documentation for submission to the Commissioning authority for approval.
    h. Conduct Demonstration testing.
3. Acceptance Period:
    a. Begin Training.
    b. Submit final As-built documentation.
    c. Schedule Opposite season testing.
    d. Complete training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSTRUMENTATION

A. Instrumentation required to verify readings and test the system and equipment performance shall be provided by the Contractor. All equipment used for testing and calibration shall be NIST/NBS traceable and calibrated within the preceding 6-month period. Certificates of calibration shall be submitted.

2.02 TAB & COMMISSIONING – PORTABLE OPERATORS TERMINAL

A. Contractor shall provide a portable operators terminal or hand held device to facilitate Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) and calibration. This device shall support all functions and allow querying and editing of all parameters required for proper calibration and start up.

B. Connections shall be provided local to the device being calibrated. For instance, for VAV boxes, connection of the operator's terminal shall be either at the sensor or at the terminal box.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 BAS START-UP, TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND CALIBRATION

A. Work and/or systems installed under this Division shall be fully functioning prior to Demonstration and Acceptance Phase. Contractor shall start, test, adjust, and calibrate all work and/or systems under this Contract, as described below:

1. Inspect the installation of all devices. Verify that all devices were installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written installation instructions.
2. Verify proper electrical voltages and amperages, and verify that all circuits are free from faults.
3. Verify integrity/safety of all electrical connections.
4. Coordinate with TAB subcontractor, and CxA to obtain and fine-tune control settings that are determined from balancing procedures. Record the following control settings as obtained from TAB contractor, and note any TAB deficiencies in the BAS Start-Up Report:

    a. Optimum duct static pressure setpoints for VAV air handling units.
    b. Minimum outside air damper settings for air handling units.
    c. Optimum differential pressure setpoints for variable speed pumping systems.
    d. Calibration parameters for flow control devices such as VAV boxes and flow measuring stations.

        1) BAS contractor shall provide hand-held device as a minimum to the TAB to facilitate calibration. Connection for any given device shall be local to it (i.e. at the VAV box or at the thermostat). Hand-held device or portable operator's terminal shall allow querying and editing of parameters required for proper calibration and start-up.

5. Test, calibrate, and set all digital and analog sensing and actuating devices. Calibrate each instrumentation device by making a comparison between the BAS display and the reading at the device, using an instrument traceable to the National Bureau of Standards, which shall be at least twice as accurate as the device to be calibrated (e.g., if field device is +/-0.5% accurate, test equipment shall be +/-0.25% accurate over same range). Record the measured value and displayed value for each device in the BAS Start Up Report.
6. Check and set zero and span adjustments for all transducers and transmitters.
7. For dampers and valves:

    a. Check for adequate installation including free travel throughout range and adequate seal.
    b. Where loops are sequenced, check for proper control without overlap.

8. For Actuators:

    a. Check to ensure that device seals tightly when the appropriate signal is applied to the operator.
    b. Check for appropriate fail position, and that the stroke and range is as required.
    c. For pneumatic operators, adjust the operator spring compression as required to achieve close-off. If positioner or volume booster is installed on the operator, calibrate in accordance with manufacturer's procedure to achieve spring range indicated. Check split-range positioners to verify proper operation. Record settings for each device in the BAS Pre-Commissioning Report.
    d. For sequenced electronic actuators, calibrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to required ranges.

9. Check each digital control point by making a comparison between the control command at the CU and the status of the controlled device. Check each digital input point by making a comparison of the state of the sensing device and the Operator Interface display. Record the results for each device in the BAS Start-Up Report.
10. For outputs to reset other manufacturer's devices (for example, VSDs) and for feedback from them, calibrate ranges to establish proper parameters. Coordinate with representative of the respective manufacturer and obtain their approval of the installation.

11. Verify proper sequences by using the approved checklists to record results and submit with BAS Start-Up Report. Verify proper sequence and operation of all specified functions.
12. Verify that all safety devices trip at appropriate conditions. Adjust setpoints accordingly.
13. Tune all control loops to obtain the fastest stable response without hunting, offset or overshoot. Record tuning parameters and response test results for each control loop in the BAS Start Up Report. Except from a startup, maximum allowable variance from set point for controlled variables under normal load fluctuations shall be as follows. Within 3 minutes of any upset (for which the system has the capability to respond) in the control loop, tolerances shall be maintained (exceptions noted):

    a. Duct Air Temperature: ±1 deg F.
    b. Space Temperature: ±2 deg F.
    c. Duct Pressure: ± 0.25-inches w.g.
    d. Duct or Space Humidity: ±5%.
    e. Air Flow Control: ±5% of setpoint velocity.
    f. Space Pressurization (on active control systems): ±0.05-inches w.g. with no door or window movements.

14. Interface and DDC Control Panels:

    a. Ensure devices are properly installed with adequate clearance for maintenance and with clear labels in accordance with the record drawings.
    b. Ensure that terminations are safe, secure and labeled in accordance with the record drawings.
    c. Check power supplies for proper voltage ranges and loading.
    d. Ensure that wiring and tubing are run in a neat and workman-like manner, either bound or enclosed in trough.
    e. Check for adequate signal strength on communication networks.
    f. Check for standalone performance of controllers by disconnecting the controller from the LAN. Verify the event is annunciated at Operator Interfaces. Verify that the controlling LAN reconfigures as specified in the event of a LAN disconnection.
    g. Ensure that all outputs and devices fail to their proper positions/states.
    h. Ensure that buffered and/or volatile information is held through power outage.
    i. With all system and communications operating normally, sample and record update/annunciation times for critical alarms fed from the panel to the Operator Interface.
    j. Check for adequate grounding of all DDC panels and devices.

15. For Operator Interfaces:

    a. Verify that all elements on the graphics are functional and are properly bound to physical devices and/or virtual points, and that hot links or page jumps are functional and logical.
    b. Output all specified BAS reports for review and approval.
    c. Verify that the alarm, printing, and logging are functional and in accordance with requirements.
    d. Verify that trends are archiving to disk and provide a sample to the Commissioning Authority for review.
    e. Verify that paging/dial-out alarm annunciation is functional.
    f. Verify the functionality of remote Operator Interfaces and that a robust connection can be established consistently.
    g. Verify that required third party software applications required with the bid are installed and are functional.

16. Start-up and check out control air compressors, air drying, and filtering systems in accordance with the appropriate Section and with manufacturer's instructions.
17. Verify proper interface with fire alarm system.

B. Submit Start-Up Test Report: Report shall be completed, submitted, and approved prior to Preliminary Acceptance or Substantial Completion.

3.02 SENSOR CHECKOUT AND CALIBRATION

A. General Checkout: Verify that all sensor locations are appropriate and are away from causes of erratic operation. Verify that sensors with shielded cable are grounded only at one end. For sensor pairs that are used to determine a temperature or pressure difference, make sure they are reading within 0.2 deg F of each other for temperature and within a tolerance equal to ±2% of the reading of each other for pressure. Tolerances for critical applications may be tighter.

B. Calibration: Calibrate all sensors using one of the following procedures:

1. Sensors Without Transmitters – Standard Application: Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor at various points across the range. Verify that the sensor reading (via the permanent thermostat, gage or BAS) is within the tolerances specified for the sensor. If not, adjust offset and range, or replace sensor. Where sensors are subject to wide variations in the sensed variable, calibrate sensor within the highest and lowest 20% of the expected range.
2. Sensors With Transmitters – Standard Application: Disconnect sensor. Connect a signal generator in place of sensor. Connect ammeter in series between transmitter and BAS control panel. Using manufacturer's resistance-temperature data, simulate minimum desired temperature. Adjust transmitter potentiometer zero until the ammeter reads 4 mA. Repeat for the maximum temperature matching 20 mA to the potentiometer span or maximum and verify at the OI. Record all values and recalibrate controller as necessary to conform to tolerances. Reconnect sensor. Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor. Verify that the sensor reading (via the permanent thermostat, gage or BAS) is within the tolerances specified. If not, replace sensor and repeat. For pressure sensors, perform a similar process with a suitable signal generator.

C. Sensor Tolerance: Sensors shall be within the tolerances specified for the device. Refer to Division 23 Section, "Building Automation System (BAS) - Basic Materials, Interface Devices, and Sensors."

3.03 BAS DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate the operation of the BAS hardware, software, and all related components and systems to the satisfaction of the Commissioning Authority and the Client. Schedule the demonstration with the Clietn representative 1 week in advance. Demonstration shall not be scheduled until all hardware and software submittals, and the Start-Up Test Report are approved. If the Work fails to be demonstrated to conform with Contract specifications, so as to require scheduling of additional site visits by the Commissioning Authority for re-demonstration, Contractor shall reimburse the Client for costs of subsequent Commissioning Authority site visits.

B. The Contractor shall supply all personnel and equipment for the demonstration, including, but not limited to, instruments and ladders. Contractor-supplied personnel must be competent with and knowledgeable of all project-specific hardware, software, and the HVAC systems. All training documentation and submittals shall be at the job site.

C. Demonstration shall typically involve small representative samples of systems/equipment randomly selected by the Client.

D. The system shall be demonstrated following the same procedures used in the Start-Up Test by using the approved Commissioning Checklists. Demonstration shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, the following:

1. Demonstrate that required software is installed on BAS workstations. Demonstrate that graphic screens, alarms, trends, and reports are installed as submitted and approved.
2. Demonstrate that points specified and shown can be interrogated and/or commanded (as applicable) from all workstations, as specified.
3. Demonstrate that remote dial-up communication abilities are in accordance with these Specifications.
4. Demonstrate proper installation and functionality of the entire control system. The contractor shall successfully demonstrate using similar techniques used in conducting their own testing the following:
    a. Point-to-Point Testing: A maximum of 10% of all points will be demonstrated to the commissioning authority. Testing. The commissioning authority will randomly select points to be tested.
    b. Prefunctional performance testing: A maximum of 10% of the Prefunctional Checkout Testing will be demonstrated to the commissioning authority. The commissioning authority will randomly select points to be tested.
    c. Functional Performance Testing: A Maximum of 10% of each of the systems: AHU's, VAV, Unit Ventilators, chillers, boilers, etc shall be tested for proper functional performance. Each selected system shall successfully demonstrate all modes of operation as specified in the sequence of operations. The commissioning authority will randomly select which pieces of equipment will be tested.
5. Upon failure of any device or system to meet the specified end-to-end accuracy, an additional 10 percent of those tests shall be selected at random by Commissioning Authority for demonstration. This process shall be repeated until 100 percent of randomly selected point and sequences have been demonstrated to meet specified end-to-end accuracy.
6. Demonstrate that all DDC and other software programs exist at respective field panels. The Direct Digital Control (DDC) programming and point database shall be as submitted and approved.
7. Demonstrate that all DDC programs accomplish the specified sequences of operation.
8. Demonstrate that commands can be initiated through the operators workstation.
9. Demonstrate that the panels automatically recover from power failures, as specified.
10. Demonstrate that the stand-alone operation of panels meets the requirements of these Specifications. Demonstrate that the panels' response to LAN communication failures meets the requirements specified.
11. Identify access to equipment. Demonstrate that access is sufficient to perform required maintenance.
12. Demonstrate that required trend graphs and trend logs are set up in accordance with the requirements. Provide a sample of the data archive. Indicate the file names and locations.

E. BAS Demonstration shall be completed and approved prior to Preliminary Acceptance or Substantial Completion.

F. Any tests successfully completed during the demonstration will be recorded as passed for the functional performance testing and will not have to be retested.

3.04 TRENDLOGS

A. Contractor shall configure and analyze all trends required under Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Software and Programming."

3.05 TREND GRAPHS

A. Trend graphs as specified in Division 23 Section "Building Automation System (BAS) - Software and Programming" shall generally be used during the Acceptance Phase to facilitate and document testing. Prepare controller and workstation software to display graphical format trends during the Acceptance Period. Trend graphs shall demonstrate compliance with contract documents.

B. Each graph shall be clearly labeled with HVAC subsystem title, date, and times.

3.06 Warranty Phase BAS OPPOSITE SEASON Trending and Testing:

A. Trending: Throughout the Warranty Phase, trend logs shall be maintained as required for the Acceptance Period. Contractor shall forward archive trend logs to the Commissioning Authority/the Client for review upon Commissioning Authority/the Client request. Commissioning Authority/the Client will review these and notify contractor of any warranty work required.

B. Opposite Season Testing: Within 6 months of completion of the Work, Commissioning Authority/the Client shall schedule and conduct Opposite Season functional performance testing. Contractor shall participate in this testing and remedy any deficiencies identified.

3.07 BAS OPERATOR TRAINING AND O&M MANUALS

A. General: The training program shall have the following types of training sessions:

1. Basic Operator Workstation and BAS Hardware (8 hours of training).
2. BAS Operation and Monitoring (24 hours of training).
3. Opposite Season or Refresher training (16 hours of training).

B. Training Sessions: The individual training sessions shall be made up of four, four-hour sessions for a total of 48 hours (overall) of training, between all training types. No more than one session shall be provided each day.

C. Attendees: The training shall be provided to the Owner's designated personnel.

D. Intent: The intent of the training sessions is to clearly and completely instruct the Owner’s personnel on all of the functions of the system, with a particular focus on operation of, and troubleshooting capabilities of, the control system.

1. Basic Operator Workstation and BAS Hardware training requirements:

   a. Graphic screens operational.
   b. Cheat Sheets completed and accepted.

2. BAS Operation and Monitoring:

   a. Commissioning Demonstration completed.
   b. As-build control documents are updated.
   c. Training Manual has been completed and accepted.

3. The BAS contractor shall provide a training plan or syllabus for each four-hour session and the entire plan must be submitted and accepted by the commissioning agent prior to the beginning of training. In addition to the syllabus the contractor shall assemble a training manual for use during the training. This manual shall contain all the information used during the training session. The manual shall contain the following:

   a. TRAINING PLAN: The training plan shall be structured as follows:

      1) Format shall be an outline broken up into eight four-hour sessions. There is no training plan for the Opposite Season training.
      2) The material to be covered shall then be further sub-divided into descriptions of the material to be covered every 15 minutes.

3) The descriptions shall include not only the material to be covered but also its location in the Training Manual including section and page number.

b. TRAINING MANUAL: Refer to Division 23 Section, "Building Automation System (BAS)."

4. Training Performance: During any training session, should the BAS fail to perform in accordance with the requirements of the O&M manual or sequence of operations, the system shall be repaired or adjusted as necessary and the demonstration repeated. If during any training session, the trainer debugs more than three (3) items or for longer than 20 minutes total, the training session shall be terminated and the contractor shall not be credited for training that day. The session shall be rescheduled for another date. The re-scheduled training session shall be carried out for the full four hours at no additional cost to the Owner.
5. Documentation of training: After each four-hour session the engineer shall initial and date the items on the test plan that were covered that day. A copy of the documentation shall be maintained in the engineers Training Manual and the contractor shall keep a copy. Follow the requirements of Division 1 for documenting the training.
6. Basic Operator Workstation and BAS Hardware Training:

   a. Brief walk-through of building. In the walkthrough all control components will be identified including identification of all controlled equipment. Use temperature
   b. Brief overview of the various parts of the O&M Manuals, including hardware and software programming and operating publications, catalog data, controls installation drawings, and DDC programming documentation.
   c. Demonstration of workstation login/logout procedures, password setup, and exception reporting.
   d. Demonstration of workstation menu penetration and broad overview of the various workstation features.
   e. Overview of mechanical systems installed and how the BAS controls them.
   f. Present all site-specific point naming conventions and points lists, back-up sequences, upload/download procedures, and other information as necessary to maintain the integrity of the BAS.
   g. Provide an overview of alarm features, various levels, acknowledging, reporting and clearing.

7. BAS Operation and Monitoring:

   a. Walk through the entire sequence of operation for the BAS (using the final sequence of operations document) and discuss in detail the operation of the BAS system through a 24-hour day including the different scheduling periods and how the BAS operates the associated mechanical systems
   b. Demonstration of controller portable and built-in operator interface device display capabilities.
   c. Guide engineer in the development of at least eight trends that would be of use in trouble shooting a problem, checking for proper operation or addressing hot or cold complaints. These trends could include classroom temperature checks of control loop stability (hot deck temperature setpoint versus actual value).
   d. Provide an overview of workstation reports.
   e. Demonstrate how to create a temporary schedule.
   f. Discuss the operator software overrides, their impact on the BAS, how to check for them and initiate and remove them.
   g. Review of installed components and how to install/replace, maintain, commission, and diagnose them.

8. Opposite Season or Refresher Training:

a. The third training session shall be conducted on-site at a date specified by the Owner within twelve months of Preliminary Acceptance or Substantial Completion and shall consist of four, four-hour sessions of training. The session shall be structured to address specific topics that trainees need to discuss and to answer questions concerning operation of the system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 11 23

FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.
6. Service meters.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 5 psig.

B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: More than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa)

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Piping specialties.
2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.

5. Dielectric fittings.

B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Welding certificates.

1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

a. Material Group: 1.1.

b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.

c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.

d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.

e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.

5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.

a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. OmegaFlex, Inc.

b. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Parflex Division.

c. Titeflex.

d. Tru-Flex Metal Hose Corp.

2. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.

3. Coating: PE with flame retardant.

a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.

2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

4. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.

5. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.

6. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.

7. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig (34.5 kPa).

C. Aluminum Tubing: Comply with ASTM B 210 and ASTM B 241/B 241M.

1. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy 5456 is prohibited.

2. Protective Coating: Factory-applied coating capable of resisting corrosion on tubing in contact with masonry, plaster, insulation, water, detergents, and sewerage.

3. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
    a. Copper-alloy fittings.
    b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
    c. Dryseal threads shall comply with ASME B1.20.3.

D. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 88, Type L.
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
2. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
    a. Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

E. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 88, Type L.
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
2. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
    a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
    b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
    c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

2.02 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches (1830 mm.)

2.03 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F (540 deg C) complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.04 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. See "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch (25 mm) and smaller.
6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) to NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig
2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

D. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
   c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
   e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

E. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
   c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
   e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.

c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.

d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.

e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.

4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.

5. Seats: Reinforced TFE.

6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.

7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.

8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).

9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

G. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Lee Brass Company.

b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

3. Plug: Bronze.

4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.

5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.

6. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).

7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

H. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.

b. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.

c. Xomox Corporation; a Crane company.

2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.05 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:
1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Actaris.
b. American Meter Company.
c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
e. Invensys.
f. Maxitrol Company.
g. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.

8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
   b. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
   c. Harper Wyman Co.
   d. Maxitrol Company.
   e. SCP, Inc.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig

2.06 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
   b. Central Plastics Company.
   c. Hart Industries International, Inc.

d. Jomar International Ltd.

e. Matco-Norca, Inc.

f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.

g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: ASSE 1079.

b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F

c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.07 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.

B. Inspect natural-gas piping to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.

C. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.03 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade.

1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.

C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.

D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.

2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

E. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:
1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.

F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

3.04 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 54 the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Locate valves for easy access.

H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.

I. Install piping free of sags and bends.

J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.

M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm)

long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
2. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
3. Prohibited Locations:
    a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.

Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.

T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.

U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.05 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground.

B. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.

C. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.

D. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.

E. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.

F. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.

3.06 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

3.07 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.

F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

3.08 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
5. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (15.8 mm).

C. Install hangers for horizontal drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10): Maximum span, 48 inches (1220 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
2. NPS 1/2 and NPS 5/8 (DN 15 and DN 18): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. NPS 3/4 and NPS 7/8 (DN 20 and DN 22): Maximum span, 84 inches (2134 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
4. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

D. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10): Maximum span, 48 inches (1220 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
2. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

3.09 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.

B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.

C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.

D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.11 PAINTING

A. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.

B. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to [NFPA 54] [the International Fuel Gas Code] and authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:

1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
2. Annealed temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.

B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
3. Annealed temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

3.14 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:

1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
2. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
3. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
4. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.15 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG (3.45 kPa) AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG (34.5 kPa)

A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be[**one of**] the following:

1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
2. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
3. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and [**brazed**] [**flared**] joints.
4. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
5. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be **one of** the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

C. Underground, below building, piping shall be **one of** the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.16 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
3. Bronze plug valve.

B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.
3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.

C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
3. Bronze plug valve.

D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger shall be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.
3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.

E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
3. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 21 13

HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Makeup-water piping.
4. Condensate-drain piping.
5. Blowdown-drain piping.
6. Air-vent piping.
7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
1. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
2. Pressure-seal fittings.
3. Chemical treatment.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Other building services.

3. Structural members.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
2. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C).

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).

C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

D. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Anvil International, Inc.
    b. Star Pipe Products.
    c. Victaulic Company.

3. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
4. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F (110 deg C) for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.

E. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. NIBCO INC.
    b. Viega.

3. Housing: Copper.
4. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
5. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
6. Minimum 200-psig (1379-kPa) working-pressure rating at 250 deg F (121 deg C).

F. Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. T-DRILL Industries Inc.

G. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Anvil International, Inc.
    b. Central Sprinkler Company.
    c. Star Pipe Products.
    d. Victaulic Company.

3. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
4. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM, or, nitrile gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Victaulic Company.

3. Housing: Steel.
4. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.

5. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
6. Minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) working-pressure rating at 230 deg F (110 deg C).

J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.3 FIBERGLASS PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. RTRP: ASTM D 2996, filament-wound pipe with tapered bell and spigot ends for adhesive joints.

B. RTRF: Compression or spray-up/contact molded of same material, pressure class, and joining method as pipe.

C. Flanges: ASTM D 4024. Full-face gaskets suitable for the service, minimum 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) thick, 60-70 durometer. ASTM A 307, Grade B, hex head bolts with washers.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.

a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

F. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

1. Fiberglass adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
   b. IPEX Inc.
   c. KBI (King Bros. Industries).

2. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
   b. IPEX Inc.
   c. KBI (King Bros. Industries).
   d. NIBCO INC; Model #T/S-1710.

2. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
   b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
   c. Central Plastics Company.
   d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
   e. Jomar International, Ltd.
   f. Matco-Norca.
   g. Watts Regulator Co.
   h. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.

2. Description:

a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C), 150 psig (1035 kPa), 250 psig (1725 kPa) .
c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Matco-Norca.
d. Watts Regulator Co.
e. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.

2. Description:

a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C), 150 psig (1035 kPa), 175 psig (1200 kPa), 300 psig (2070 kPa) .
d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. Calpico, Inc.
c. Central Plastics Company.
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) .
c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Elster Perfection.
b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
c. Matco-Norca.
d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
e. Victaulic Company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C) .
d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller , shall be any of the following:

1. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed, pressure-seal joints.
2. Schedule 40, Schedule 30, Schedule 20, Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron, Class 150, malleable-iron, Class 250, cast-iron, Class 300, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
3. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
4. Schedule 40, Schedule 80 pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger , shall be any of the following:

1. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40, Schedule 30, Schedule 20 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
3. Schedule 40, Schedule 30, Schedule 20 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
4. Schedule 40, Schedule 80 pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
5. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

C. Hot-water heating piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:

1. Type K (Type A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
2. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller , shall be any of the following:

1. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed, pressure-seal joints.

2. Schedule 40, Schedule 30, Schedule 20 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron, Class 150, malleable-iron, Class 250, cast-iron, Class 300, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
3. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
4. Schedule 40, Schedule 80 pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

E. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger , shall be any of the following:

1. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40, Schedule 30, Schedule 20 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
3. Schedule 40, Schedule 30, Schedule 20 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
4. Schedule 40, Schedule 80
5. pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
6. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

F. Chilled-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:

1. Type K (Type A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
2. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

G. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be either of the following:

1. Type L (Type B), Type M (Type C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40, Schedule 80 pipe and fittings, and solvent-welded joints.

H. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K (Type A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.

I. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M (Type C), Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

J. Condensate-Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

K. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.

L. Air-Vent Piping:

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K (Type A), annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

M. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

T. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.

U. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples, unions.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) : Use dielectric flanges, flange kits, nipples.

D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.

C. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m).
2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m).
3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m).
4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m).
5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m).
6. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m).

E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
3. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32:)Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
4. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
5. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
6. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
7. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

F. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.

G. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.

H. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

H. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

I. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.

J. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.

K. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:

1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5 .
2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of 100 ppm. Revise this value if closed system contains glycol.
5. Corrosion Inhibitor:

    a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
    b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
    e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.

6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of 0.20 ppm.

7. Tolyiriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of 10 ppm.
8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of 10 ppm.
9. Ammonia: Maximum of 20 ppm.
10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of 20 ppm.
11. Microbiological Limits:

    a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 1000 organisms/mL.
    b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 100 organisms/mL.
    c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/mL.
    d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
    e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.

B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.

1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above the floor.
2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
3. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.

C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

D. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

E. Fill systems that have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: No glycol.
2. Chilled-Water Piping: Minimum of 15 percent propylene glycol.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.

2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 21 16

HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Makeup-water piping.
4. Condensate-drain piping.
5. Blowdown-drain piping.
6. Air-vent piping.
7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Hydronic specialties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VALVES

A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."Section 15112 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."Section 15900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls."

C. Plastic Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. American Valve, Inc.
    b. Asahi/America.
    c. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
    d. Colonial Engineering.
    e. George Fischer Inc.
    f. Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
    g. IPEX Inc.
    h. Jomar International, Ltd.
    i. KBI (King Bros. Industries).
    j. Legend Valve.
    k. NIBCO INC.
    l. Plast-O-Matic Valves, Inc.
    m. SMC The Specialty Mfg. Co.
    n. Thermoplastic Valves Inc.
    o. Watts Regulator Co.

3. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece CPVC or PVC to match piping.
4. Ball: Full-port CPVC or PVC to match piping.
5. Seats: PTFE.
6. Seals: EPDM.
7. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.

8. Handle Style: Tee shape.
9. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
11. Comply with MSS SP-122.

D. Plastic Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. American Valve, Inc.
    b. Asahi/America.
    c. Colonial Engineering.
    d. George Fischer Inc.
    e. Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
    f. IPEX Inc.
    g. Legend Valve.
    h. NIBCO INC.
    i. Plast-O-Matic Valves, Inc.
    j. SMC The Specialty Mfg. Co.
    k. Thermoplastic Valves Inc.
    l. Watts Regulator Co.

3. Body: PVC or CPVC to match piping wafer type for installation between flanges.
4. Disc: EPDM-coated steel.
5. Seats: PTFE.
6. Handle Style: Locking lever.
7. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.

E. Plastic Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. American Valve, Inc.
    b. Asahi/America.
    c. Colonial Engineering.
    d. George Fischer Inc.
    e. Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
    f. IPEX Inc.
    g. KBI (King Bros. Industries).
    h. Legend Valve.
    i. NIBCO INC.
    j. Plast-O-Matic Valves, Inc.
    k. SMC The Specialty Mfg. Co.

l. Thermoplastic Valves Inc.
m. Watts Regulator Co.

3. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece PVC or CPVC to match piping.
4. Ends: Socket or flanged.
5. Seats: PTFE.
6. Check Style: Swing or ball type.
7. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.

F. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
c. Griswold Controls.

3. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
4. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
5. Plug: Resin.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

G. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
c. Griswold Controls.

3. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
4. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
7. Seat: PTFE.
8. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
9. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.

10. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
11. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
12. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

H. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    e. Watts Regulator Co.

3. Body: Bronze or brass.
4. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
5. Seat: Brass.
6. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
7. Diaphragm: EPT.
8. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
9. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
10. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
11. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

I. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    d. Watts Regulator Co.

3. Body: Bronze or brass.
4. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
5. Seat: Brass.
6. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
7. Diaphragm: EPT.
8. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
9. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
10. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.

11. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

J. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Flow Design Inc.
    b. Griswold Controls.
    c. Nexus Valve, Inc.

3. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
4. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, Corrosion resistant, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
5. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
6. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
7. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
8. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
9. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa), 300 psig (2070 kPa).
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C), 250 deg F (121 deg C).

2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

C. Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested after taps are fabricated and shall be labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. (379-L) unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
4. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 240 deg F (116 deg C) maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
5. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- (20-mm-) diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

D. Diaphragm, Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering

products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Diaphragm, Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

E. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
6. Size: Match system flow capacity.

F. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Products, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).

G. Air Purgers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. AMTROL, Inc.
   b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
   d. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

2.3 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20, 40, 60-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40, 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

C. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40, 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).

D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.

3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

F. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."Section 15124 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install throttling-duty, calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.

C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.

C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.

E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.

F. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.

1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.

G. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 21 23

HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
2. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
3. Automatic condensate pump units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.

1. Show pump layout and connections.
2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
3. TACO Incorporated.

C. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.

D. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange, union-end connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve, Stainless steel.
4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N, EPT bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
6. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings, Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type.

E. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

    a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof, Totally enclosed, fan cooled, Totally enclosed, air over, Open, externally ventilated, Totally enclosed, nonventilated, Severe duty, Explosion proof, Dust-ignition-proof machine.
    b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron, Cast aluminum, Rolled steel.
    c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated, Grease-lubricated ball bearings.

2.2 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
    2. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
    3. TACO Incorporated.

C. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally.

D. Pump Construction:

    1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange, flanged connections.
    2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
    3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve, Stainless steel.
    4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N, EPT bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
    5. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings, Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type.

E. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing with integral pump support.

    1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
    2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof, Totally enclosed, fan cooled, Totally enclosed, air over, Open, externally ventilated, Totally enclosed, nonventilated, Severe duty, Explosion proof, Dust-ignition-proof machine.
b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron, Cast aluminum, Rolled steel.
c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated, Grease-lubricated ball bearings.

2.3 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Beckett Corporation.
2. Hartell Pumps Div.; Milton Roy Co.
3. Little Giant Pump Co.
4. Mepco, LLC.

C. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch- (1800-mm-) minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

2.4 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser:

1. Angle pattern.
2. 175-psig (1204-kPa), 300-psig (2060-kPa) pressure rating, cast, ductile-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
5. Drain plug.
6. Factory-fabricated support.

B. Triple-Duty Valve:

1. Angle or straight pattern.
2. 175-psig (1204-kPa), 300-psig (2060-kPa) pressure rating, cast, ductile-iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
3. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
4. Brass gage ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4, and, HI 2.4.

B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

D. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

E. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete.", Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

F. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers, spring hangers, spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.

1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform, Perform alignment service.

B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.

C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check, shutoff, and throttling valves, check valve and throttling valve with memory stop, triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.

F. Install Y-type strainer, suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.

I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform, Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

    a. Verify bearing lubrication.

b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
6. Start motor.
7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train, Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 23 00
REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty.

1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
    a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
    b. Solenoid valves.
    c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
    d. Filter dryers.
    e. Strainers.
    f. Pressure-regulating valves.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
4. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch equals 1 foot.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.07 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.

B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L.

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.03 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:
1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:
1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.

2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 208-V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.

H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
6. Equalizer: External.
7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter and 208-V ac coil.
8. End Connections: Socket.
9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.

10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

I. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
   1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
   2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
   3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
   4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
   5. End Connections: Socket.
   6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
   7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
   8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
   9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

N. Mufflers:
   1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
   2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
   3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
   4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

O. Receivers: Comply with AHRI 495.
   1. Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
   4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
   5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
   6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
   7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

P. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.
   1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
   2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
   3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
   4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.04 REFRIGERANTS

A. ASHRAE 34, R-134a: Tetrafluoroethane.

B. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-134a

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

B. Suction Lines NPS 2 to NPS 4 for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

C. Hot-Gas and Liquid Line, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
3. NPS 4 Copper, Type ACR, Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

D. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR , drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
3. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR Type K , drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.02 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

B. Suction Lines NPS 3-1/2 and Smaller NPS 2 to NPS 3-1/2 for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

C. Suction Lines NPS 4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

E. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

F. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.

G. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

H. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:
   1. NPS 5/8 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
   2. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
   3. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
   4. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2: Copper, Type ACR Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

I. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications NPS 2 to NPS 4: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

J. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:
   1. NPS 5/8 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
   2. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
   3. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
   4. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2: Copper, Type ACR Type K, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

3.03 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Install diaphragm packless packed-angle valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.

C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless packed-angle valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
   1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
   2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.

3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
4. Compressor.

K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.

L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.

M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.04 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection.

L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.05 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.06 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.

D. Support multi-floor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.

d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.08 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.09 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 29 23

VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CPT: Control power transformer.

B. DDC: Direct digital control.

C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

D. LED: Light-emitting diode.

E. NC: Normally closed.

F. NO: Normally open.

G. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

H. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.

I. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

J. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.

1. Include dimensions and finishes for VFCs.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.

1. Include mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Required working clearances and required area above and around VFCs.
2. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
3. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
4. Indicate field measurements.

B. Product Certificates: For each VFC from manufacturer.

C. Harmonic Analysis Report: Provide Project-specific calculations and manufacturer's statement of compliance with IEEE 519.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and motor-circuit protector trip settings.
b. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
d. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
e. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate, full-load currents.
f. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers and install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs, including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General Requirements for VFCs:

1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and **UL 508C**.

B. Application: Constant torque and variable torque.

C. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.

1. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors, as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."
2. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
3. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

E. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range maximum voltage equals input voltage.

F. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of VFC input voltage rating.
2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 5 percent.
3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
4. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or speed condition.
6. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 22 kA.
7. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 32 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
8. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
9. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet.
10. Vibration Withstand: Comply with NEMA ICS 61800-2.

11. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
12. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
13. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent.
14. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.
15. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.

G. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 32 bit, isolated from all power circuits.

H. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.

1. Signal: Electrical.

I. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
3. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
4. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.

J. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
2. Surge Suppression: Field-mounted surge suppressors complying with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits," UL 1449 SPD, Type 2.
3. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
4. Under- and overvoltage trips.
5. Inverter overcurrent trips.
6. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
7. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
8. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
9. Loss-of-phase protection.
10. Reverse-phase protection.
11. Short-circuit protection.
12. Motor-overtemperature fault.

K. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.

L. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.

M. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.

N. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.

O. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.

P. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: UL 489, thermal-magnetic circuit breaker with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
2. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
3. Auxiliary Contacts: NO or NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
4. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
5. NO alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

2.2 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:

1. Power on.
2. Run.
3. Overvoltage.
4. Line fault.
5. Overcurrent.
6. External fault.

B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.

1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.

a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.

C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:

1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
2. Running log of total power versus time.
3. Total run time.
4. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.

D. Indicating Devices: Digital display mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:

1. Output frequency (Hz).
2. Motor speed (rpm).

3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
4. Motor current (amperes).
5. Motor torque (percent).
6. Fault or alarming status (code).
7. PID feedback signal (percent).
8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
9. Set point frequency (Hz).
10. Motor output voltage (V ac).

E. Control Signal Interfaces:

1. Electric Input Signal Interface:

   a. A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc.
   b. A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.

2. Pneumatic Input Signal Interface: 3 to 15 psig.
3. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the DDC system for HVAC or other control systems:

   a. 0- to 10-V dc.
   b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
   c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
   d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.

4. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to 10-V dc), which can be configured for any of the following:

   a. Output frequency (Hz).
   b. Output current (load).
   c. DC-link voltage (V dc).
   d. Motor torque (percent).
   e. Motor speed (rpm).
   f. Set point frequency (Hz).

5. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:

   a. Motor running.
   b. Set point speed reached.
   c. Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
   d. PID high- or low-speed limits reached.

F. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software shall interface with DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports. VFC settings shall be retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.

1. Communication Interface: Comply with ASHRAE 135. Communication shall interface with DDC system for HVAC to remotely control and monitor lighting from a DDC system for HVAC operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at lighting panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.

2.3 LINE CONDITIONING AND FILTERING

A. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the manufacturer's harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit total demand (harmonic current) distortion and total harmonic voltage demand at the defined point of common coupling to meet IEEE 519 recommendations.

B. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

2.4 BYPASS SYSTEMS

A. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.

B. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor, and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.

C. Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual, allows local and remote transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface or automatic-control system feedback.

D. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller**;** with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC-rated contactor.
2. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, IEC-rated contactor.
3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

E. Bypass Controller: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller**;** with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing and troubleshooting of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC rated contactor.
2. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, IEC rated contactors.
3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

F. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) type.

1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.

4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.

    a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.

5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.

    a. CPT Spare Capacity: 100 VA.

6. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.

    a. Solid-State Overload Relays:

        1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
        2) Sensors in each phase.
        3) Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
        4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
        5) Analog communication module.

    b. NO isolated overload alarm contact.
    c. External overload, reset push button.

2.5 OPTIONAL FEATURES

A. Multiple-Motor Capability: VFC suitable for variable-speed service to multiple motors. Overload protection shuts down VFC and motors served by it, and generates fault indications when overload protection activates.

1. Configure to allow two or more motors to operate simultaneously at the same speed; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
2. Configure to allow two motors to operate separately; operator selectable via local or remote switch or contact closures; single overload relay for both motors; separate output magnetic contactors for each motor.
3. Configure to allow two motors to operate simultaneously and in a lead/lag mode, with one motor operated at variable speed via the power converter and the other at constant speed via the bypass controller; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.

B. Damper control circuit with end-of-travel feedback capability.

C. Firefighter's Override (Smoke Purge) Input: On a remote contact closure from smoke-control fan controller, this password-protected input:

1. Overrides all other local and external inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands).
2. Forces VFC to operate motor, without any other run or speed command, at a field-adjustable, preset speed.
3. Forces VFC to transfer to bypass mode and operate motor at full speed.

4. Causes display of override mode on the VFC display.
5. Reset VFC to normal operation on removal of override signal automatically.

2.6 ENCLOSURES

A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: Type 4.
4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.

B. Plenum Rating: UL 1995; NRTL certification label on enclosure, clearly identifying VFC as "Plenum Rated."

2.7 ACCESSORIES

A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.

1. Push Buttons: Covered.
2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
3. Selector Switches: Rotary type.
4. Stop and Lockout Push-Button Station: Momentary-break, push-button station with a factory-applied hasp arranged so padlock can be used to lock push button in depressed position with control circuit open.

B. Reversible NC/NO bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).

C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.

1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.

E. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks**;** unwired.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.

1. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor.
2. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.

B. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.

D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

B. Floor-Mounting Controllers: Install VFCs on 4-inch nominal thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

C. Roof-Mounting Controllers: Install VFC on roofs with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished roof surface unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to curbs or mounting on freestanding, lightweight, structural-steel channels bolted to curbs. Seal roof penetrations after raceways are installed.

1. Curbs and roof penetrations are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
2. Structural-steel channels are specified in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

E. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.

F. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed.

G. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.

H. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices and facility's central-control system.

B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.

C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control devices where applicable.

1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor-overload protectors.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
3. Test continuity of each circuit.

4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Construction Manager before starting the motor(s).
5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
6. Perform tests according to the Inspection and Test Procedures for Adjustable Speed Drives stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.

B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.

C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Construction Manager before increasing settings.

D. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.

E. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

F. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.

B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 31 13

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
3. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
4. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
5. Sheet metal materials.
6. Duct liner.
7. Sealants and gaskets.
8. Hangers and supports.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports[and seismic restraints] shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
4. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
5. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
6. Elevation of top of ducts.
7. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
8. Fittings.
9. Reinforcement and spacing.
10. Seam and joint construction.
11. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.

12. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
13. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
14. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, and vibration isolation.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
a. Lighting fixtures.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.
f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.02 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.

B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

G. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch (0.7-mm) perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-(2.4-mm-) diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.

H. Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Traverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

I. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.03 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches (1524 mm) in Diameter: Flanged.

D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.04 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND[AND FLAT-OVAL] DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.

B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved,

duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than [60 Inches (1524 mm)] in Diameter: Flanged.

2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch (0.7-mm) perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-(2.4-mm-) diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.

D. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.

3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.

4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

E. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K) at75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

2.05 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: [G60 (Z180)] [G90 (Z275)].

2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.06 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1.

a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:

1) Type I, Flexible: [0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K)] at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

2) Type II, Rigid: [0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.033 W/m x K)]at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.

3. Solvent or Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Natural-Fiber Duct Liner: 85 percent cotton, 10 percent borate, and 5 percent polybinding fibers, treated with a microbial growth inhibitor and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84; certified by an NRTL.

2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s).
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (300 mm) transversely; at 3 inches (75 mm) from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches (450 mm) longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    a. Fan discharges.
    b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s) or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
    a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch (2.4-mm) diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.07 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 4 inches (102 mm).
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.

10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.
12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.08 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.03 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.

8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.04 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.05 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.06 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
2. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.

3. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.

4. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

B. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.08 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.

2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.

3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).

2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.

D. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.

2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.

3.09 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.010 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Underground Ducts: Concrete-encased, galvanized sheet steel.

2. Penetration through any concrete members to have a structurally support sleeve and seal. Coordinate with structural drawings.

B. Supply Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
      a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg (250 Pa).
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
      c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
   2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
      a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
      c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

C. Return Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units :
      a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa).
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
      c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
   2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
      a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
      c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

D. Exhaust Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
      a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa).
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
      c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
   2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
      a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
      c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

E. Outdoor-Air Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units :
      a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa).
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A

c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.

d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).

b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.

c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.

d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

F. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.

2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.

b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s):

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.

2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."

a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.

2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.

3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.

4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.

c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter:

G. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."

a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.

b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.

a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.

b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.

c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 33 00
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Smoke dampers.
7. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
8. Flange connectors.
9. Turning vanes.
10. Remote damper operators.
11. Duct-mounted access doors.
12. Flexible connectors.
13. Flexible ducts.
14. Duct accessory hardware.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    a. Special fittings.
    b. Manual volume damper installations.
    c. Control-damper installations.
    d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 (Z180) G90 (Z275).
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.

C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.03 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Description: Gravity balanced.

B. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s).

C. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg (0.5 kPa).

D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.

E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, [0.025-inch- (0.6-mm-) thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.

F. Blade Action: Parallel.

G. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.

H. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Galvanized steel.
2. Diameter: 0.20 inch (5 mm).

I. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

K. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

L. Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage (1.0 mm) minimum.
    b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches (152 mm) minimum.
6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
7. Screen Material: Galvanized steel].
8. Screen Type: Bird/ Insect.
9. 90-degree stops.

2.04 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.

B. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s).

C. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg (0.5 kPa).

D. Blades:

1. Multiple, 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
2. Maximum Width: 6 inches (150 mm).
3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Eccentrically pivoted.

E. Blade Seals: Vinyl.

F. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

G. Tie Bars and Brackets:
   1. Material: Galvanized steel.
   2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.
H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
I. Bearings: Stainless steel.
J. Accessories:
   1. Flange on intake.
   2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

2.05 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
   1. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
   2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
   3. Frames:
      a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel.
      b. Mitered and welded corners.
      c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
   4. Blades:
      a. Multiple or single blade.
      b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
      c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
      d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
   5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
   6. Bearings:
      a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
      b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
   7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
   1. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
   2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
   3. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
   4. Blades:
      a. Multiple or single blade.
      b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
      c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.

d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.

e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.

5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

6. Bearings:

a. Oil-impregnated bronze.

b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

2.06 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

B. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.

2. 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel.

3. Interlocking, gusseted corners.

C. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches (152 mm).

2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.

3. Galvanized-steel.

4. 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick single skin or 0.0747-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick dual skin.

5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.

6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

D. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

E. Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated bronze.

2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.07 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum velocity.

C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch (3.5 mm) thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

E. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

F. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

G. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

2.08 SMOKE DAMPERS

A. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.

B. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.

C. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm) thick, galvanized sheet steel.

D. Leakage: Class I

E. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone calking.

G. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.

H. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m).
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).

6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m), size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf (34 N x m).
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

I. Accessories:
1. Auxiliary switches for fan control or position indication.
2. Momentary test switch, remote mounted.

2.09 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm (10-m/s) velocity.

C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel, with interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.

E. Heat-Responsive Device: Resettable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

F. Heat-Responsive Device:Electric resettable device and switch package, factory installed, rated.

G. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking overlapping, 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel.

I. Leakage: Class II.

J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone calking.

L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.

M. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.

N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.

4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m).
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m), size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf (34 N x m).
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

O. Accessories:
1. Auxiliary switches for fan control or position indication.
2. Momentary test switch remote mounted.

2.010 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
B. Material: Galvanized steel.
C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.011 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
D. Vane Construction: Double wall.
E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches (1200 mm) wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.012 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
B. Tubing: Copper.
C. Cable: Stainless steel.

D. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.

E. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

2.013 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:
    a. Double wall, rectangular.
    b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    c. Vision panel.
    d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm)butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches (460 mm) Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
    c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
    d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

B. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg (800 to 2000 Pa).
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.014 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

B. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0428-inch (1.1-mm) stainless steel.

C. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F (1093 deg C).

E. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.

2.015 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

E. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd. (810 g/sq. m).
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch (93 N/mm) in the warp and 440 lbf/inch (77 N/mm) in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 45 to plus 121 deg C).

2.016 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).

4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
   1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
   2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
   3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
   4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

D. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
   1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
   2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
   3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
   4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

E. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
   1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
   2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
   3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 121 deg C).
   4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

F. Flexible Duct Connectors:
   1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.
   2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

2.017 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.

H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.

I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

J. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).

K. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

M. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or]with maximum 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

N. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch (1500-mm) lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

O. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

P. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 33 53

DUCT AND PLENUM LINERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to this section.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Division 23 – Ductwork

B. Division 23 – Duct Insulation (External)

C. Division 23 – Duct Silencers

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C423-09a “Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method”

B. NFPA 90A “Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems”

1.04 SUMMARY

A. This section includes internal duct lining and internal plenum lining.

B. Note that these products are being recommended based on their acoustic performance only. All issues relating to safety, codes, durability, biological growth potential, deterioration, and all other non-acoustic attributes must be reviewed and approved by other members of the design team.

1.05 WORK INCLUDED

A. Duct Liner

B. Plenum Liner

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Acoustic Laboratory Tests: At the time of bidding, submit the results of tests performed indicating acoustic performance which complies with the product description specified herein when tested in accordance to ASTM C423-09a.

1. All testing shall have been performed by an independent NVLAP accredited acoustical testing facility.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit drawings showing complete details including all dimensions, materials and other pertinent information as may be requested.

C. This submittal shall be representative of the proposed for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

A. Acoustical Duct Liner (glass fiber based products)

1. Johns Manville (JM), Denver, CO – www.jm.com
2. Certainteed (Certainteed), Valley Forge, PA – www.certainteed.com
3. Owens-Corning (OC), Toledo, OH – www.owenscorning.com
4. Knauf (Knauf), Shelbyville, IN – www.knaufinsulations.us

B. Acoustical Duct Liner (non-glass fiber based products)
   1. Armacell LLC (AM), Mebane, NC – www.armacell.com
   2. Vibro-Acoustics (VA), Toronto, ON – www.vibro-acoustics.com
   3. or approved equal.

C. Acoustical Plenum Liner
   1. Johns Manville (JM), Denver, CO – www.jm.com
   2. Certainteed (Certainteed), Valley Forge, PA – www.certainteed.com
   3. Owens-Corning (OC), Toledo, OH – www.owenscorning.com
   4. Knauf (Knauf), Shelbyville, IN – www.knaufinsulations.us
   5. Roxul (Roxul), Milton, ON, Canada – www.roxul.com

2.02 DESCRIPTION OF PRODUCTS

A. Acoustical Duct Liner
   1. Acoustical Duct Liner may be provided as either a glass fiber-based ("standard") product or a non-glass fiber-based ("alternative") product at the Owner's discretion. Standard lining shall be used as the basis of all pricing, contract, and submittal information unless otherwise clearly indicated as by either the Contractor or the Owner.
      a. Standard: Internal duct lining shall be 2 to 4 pound per cubic foot (32 to 64 kg/m^3) glass fiber coated with acrylic or another erosion resistant facing. Thickness shall be as specified below.
      b. Alternative 1: Internal duct lining shall be 1-1/2 pound per cubic foot (24 kg/m^3) cotton fiber with acrylic or other erosion resistant facing. Thickness shall be as specified below.
      c. Alternative 2: Internal duct lining shall be 1-1/2 pound per cubic foot (24 kg/m^3) polyimide or elastomeric foam with acrylic or other erosion resistant facing. Thickness shall be as specified below.
   2. Duct liner shall meet the applicable codes. Duct liner shall not impart any odor to the air, nor should it delaminate or loosen during operation by the air stream. Acoustical lining that becomes damaged during shipment or installation shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.
   3. Duct liner shall meet or exceed the following acoustic performance when tested according to ASTM C423-09a in a type A mounting, with sound absorption coefficients per octave band as follows:

	Octave Band Center Freq. (Hz)					
Materials	125	250	500	1k	2k	4k
1 inch thickness (25mm)	*0.04*	*0.21*	*0.69*	*0.95*	*0.95*	*0.95*
2 inch thickness (50mm)	*0.17*	*0.73*	*0.95*	*0.95*	*0.95*	*0.95*

   4. Standard Products:
      a. Permacote Linacoustic R-300 (JM)
      b. ToughGuard Rigid Liner Board (Certainteed)
      c. Fiberglas Duct Liner Board (OC)
      d. Duct Liner E-M (Knauf)
   5. Specialty Products for Round Ductwork

a. Spiracoustic (JM)
b. ToughGuard Ultra Round (Certainteed)
c. QuietZone Spiral Duct Liner (OC)

6. Alternative Products:
a. Alternative 1: MoldBlock Media Duct Liner Board (VA)
b. Alternative 2: Armacell (AM)

B. Acoustical Plenum Liner

1. Internal duct lining shall be 2 to 4 pound per cubic foot (32 to 64 kg/m^3) density glass/mineral fiber coated with acrylic or another erosion resistant facing. Thickness shall be as specified below. Where 4 inch (100mm) thickness is required, two layers of 2 inch (50mm) thick liner are acceptable.
2. Plenum liner shall meet the applicable codes. Duct liner shall not impart any odor to the air, nor should it delaminate or loosen during operation by the air stream. Acoustical lining that becomes damaged during shipment or installation shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.
3. Plenum liner shall meet or exceed the following acoustic performance when tested according to ASTM C423-09a in a type A mounting, with sound absorption coefficients per octave band as follows:

	Octave Band Center Freq. (Hz)					
Materials	125	250	500	1k	2k	4k
2 inch thickness (50mm)	*0.17*	*0.73*	*0.95*	*0.95*	*0.95*	*0.95*

4. Products:
a. Permacote Linacoustic R-300 (JM)
b. ToughGuard Rigid Liner Board (Certainteed)
c. Fiberglas Duct Liner Board (OC)
d. Rigid Plenum Liner (Knauf)
e. RHT-40 (Roxul)

C. Adhesive and Sealer

1. Adhesive and sealer shall comply with all the requirements of NFPA 90A.
2. Approved Products
a. Childers CP-129
b. Childers CP-147
c. Approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine ductwork to receive liner for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance. Duct dimensions with installed duct liner shall maintain the internal characteristic duct dimensions, as indicated on the contract documents

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Duct Liner

1. Except where otherwise noted, all duct liner shall be provided as a glass fiber-based product.
2. Except where otherwise noted, all ductwork serving Acoustically Sensitive Rooms shall have internal duct lining from air moving device (fan) to terminal. This includes, but is not limited to, ducts for supply air, return air, fan coil units, smoke effects relief, emergency smoke exhaust, supplemental air, or make-up air.
3. All ductwork in the mechanical equipment rooms shall be acoustically lined. Ductwork leading to the building exterior (fresh air and exhaust) shall be lined if it passes through or adjacent to other occupied spaces. Ductwork between supply and return fans shall be internally lined.
4. Thickness of duct lining:
   a. Where ducts exceed 36 inches (900mm) in either internal dimension, internal lining shall be 2 inch (50mm) thickness unless indicated otherwise.
   b. All other ducts receiving lining shall be provided with 1 inch (25mm) thickness unless indicated otherwise.
5. The acoustical liner shall be fixed to the duct with a minimum of 50% coverage of a fire-resistant adhesive. Where the duct width exceeds 12 inches (300mm) or the height 24 inches (600mm), the liner shall be additionally secured with mechanical fastening on maximum 16 inch (400mm) centers on all sides. Mechanical fasteners that pierce the duct are unacceptable. All ends of the liner shall be coated with a fire resistant cementing material to prevent delamination, leakage or erosion. All joints shall be firmly butted and ends coated with an adhesive to ensure that the lining is smooth across all joints.

B. Plenum Liner

1. Unless specified otherwise, all plenums serving Acoustically Sensitive Rooms shall be internally lined with 4 inch (100mm) thick, 2 to 4 pound per cubic foot (32 to 64 kg/m^3) density glass fiber liner. Two layers of 2 inch (50mm) lining are acceptable as an alternative to a single layer of 4 inch (100mm) lining.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 34 23

HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
3. In-line centrifugal fans.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Roof curbs.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Broan-NuTone LLC.
2. Broan-NuTone LLC; NuTone Inc.
3. Carnes Company.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. JencoFan.
6. Loren Cook Company.
7. PennBarry.

B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.

D. Grille: Plastic louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F. Accessories:

1. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
2. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
3. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
4. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless-steel springs, and fusible link.
5. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.

6. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
7. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As scheduled on the construction documents.

2.02 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware.

C. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

D. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods.

E. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

F. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.02 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 36 00
AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products, including rated capacities, furnished specialties, sound-power ratings, and accessories.
   1. Air terminal units.
   2. Liners and adhesives.
   3. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
   1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
   2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
   3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
   1. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
   2. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings complete with acoustic test data for each device at the air flow rate and pressure drop specified in the Contract Documents

C. Acoustic Test Data: Submit results of acoustic testing indicating sound power levels in octave bands from 125 Hz to 4 kHz generated by each terminal device at the air flow and pressure drop as specified, tested in accordance with ANSI/AHRI 880-2011
   1. All testing shall have been performed by an independent NVLAP accredited acoustical testing facility

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of VAVs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Air Terminal Unit: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than one year from date of Substantial Completion, and to include parts and labor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Pressure-reducing terminal devices should not be used for spaces with a background noise level of less than RC-30.

B. Maximum Permissible Discharge Sound Power Levels

1. Maximum permissible octave band discharge sound power levels (in decibels re 10^{-12} watts) for devices serving spaces with specified background noise levels shall be as follows, when devices are operating at airflow rate and pressure drop as indicated in contract documents:

	Room Criteria			
Octave Band Center Frequency (Hz)	RC-25	RC-30	RC-35	RC-40
125	*63*	*67*	*71*	*75*
250	*64*	*68*	*73*	*78*
500	*73*	*78*	*83*	*88*
1000	*72*	*77*	*82*	*87*
2000	*68*	*73*	*78*	*83*
4000	*63*	*68*	*73*	*78*

a. These values are valid where ductwork is acoustically lined for a minimum of 10 feet (3m) downstream of terminal devices with 1 inch (25mm) thick internal lining. Refer to Acoustics Consultant for alternate conditions.

C. Maximum Permissible Radiated Sound Power Levels

1. Maximum permissible octave band radiated sound power levels (in decibels re 10^{-12} watts) for devices serving spaces with specified background noise levels shall be as follows, when devices are operating at airflow rate and pressure drop as indicated in contract documents:

	Room Criteria			
Octave Band Center Frequency (Hz)	RC-25	RC-30	RC-35	RC-40
125	*54*	*59*	*64*	*69*
250	*48*	*53*	*58*	*63*
500	*43*	*48*	*53*	*58*
1000	*39*	*44*	*49*	*54*
2000	*34*	*39*	*44*	*49*
4000	*35*	*40*	*45*	*50*

a. These values are valid for installations where terminal devices are located above an acoustical ceiling tile system. Refer to Acoustics Consultant for alternate conditions.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Johnson Controls
   2. Carnes
   3. Carrier
   4. Environmental Technologies, Inc
   5. Krueger
   6. Price
   7. Titus.
   8. Trane; a business of American Standard Companies.
   9. Tuttle & Bailey

C. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

D. Casing: 0.034-inch (0.85-mm) steel or aluminum, single wall.
   1. Casing Lining: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
      a. Cover liner with nonporous foil.
   2. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, polyurethane foam insulation complying with UL 181 erosion requirements, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   3. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
   4. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections, size matching inlet size.
   5. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
   6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Regulator Assembly: System-air-powered bellows section incorporating polypropylene bellows for volume regulation and thermostatic control. Bellows shall operate at temperatures from 0 to 140 deg F (minus 18 to plus 60 deg C), shall be impervious to moisture and fungus, shall be suitable for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static pressure, and shall be factory tested for leaks.

F. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
   1. Maximum Damper Leakage: ARI 880 rated, 2, 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg (750-Pa), 6-inch wg (1500-Pa) inlet static pressure.
   2. Damper Position: Normally open.

G. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm), and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1380 kPa) and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C). Include manual air vent and drain valve.

H. Electric Controls: Damper actuator and thermostat.

1. Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed, powered open.
2. Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, and space temperature set point.

I. Direct Digital Controls: Single-package unitary controller and actuator specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

J. Direct Digital Controls: Bidirectional damper operators and microprocessor-based controller and room sensor. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and shall have the following features:
1. Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed, powered open.
2. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:
a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
3. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.

K. Control Sequence:
1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg (60- and 750-Pa) inlet static pressure.
2. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostat.

2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Steel Cables: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603, Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

E. Air Terminal Unit Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

F. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes and plates for units with steel casings; aluminum for units with aluminum casings.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to ARI 880.
1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and ARI certification seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.

C. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
   1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
   2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
   3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install piping adjacent to air terminal unit to allow service and maintenance.

B. Hot-Water Piping: In addition to requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties," connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.

C. Connect ducts to air terminal units according to Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

D. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Tests and Inspections:
   1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
   3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.

4. Verify that control connections are complete.
5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 37 13

DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Perforated diffusers.
3. Fixed face registers and grilles.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material: As scheduled.
3. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
4. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches, 12 by 12 inches.
5. Face Style: Plaque.
6. Mounting: Surface, T-bar.

7. Pattern: Adjustable.
8. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.
9. Accessories:
    a. Equalizing grid.
    b. Plaster ring.
    c. Safety chain.
    d. Wire guard.
    e. Sectorizing baffles.
    f. Operating rod extension.

2.02 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Register :
1. Material: As scheduled.
2. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
3. Frame: Coordinate with Architect.
4. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

B. Fixed Face Register :
1. Material: As scheduled.
2. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
3. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid.
4. Core Construction: Removable.
5. Frame: Coordinate with Architect.
6. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

C. Fixed Face Grille :
1. Material: As scheduled.
2. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
3. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch.
4. Core Construction: Removable.
5. Frame: Coordinate with Architect.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 51 13

DRAFT CONTROL DECICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following:

1. Barometric dampers.
2. Vent dampers.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for dampers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, hangers and seismic restraints, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For draft control devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store equipment per manufacturer's recommendation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. BAROMETRIC DAMPERS:

a. Effikal International Inc.
b. Field Controls L.L.C.; Venting Solutions Company (The).
c. Quickdraft; a Litzler Company.
d. Tec-Air Inc.

2. VENT DAMPERS:

a. Effikal International Inc.
b. Field Controls L.L.C.; Venting Solutions Company (The).
c. Johnson Controls, Inc.; Controls Group.

2.02 BAROMETRIC DAMPERS

A. Damper Construction: Damper/housing construction to match associated chimney/vent material. Adjustable counterweight with lock. Include knife-edge bearings that do not require lubrication.

2.03 VENT DAMPERS

A. Damper Construction: Stainless-steel damper blade, shaft, and vent pipe with metal, prelubricated bearings. When used in condensing applications, provide material tested in accordance with UL 1738 and complying with NFPA 211.

1. Electric motor sized to power damper open and closed in approximately 15 seconds in each direction. Power is off when damper is at rest.
2. Comply with ANSI Z21.66.

B. Controls:

1. Control transformer.
2. Keyed wiring harness.
3. Damper end-switch to prove damper is open.
4. Interlock with boiler to permit burner operation when damper is open.
5. Hold-open switch for troubleshooting boiler controls.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install listed components in a manner complying with the listing.

B. Secure barometric dampers to breechings with hardware compatible with connected materials.

C. Locate barometric and motorized vent dampers as close to draft hood collar as possible.

D. Secure barometric and motorized vent dampers to appliances, breechings, or chimneys with hardware compatible with connected materials.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning components and recheck.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable switches and controls as indicated.

3.04 DEMONSTRATION AND COMMISSIONING

A. Demonstration: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain draft control devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 52 16
CONDENSING BOILERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged, factory-fabricated and -assembled, gas-fired, pulse-combustion, fire-tube, water-tube, water-jacketed condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water, steam.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include performance data, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Design calculations and vibration isolation base details, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
      a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
      b. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails and equipment mounting frames.
   2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that boiler, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Include the following:
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
      a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
      b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

E. Other Informational Submittals:
   1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."

D. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N, "Uniform Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Furnaces and Boilers."

E. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment." Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period for Pulse-Combustion Boilers:
      a. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Shock: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
      b. Heat-Exchanger Corrosion: Prorated, Nonprorated for five years from date of Substantial Completion.
   2. Warranty Period for Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
      a. Leakage and Materials: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
      b. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Stress and Corrosion: Prorated, Nonprorated for five years from date of Substantial Completion.
   3. Warranty Period for Water-Tube Condensing Boilers: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
   4. Warranty Period for Water-Jacketed Condensing Boilers:
      a. Leakage and Materials: Eight years from date of Substantial Completion.
      b. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Stress and Corrosion: Prorated, Nonprorated for five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, provide products by one of the following, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Raypak (a Rheem Company)
   2. Weil McLain
   3. Thermal Solutions

C. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base; including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Water heating service only.

D. Heat Exchanger: Nonferrous, corrosion-resistant combustion chamber.

E. Pressure Vessel: Carbon steel with welded heads and tube connections.

F. Burner: Natural, Propane gas, forced draft.

G. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner firing sequence and to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber.
   1. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
      a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

H. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.

I. Ignition: Spark ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff with electronic flame supervision.

J. Casing:
   1. Jacket: Sheet metal, Plastic, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
   2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
   3. Finish: Baked-enamel, Powder-coated protective finish.
   4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch- (50-mm-) thick, mineral-fiber, polyurethane-foam insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
   5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.
   6. Mounting base to secure boiler.
      a. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler pressure vessel, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.

2.2 TRIM

A. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.1, "Power Piping, ANSI B31.9, "Building Services Piping."

B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.

C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.

D. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.

E. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic, Manual.

F. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) hose-end gate valve.

G. Circulation Pump: Non-overloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.

2.3 TRIM

A. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.1, "Power Piping, ANSI B31.9, "Building Services Piping."

B. Pressure Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.

C. Safety Relief Valve:
   1. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

2. Description: Fully enclosed steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff; factory set and sealed.
    a. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and outlet with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.

D. Pressure Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) diameter. Gage shall have normal operating pressure about 50 percent of full range.

E. Water Column: Minimum 12-inch (300-mm) glass gage with shutoff cocks.

F. Drain Valves: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) or nozzle size with hose-end connection.

G. Blowdown Valves: Factory-installed bottom and surface, slow-acting blowdown valves same size as boiler nozzle. Blowdown valves shall be combination of slow and quick acting as required by ANSI B31.1.

H. Stop Valves: Boiler inlets and outlets, except safety relief valves or preheater inlet and outlet, shall be equipped with stop valve in an accessible location as near as practical to boiler nozzle and same size or larger than nozzle. Valves larger than NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have rising stem.

I. Stop-Check Valves: Factory-installed, stop-check valve and stop valve at boiler outlet with free-blow drain valve factory installed between the two valves and visible when operating stop-check valve.

2.4 CONTROLS

A. Refer to Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

B. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
1. Control transformer.
2. Set-Point Adjust: Set points shall be adjustable.
3. Operating Pressure Control: Factory wired and mounted to cycle burner.
4. Low-Water Cutoff and Pump Control: Cycle feedwater pump(s) for makeup water control.
5. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain space temperature in response to thermostat with heat anticipator located in heated space.
6. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 200 deg F (93 deg C) ; at 60 deg F (15 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 140 deg F (60 deg C) .
7. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain a constant steam pressure. Maintain pressure set point plus or minus 10 percent.
    a. Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.

C. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
1. High Cutoff: Manual, Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature, pressure.
2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic, Float and electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be manual, automatic-reset type.
3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch field mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.

D. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
   1. Hardwired Points:
      a. Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm, low water level alarm
      b. Control: On/off operation, hot water supply temperature set-point adjustment, steam pressure adjustment
   2. A communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building automation system.

2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER

A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.

B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
   1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
   2. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
   3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
   4. Field power interface shall be to wire lugs, fused disconnect switch, nonfused disconnect switch, circuit breaker.
   5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
   6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

2.6 VENTING KITS

A. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A 959, Type 29-4C stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.

B. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.

B. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of testing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Before boiler installation, examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting boiler performance, maintenance, and operations.
   1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.

B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:
   1. Install boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete.", Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
   3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.

C. Assemble and install boiler trim.

D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.

E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.

C. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.

D. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties."

E. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas train connection. Provide a reducer if required.

F. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

G. Connect steam and condensate piping to supply-, return-, and blowdown-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

H. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

I. Install piping from safety valves to drip-pan elbow and to nearest floor drain.

J. Boiler Venting:
   1. Install flue venting kit and combustion-air intake.
   2. Connect full size to boiler connections. Comply with requirements in Section 235100 "Breechings, Chimneys, and Stacks."

K. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

L. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage, Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
   1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level and water temperature, steam pressure.
    b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

G. Performance Tests:
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.
2. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment to comply.
3. Perform field performance tests to determine capacity and efficiency of boilers.
    a. Test for full capacity.
    b. Test for boiler efficiency at low fire 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 80, 60, 40, and 20 percent of full capacity. Determine efficiency at each test point.
4. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.
5. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.
6. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat produced during tests if building systems are not adequate.
7. Notify Architect in advance of test dates.
8. Document test results in a report and submit to Architect.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train, Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Video training sessions. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 63 13
AIR-COOLED REFRIGERANT CONDENSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged, air-cooled refrigerant condensers for outdoor installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-cooled refrigerant condenser. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories. Include equipment dimensions, weights and structural loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

B. Shop Drawings: For air-cooled refrigerant condensers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Structural members to which air-cooled refrigerant condensers will be attached.
   2. Liquid and vapor pipe sizes.
   3. Refrigerant specialties.
   4. Piping including connections, oil traps, and double risers.
   5. Evaporators.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-cooled refrigerant condensers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Fabricate and label refrigeration system according to ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

B. Coordinate location of refrigerant piping and electrical rough-ins.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Guntner
2. Trane; a business of American Standard Companies.
3. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Description: Factory assembled and tested; consisting of casing, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, and unit controls.

B. Refrigerant: R-410A s

C. Condenser Coil: Factory tested at 425 psig (2930 kPa).
1. Tube: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter seamless copper. 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter seamless copper. 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) diameter seamless copper. 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) diameter steel.
2. Coil Fin: Aluminum Steel.
3. Coating: Thermoplastic vinyl Epoxy Zinc Synthetic resin Phenolic Polytetrafluoroethylene Vinyl ester Hot-dip galvanized Powder-baked enamel; <Insert manufacturer's name; trade name>.
4. Circuit: To match compressors with liquid subcooling coil.

D. Condenser Fans and Drives: Propeller fans with aluminum or galvanized-steel fan blades, for vertical air discharge; directly driven with permanently lubricated ball-bearing motors with integral current- and thermal-overload protection.
1. Weather-proof motors with rain shield and shaft slinger.
2. Extend grease lines to outside of casing.

E. Condenser Fans and Drives: Forward-curved centrifugal fans for vertical air discharge.
1. Fan on steel shaft with self-aligning ball bearings.
2. V-belt drive with minimum of two belts; variable pitch drive pulley.
3. Motor mounted on adjustable slide base.

F. Operating and Safety Controls: Include condenser fan motor thermal and overload cutouts; 115-V control transformer, if required; magnetic contactors for condenser fan motors and a nonfused factory-mounted and -wired disconnect switch for single external electrical power connection.
1. Fan Cycling Control: Head pressure switches.

G. Casings: Galvanized or zinc-coated steel treated and finished with manufacturer's standard paint coating designed for outdoor installation with weather protection for components and controls, and with the following:
1. Removable panels for access to controls, condenser fans, motors, and drives.
2. Stainless-steel fan guards.
3. Lifting eyes.
4. Removable legs, 20 inches (500 mm) 30 inches (760 mm) 36 inches (910 mm) 42 inches (1060 mm) high.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
   2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
   3. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate air-cooled refrigerant condensers according to ARI 460.

B. Testing Requirements: Factory test sound-power-level ratings according to ARI 270.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of air-cooled refrigerant condensers.

B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where air-cooled condensers will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated; maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.

B. Equipment Mounting:
   1. Install air-cooled condenser refrigerant condensers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases.
   2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
   3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Loose Components: Install electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Refrigerant Piping: Connect piping to unit with pressure relief, service valve, filter-dryer, and moisture indicator on each refrigerant-circuit liquid line. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
   2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Complete manufacturer's starting checklist.
   4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
   5. Verify proper airflow over coils.

C. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.

D. Air-cooled refrigerant condensers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
      a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
      b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
      c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
      d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
      e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
      f. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
   2. Lubricate bearings on fan motors.
   3. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
   4. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
   5. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.
   6. Measure and record airflow and air temperature rise over coils.
   7. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
   8. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
   9. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 63 13

SECTION 23 73 13

CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Constant-air-volume, single-zone air-handling units.
2. Variable-air-volume, single-zone air-handling units.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding 133 percent of internal static pressures indicated, without panel joints exceeding a deflection of L/200, L/100 where "L" is the unsupported span length within completed casings.

C. Seismic Performance: Air-handling units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 .

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit indicated.

1. Unit dimensions and weight.
2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
3. Fans:

a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
c. Fan construction and accessories.
d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.

4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Filters with performance characteristics.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic restraints indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Mechanical-room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
2. Support location, type, and weight.
3. Field measurements.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For air-handling units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.

C. ARI Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to ARI 430, "Central-Station Air-Handling Units," and shall be listed and labeled by ARI.

D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

E. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members, if any, with actual equipment provided.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of AHUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Air Handling Unit: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than one year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. AAON
2. Trane; American Standard Inc.
3. YORK International Corporation.

2.2 UNIT CASINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings:

1. Forming: Form walls, roofs, and floors with at least two breaks at each joint.
2. Casing Joints: Sheet metal screws or pop rivets.
3. Sealing: Seal all joints with water-resistant sealant.
4. Factory Finish for Steel, and, Galvanized-Steel Casings: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
5. Factory Finish for Steel, and, Galvanized-Steel Casings: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on enamel finish, consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
6. Casing Coating: Thermoplastic vinyl, Epoxy, Zinc, Synthetic resin, Phenolic, Polytetrafluoroethylene, Vinyl ester, Hot-dip galvanized, Powder-baked enamel
7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Casing Insulation and Adhesive:

1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I, Type II.
2. Location and Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of section panels downstream from, and including, the cooling-coil section.

    a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
    b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
    c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service-air velocity.

3. Location and Application: Encased between outside and inside casing.

C. Inspection and Access Panels and Access Doors:

1. Panel and Door Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, single- or double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
2. Inspection and Access Panels:

    a. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against air-pressure differential.
    b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    c. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.

3. Access Doors:

a. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
c. Fabricate windows in fan section doors of double-glazed, wire-reinforced safety glass with an air space between panes and sealed with interior and exterior rubber seals.
d. Size: At least 18 inches (450 mm), wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 72 inches (1800 mm)

4. Locations and Applications:

a. Fan Section: Inspection and access panels, Doors, Doors and inspection and access panels.
b. Access Section: Doors.
c. Coil Section: Inspection and access panel.
d. Damper Section: Inspection and access panels, Doors.
e. Filter Section: Inspection and access panels, Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
f. Mixing Section: Doors.
g. Humidifier Section: Doors.

5. Service Light: 100-W vaporproof fixture with switched junction box located outside, inside adjacent to door.

a. Locations: Each section accessed with door, Fan section.

D. Condensate Drain Pans:

1. Fabricated with one, two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.

a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1
b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep.

2. Formed sections, Integral part of floor plating.
3. Single-wall, galvanized, stainless-steel sheet.
4. Double-wall, galvanized, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
5. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end, both ends of pan.

a. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1 (DN 25), NPS 2 (DN 50) .

6. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
7. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

E. Service Platform: Steel, Galvanized steel, Aluminum, 42 inches (1070 mm) wide running entire length of unit and located on service access side, with angle side rails, 4-inch (100-mm) kick

plates, and expanded metal floor. Provide platform with a fixed ladder that extends from the top of the side rail to the floor.

F. Air-Handling-Unit Mounting Frame: Formed galvanized-steel channel or structural channel supports, designed for low deflection, welded with integral lifting lugs.

1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to air-handling unit sections, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" when air-handling unit frame is anchored to building structure.

2.3 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.

1. Shafts: Designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, and with field-adjustable alignment.

a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
b. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

B. Centrifugal Fan Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.

1. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
2. Horizontal-Flanged, Split Housing: Bolted construction.
3. Housing for Supply Fan: Attach housing to fan-section casing with metal-edged flexible duct connector.
4. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches (89 mm), 5-3/4 inches (146 mm) wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets; select metal compatible with casing.

a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.

1) Fabric Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
2) Fabric Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
3) Fabric Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

C. Plenum Fan Housings: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing.

D. Backward-Inclined, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Single-width-single-inlet and double-width-double-inlet construction with curved inlet flange, backplate, backward-inclined blades welded or riveted to flange and backplate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

E. Forward-Curved, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; cast-steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

F. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

G. Axial Fans: Fan wheel and housing, straightening-vane section, factory-mounted motor with belt drive or direct drive, an inlet cone section, and accessories.

1. Variable-Pitch Fans: Internally mounted pneumatic, electric, electronic actuator, externally mounted positive positioner, and mechanical-blade-pitch indicator.
2. Housings: Steel, Galvanized steel, Aluminum.

    a. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Flanges.
    b. Guide Vane Section: Integral guide vanes downstream from fan wheel designed to straighten airflow.

H. Fan Shaft Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed, Ball Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with a rated life of 50,000, 120,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
2. Grease-Lubricated, Tapered-Roller Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with double-locking collars and 2-piece, cast-iron housing with grease lines extended to outside unit and a rated life of 50,000, 120,000 hours according to ABMA 11.
3. Grease-Lubricated Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing with grease lines extended to outside unit.

I. Belt Drives: Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with 1.5, 1.4, 1.3, 1.2 service factor based on fan motor.

1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
2. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with 5 hp motors and smaller; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley size so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
3. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.
4. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.1046-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick, 3/4-inch (20-mm) diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.

J. Variable-Inlet Vanes: Steel, with blades supported at both ends with permanently lubricated bearings. Variable mechanism terminating in single lever for connection to control actuator with connecting shaft for second set of variable inlet vanes on double-width fans.

K. Discharge Dampers: Heavy-duty steel assembly with channel frame and sealed ball bearings, and opposed, parallel blades constructed of two plates formed around and welded to shaft, with blades linked out of air stream to single control lever.

L. Internal Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control: Fans shall be factory mounted with manufacturer's standard restrained vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch (25 mm)

1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate fan section, internal mounting frame and attachment to fans, fan housings, motors, casings, accessories, and other fan section components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" when fan-mounting frame and air-handling-unit mounting frame are anchored to building structure.

M. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
2. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
5. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior, interior of unit.

N. Variable Frequency Controllers:

1. Provided and installed by controls contractor

2.4 COIL SECTION

A. General Requirements for Coil Section:

1. Comply with ARI 410.
2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
4. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate coil section, internal mounting frame and attachment to coils, and other coil section components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" when coil-mounting frame and air-handling-unit mounting frame are anchored to building structure.

B. Electrical Heating Coils, Controls, and Accessories: Comply with UL 1995.

1. Casing Assembly: Slip-in, Flanged type with galvanized-steel frame.
2. Sheathed Heating Elements: Coiled resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium surrounded by compacted magnesium-oxide powder in tubular-steel sheath; with spiral-wound, copper-plated, steel fins continuously brazed to sheath.
3. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame.
4. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically resetting, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box without removing heater from coil section.

5. Secondary Protection: Load-carrying, manually resetting or manually replaceable, thermal cutouts; factory wired in series with each heater stage.

2.5 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

A. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Provide minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
3. Provide filter holding frames arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

2.6 DAMPERS

A. General Requirements for Dampers: Leakage rate, according to AMCA 500, "Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating," shall not exceed 2 percent of air quantity at 2000-fpm (10-m/s) face velocity through damper and 4-inch wg (1000-Pa) pressure differential.

B. Electronic Damper Operators:

1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
3. Operator Motors:

    a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
    c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.

4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:

    a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. (86.8 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
    b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. (62 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
    c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft (49.6 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.

d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. (37.2 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm (5 to 13 m/s): Increase running torque by 1.5.
f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm (13 to 15 m/s): Increase running torque by 2.0.

7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
10. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24-V ac.
11. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
12. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
13. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 50 deg C), 40 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C).
14. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed.

C. Face-and-Bypass Dampers: Opposed-blade, galvanized-steel, aluminum, extruded-aluminum dampers with cadmium-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel, aluminum, extruded-aluminum frame and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Provide blade gaskets and edge seals, and mechanically fasten blades to operating rod.

D. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel-blade, galvanized-steel, aluminum, extruded-aluminum dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium-plated steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.

E. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel, aluminum, extruded-aluminum dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed, parallel-blade arrangement with cadmium-plated steel operating rods rotating in stainless-steel sleeve, sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel, aluminum, extruded-aluminum frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 5 cfm/sq. ft. (0.22 L/s per sq. m) at 1-inch wg (250 Pa) and 9 cfm/sq. ft. (0.4 L/s per sq. m) at 4-inch wg (1.0 MPa).

F. Mixing Section: Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly located immediately downstream of mixing section.

G. Combination Filter and Mixing Section:

1. Cabinet support members shall hold 2-inch- (50-mm-) thick, pleated, flat, permanent or throwaway filters.
2. Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly shall mix air to prevent stratification, located immediately downstream of mixing box.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.

B. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."

C. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig (2070 kPa) according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

D. Steam Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig (2070 kPa) and to 200 psig (1380 kPa) underwateraccording to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

E. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to 450 psig (3105 kPa) according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Retain one of two subparagraphs below. Retain first for projects in seismic areas; retain second for projects not in seismic areas. Indicate vibration isolation and seismic-control device type and minimum deflection in supported equipment schedule on Drawings.
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

B. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.", Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.

E. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gages on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to air-handling unit to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.

F. Steam and Condensate Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve at steam supply connections, float and thermostatic trap, and union or flange at each coil return connection. Install gate valve and inlet strainer at supply connection of dry steam humidifiers, and inverted bucket steam trap to condensate return connection.

G. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

H. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Automatic-Roll-Filter Operational Test: Operate filters to demonstrate compliance with requirements. Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.
5. HEPA-Filter Operational Test: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter with soapy water to check for air leaks.
6. HEPA-Filter Operational Test: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter for air leaks according to ASME N510, pressure-decay method.
7. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
6. Verify that zone dampers fully open and close for each zone.
7. Verify that face-and-bypass dampers provide full face flow.
8. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
9. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
10. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
11. Install new, clean filters.
12. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 74 13

PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:

1. Direct-expansion cooling.
2. Gas furnace.
3. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
4. Integral, space temperature controls.
5. Roof curbs.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A DDC: Direct-digital controls.

B. ECM: Electrically commutated motor.

C. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

D. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

E. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

F. VVT: Variable-air volume and temperature.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design RTU supports to comply with wind performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators for designing vibration isolation bases.
2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
3. Wind-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind and seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS.

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Structural members to which RTUs will be attached.
2. Roof openings
3. Roof curbs and flashing.

B. Field quality-control test reports.

C. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Extra materials may not be allowed for publicly funded projects.

B. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
2. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ARI Compliance:
1. Comply with ARI 203/110 and ARI 303/110 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:
1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CASING

A. UNIT CASING

1. Cabinet: Galvanized steel, phosphatized, and finished with an air-dry paint coating with removable access panels. Structural members shall be 18 gauge with access doors and removable panels of minimum 20 gauge. Provide with 3/4" insulation minimum and internal galvanized steel liner.
2. Units cabinet surface shall be tested 1000 hours in salt spray test in compliance with ASTM B117.
3. Cabinet construction shall allow for all service/maintenance from one side of the unit.
4. Cabinet top cover shall be one piece construction or where seams exits, it shall be double-hemmed and gasket-sealed.
5. Access Panels: Water- and air-tight panels with handles shall provide access to filters, heating section, return air fan section, supply air fan section, evaporator coil section, and unit control section.
6. Units base pan shall have a raised 1 1/8 inch high lip around the supply and return openings for water integrity.
7. Insulation: Provide 1/2 inch thick fiberglass insulation with foil face on all exterior panels in contact with the return and conditioned air stream. All edges must be captured so that there is no insulation exposed in the air stream.
8. Provide 115-volt convenience outlet, factory-installed and power, per NEC requirements.
9. Provide openings either on side of unit or through the base for power, control, condensate, and gas connections.
10. The base of the unit shall have 3 sides for forklift provisions. The base of the units shall have rigging/lifting holes for crane maneuvering.

B. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of stainless-steel sheet, a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.

2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple both sides of drain pan.

3. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Corrosion-resistant compound.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

2.02 FANS

A. Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, single-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the casing. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

B. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.

C. Fan Motor: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.03 COILS

A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:

1. Copper-plate fin and seamless internally grooved copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.

2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.

3. Coil Split: Interlaced.

4. Baked phenolic coating.

5. Condensate Drain Pan: Stainless steel formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

2.04 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

A. Retain paragraph below if Project includes only one RTU. If Project requires multiple RTUs, delete paragraph and indicate number of circuits for each RTU in a schedule.

B. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: Two.

C. Compressor: Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.

D. Refrigeration Specialties:

1. Refrigerant: R-454B, R-32.

2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.

3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.

4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.

5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.

6. Minimum off-time relay.

7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.

8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

9. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.

10. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.

11. Hot-gas bypass solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.

12. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.

2.05 AIR FILTRATION

A. Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV 8) according to ASHRAE 52.2, or as specified on the construction documents.

2.06 GAS FURNACE

A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.

1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.

B. Burners: Stainless steel.

1. Fuel: Natural gas.
2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.

C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Gravity vented with vertical extension.

E. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve with vertical extension.

F. Safety Controls:

1. Gas Control Valve:Modulating.
2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.07 DAMPERS

A. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 25 percent outdoor air, with motorized damper filter.

B. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.

1. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, with bird screen and hood.

2.08 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION

A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.09 CONTROLS

A. Retain first paragraph below to specify temperature controls in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC." Delete first paragraph and retain second paragraph and subparagraphs to require controls integral to the RTU to be provided by RTU manufacturer.

B. Controls shall be self-contained, unit mounted, DDC or electronic.

C. Basic Unit Controls:

1. Control-voltage transformer.

2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
    a. Heat-cool-off switch.
    b. Fan on-auto switch.
    c. Fan-speed switch.
    d. Automatic changeover.
    e. Adjustable deadband.
    f. Exposed set point.
    g. Exposed indication.
    h. Degree F indication.
    i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
    j. Data entry and access port to input temperature and humidity set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature and humidity, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.
3. Remote Wall -Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
    a. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
    b. DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with unit controls.
    c. Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.

D. Electronic Controller:
1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
2. Safety Control Operation:
    a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
    b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F (54 deg C) enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
    c. Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface
    d. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply air temperature is less than 40 deg F (4 deg C).
    e. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.
4. Unoccupied Period:
    a. Heating Setback: 10 deg F (5.6 deg C).
    b. Cooling Setback: System off.
    c. Override Operation: Two hours.
5. Supply Fan Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.

6. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors, and operate hot-gas bypass to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain[discharge temperature and humidity. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle compressors and condenser fans for heating to maintain setback temperature.

c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.

7. Gas Furnace Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Modulate burner to maintain discharge temperature.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.

8. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Open to 25 percent fixed minimum intake, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity to comply with ASHRAE Cycle II. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air is less than 60 deg F (15 deg C). Use mixed-air and outdoor-air temperature to adjust mixing dampers. Start relief-air fan with end switch on outdoor-air damper. During economizer cycle operation, lock out cooling.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.

c. Outdoor-Airflow Monitor: Accuracy maximum plus or minus 5 percent within 15 and 100 percent of total outdoor air. Monitor microprocessor shall adjust for temperature, and output shall range from 2- to 10-V dc.

9. Carbon Dioxide Sensor Operation (as required):

a. Occupied Periods: Reset minimum outdoor-air ratio down to minimum 10 percent to maintain maximum 1000-ppm] concentration.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.

E. Interface Requirements for future HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:

1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.

2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.

3. Provide BACnet or LonWorks compatible interface for future central HVAC control workstation for the following:

a. Adjusting set points.

b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.

c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.

d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.

e. Monitoring constant motor loads.

f. Monitoring cooling load.

g. Monitoring economizer cycles.

h. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

2.10 ACCESSORIES

A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.

B. Low-ambient kit using variable-speed condenser fans for operation down to 35 deg F (1.7 deg C).

C. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.

D. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.

E. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.

2.11 ROOF CURBS

A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.

1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.

b. Thickness: 2 inches (50 mm).

2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.

a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.

c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.

d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

B. Curb Height: 24 inches

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.

B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install RTUs on roof curbsRetain paragraph below if curbs are provided by RTU manufacturer.

B. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure, level and secure, according to [NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts."] [ARI Guideline B.] Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified by architect. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing with anchor bolts.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.

B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.

1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Report results in writing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.05 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.

2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
4. Inspect internal insulation.
5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
11. Connect and purge gas line.
12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. Start refrigeration system.
    b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
    a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
    b. Inspect operation of power vents.
    c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
    d. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
21. Calibrate thermostats.
22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F (8 deg C) above return-air temperature:
    a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
    d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.

25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.

26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows.

    a. Supply-air volume.

    b. Return-air volume.

    c. Relief-air volume.

    d. Outdoor-air intake volume.

27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:

    a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.

    b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.

28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:

    a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.

    b. Low-temperature safety operation.

    c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.

    d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.

    e. Relief-air fan operation.

    f. Smoke and firestat alarms.

29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

3.06 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

D. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 7433

DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes factory-packaged units capable of supplying up to 100 percent outdoor air and providing cooling and heating.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Roof-curb mounting details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Size and location of unit-mounted rails and anchor points and methods for anchoring units to roof curb.
2. Required roof penetrations for ducts, pipes, and electrical raceways, including size and location of each penetration.
3. Connections to heat exchanger.

B. Startup service reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
2. Filters: One set for each unit.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

B. Cabinet Thermal Performance:

1. Maximum Overall U-Value: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Maximum Overall U-Value: 0.10 Btu/h x sq. ft. x deg F.
3. Include effects of metal-to-metal contact and thermal bridges in the calculations.

C. Cabinet Surface Condensation:

1. Cabinet shall have additional insulation and vapor seals if required to prevent condensation on the interior and exterior of the cabinet.
2. Portions of cabinet located downstream from the cooling coil shall have a thermal break at each thermal bridge between the exterior and interior casing to prevent condensation from occurring on the interior and exterior surfaces. The thermal break shall not compromise the structural integrity of the cabinet.

D. Maximum Cabinet Leakage: 1 percent of the total supply-air flow at a pressure rating equal to the fan shut-off pressure.

E. Cabinet Deflection Performance:

1. Walls and roof deflection shall be within 1/200 of the span at the design working pressure equal to the fan shut-off pressure. Deflection limits shall be measured at any point on the surface.
2. Floor deflections shall be within 1/300 of the span considering the worst-case condition caused by the following:
    a. Service personnel.
    b. Internal components.
    c. Design working pressure defined for the walls and roof.

F. Electrical components, devices, and accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1. Overall Unit Electrical Characteristics:
    a. Volts: 208.
    b. Phase: Three.

c. Hertz: 60.

2.02 CABINET

A. Construction: double wall.

B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with paint finish or stainless steel.

C. Interior Casing Material: Galvanized or stainless steel.

D. Lifting and Handling Provisions: Factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs.

E. Base Rails: Stainless-steel rails for mounting on roof curb or pad as indicated.

F. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1. Service Doors: Hinged access doors with gaskets. Material and construction of doors shall match material and construction of cabinet in which doors are installed.

G. Roof: Standing seam or membrane; sloped to drain water.

H. Floor: Reinforced, metal surface; reinforced to limit deflection when walked on by service personnel. Insulation shall be below metal walking surface.

I. Cabinet Insulation:

1. Type: [Fibrous-glass duct lining complying with ASTM C 1071, Type II] [or] [flexible elastomeric insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, sheet materials.]
2. Thickness: 2 inches.
3. Insulation Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Suitable for adhesive, mechanical, or welding attachment to casing without damaging liner and without causing air leakage when applied as recommended by manufacturer.

J. Condensate Drain Pans:

1. Shape: Rectangular, with 2 percent slope in at least two planes to direct water toward drain connection.
2. Size: Large enough to collect condensate from entire cabinet.
3. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet with asphaltic waterproofing compound coating on pan top surface.
4. Drain Connection:
   a. Located on both ends of pan, at lowest point of pan.
   b. Terminated with threaded nipple.
   c. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 2.

K. Surfaces in Contact with Airstream: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1 for resistance to mold and erosion.

L. Roof Curb: Full-perimeter curb of sheet metal, minimum 16 inches high, with wood nailer, neoprene sealing strip, and welded Z-bar flashing.

1. Comply with requirements in "The NRCA Roofing Manual."

2.03 SUPPLY FAN

A. Forward-Curved Fan Type: Centrifugal; statically and dynamically balanced.
   1. Fan Wheel Material: Coated steel, mounted on solid-steel shaft.
   2. Bearings: Self-aligning, permanently lubricated ball bearings.

B. Plenum Fan Type: Single width, non-overloading, with backward-inclined or airfoil blades.
   1. Fan Wheel Material: Aluminum; attached directly to motor shaft.
   2. Fan Wheel Drive and Arrangement: Direct drive, AMCA Arrangement 4.
   3. Fan panel and frame Material: Powder-coated steel, stainless steel, or aluminum.
   4. Fan Enclosure: Easily removable enclosure around rotating parts.
   5. Fan Balance: Precision balance fan below 0.08 inch/s at design speed with filter in.

C. Service Factor for Belt Drive Applications: Multiple]V-belt drive with matching fan pulley and adjustable motor sheaves and belt assembly with minimum 1.5 service factor.

D. Motors:
   1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   2. Enclosure: Totally enclosed.

E. Mounting: Fan wheel, motor, and drives shall be mounted to fan casing with spring isolators.

2.04 INDIRECT-FIRED GAS FURNACE HEATING

A. Furnace Assembly:
   1. Factory assembled, piped, and wired.
   2. Comply with requirements in NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code," and ANSI Z21.47, "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces."
   3. AGA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of AGA.

B. Burners:
   1. Heat-Exchanger Material: Stainless steel with a minimum thermal efficiency of 80 percent.
   2. Fuel: Natural gas.
   3. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark with flame sensor.

C. Heat-Exchanger Drain Pan Material: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Gravity vented.

E. Venting: Power vent with integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.

F. Safety Controls:
   1. Gas Control Valve: Electronic modulating.
   2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.05 FILTERS

A. Cleanable Filters: 2-inch-thick, cleanable metal mesh, or as scheduled in the construction documents.

B. Disposable Panel Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
3. Thickness: 2 inches.
4. Minimum Arrestance: 80, according to ASHRAE 52.1.
5. Minimum Merv: 6, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
6. Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial agent.

C. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
3. Thickness: 2 inches.
4. Minimum Arrestance: 90, according to ASHRAE 52.1.
5. Minimum Merv: 7, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
6. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats with antimicrobial agent and held by self-supporting wire grid.

D. Extended-Surface, Nonsupported-Media Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface, self-supporting type.
3. Minimum Arrestance: 95, according to ASHRAE 52.1.
4. Minimum Merv: 13, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
5. Media: Fibrous material coated with an antimicrobial agent and constructed so individual pleats are maintained in tapered form by flexible internal supports under rated-airflow conditions.

E. Mounting Frames:

1. Panel filters arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or from access plenum.
2. Extended surface filters arranged for flat orientation, removable from access plenum.
3. Galvanized or stainless steel with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks with space for prefilter.

2.06 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

A. General Electrical Power Connection Requirements: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other necessary electrical devices shall provide a single-point field power connection to unit.

B. Enclosure: NEMA 250, mounted in unit with hinged access door in unit cabinet having a lock and key or padlock and key,

C. Wiring: Numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.

D. Wiring Location: Install factory wiring outside an enclosure in a raceway.

E. Power Interface: Field power interface shall be to nonfused disconnect switch.

F. Factory Wiring: Branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:

1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 60947-4-1.
2. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.
3. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.

G. Factory-Mounted, Overcurrent-Protection Service: For each motor.

H. Transformer: Factory mounted with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.

I. Controls: Factory wire unit-mounted controls where indicated.

J. Lights: Factory wire unit-mounted lights.

K. Receptacle: Factory wire unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt (GFI) duplex receptacle.

L. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.

2.07 CONTROLS

A. Controls shall be self-contained, unit mounted, DDC or electronic.

B. Control Wiring: Factory wire connection for controls' power supply.

C. Control Devices: Sensors, transmitters, relays, switches, detectors, operators, actuators, and valves shall be manufacturer's standard items to accomplish indicated control functions.

D. Unit-Mounted Status Panel:

1. Cooling/Off/Heating Controls: Control operational mode.
2. Damper Position: Indicate position of outdoor-air dampers in terms of percentage of outdoor air.
3. Status Lights:
    a. Filter dirty.
    b. Fan operating.
    c. Heating operating.

d. Smoke alarm.

e. General alarm.

4. Digital Numeric Display:

a. Outdoor airflow.

b. Supply airflow.

c. Outdoor dry-bulb temperature.

d. Outdoor dew point temperature.

e. Space temperature.

f. Supply temperature.

g. Space relative humidity.

h. Space carbon dioxide level.

E. Control Dampers:

1. Damper Location: Factory installed inside unit for ease of blade axle and bushing service. Arrange dampers located in a mixing box to achieve convergent airflow to minimize stratification.

2. Damper Leakage: Comply with requirements in AMCA 500-D. Leakage shall not exceed 6.5 cfm per sq. ft. at a static-pressure differential of 4.0 inches water column when a torque of 5 inch pounds per sq. ft. is applied to the damper jackshaft.

3. Damper Rating: Rated for close-off pressure equal to the fan shutoff pressure.

4. Damper Label: Bear the AMCA seal for both air leakage and performance.

5. Blade Configuration: Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control and equipment isolation service and use modulating control when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use an opposed-blade configuration.

6. Damper Frame Material: galvanized steel or stainless steel.

7. Blade Type: Single-thickness metal reinforced with multiple V-grooves or hollow-shaped airfoil.

8. Blade Material: galvanized steel or stainless steel.

9. Maximum Blade Width: 6 inches.

10. Maximum Blade Length: 48 inches.

11. Blade Seals: Replaceable, continuous perimeter vinyl seals and jambs with stainless-steel compression-type seals.

12. Bearings: Thrust bearings for vertical blade axles.

13. Airflow Measurement:

a. Monitoring System: Complete and functioning system of airflow monitoring as an integral part of the damper assembly where indicated.

b. Remote Monitoring Signal: 0-10 volt or 4-20 mA scaled signal.

c. Accuracy of flow measurement: Within 5 percent of the actual flow rate between the range of the scheduled minimum and maximum airflow. For units with a large range between minimum and maximum airflow, configure the damper sections and flow measurement assembly as necessary to comply with accuracy.

d. Straightening Device: Integral to the flow measurement assembly if required to achieve the specified accuracy as installed.

e. flow measuring device: Suitable for operation in untreated and unfiltered outdoor air. If necessary, include temperature and altitude compensation and correction to maintain the accuracy.

F. Damper Operators:

1. Factory-installed electric operator for each damper assembly with one operator for each damper assembly mounted to the damper frame.
2. Operator capable of shutoff against fan pressure and able to operate the damper with sufficient reserve power to achieve smooth modulating action and proper speed of response at the velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
3. Maximum Operating Time: Open or close damper 90 degrees in 60 seconds.
4. Adjustable Stops: For both maximum and minimum positions.
5. Position Indicator and Graduated Scale: Factory installed on each actuator with words "OPEN" and "CLOSED," or similar identification, at travel limits.
6. Spring-return operator to fail-safe; either closed or open as required by application.
7. Operator Type: Direct coupled, designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
8. Position feedback Signal: For remote monitoring of damper position.
9. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
10. Circuitry: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.

G. Furnace Controls:

1. Factory-mounted sensor in supply outlet with sensor adjustment located in control panel to modulate gas furnace burner to maintain space temperature.
2. Wall-mounted, space-temperature sensor with adjustment on remote-control panel to modulate gas furnace burner to maintain space temperature.
3. Remote Setback: Adjustable room thermostat selected by timer, set at 50 deg F; cycles supply fan and gas furnace burner to maintain space temperature.
4. Staged Burner Control: Two steps of control.
5. Electromechanical or Electronic Burner Control: 20 to 100 percent modulation of the firing rate; 10 to 100 percent with dual-furnace units.

H. Damper Controls: Space pressure sensor modulates outdoor- and return-air dampers to maintain a positive pressure in space at a minimum of 0.05 inch wg with respect to outdoor reference.

I. Integral Smoke Alarm: Smoke detector installed in supply and return air.

J. DDC Temperature Control: Standalone control module for future link between unit controls and DDC temperature-control system.

2.08 ACCESSORIES

A. Service Lights and Switch: Factory installed in fan and coil sections with weatherproof cover. Factory wire lights to a single-point field connection.

B. Duplex Receptacle: Factory mounted in unit supply-fan section, with 20 amp 120 V GFI duplex receptacle and weatherproof cover.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's rigging and installation instructions for unloading units and moving to final locations.

B. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure according to "The NRCA Roofing Manual."

1. Install and secure units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction.
2. Coordinate size, installation, and structural capacity of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
3. Coordinate size, location, and installation of unit manufacturer's roof curbs and equipment supports with roof Installer.

C. Restrained Curb Support: Install restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails on roof structure according to "The NRCA Roofing Manual."

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install unit on pre-fabricated roofcurb.

E. Install wall- and duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.

F. Comply with requirements for gas-fired furnace installation in NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code."

G. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

H. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

I. Install drain pipes from unit drain pans to sanitary drain.

1. Drain Piping: Drawn-temper copper water tubing complying with ASTM B 88, Type L, with soldered joints.
2. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC pipe complying with ASTM D 1785, with solvent-welded fittings.
3. Pipe Size: Same size as condensate drain pan connection.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

A. Where installing piping adjacent to units, allow space for service and maintenance.

B. Gas Piping Connections:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."
2. Connect gas piping to furnace, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union, pressure regulator, and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
3. Install AGA-approved flexible connectors.

C. Duct Connections:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
2. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
3. Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

D. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements for power wiring, switches, and motor controls in electrical Sections.

1. Install electrical devices furnished by unit manufacturer but not factory mounted.

3.04 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Inspect units for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing and adjust burner for peak efficiency:
    a. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.

4. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
    a. High-limit heat exchanger.
    b. Alarms.
5. Inspect units for visible damage to components.
6. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
7. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
8. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
9. Verify that filters are installed.
10. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
11. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
12. Inspect operation of power vents.
13. Purge gas line.
14. Verify bearing lubrication.
15. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
17. Start unit.
18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
19. Operate unit for run-in period.
20. Calibrate controls.
21. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
22. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
23. Verify operational sequence of controls.

B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.

C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.

D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 81 26
SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period:
      a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
      b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
      c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Friedrich Air Conditioning Company.
   2. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.; HVAC Advanced Products Division.
   3. SANYO North America Corporation; SANYO Fisher Company.
   4. Trane; a business of American Standard companies.
   5. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS (18 kW) OR LESS)

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:
   1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
   2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
   3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
   4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm); leak tested to 300 psig (2070 kPa) underwater; with a two-position control valve.
   5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
   6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
   7. Fan Motors:
      a. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
      b. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
   8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
   9. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
   10. Condensate Drain Pans:
      a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
         1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1
         2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches (50 mm)] deep.
      b. Single-wall, galvanized -steel sheet.
      c. Double-wall, galvanized-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
      d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
      e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
      f. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:
   1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.

2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
5. Fan Motors:
    a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
    c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
    d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
    e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
    f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
7. Condensate Drain Pans:
    a. Fabricated with **one** percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
        1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1
        2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) deep.
    b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
    c. Double-wall, galvanized-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
    d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
    e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS (18 kW) OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:
1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
    a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
    b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
    c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A, R-454B, R-32
    d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to -5 deg F
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence and Operations for HVAC Controls."

B. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

C. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
   1. Compressor time delay.
   2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
   3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
   4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.

D. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

E. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

F. Drain Hose: For condensate.

G. Additional Monitoring:
   1. Tie into BAS for monitoring.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.

D. Equipment Mounting:
   1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
   2. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.

E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
   1. Water Coil Connections: Connect hydronic piping to supply and return coil connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
   2. Remote, Water-Cooled Condenser Connections: Connect hydronic piping to supply and return connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.

B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 23 81 26

SECTION 23 82 19
FAN COIL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Ductless fan coil units and accessories.
   2. Ducted fan coil units and accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of fan coil unit indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Suspended ceiling components.
   2. Structural members to which fan coil units will be attached.
   3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
   4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
      a. Lighting fixtures.
      b. Air outlets and inlets.
      c. Speakers.
      d. Sprinklers.
      e. Access panels.
   6. Perimeter moldings.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fan coil units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fan coil units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
   1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
      a. Maintenance schedules and repair part lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Fan Coil Unit Filters: Furnish 1 spare filters for each filter installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of condensing units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Condenser coil leak.
   2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 440, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

2.2 DUCTLESS FAN COIL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide basis of design or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Trane Inc.
   2. YORK; by Johnson Controls, Inc.

C. Fan Coil Unit Configurations: Row split.
   1. Number of Heating Coils: One with two-pipe system.
   2. Number of Cooling Coils: One with four-pipe system.

D. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, coated glass fiber, foil-covered, closed-cell foam, or matte-finish, closed-cell foam complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Coil Section Insulation: Insulate coil section according to Section 230616 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

F. Main and Auxiliary Drain Pans: Stainless steel, or Insulated galvanized steel with plastic liner. Fabricate pans and drain connections to comply with ASHRAE 62.1. Drain pans shall be removable.

G. Chassis: Galvanized steel where exposed to moisture. Floor-mounting units shall have leveling screws.

H. Cabinet: Steel with factory prime coating, ready for field painting
1. Steel recessing flanges for recessing fan coil units into ceiling or wall.

I. Filters: Minimum arrestance and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2 and all addendums.
1. MERV Rating: 6 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.
2. Washable Foam: 70 percent arrestance and MERV 3.
3. Glass Fiber Treated with Adhesive: 80 percent arrestance and MERV 5.
4. Pleated Cotton-Polyester Media: 90 percent arrestance and MERV 7.

J. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm), rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1378 kPa) and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C). Include manual air vent and drain valve.

K. Indoor Refrigerant Coils: Copper, or Stainless-steel tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum or stainless-steel fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) and brazed joints at fittings. Comply with AHRI 210/240, and leak test to minimum 450 psig (3105 kPa) for a minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) working pressure. Include thermal expansion valve.

L. Steam Coils: Copper distributing tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm), rated for a minimum working pressure of 75 psig (517 kPa).

M. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection. Terminate elements in stainless-steel machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.

N. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.
1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal; directly connected to motor. Thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels, and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Termination: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

O. Factory, Hydronic Piping Package: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M Type C) copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet, and outlet.
   1. Two-way, modulating control valve for chilled-water coil.
   2. Two-way, modulating control valve for hot-water heating coil.
   3. Hose Kits: Minimum 400-psig (2758-kPa) working pressure and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F (0.5 to 99 deg C). Tag hose kits to equipment designations.
      a. Length: 24 inches (600 mm) 36 inches (900 mm)
      b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to fan coil unit connection size.
   4. Two-Piece Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig (4140-kPa) minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
   5. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure, 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venturi, connections for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and a memory stop to retain set position.
   6. Automatic Flow-Control Valve: Brass or ferrous-metal body; 300-psig (2070-kPa) working pressure at 250 deg F (121 deg C); with removable, corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning piston spring; factory set to maintain constant indicated flow with plus or minus 10 percent over differential pressure range of 2 to 80 psig (13.8 to 552 kPa).
   7. Y-Pattern Hydronic Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 (DN 15) hose-end, full-port, ball-type blowdown valve in drain connection.
   8. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
   9. Risers: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M Type C) copper pipe with hose and ball valve for system flushing.

P. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."

Q. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single electrical connection.

2.3 DUCTED FAN COIL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Trane Inc.
   2. YORK; by Johnson Controls, Inc.

C. Fan Coil Unit Configurations: Row split.
   1. Number of Heating Coils: One with four-pipe system.
   2. Number of Cooling Coils: One with four-pipe system.

D. Coil Section Insulation: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick, glass fiber complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.
   1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
   2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Coil Section Insulation: Insulate coil section according to Section 230616 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

F. Main and Auxiliary Drain Pans: Stainless steel. Fabricate pans and drain connections to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.

G. Chassis: Galvanized steel where exposed to moisture, with baked-enamel finish and removable access panel, Floor-mounting units shall have leveling screws.

H. Cabinets: Steel with baked-enamel finish in manufacturer's standard paint color.
1. Supply-Air Plenum: Sheet metal plenum finished and insulated to match the chassis with mill-finish, aluminum.
2. Return-Air Plenum: Sheet metal plenum finished to match the chassis.
3. Mixing Plenum: Sheet metal plenum finished and insulated to match the chassis with outdoor- and return-air, formed-steel dampers.
4. Dampers: Galvanized steel with extruded-vinyl blade seals, flexible-metal jamb seals, and interlocking linkage.

I. Filters: Minimum arrestance and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2 and all addendums.

J. MERV Rating:
1. Washable Foam: 70 percent arrestance and MERV 3.
2. Glass Fiber Treated with Adhesive: 80 percent arrestance and MERV 5.
3. Pleated Cotton-Polyester Media: 90 percent arrestance and MERV 7.

K. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm), rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1378 kPa) and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C). Include manual air vent and drain.

L. Direct-Driven Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, multispeed motor resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and painted-steel or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.

M. Factory, Hydronic Piping Package: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet, and outlet.
1. Two-way, modulating control valve for chilled-water coil.
2. Two-way, modulating control valve for heating coil.
3. Hose Kits: Minimum 400-psig (2758-kPa) working pressure and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F (0.5 to 99 deg C). Tag hose kits to equipment designations.
   a. Length: 36 inches (900 mm)
   b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to fan coil unit connection size.
4. Two-Piece Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig (4140-kPa) minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
5. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure, 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venturi, connections for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and a memory stop to retain set position.
6. Automatic Flow-Control Valve: Brass or ferrous-metal body; 300-psig (2070-kPa) working pressure at 250 deg F (121 deg C); with removable, corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning piston spring; factory set to maintain constant indicated flow with plus or minus 10 percent over differential pressure range of 2 to 80 psig (13.8 to 552 kPa).
7. Y-Pattern Hydronic Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel

basket, and bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 (DN 15) hose-end, full-port, ball-type blowdown valve in drain connection.

8. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

N. All controls to be by controls contractor.

O. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single electrical connection.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive fan coil units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan coil unit installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fan coil units level and plumb.

B. Install fan coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.

C. Suspend fan coil units from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

D. Verify locations of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches (1220 mm) above finished floor.

E. Install new filters in each fan coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
2. Connect piping to fan coil unit factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste.
    a. Install condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.

B. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to fan coil units with flexible duct connectors

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan coil units.

END OF SECTION 23 82 19

SECTION 23 82 23
UNIT VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes unit ventilators and accessories with the following heating and cooling features:
   1. Hydronic heating coil.
   2. Hydronic cooling coil.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 238146.13 "Water-to-Air Heat Pumps" for ground-loop, water-source heat-pump-type unit ventilators.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product
   1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for each unit type and configuration.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
   2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   3. Detail anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
   4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of unit ventilator and auxiliary shelves and cabinets indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Suspended ceiling components.
   2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
   3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
   4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   5. Size and location of access panels in hard ceilings to provide access to concealed units.
   6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
      a. Lighting fixtures.
      b. Air outlets and inlets.
      c. Speakers.
      d. Sprinklers.
      e. Access panels.
   7. Perimeter moldings.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For unit ventilators, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For unit ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
a. Maintenance schedules and repair part lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Unit Ventilator Filters: Furnish 1 spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of unit ventilators and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of condensing units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Compressor failure.
b. Condenser coil leak.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period (Compressor Only): Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period (Condenser Coil Only): Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 840, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Trane.
   2. York (Johnson Controls Company)

2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Description: Unit ventilators consisting of finished cabinet, filter, cooling coil, drain pan, supply-air fan and motor in draw-through configuration, and hydronic cooling coil.
   1. Unit Ventilator Coil Configurations: Row split.
      a. Number of Heating Coils: One with four-pipe system.
      b. Number of Cooling Coils: One with four-pipe system.

2.4 CABINETS

A. Insulation: Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm thick, coated glass fiber complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.
   1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
   2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Coil Section Insulation: Insulate coil section according to Section 230616 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
   1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
   2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Main and Auxiliary Drain Pans: Plastic Insulated galvanized steel with plastic liner, formed as required by ASHRAE 62.1. Drain pans shall be removable.

D. Cabinet Frame and Access Panels: Welded-steel frame with removable panels fastened with hex-head tamperproof fasteners and key-operated control and valve access doors.
   1. Steel components exposed to moisture shall be hot-dip galvanized after fabrication baked-enamel finished powder-coat finished.

E. Cabinet Finish: Baked-on primer ready for field painting.

F. Cabinet Finish: Baked enamel Powder coat, in manufacturer's standard custom color as selected by Architect.

G. Indoor-Supply-Air Grille: Aluminum, double deflection, adjustable

H. Return-Air Inlet: Front toe space.

I. End Panels: Matching material and finish of unit ventilator.

J. Outdoor-Air Wall Box: Minimum 0.1265-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, aluminum, rain-resistant louver and box with integral eliminators and bird screen.
   1. Louver Configuration: Horizontal , rain-resistant louver.
   2. Louver Material: Aluminum.
   3. Bird Screen: 1/2-inch (13-mm) mesh screen on interior side of louver.
   4. Decorative Grille: On outside of intake.
   5. Finish: Anodized aluminum, color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.5 COILS

A. Test and rate unit ventilator coils according to ASHRAE 33.

B. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm), rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1378 kPa) and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C). Include manual air vent and drain valve.

2.6 INDOOR FAN

A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.
   1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal; directly connected to motor. Thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels, and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
   2. Fan Shaft and Bearings: Hollow-steel shaft with permanently lubricated, resiliently mounted bearings.
   3. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed, resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.7 DAMPERS

A. Mixing Dampers: Galvanized-steel blades with edge and end seals and nylon bearings; with electric actuator.

B. Outdoor-Air Dampers: Galvanized-steel blades with edge and end seals and nylon bearings; with electric actuator.

C. Face and Bypass Dampers: Galvanized-steel damper blades with edge and end seals and nylon bearings; with factory-mounted electric actuator.

D. Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. Subbase: Sheet metal floor-mounting base with leveling screws and black enamel finish.

B. Insulated false back with gasket seals on wall and outdoor-air plenum.
   1. Insulation: Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick, coated glass fiber complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.
      a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
      b. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Return-air plenum, 6 inches (150 mm) thick, designed to take return air from top inlet grilles in cabinets on both sides of unit ventilator with gasket seals on wall and outdoor-air plenum extension.

D. Duct flanges for supply-, return-, and outdoor-air connections.

E. Radiation Grille: Aluminum, linear-bar grille with finish to match discharge-air grille.

F. Filters: Minimum arrestance and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2 and all addendums.
   1. MERV Rating: minimum 6 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.
   2. Washable Foam: 70 percent arrestance and MERV 3.
   3. Glass Fiber Treated with Adhesive: 80 percent arrestance and MERV 5.
   4. Pleated Cotton-Polyester Media: 90 percent arrestance and MERV 7.

2.9 FACTORY HYDRONIC PIPING PACKAGE

A. Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet, and outlet. Crossover piping, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) or NPS 2 (DN 50) depending upon capacity, with shutoff valves.

B. Control Valves: Electric actuators compatible with terminal controller and building controls.
   1. Two-way, modulating control valve for chilled-water coil.
   2. Two-way, modulating control valve for hot-water heating coil.

C. Hose Kits: Minimum 400-psig (2758-kPa) working pressure and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F (0.5 to 99 deg C). Tag hose kits to equipment designations.
   1. Length: 36 inches (900 mm)
   2. Minimum Diameter: Equal to unit ventilator connection size.

D. Isolation Valves, Strainers, Unions, and Balance Valves:
   1. Two-Piece Ball Valves: Bronze body with stainless-steel ball and stem and galvanized-steel lever handle for each supply and return connection. If balancing device is combination shutoff type with memory stop, isolation valve may be omitted on the return.
   2. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure, 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venturi, connections for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and a memory stop to retain set position.
   3. Automatic Flow-Control Valve: Brass or ferrous-metal body; 300-psig (2070-kPa) working pressure at 250 deg F (121 deg C); with removable, corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning piston spring; factory set to maintain constant indicated flow with plus or minus 10 percent over differential pressure range of 2 to 80 psig (13.8 to 552 kPa).
   4. Y-Pattern Hydronic Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 (DN 15) hose-end, full-port, ball-type blowdown valve in drain connection.
   5. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.10 BASIC UNIT CONTROLS

A. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls." As well as seen on bid documents. All controls to be by controls contractor.

2.11 METAL SHELVES AND CABINETS

A. Include manufacturer's standard cabinets to match unit ventilators with required installation hardware as indicated:
   1. Open Shelving with Reinforced Shelves:
      a. Return-air plenum and aluminum bar grille with finish to match unit ventilator grille.
      b. Through-piping enclosure with solid top.
   2. Closed Shelving with Reinforced Shelves:
      a. Return-air plenum and aluminum bar grille with finish to match unit ventilator grille.
      b. Through-piping enclosure with solid top.
      c. Two sliding doors with key-operated locks.
   3. Utility compartment with access panel with key-operated lock.
   4. Wall and corner filler sections, and end panels finished to match shelving.

B. Painted Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel, in color selected by Architect, applied to shelving before shipping.

C. Cabinet Top: Plastic-laminate top in color and pattern selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive unit ventilators for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit ventilator installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install unit ventilators to comply with NFPA 90A.

B. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 60 inches (1525 mm) above finished floor.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
   1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
   2. Connect piping to unit ventilator factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
   3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste.

B. Install refrigerant piping as required by Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping," and add refrigerant as required to compensate for length of piping.

C. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to unit ventilators with flexible duct connectors

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
   1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
   3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
   4. Record temperatures entering and leaving energy recovery wheel when outdoor-air temperature is a minimum of 15 deg F (8.3 deg C) higher, or 20 deg F (11 deg C) lower, than room temperature.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain unit ventilators.

END OF SECTION 23 82 23

SECTION 23 82 39.19
WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
   2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   3. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
   4. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
   5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wall and ceiling unit heaters to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 DESCRIPTION

A. Assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 CABINET

A. Front Panel: Plastic or stamped-steel louver, with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.

B. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Surface-Mounted Cabinet Enclosure: Steel with finish to match cabinet.

2.03 COIL

A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware, and limit controls for high-temperature protection. Provide integral circuit breaker for overcurrent protection.

2.04 FAN AND MOTOR

A. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.

B. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.05 CONTROLS

A. Controls: Unit-mounted thermostat. Low-voltage relay with transformer kit.

B. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection with disconnect switch.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive wall and ceiling unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

B. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.

C. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 00
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
   2. Common electrical installation requirements.
   3. Cutting and patching for electrical construction.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorizes having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Include in the Work, as a part of the Bid Proposal, labor, materials, services, apparatus, drawings (in addition to the Contract Documents) as required to complete the intended work.

D. Work for the Project must be performed in accordance with Federal, State and Local Laws, Ordinances, Codes, Rules and Regulations, pertaining to the Work which are hereby made a part of the Contract Documents by reference, the same as if repeated herein in their entity. Where Contract Documents exceed these requirements, the Contract Documents shall govern. In no case shall Work be installed contrary to or below the minimum legal standards.

E. Comply with the City of Moline, IL and other local amendments.

1.04 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
   1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
   2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment within minimum interference to other installations.
   3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
   4. So connecting raceways, cables, wire ways, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access apace of other equipment.

B. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 8 Section “Access Doors and Frames.”

C. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of fire stopping specified in Division 7 Section “Fire stopping.”

PART 2 EXECUTION

2.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounted items.

C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

2.02 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Refer to Division 2 for general cutting and patching requirements and procedures.

B. Cut. Channel, chase and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings and other surfaces required to permit electrical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of trades involved.

C. Repair and refinish disturbed finish materials and other surfaces to match adjacent undisturbed surfaces. Install new fireproofing where existing fire stopping has been disturbed. Repair and refinish materials and other surfaces by skilled mechanics of trades involved.

2.03 FIRE STOPPING

A. Apply fire stopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Fire stopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 7 Section “Fire stopping”.

2.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. On completion of installation, including outlets, fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, paint spots and construction debris.

B. Protect equipment and installations and maintain conditions to ensure that coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 19

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. VFC: Variable frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.

B. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THHN/THWN, Type XHHW-2, and Type SO.

C. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for armored cable, Type AC, metal-clad cable, Type MC, and Type SO with ground wire.

D. VFC Cable:

1. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable.
2. Comply with UL requirements for cables in direct burial applications.

E. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper; **s**olid or stranded for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid or stranded for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.

C. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2 or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2 or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2 or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-2-THWN-2 or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test **service entrance and feeder conductors** for compliance with requirements.
2. Perform each visual and electrical tests:
    a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
    b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
        1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
        2) Calibrated torque wrench.
        3) Themographic survey.
    c. Inspect compression applied connectors for correct cable match and installation.
    d. Inspect for correct identification.
    e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
    f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor with respect to ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
    g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
    h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.

D. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 26

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

1. Underground distribution grounding.
2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Test wells.
2. Ground rods.
3. Ground rings.
4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
   a. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
      1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
      2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.

2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression or exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad 3/4 inch by 10 feet.

B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Grounding Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

C. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
6. Flexible raceway runs.
7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

C. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.

1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.

D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

G. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

D. Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
   a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
   b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

G. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).
5. Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

H. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:

   a. Hangers.
   b. Steel slotted support systems.
   c. Nonmetallic support systems.
   d. Trapeze hangers.
   e. Clamps.
   f. Turnbuckles.
   g. Sockets.
   h. Eye nuts.
   i. Saddles.
   j. Brackets.

2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Trapeze hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Steel slotted-channel systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted-channel systems.
4. Equipment supports.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of trapeze hangers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

   a. Lighting fixtures.
   b. Air outlets and inlets.
   c. Speakers.

d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.
f. Projectors.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Material: Galvanized steel.
2. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inches.
3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
6. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
7. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inches.
2. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
3. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
4. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

C. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c., in at least one surface.

1. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inches.
2. Fittings and Accessories: Products provided by channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.

3. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as those for channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
4. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
5. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.

F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems unless requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

D. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

E. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0533

RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
2. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

C. Samples: For wireways and surface raceways and for each color and texture specified, 12 inches long.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

C. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.

D. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
    1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
    2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.
F. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
G. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
H. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
I. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
    1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
    2. Fittings for EMT:
        a. Material: Steel.
        b. Type: Setscrew or compression.
    3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
    4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
J. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
D. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
E. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
F. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.
G. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
H. RTRC: Comply with UL 1684A and NEMA TC 14.
I. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
J. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
K. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
    1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
C. Wireway Covers: Hinged type or Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.
D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.

C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.

D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect

C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, rectangular.

1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

H. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb (32 kg).

1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

I. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

J. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

K. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

L. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep.
M. Gangable boxes are allowed.
N. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
O. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.7 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC.".
6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC or Type EPC-80-PVC.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
    a. Loading dock.
    b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    c. Mechanical rooms.
    d. Gymnasiums.
4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.

I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.

J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

S. Surface Raceways:

1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
    d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

BB. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

FF. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
    b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 43

UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Direct-buried conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
   2. Concrete-encased conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
   3. Handholes and boxes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
   2. Include ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
   3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes.
   4. Include warning tape.
   5. Include warning planks.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
      a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
      b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
      c. Include cover design.
      d. Include grounding details.
      e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
   1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
   2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.

C. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

B. Furnish cable-support stanchions, arms, insulators, and associated fasteners in quantities equal to 5 percent of quantity of each item installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect and Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's and Construction Manager's written permission.

B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is at grade level unless a lower water table is noted on Drawings.

C. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCTS AND RACEWAYS

A. Comply with ANSI C2.

2.2 CONDUIT

A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.

B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC and Type EPC-80-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

2.3 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.

1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
2. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
3. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with hinged steel access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
    a. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
    b. Cover Handle: Recessed.
4. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof aluminum frame with hinged aluminum access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
    a. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
    b. Cover Handle: Recessed.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
8. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
    a. Extension shall provide increased depth of 12 inches.
    b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
9. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.
10. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks, plus an additional 12 inches vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
    a. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
    b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
    c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.

11. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
    a. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
    b. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.

B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
   1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
   2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
   3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.

B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

A. Ducts for Electrical Cables More than 600 V: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80 -PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank unless otherwise indicated.

B. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank unless otherwise indicated.

C. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.

D. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.

E. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths, Walks, Driveways, and Roadways: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:
   1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
   2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
   3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
   4. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.
   5. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

B. Manholes: Precast or cast-in-place concrete.

1. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.
2. Units Not Located in Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-10 load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.

3.4 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.

B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.

C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."

D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to the "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

3.5 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Install ducts according to NEMA TCB 2.

B. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes, to drain in both directions.

C. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.

D. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.

E. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct banks are installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct bank will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct bank crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.

F. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
   1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
   2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct banks with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch.
   3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.

G. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

H. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic pressure.

I. Pulling Cord: Install 100-lbf- test nylon cord in empty ducts.

J. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
   1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.

2. Width: Excavate trench 12 inches wider than duct bank on each side.
3. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches wider than duct bank on each side.
4. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated.
5. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
6. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
7. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between ducts for like services, and 4 inches between power and signal ducts.
8. Elbows: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout length of elbow.
9. Elbows: Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run.
    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
10. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
11. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
12. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of 3 inches of concrete cover at top and bottom, and a minimum of 2 inches on each side of duct bank.
13. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
    a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
    b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of 18 inches into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
14. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.

K. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.

3. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers.
4. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
5. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below frost line.
6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and signal ducts.
7. Elbows: Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
8. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run.
    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
9. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inches over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
    a. Place minimum 3 inches of sand as a bed for duct bank. Place sand to a minimum of 6 inches above top level of duct bank.
    b. Place minimum 6 inches of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct bank.

L. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried ducts and duct banks, placing them 24 inches o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional plank for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional planks 12 inches apart, horizontally.

M. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12 inches apart, horizontally.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:
1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:
1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches below finished grade.
2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch above finished grade.
3. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.

4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

D. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071353 "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing." After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

E. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes[and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071113 "Bituminous Dampproofing." After ducts are connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

F. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

G. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.

H. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches for manholes and 2 inches for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

F. Field cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.
1. Concrete: 3000 psi, 28-day strength, complying with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
2. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep.

3.8 GROUNDING

A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.

2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 6-inch- long mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
3. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.10 CLEANING

A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 44

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.

3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.
B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Underground-line warning tape.
5. Warning labels and signs.
6. Instruction signs.
7. Equipment identification labels, including arc-flash warning labels.
8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage.

B. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

2.3 LABELS

A. Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

B. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters of raceways they identify, and that stay in place by gripping action.

C. Self-Adhesive Labels:

1. Preprinted, 3-mil- thick, polyester or vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.

    a. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the cable or raceway diameter, such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

2. Polyester or Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.

    a. Nominal Size: 3.5-by-5-inch.

3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES:

A. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameters sized to suit diameters of raceways or cables they identify, and that stay in place by gripping action.

B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameters of and shrunk to fit firmly around cables they identify. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.

2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS:

A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

C. Tape and Stencil for Raceways Carrying Circuits 600 V or Less: 4-inch- wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.

D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch- wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with yellow and black stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

E. Underground-Line Warning Tape

1. Tape:

    a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
    b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
    c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

2. Color and Printing:

    a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
    b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".

c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

3. Tag: Type I:
   a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
   b. Width: 3 inches.
   c. Thickness: 4 mils.
   d. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft.
   e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf and 2500 psi.
4. Tag: Type II:
   a. Multilayer laminate, consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
   b. Width: 3 inches.
   c. Thickness: 12 mils.
   d. Weight: 36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft.
   e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 400 lbf and 11,500 psi.
5. Tag: Type ID:
   a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
   b. Width: 3 inches.
   c. Overall Thickness: 5 mils.
   d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
   e. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft.
   f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf and 4600 psi.
6. Tag: Type IID:
   a. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
   b. Width: 3 inches.
   c. Overall Thickness: 8 mils.
   d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
   e. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft.
   f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 300 lbf and 12,500 psi.

F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

2.6 TAGS

A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.015 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory screened permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

C. Write-On Tags:
1. Polyester Tags: 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to raceway, conductor, or cable.
2. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

3. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.7 SIGNS

A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches.

C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Engraved legend.
2. Thickness:
   a. For signs up to 20 sq. inches, minimum 1/16-inch-.
   b. For signs larger than 20 sq. inches, 1/8 inch thick.
   c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
   d. Self-adhesive.
   e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.8 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
5. Color: Black.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

D. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

F. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

G. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.

H. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

I. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

J. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

K. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

L. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- high black letters on 20-inch centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply stripes to the following finished surfaces:

1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.

B. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Self-adhesive vinyl or Snap-around labels. Install labels at 10-foot maximum intervals.

C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30A and 120V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label. Install labels at 10-foot maximum intervals.

D. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
2. "POWER."
3. "UPS."

E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.

1. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.

   a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
   b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

      1) Phase A: Black.
      2) Phase B: Red.
      3) Phase C: Blue.
      4) Neutral: White.

   c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

      1) Phase A: Brown.
      2) Phase B: Orange.
      3) Phase C: Yellow.
      4) Neutral: Gray.

   d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

F. Install instructional sign, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.

G. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use write-on tags with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.

H. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes with the conductor designation.

I. Conductors To Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.

J. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker-tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

K. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.

1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
2. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

L. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

M. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.

1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
    a. Power-transfer switches.
    b. Controls with external control power connections.

N. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive thermal transfer vinyl labels.

1. Comply with NFPA 70E and ANSI Z535.4.

O. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

P. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:
    a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
    b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
    d. Unless labels are provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten them with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
2. Equipment To Be Labeled:
    a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    d. Switchgear.
    e. Switchboards.
    f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    g. Enclosed switches.
    h. Enclosed circuit breakers.
    i. Enclosed controllers.
    j. Variable-speed controllers.
    k. Push-button stations.
    l. Contactors.
    m. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
    n. Power-generating units.
    o. Monitoring and control equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 73

OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.

1. Study results shall be used to determine coordination of series-rated devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.

D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.

1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
2. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Coordination Study Software Developer.

B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. The following parts from the Protective Device Coordination Study Report:

1) One-line diagram.

2) Protective device coordination study.
3) Time-current coordination curves.

b. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

B. Coordination Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

C. Coordination Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

D. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.

B. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

1. Optional Features:

a. Arcing faults.
b. Simultaneous faults.
c. Explicit negative sequence.
d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

2.2 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

A. Executive summary.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

C. One-line diagram, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Cable size and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.

D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.

E. Protective Device Coordination Study:

1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
    a. Phase and Ground Relays:
        1) Device tag.
        2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
        3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
    b. Circuit Breakers:
        1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, ground).
        2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
        3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
        4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
    c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.

F. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:

1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
    a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
    b. Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.
    c. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
    d. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
    e. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
    f. Cables and conductors damage curves.
    g. Ground-fault protective devices.
    h. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
    i. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
    j. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
5. Series rating on equipment allows the application of two series interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of the downstream equipment. Both devices share in the interruption of the fault and selectivity is sacrificed at high fault levels. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
6. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
7. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.

1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.

B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

C. The study shall be based on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.

D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.

E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:

1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.

2. Exclude equipment rated 240-V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.

F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:

1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:

a. Inrush current when first energized.
b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.

2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

H. Motor Protection:

1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V according to IEEE 620.

I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

J. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

K. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and single line-to-ground fault at each of the following:

1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
2. Switchgear.
3. Unit substation primary and secondary terminals.
4. Low-voltage switchgear.
5. Branch circuit panelboards.

L. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.

3.3 LOAD-FLOW AND VOLTAGE-DROP STUDY

A. Perform a load-flow and voltage-drop study to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system. Analyze power system performance two times as follows:

1. Determine load-flow and voltage drop based on full-load currents obtained in "Power System Data" Article.
2. Determine load-flow and voltage drop based on 80 percent of the design capacity of the load buses.
3. Prepare the load-flow and voltage-drop analysis and report to show power system components that are overloaded, or might become overloaded; show bus voltages that are less than as prescribed by NFPA 70.

3.4 MOTOR-STARTING STUDY

A. Perform a motor-starting study to analyze the transient effect of the system's voltage profile during motor starting. Calculate significant motor-starting voltage profiles and analyze the effects of the motor starting on the power system stability.

B. Prepare the motor-starting study report, noting light flicker for limits proposed by IEEE 141, and voltage sags so as not to affect the operation of other utilization equipment on the system supplying the motor.

3.5 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied in the one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
2. For new equipment, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. The qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be qualified as defined by NFPA 70E.

B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study. The list below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.

3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus, three phase and line-to-ground.
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
11. Maximum demands from service meters.
12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
14. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
15. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, and cable construction and metallic shield performance parameters.
16. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
    a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
    b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
    c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
    d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
    e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
    f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
    g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
    h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
    i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
    j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
    k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of the downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

3.6 FIELD ADJUSTING

A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to the recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of the equipment manufacturer under the Startup and Acceptance Testing contract portion.

B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.

C. Testing and adjusting shall be by a full-time employee of the Field Adjusting Agency, who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage the Coordination Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:

1. Acquaint personnel in the fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
2. Hand-out and explain the objectives of the coordination study, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting the time-current coordination curves.
3. Adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 74

OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.

D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.

1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
    a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Arc-Flash Study Software Developer.

B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance procedures according to requirements in NFPA 70E shall be provided in the equipment manuals.

B. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

B. Arc-Flash Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

C. Arc-Flash Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

D. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

B. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

A. Executive summary.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope.

C. One-line diagram, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.

2. Cable size and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center and panelboard designations.

D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.

E. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260572 "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."

F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

G. Arc-Flash Study Output:
1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
a. Voltage.
b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
e. Equivalent impedance.
f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
1. Arcing fault magnitude.
2. Protective device clearing time.
3. Duration of arc.
4. Arc-flash boundary.
5. Working distance.
6. Incident energy.
7. Hazard risk category.
8. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.

I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis.

B. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:

1. Location designation.
2. Nominal voltage.
3. Flash protection boundary.
4. Hazard risk category.
5. Incident energy.
6. Working distance.
7. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.

B. Preparatory Studies:

1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260572 "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."
2. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.

1. The minimum calculation shall assume that the utility contribution is at a minimum and shall assume no motor load.
2. The maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.

D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in the electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.

E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240-V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.

F. Safe working distances shall be specified for calculated fault locations based on the calculated arc-flash boundary, considering incident energy of 1.2 cal/sq.cm.

G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:

1. Fault contribution from induction motors should not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators should be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (e.g., contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).

H. Arc-flash computation shall include both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:

1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.

I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram on Drawings and under "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
2. For new equipment, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers.

B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags

that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.

2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus, three phase and line-to-ground.
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in per cent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
11. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
12. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
13. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.4 LABELING

A. Apply one arc-flash label for 600-V ac, 480-V ac, and applicable 208-V ac panelboards and disconnects and for each of the following locations:

1. Motor-control center.
2. Low-voltage switchboard.
3. Switchgear.
4. Medium-voltage switch.
5. Control panel.

3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

A. Install the arc-fault warning labels under the direct supervision and control of the Arc-Flash Study Specialist.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage the Arc-Flash Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of the arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 09 23
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Photoelectric switches.
2. Standalone dimming controls.
3. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
4. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:
    a. Occupancy sensors.
    b. Vacancy sensors.
    c. Power Packs
    d. Building Mounted Photocell
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    a. Luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
    f. Control modules.

B. Field quality-control reports.
C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On USB media. Provide names, versions, and website addresses for locations of installed software.
3. Device address list.

4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
    b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

B. Description: Solid state; one set of NO dry contacts, to operate connected load, complying with UL 773, and compatible with luminaire and lighting control panelboard.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Mounting: 1/2-inch threaded male conduit.
5. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
6. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast or LED load at 120-V, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
    a. LED status lights to indicate load status.
    b. Plenum rated.
7. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting four RJ45 inputs with two outputs rated for 20-A LED load at 120-V ac, for 16-A ballast or LED at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
    a. With integral current monitoring
    b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
    c. Plenum rated.

2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCYAND VACANCY SENSORS

A. General Requirements for Sensors:

1. Wall & Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Dual technology.
3. Integrated or Separate power pack.
4. Hardwired connection to switch and BAS and lighting control system (where noted on plans).

5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
6. Operation:
    a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
8. Power: Line voltage.
9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast or LED load at 120V, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
10. Mounting:
    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

B. PIR Type: Wall mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in.
2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet when mounted 48 inches above finished floor.

C. Ultrasonic Type: Wall mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.

6. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet when mounted 84 inches above finished floor.

D. Dual-Technology Type: Wall and Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet when mounted48 inches above finished floor.

2.3 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox, with provisions for connection to BAS using hardwired connection.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA ballast or LED load at 120 V.

B. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag OS:

1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. 2100 sq. ft.
2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."
4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
5. Voltage: Dual voltage, 120 and 277 V.
6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
8. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
10. Color: White (to be approved by Architect).
11. Faceplate: Color matched to switch (to be approved by Architect).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate lighting control devices and perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.

2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section.

B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 24 13
SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
2. Surge protection devices.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Instrumentation.
5. Control power.
6. Accessory components and features.
7. Identification.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each switchboard, overcurrent protective device, surge protection device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component.

1. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
10. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    a. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
    b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
    c. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than two of each size and type.
2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no less than one of each size and type.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.

B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NECA 400.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.

B. Environmental Limitations:
1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F.
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

C. Unusual Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, as follows:
1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.

2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

D. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect and Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's and Construction Manager's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace switchboard enclosures, buswork, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and factory installed interconnection wiring that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's agrees to repair or replace surge protection devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SWITCHBOARDS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

1. Approved manufacturers:
   a. Square D
   b. Siemens

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 2.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with UL 891.

G. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Panel mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Sections front and rear aligned.

H. Front- and Side-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.

3. Section Alignment: Front and Rear aligned.

I. Front- and Rear-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Drawout mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel and fixed, individually mounted.
3. Sections front and rear aligned.

J. Nominal System Voltage: 480/277 V.

K. Main-Bus Continuous: As indicated on plans.

L. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1

M. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.

N. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.

O. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.

P. Service Entrance Rating: Switchboards intended for use as service entrance equipment shall contain from one to six service disconnecting means with overcurrent protection, a neutral bus with disconnecting link, a grounding electrode conductor terminal, and a main bonding jumper.

Q. Utility Metering Compartment: Barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealable door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.

R. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.

S. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.

T. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:

1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
2. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
3. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
4. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
5. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.

U. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide phase bus arrangement A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, and left to right when viewed from the front of the switchboard.
2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Aluminum
3. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy with tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.
4. Copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
5. Tin-plated aluminum feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
6. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
7. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-3-inch- Minimum-size required by UL 891, aluminum, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors.

8. Main-Phase Buses and Equipment-Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
9. Disconnect Links:
    a. Isolate neutral bus from incoming neutral conductors.
    b. Bond neutral bus to equipment-ground bus for switchboards utilized as service equipment or separately derived systems.
10. Neutral Buses: 50 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
11. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
12. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.

V. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

2.2 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.

B. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1.

1. SPDs with the following features and accessories:
    a. Integral disconnect switch.
    b. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
    c. Indicator light display for protection status.
    d. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
    e. Surge counter.

C. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 200 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

D. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480/277 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480/277 V.
2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480/277 V.
3. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480/277V.

E. SCCR: Equal or exceed 65 kA.

F. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.

3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    c. Long and short time adjustments.
    d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
8. MCCB Features and Accessories:
    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
    d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
    f. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
    g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
    h. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
    i. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

B. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high clamping pressure on the switch blade after it engages the stationary contacts.
1. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
2. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.
    a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
    b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.
3. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
4. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
5. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.

a. Configuration: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.

b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.

c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.

d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).

6. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.

C. High-Pressure, Butt-Type Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses butt-type contacts and a spring-charged mechanism to produce and maintain high-pressure contact when switch is closed.

1. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.

2. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.

a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.

b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.

3. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.

4. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

5. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.

a. Configuration: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.

b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.

c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.

d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).

6. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.

D. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

E. Fuses are specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."

2.4 CONTROL POWER

A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.

B. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit.

C. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each control-power transformer at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.

D. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.

E. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Mounting Accessories: For anchors, mounting channels, bolts, washers, and other mounting accessories, comply with requirements manufacturer's instructions.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.

B. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NECA 400.

1. Lift or move panelboards with spreader bars and manufacturer-supplied lifting straps following manufacturer's instructions.
2. Use rollers, slings, or other manufacturer-approved methods if lifting straps are not furnished.
3. Protect from moisture, dust, dirt, and debris during storage and installation.
4. Install temporary heating during storage per manufacturer's instructions.

B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work or that affect the performance of the equipment.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NECA 400.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install conduits entering underneath the switchboard, entering under the vertical section where the conductors will terminate. Install with couplings flush with the concrete base. Extend 2 inches above concrete base after switchboard is anchored in place.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
6. Anchor switchboard to building structure at the top of the switchboard if required or recommended by the manufacturer.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, straps and brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.

D. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.

E. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.

F. Install overcurrent protective devices, surge protection devices, and instrumentation.

1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

G. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Section 262500 "Enclosed Bus Assemblies." Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.

B. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.

C. Bond conduits entering underneath the switchboard to the equipment ground bus with a bonding conductor sized per NFPA 70.

D. Support and secure conductors within the switchboard according to NFPA 70.

E. Extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Acceptance Testing:
    a. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit. Open control and metering circuits within the switchboard, and remove neutral connection to surge protection and other electronic devices prior to insulation test. Reconnect after test.
    b. Test continuity of each circuit.
2. Test ground-fault protection of equipment for service equipment per NFPA 70.
3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
4. Correct malfunctioning units on-site where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units.

END OF SECTION 262413

SECTION 26 24 16
PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
F. SPD: Surge protective device.
G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.

1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect and Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's and Construction Manager's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. SPD Warranty Period: One ~~Five~~ years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

1. Approved manufacturers:
    a. Square D
    b. Eaton Electric Inc.
    c. General Electric Company
    d. Siemens Energy

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
    c. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 1
    d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
    e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.
2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
7. Finishes:
    a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.

G. Incoming Mains:

1. Location: Contractor to coordinate incoming main location for all panelboards.
2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.

H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.

a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
6. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Ten percent.

L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.

1. Panelboards rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

M. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker or Lugs only.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

G. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

B. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

D. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

F. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with [interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:

a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
   a. RMS sensing.
   b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
   c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
   d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
   e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
   f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
   g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
      1) Instantaneous trip.
      2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      3) Long and short time adjustments.
      4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
   a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
   b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
   c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
   d. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
   e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
   f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
   g. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
   h. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at [55] [75] percent of rated voltage.
   i. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
   j. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
   k. Auxiliary Contacts: One, SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
   l. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
   m. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

n. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.

o. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.

p. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.

q. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.

1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.7 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.

B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.

C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.

D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Or Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.

E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

F. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
I. Mounting panelboards with space behind is recommended for damp, wet, or dirty locations. The steel slotted supports in the following paragraph provide an even mounting surface and the recommended space behind to prevent moisture or dirt collection.
J. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
K. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
    1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
    2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
L. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
M. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
N. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
O. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
    1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    2. Test continuity of each circuit.
B. Tests and Inspections:
    1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Do not perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
C. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.

1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 27 26
WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Straight-blade convenience receptacles.
2. GFCI receptacles.
3. Twist-locking receptacles.
4. Cord and plug sets.
5. Toggle switches.
6. Decorator-style convenience.
7. Wall switch sensor light switches with dual technology sensors.
8. Wall switch sensor light switches with passive infrared sensors.
9. Wall switch sensor light switches with ultrasonic sensors.
10. Wall-box dimmers.
11. Wall plates.
12. Prefabricated multioutlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:

1. Cooper: Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.

B. BAS: Building automation system.
C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
G. SPD: Surge protective device.
H. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Service-Outlet Assemblies: One for every 10, but no fewer than one.

2. Poke-Through, Fire-Rated Closure Plugs: One for every five floor service outlets installed, but no fewer than two.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:

1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

D. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:

1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, feed-through type.
2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:

2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Twist-Lock, Single Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

B. Twist-Lock, Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Grounding: Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.5 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description:

1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.6 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Single Pole
2. Two Pole
3. Three Way
4. Four Way

C. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.

2.7 DECORATOR-STYLE DEVICES

A. Convenience Receptacles: Square face, 125 V, 15 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R, and UL 498.

B. GFCI, Feed-Through Type, Convenience Receptacles: Square face, 125 V, 15 A;

C. Toggle Switches: Square Face, 120/277 V, 15 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

D. Lighted Toggle Switches: Square Face, 120 V, 15 A; comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

1. Description: With LED-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is off.

2.8 WALL SWITCH SENSOR LIGHT SWITCH, DUAL TECHNOLOGY

A. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual technology.

1. Connections: Hard wired.
2. Rated 10 A at 120-V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120-V ac.
3. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
4. Adjustable time delay of 15 minutes.
5. Able to be locked to Automatic-On or Manual-On mode.
6. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.
7. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.9 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.

B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.

C. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.10 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: High-impact thermoplastic thick, satin-finished.
3. Material for the kitchen space: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
5. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.11 PREFABRICATED MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Description:

1. Two-piece surface metal raceway, with factory-wired multioutlet harness.
2. Components shall be products from single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

B. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

C. Multioutlet Harness:

1. Receptacles: 15-A, 125-V, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles complying with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
2. Receptacle Spacing: 6 inches.
3. Wiring: No. 12 AWG solid, Type THHN copper, single circuit.

2.12 FINISHES

A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing. (To be approved by Architect)

B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
    a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.

9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.

B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

D. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

E. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262813

FUSES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
    a. Control circuits.
    b. Panelboards.
    c. Switchboards.
    d. Enclosed switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
2. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 3 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.5 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

1. Type RK-1: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC.
2. Type RK-5: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC.
3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC.
4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC.
5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

PART 2 EXECUTION

2.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

2.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 28 16
ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Receptacle switches.
4. Shunt trip switches.
5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
6. Molded-case switches.
7. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.
B. NO: Normally open.
C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Current and voltage ratings.
3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

C. Manufacturer's field service report.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect and Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's and Construction Manager's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 800 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with cartridge or plug fuse interiors to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminu ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
6. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
7. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
4. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
5. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

A. General Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, UL 50, and UL 98, with 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating when fitted with Class J fuses.

B. Switches: Three-pole, horsepower rated, with integral shunt trip mechanism and Class J fuse block; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses, with a control power transformer of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, connected pilot, and indicating and control devices.

D. Accessories:

1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
2. Oiltight green ON pilot light.
3. Isolated neutral lug; 100 percent rating.

4. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
5. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.
6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; 120-V ac coil voltage.
7. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

B. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

C. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.

D. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:

1. Instantaneous trip.
2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

E. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

F. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.

G. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).

H. Ground-Fault, Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).

I. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
5. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
8. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
9. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

11. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
12. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
13. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered.

2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

A. General Requirements: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.

B. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
6. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
7. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.
9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
11. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered.

2.6 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
3. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

C. Install fuses in fusible devices.

D. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

F. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 32 13
GENERATOR SETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged engine generators used to supply non-emergency power, with the following features:

1. Natural gas engine.
2. Control and monitoring.
3. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
4. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
5. Vibration isolation devices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 00 00 “General Electrical Requirements”.

2.01 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to Section 01 30 00.

B. Product Data: For each type of product.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for engine generators and functional relationship between all electrical components.

3.01 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to Section 01 30 00.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty information.

4.01 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to Closeout requirements in Section 01 7800.

5.01 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

6.01 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Generac
2. Cummins Power Generation.
3. Kohler Power Systems.
4. Caterpillar, Inc; Electric Power Division

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.

B. NFPA Compliance:

1. Comply with NFPA 37.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.
3. Comply with NFPA 99.
4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 EPSS.

C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.

D. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.

E. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by engine generator including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

F. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F.
2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

G. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine generator equipment and installation are required to operate under the following conditions:

1. High salt-dust content in the air due to sea-spray evaporation.

3.01 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

C. Power Rating: Standby.

D. Overload Capacity: 110 percent of service load for 1 hour in 12 consecutive hours.

E. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as a Class 8 according to NFPA 110.

F. Service Load: See Drawings for kVA.

G. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.

H. Frequency: 60 Hz.

I. Voltage: 480-V ac.

J. Phase: Three-phase four wire, delta.

K. Induction Method: Naturally-aspirated or Turbocharged.

L. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

M. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.

1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.

N. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries, with capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing.
2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

O. Engine Generator Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time:

a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.
b. Start time: 10 seconds

4.01 GAS ENGINE

A. Fuel: Natural Gas

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid-mounted.

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with UL 499 and with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.

E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
   a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F, and non-collapsible under vacuum.
   b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.

G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

H. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
4. Battery: Nickel cadmium, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice without recharging.
5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 50 deg F regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
7. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
8. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
9. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed for nickel-cadmium batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
    a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 to 140 deg F to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
    c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
    d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
    e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
    f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

5.01 Gas FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

A. Natural Gas Piping: Comply with requirements in section 23 11 23 “Facility Natural Gas Piping”

B. Gas Train: Comply with NFPA 37.

C. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.

D. Engine Fuel System:

1. Natural Gas, Vapor-Withdrawal System:

6.01 CONTROL AND MONITORING

A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

B. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts engine generator. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

C. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.

D. Comply with UL 508A.

E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

F. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

G. Control and Monitoring Panel:

1. Digital engine generator controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
2. Analog control panel with dedicated gages and indicator lights for the instruments and alarms indicated below.
3. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
    a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
    b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
    c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
    d. Running-time meter.
    e. AC voltmeter, for each phase.
    f. AC ammeter, for each phase.
    g. AC frequency meter.
    h. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
4. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common alarm indication, including the following:
    a. Cranking control equipment.
    b. Run-Off-Auto switch.

c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
d. Overcrank alarm.
e. Overcrank shutdown device.
f. Low-water temperature alarm.
g. High engine temperature prealarm.
h. High engine temperature.
i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
j. Overspeed alarm.
k. Overspeed shutdown device.
l. Coolant low-level alarm.
m. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
n. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
o. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
p. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
q. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
r. EPS load indicator.
s. Battery high-voltage alarm.
t. Low cranking voltage alarm.
u. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
v. Battery low-voltage alarm.
w. Lamp test.
x. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
y. Low-starting air pressure alarm.
z. Low-starting hydraulic pressure alarm.
aa. Remote manual stop shutdown device.
bb. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
cc. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
dd. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.
ee. Hours of operation.
ff. Engine generator metering, including voltage, current, hertz, kilowatt, kilovolt ampere, and power factor.

H. Engine Generator Metering: Comply with Section 26 0913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" and Section 26 2713 "Electricity Metering."

I. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

J. Remote Alarm Annunciator: An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

1. Overcrank alarm.
2. Low water-temperature alarm.
3. High engine temperature prealarm.

4. High engine temperature alarm.
5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
6. Overspeed alarm.
7. Low coolant level alarm.
8. Low cranking voltage alarm.
9. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
10. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
11. Air shutdown damper when used.
12. Run-Off-Auto switch.
13. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
14. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
15. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
16. Lamp test.
17. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
18. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.

K. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.

L. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

7.01 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs.

1. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
2. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to, or integrated with, control and monitoring panel.

C. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other engine generator protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following functions:

1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is

integrated with other engine generator malfunction alarms. Contacts shall be available for load shed functions.

2. Under single- or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the engine generator.
4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.

D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.

1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.
2. Trip generator protective device on ground fault.

8.01 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class F.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.

E. Range: Provide extended range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.

F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

G. Enclosure: Dripproof.

H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.

1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
4. Maintain frequency within 5 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within 2 seconds.

J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

L. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

9.01 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Material: Bridge-bearing neoprene, complying with AASHTO M 251 separated by steel shims.
2. Shore A Scale Durometer Rating: 50.
3. Number of Layers: Three.
4. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch.

B. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.

1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment-mounting and -leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 23 2116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for steel piping.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 23 3113 "Metal Ducts" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for exhaust shroud and ductwork.

E. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

10.01 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with IEEE 115 and with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

1.01 INSTALLATION

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than ten working days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.

B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.

C. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
3. Install packaged engine generator with restrained spring isolators having a minimum deflection of 1 inch on 4-inch- high concrete base. Secure sets to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Concrete base construction is specified in Section 26 0548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.

F. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.
1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 23 2113 "Hydronic Piping."
2. Install flexible connectors and steel piping materials according to requirements in Section 23 2116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
3. Insulate muffler/silencer and exhaust system components according to requirements in Section 23 0719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
4. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces with a minimum of 9 inches of clearance from combustibles.

G. Drain Piping: Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40 black steel pipe with welded joints.
1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 23 2113 "Hydronic Piping."
2. Drain piping valves, connectors, and installation requirements are specified in Section 23 2116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

H. Fuel Piping:
1. Diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in Section 23 1113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
2. Copper and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil piping system.

I. Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

2.01 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine generator and heat exchanger with flexible connectors.

D. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

E. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.

F. Ground equipment according to Section 26 0526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.

H. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.01 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components according to Section 23 0553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

4.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in first two subparagraphs below, as specified in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
        1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
        2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
        3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
        4) Verify that the unit is clean.
    b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
        1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
            a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp (150 kW): Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
        2) Test protective relay devices.
        3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
        4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
        5) Perform vibration test for each main bearing cap.
        6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.

4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg (120 kPa). Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
7. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
8. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
9. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
10. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations 25 feet from edge of the generator enclosure, and compare measured levels with required values.

F. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.

G. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

H. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

I. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

J. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

K. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and [retest] [reinspect] as specified above.

L. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.

M. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

5.01 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 26 32 13

THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 43 13

SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Inominal: Nominal discharge current.
B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.
C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection: The pair of electrical connections where the VPR applies.
D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.
E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
G. SPD: Surge protective device.
H. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
   2. Copy of UL Category Code VZCA certification, as a minimum, listing the tested values for VPRs, Inominal ratings, MCOVs, type designations, OCPD requirements, model numbers, system voltages, and modes of protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.
B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL SPD REQUIREMENTS

A. SPD with Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. Comply with NFPA 70.
C. Comply with UL 1449.
D. MCOV of the SPD shall be the nominal system voltage.

2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSOR

A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.

B. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1

1. SPDs with the following features and accessories:

a. Integral disconnect switch.

b. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.

c. Indicator light display for protection status.

d. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

e. Surge counter.

C. Comply with UL 1283.

D. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 200 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
2. Line to Ground: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. Line to Line: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.

G. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.3 PANEL SUPPRESSORS

A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.

1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.

2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.

3. Include Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

B. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

C. Comply with UL 1283.

D. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
2. Line to Ground: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
4. Line to Line: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
2. Line to Ground: 700 V.

3. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
4. Line to Line: 1200 V.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA.

G. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Class 2 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.

C. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.

D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

E. Wiring:

1. Power Wiring: Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
2. Controls: Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.

B. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.

C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 51 19
LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior solid-state luminaires that use LED technology.
2. Lighting fixture supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
    a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.
D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom factory-applied finishes.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.

F. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Lighting luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which equipment and luminaires will be attached.
5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    a. Other luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
    f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

E. Mockups: For interior lighting luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.

1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

B. Warranty Period: [Five] year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS - SEE LIGHT FIXTURE SCHEDULE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4.

E. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.

F. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

G. CRI of minimum 80.

H. Rated L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.

I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

J. Internal driver.

K. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

L. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.

2.2 DOWNLIGHT

A. Minimum 1,000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lumens per watt.

B. Universal mounting bracket.

C. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.3 RECESSED LINEAR

A. Minimum 1,500 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lumens per watt.

B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.4 STRIP LIGHT

A. Minimum 750 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 75 lumens per watt.

B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.5 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

A. Minimum 1,500 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lumens per watt.

2.6 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.

E. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.7 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.8 LUMINAIRE FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before fixture installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.
B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Ceiling mount with two 5/32-inch- diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 120 inches in length.
2. Ceiling mount with pendant mount with 5/32-inch- diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 120 inches in length.
3. Ceiling mount with hook mount.

H. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

J. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 52 19

EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Emergency lighting units.
   2. Exit signs.
   3. Luminaire supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
   1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
   2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
   3. Battery and charger for light units.
   4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
   5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.
      a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires and signs, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires and signs shall be certified by manufacturer.
      b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
   2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
C. Samples: For each product and for each color and texture specified.
D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with factory-applied finishes.
E. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
   1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
F. Product Schedule:
   1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
   2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Luminaires.
   2. Suspended ceiling components.
   3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.

4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    a. Other luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
    e. Sprinklers.
    f. Access panels.
7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.

1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for the entire warranty period.
   2. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for the entire warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.

C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.

D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.

E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.

F. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61.

G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.

H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.
   1. Emergency Connection: Operate one lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
   2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
   3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
      a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F or exceeding 104 deg F, with an average value exceeding 95 deg F over a 24-hour period.
      b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 140 deg F.
      c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
      d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet.
   4. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at 40 percent of rated light output.
   5. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
      a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
   6. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
   7. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
   8. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.

9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.

B. Emergency Lighting Unit:
   1. Emergency Lighting Unit: As indicated on Lighting Fixture Schedule.
   2. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac.
   3. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
   4. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
   5. Two LED lamp heads.
   6. Internal emergency power unit.

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:
   1. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac.
   2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
   3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
   4. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
      a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply for power connection to remote unit.
      b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:
   1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
   2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
   1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
   2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
   3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:
   1. Prismatic acrylic.
   2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
   4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:
   1. Extruded aluminum housing and heat sink.
   2. Clear anodized finish.

E. Conduit: Electrical metallic tubing, minimum 3/4 inch in diameter.

2.5 METAL FINISHES

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service:

1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
2. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, signs, or luminaires that are defective.
    a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 56 19
EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
   2. Luminaire supports.
   3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
B. CRI: Color rendering index.
C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
   1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
   2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
   3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
   4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
   5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79.
      a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
      b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
   6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
   7. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
   2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
   1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
   2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
      b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
      c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
   2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.

D. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

E. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.

F. CRI of minimum 80.

G. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.

H. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

I. Internal driver.

J. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

K. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.

2.2 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.

B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc and off at 4.5 to 10 fc with 15-second minimum time

delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.

1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.3 LUMINAIRE TYPES - SEE LIGHT FIXTURE SCHEDULE

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

D. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

2.5 FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping.

C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
    a. Color: See Drawings.

D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish

surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.

2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
   a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
   b. Color: Match Architect's sample of manufacturer's standard color.
   c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, roofs, and canopy ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
   1. Attached to structural members in walls.

D. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.

E. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.

F. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.

G. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

H. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.3 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
   2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

C. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 05 26

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.
4. Grounding labeling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.

B. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

C. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.

D. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:

1. Ground and roof rings.
2. BCT, TMGB, TGBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.

b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a registered communications distribution designer to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

B. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.

C. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

B. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.

1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

C. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.

D. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.

E. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with J-STD-607-A.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

B. TGB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with J-STD-607-A.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with J-STD-607-A. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inches long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 LABELING

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.

B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

1. The bonding conductors between the TGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
2. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2 AWG minimum.

C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

D. Conductor Support:

1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches.

E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
2. Install without splices.
3. Support at not more than 36-inch intervals.
4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.
    a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

A. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.

3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 12 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
2. Pretwist the conductor.
3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.

D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.

E. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding

equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2 kcmils/linear foot of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG 168 kcmils unless otherwise indicated.

F. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install top-mounted rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.

G. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.

H. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each TGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.

I. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the TGB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2 when grounding screened, balanced, twisted-pair cables.

J. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

K. Equipment Room Signal Reference Grid: Provide a low-impedance path between telecommunications cabinets, equipment racks, and the reference grid, using No. 6 AWG bonding conductors.

1. Install the conductors in grid pattern on 4-foot centers, allowing bonding of one pedestal from each access floor tile.
2. Bond the TGB of the equipment room to the reference grid at two or more locations.
3. Bond all conduits and piping entering the equipment room to the TGB at the perimeter of the room.

L. Towers and Antennas:

1. Ground Ring: Buried at least 30 inches below grade and at least 24 inches from the base of the tower or mounting.
2. Bond each tower base and metallic frame of a dish to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches below grade.
3. Bond the ground ring and antenna grounds to the equipment room TMGB or TGB, buried at least 30 inches below grade.
4. Bond metallic fences within 6 feet of towers and antennas to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches below grade.

5. Special Requirements for Roof-Mounted Towers:
    a. Roof Ring: Meet requirements for the ground ring except the conductors shall comply with requirements in Section 264113 "Lightning Protection for Structures."
    b. Bond tower base footings steel, the TGB in the equipment room, and antenna support guys to the roof ring.
    c. Connect roof ring to the perimeter conductors of the lightning protection system.
6. Waveguides and Coaxial Cable:
    a. Bond cable shields at the point of entry into the building to the TGB and to the cable entrance plate, using No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
    b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to the ground or roof ring using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.

3.7 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

B. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

C. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches extends above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.
    1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
    2. Label TGB(s) with "fs-TGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TGB.
    3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.
    a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.
3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.
    a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB and in each TGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.

D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 05 28

PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Optical-fiber-cable pathways and fittings.
4. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters.
6. Surface pathways.
7. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
2. Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface raceways, boxes, enclosures, cabinets, handholes, and faceplate adapters serving electrical systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.

B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface pathways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

C. Samples: For wireways and surface pathways and for each color and texture specified, 12 inches long.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B.

B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

C. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.

D. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.

F. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

G. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
2. Fittings for EMT:

    a. Material: Steel or die cast.

    b. Type: Compression.

3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL-467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

H. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B.

B. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

C. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.

D. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.

E. RTRC: Comply with UL 1684A and NEMA TC 14.

F. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

G. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 OPTICAL-FIBER-CABLE PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible-type pathway, approved for plenum or general-use installation unless otherwise indicated.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B.

B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

C. Wireway Covers: Hinged type or Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B.

B. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.

C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.

D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.6 SURFACE PATHWAYS

A. General Requirements for Surface Pathways:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B.

B. Surface Metal Pathways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.

C. Surface Nonmetallic Pathways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL-94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:

1. Comply with TIA-569-B.
2. Boxes, enclosures and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

B. Sheet-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, rectangular.

1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

I. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep.

J. Gangable boxes are allowed.

K. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures:

a. Material: Plastic.

b. Finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.

3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

M. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION

A. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT or RNC.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: IMC. Pathway locations include the following:

    a. Loading dock.

    b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.

    c. Mechanical rooms.

    d. Gymnasiums

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
6. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway.
7. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications-Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: Riser-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway.
8. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: General-use, optical-fiber-cable pathway.
9. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250 Type 1, except use NEMA 250 Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

B. Minimum Pathway Size: 1-inch trade size. Minimum size for optical-fiber cables is 1 inch.

C. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

D. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

E. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.

F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 101, and TIA-569-B for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum pathways. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep pathways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.

I. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
5. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, before rising above floor.

J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

M. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.

N. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

O. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

P. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.

Q. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground pathways designated as spare above grade alongside pathways in use.

R. Surface Pathways:

1. Install surface pathway for surface telecommunications outlet boxes only where indicated on Drawings.
2. Install surface pathway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
3. Secure surface pathway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight pathway section. Support surface pathway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

S. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. 1-Inch Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet.
2. 1-1/4-Inch Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

T. Install pathway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

U. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F, and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.

2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.

    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.

    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.

    d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Y. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

Z. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

AA. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

BB. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

CC. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

DD. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 05 44

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for pathway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
   a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
   b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
   1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
   2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
   3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
   1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.
B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
   1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
      a. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
      b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
   2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
   3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
   4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.

5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
   1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
   2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 11 00

COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Telecommunications mounting elements.
2. Backboards.
3. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets.
4. Grounding.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271300 "Communications Backbone Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
2. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
3. Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. LAN: Local area network.

C. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.

3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

2.2 EQUIPMENT FRAMES

A. General Frame Requirements:

1. Distribution Frames: Freestanding and wall-mounting, modular-steel units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Module Dimension: Width compatible with EIA 310-D standard, 19-inch panel mounting.
3. Frame style: 4 post type.
4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.

B. Floor-Mounted Racks: Modular-type, steel or aluminum construction.

1. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.

C. Modular Freestanding Cabinets:

1. Removable and lockable side panels.
2. Hinged and lockable front and rear doors.
3. Adjustable feet for leveling.
4. Screened ventilation openings in the roof and rear door.
5. Cable access provisions in the roof and base.
6. Grounding bus bar.
7. Rack-mounted, 550-cfm fan with filter.

8. Power strip.
9. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
10. All cabinets keyed alike.

D. Modular Wall Cabinets:
1. Wall mounting.
2. Steel or aluminum construction.
3. Treated to resist corrosion.
4. Lockable front and rear doors.
5. Louvered side panels.
6. Cable access provisions top and bottom.
7. Grounding lug.
8. Rack-mounted, 250-cfm fan.
9. Power strip.
10. All cabinets keyed alike.

E. Cable Management for Equipment Frames:
1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.3 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting.
3. Six, 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R receptacles.
4. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
5. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
6. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
7. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
8. Close-coupled, direct plug-in line cord.
9. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
10. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 33 kA per phase.
11. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all three modes shall be not more than 330 V.

2.4 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:

1. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
2. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart.
3. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.5 LABELING

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for materials and installation requirements for underground pathways.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.

C. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.

1. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.

4. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the equipment room.

E. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-B, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to the grounding bus bar in communications rooms and spaces.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.

D. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 13 00

COMMUNICATIONS BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

2.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pathways.
2. UTP cable.
3. Multimode 50/125-micrometer, optical fiber cabling.
4. Coaxial cable.
5. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
6. Cabling identification products.

3.01 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

D. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

E. LAN: Local area network.

F. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

G. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

4.01 BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

5.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

6.01 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:

a. Nominal OD.
b. Minimum bending radius.
c. Maximum pulling tension.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:
a. Cross-connects.
b. Patch panels.
c. Patch cords.
5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
6. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
a. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
b. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
c. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
d. Load calculations to show dead and live loads as not exceeding manufacturer's rating for tray and its support elements.

7.01 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
B. Source quality-control reports.
C. Field quality-control reports.
D. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

8.01 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

9.01 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
2. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.

10.01 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
   1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and Cabling Administration Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
   2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
   3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.
   1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
   2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.

F. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

11.01 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
   1. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
   2. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
   3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

12.01 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

13.01 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1.01 PATHWAYS

A. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.

B. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6A cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.

1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
3. Straps and other devices.

C. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.

1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

2.01 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches.

3.01 UTP CABLE

A. Description: 100-ohm, 100-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair binder groups covered with a gray thermoplastic jacket and overall metallic shield.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6A.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    a. Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG.
    b. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
    c. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or MPP, CMP, or MPR, complying with UL 1666.
    d. Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG.
    e. Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; or MPP or MPR.
    f. Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
    g. Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or MPP, complying with UL 1666.

4.01 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

B. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6A. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

C. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.

E. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.

F. Patch Cords: Factory-made, 4-pair cables in 36-inch lengths; terminated with 8-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6A performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

5.01 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Description OM3 Multimode 50/125-micrometer, 12 strand-fiber, nonconductive, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.

1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAAC for detailed specifications.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    a. General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or OFNR, OFNP.
    b. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
    c. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, complying with UL 1666.
    d. General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; or OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP.
    e. Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
    f. Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, complying with UL 1666.

5. Conductive cable shall be steel armored type.
6. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
7. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth: 1500 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
8. Minimum Effective Modal Bandwidth: 2000 MHz-km at 850 nm.

B. Jacket:
1. Jacket Color: Yellow for Multimode 50/125-micrometer cable.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

6.01 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

B. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.

C. Cable Connecting Hardware:
1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
2. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
3. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

7.01 GROUNDING

A. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

8.01 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

9.01 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

1.01 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

2.01 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
   1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
   2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.01 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A.

B. Coordinate cable connection hardware installations and specialty arrangements with layout drawings and with requirements specified for communications equipment rooms. If Drawings are explicit enough, these requirements may be reduced or omitted.

C. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

E. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
   1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
   2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
   3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
   4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
   5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

F. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

4.01 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
4. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
5. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
6. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before installation. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
10. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.
11. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
2. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.

3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

F. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

G. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

5.01 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

6.01 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a

minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

7.01 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
   1. Administration Class: 1.
   2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.

E. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

F. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.

G. Cable and Wire Identification:
   1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
   2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
   3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
   4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
      a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device with name and number of particular device as shown.

b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

H. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA 606-A, for the following:

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

8.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.

3. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

4. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.

2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

D. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

E. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

F. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 15 00

COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

2.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. Multimode 50/125-micrometer, optical fiber cabling.
3. Multiuser telecommunications outlet assemblies.
4. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
5. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
6. Cabling system identification products.
7. Cable management system.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271300 "Communications Backbone Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
2. Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

3.01 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.

C. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

E. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

F. LAN: Local area network.

G. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.

H. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.

I. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

J. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

4.01 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

5.01 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
      a. Nominal OD.
      b. Minimum bending radius.
      c. Maximum pulling tension.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
   2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
   3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
   4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:
      a. Cross-connects.
      b. Patch panels.
      c. Patch cords.
   5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

C. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, in specified finish, one for each size and outlet configuration.

6.01 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

7.01 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
   1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
   2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
   3. Device address list.
   4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

8.01 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
   2. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
   3. Device Plates: One of each type.
   4. Multiuser Telecommunications Outlet Assemblies: One of each type.

9.01 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
   1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and Cabling Administration Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
   2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
   3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.
   1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

10.01 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
   1. Test optical fiber cables to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
   2. Test optical fiber cables while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
   3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1.01 **MANUFACTURERS**

1. Approved cable manufactures:
   a. CommScope Inc
   b. Belden Inc
   c. ADC
   d. Berk-Tek

2.01 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in

the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called a "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.

1. TIA/EIA-568-B.1 requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.
2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
4. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.

B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft., and includes the components that extend from the telecommunications outlet/connectors to the station equipment.

C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

3.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1 when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Grounding: Comply with J-STD-607-A.

4.01 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

5.01 UTP CABLE

A. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair, binder groups covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6A.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    a. Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG.
    b. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or MPP, complying with NFPA 262.

c. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or MPP, CMP, or MPR, complying with UL 1666.

d. Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG.

e. Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; or MPP or MPR.

f. Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.

g. Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or MPP, complying with UL 1666.

6.01 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

B. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6A. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

C. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.

E. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.

F. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch lengths; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.

2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

7.01 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Description: OM3 Multimode 50/125-micrometer, 12 strand-fiber, nonconductive, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.

1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.

2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.

3. Comply with TIA-492AAAC for detailed specifications.

4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:

a. General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or OFNR, OFNP.

b. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.

c. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, complying with UL 1666.

d. General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; or OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP.

e. Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.

f. Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, complying with UL 1666.

5. Conductive cable shall be steel armored type.

6. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.

7. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth: 1500 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.

8. Minimum Effective Modal Bandwidth-length Product: 2000 MHz-km at 850 nm.

B. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: Yellow for mulitmode 9/125-micrometer cable.

2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-C.

3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

8.01 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

B. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.

C. Cable Connecting Hardware:

1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA-604-2-B, TIA-604-3-B, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

2. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.

3. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

9.01 CONSOLIDATION POINTS

A. Description: Consolidation points shall comply with requirements for cable connecting hardware.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

2. Number of Connectors per Field:

a. One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.

b. One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus 25 percent spare positions.

3. Mounting: Recessed in ceiling.
4. NRTL listed as complying with UL 50 and UL 1863.
5. When installed in plenums used for environmental air, NRTL listed as complying with UL 2043.

10.01 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

B. Workstation Outlets: Two-port-connector assemblies mounted in single or multigang faceplate.
1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
2. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
3. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
4. Legend: Factory labeled by silk-screening or engraving for stainless steel faceplates.
5. Legend: Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
6. Legend: Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

11.01 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

12.01 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

13.01 CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database and graphic capabilities.

B. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA/EIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.

C. Information shall be presented in database view, schematic plans, or technical drawings.
1. Microsoft Visio Professional or AutoCAD drawing software shall be used as drawing and schematic plans software.

D. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:
1. Direct upload tests from circuit testing instrument into the personal computer.
2. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

14.01 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

E. Factory-sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.

F. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

1.01 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

2.01 WIRING METHODS

A. Install cables in pathways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal pathways and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

3.01 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
4. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
5. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to telecommunications outlet/connectors:

a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.

b. Locate consolidation points for UTP at least 49 feet from communications equipment room.

6. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.

7. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.

8. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.

9. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

10. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.

11. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before installation. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.

12. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.

13. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

2. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.

3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

F. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
   1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
   2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
   3. Coil cable 6 feet long not less than 12 inches in diameter below each feed point.

G. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

H. Separation from EMI Sources:
   1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-B for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
   2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
      b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
      c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
   3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
      b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
      c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
   4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
      a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
      b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
      c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches
   5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
   6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

4.01 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-B, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

5.01 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

6.01 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Administration Class: 1.
2. Color-code cross-connect fields. Apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Using cable management system software specified in Part 2, develop Cabling Administration Drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable and label cable, jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with same designation. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

D. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.

E. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

F. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA/EIA-606-A. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by Owner.

G. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.

3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
    b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
6. Uniquely identify and label work area cables extending from the MUTOA to the work area. These cables may not exceed the length stated on the MUTOA label.

H. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.
1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

7.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Visually confirm Category 6A, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
4. Test UTP backbone copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified

in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

5. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
   a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
   b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
      1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
      2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
6. UTP Performance Tests:
   a. Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:
      1) Wire map.
      2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
      3) Insertion loss.
      4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
      5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
      6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
      7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
      8) Return loss.
      9) Propagation delay.
      10) Delay skew.
7. Optical Fiber Cable Performance Tests: Perform optical fiber end-to-end link tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
8. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP and optical fiber systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.
   a. Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
   b. Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface

device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.

D. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

8.01 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

9.01 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel in cable-plant management operations, including changing signal pathways for different workstations, rerouting signals in failed cables, and keeping records of cabling assignments and revisions when extending wiring to establish new workstation outlets. Include training in cabling administration software.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 05 13

CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

2.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. 9/125 singlemode optical-fiber cabling.
3. Coaxial cabling.
4. RS-232 cabling.
5. RS-485 cabling.
6. Control-voltage cabling.
7. Control-circuit conductors.
8. Fire alarm wire and cable.
9. Identification products.

3.01 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

C. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

D. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

E. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

4.01 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of electronic safety and security cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

5.01 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Installation data for UTP and optical-fiber cables as specified in TIA 569-C-1.
2. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
    a. Nominal OD.
    b. Minimum bending radius.
    c. Maximum pulling tension.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:
    a. Cross-connects.
    b. Patch panels.
    c. Patch cords.
5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

6.01 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

7.01 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

8.01 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test optical-fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand, end to end. Use optical-fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.

2. Test optical-fiber cable on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length, and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; include the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.01 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

3.01 UTP CABLE

A. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, Category 6A.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    a. Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or Type CMG; or Type MPP, Type CMP, Type MPR, Type CMR, Type MP, or Type MPG.
    b. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
    c. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or Type MPP, Type CMP, or Type MPR, complying with UL 1666.
    d. Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or Type MPP, Type CMP, Type MPR, Type CMR, Type MP, Type MPG, Type CM, or Type CMG.
    e. Multipurpose: Type MP or Type MPG; or Type MPP or Type MPR.
    f. Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.

g. Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or Type MPP, complying with UL 1666.

4.01 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.

B. Connecting Blocks: 110-style for Category 6A. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

5.01 OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE

A. Description: Singlemode, 9/125-micrometer, 24-fiber, nonconductive, tight buffer, optical-fiber cable.

1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA-492AAAB for detailed specifications.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
   a. General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or Type OFNG, or Type OFNR, Type OFNP.
   b. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
   c. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or Type OFNP, complying with UL 1666.
   d. General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or Type OFCG; or Type OFNG, Type OFN, Type OFCR, Type OFNR, Type OFCP, or Type OFNP.
   e. Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
   f. Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or Type OFNR, Type OFCP, or Type OFNP, complying with UL 1666.
5. Conductive cable shall be steel armored type.
6. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 db/km at 850 nm; 1.5 db/km at 1300 nm.
7. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.

B. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: Yellow for 9/125-micrometer cable.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-C.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

6.01 OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

B. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.

C. Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with the Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standard (FOCIS) specifications of TIA-604-2-B, TIA-604-3-B, and TIA-604-12. Comply with TIA-568-C.3.

1. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 db.
2. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

7.01 COAXIAL CABLE

A. General Coaxial-Cable Requirements: Broadband type, recommended by cable manufacturer specifically for broadband data-transmission applications. Coaxial cable and accessories shall have 75-ohm nominal impedance with a return loss of 20 db maximum from 7 to 806 MHz.

B. RG-11/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.

1. No. 14 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor.
2. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
3. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 60 percent aluminum braid.
4. Jacketed with sunlight-resistant, black PVC or PE.
5. Suitable for outdoor installations in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 85 deg C.

C. RG-6/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV or CM.

1. No. 18 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
2. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
3. Jacketed with PVC or PE.
4. Suitable for indoor installations.

D. RG-6/U (Plenum Rated): NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. No. 18 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; foam fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
2. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
3. Jacketed with PE.

E. NFPA and UL Compliance: Coaxial cables shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1655 and with NFPA 70, Article 820 "Radio and Television Equipment" and Article 830 "Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution Systems." Types are as follows:

1. CATV Cable: Type CATV, or Type CATVP or Type CATVR.
2. CATV Plenum Rated: Type CATVP, complying with NFPA 262.
3. CATV Riser Rated: Type CATVR; or Type CATVP, Type CATVR, or Type CATV, complying with UL 1666.
4. CATV Limited Rating: Type CATVX.

8.01 COAXIAL-CABLE HARDWARE

A. Coaxial-Cable Connectors:

1. Type BNC, 75 ohms, crimp on style.
2. Type F compression style for RG-6/U cables.

9.01 RS-232 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Three, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Three, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PE insulation.
3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

10.01 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM or Type CMG.

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

11.01 CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

12.01 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in pathway.

B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in pathway.

C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF in pathway, complying with UL 83.

13.01 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG size as recommended by system manufacturer.

1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

14.01 CONSOLIDATION POINTS

A. Description: Consolidation points shall comply with requirements for cable connecting hardware.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
2. Number of Connectors per Field:
   a. One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.
   b. One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus 25 percent spare positions.
3. Mounting: Recessed in ceiling.
4. NRTL listed as complying with UL 50 and UL 1863.
5. When installed in plenums used for environmental air, NRTL listed as complying with UL 2043.

15.01 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

16.01 CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database and graphic capabilities.

B. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.

C. Information shall be presented in database view, schematic plans, or technical drawings.

1. Microsoft Visio Professional or AutoCAD drawing software shall be used as drawing and schematic plans software.

D. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:

1. Direct upload tests from circuit-testing instrument into the personal computer.
2. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

17.01 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP and optical-fiber cables on reels according to TIA-568-C.1.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA-568-C.2.

D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526.14-B and TIA-568-C.3.

E. Factory sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results. Structural Return Loss shall be less than 20 db.

F. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

1.01 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for installation of supports for cables.

2.01 WIRING METHOD

A. Install wiring in metal pathways and wireways.

1. Minimum conduit size shall be 1 inch. Control and data-transmission wiring shall not share conduits with other building wiring systems.

B. Install cable, concealed in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors when possible.

C. Wiring on Racks and within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM's "Cabling Termination Practices" chapter. Cable ties shall not be excessively tightened such that the transmission characteristics of the cable are altered.
2. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.
5. Connect conductors associated with intrusion system that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure onto terminal blocks.
6. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams.
7. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

3.01 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 70.

B. Conductors: Size according to system manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

C. Do not install conductors and cables that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

D. Install UTP, optical-fiber, and coaxial cables and connecting materials after spaces are complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

E. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels. Leave a minimum of 6 inches of slack at outlet terminations and coil loosely into box after termination on outlet fitting.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Maintain minimum cable bending radius during installation and termination of cables.

6. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
7. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
8. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions. Do not exceed manufacturer's rated cable-pulling tension.
9. Riser Cable: Riser cable support intervals shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
10. Comply with Section 280544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electronic Safety and Security Pathways and Cabling."

F. UTP Cable Installation: Install using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 6A rating of components and that ensure Category 6A performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

G. Optical-Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.3.
2. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

H. Coaxial-Cable Installation:

1. Install outdoor connections in enclosures complying with NEMA 250, Type 4X. Install corrosion-resistant connectors with properly designed O-rings to keep out moisture.
2. Attach antenna lead-in cable to support structure at intervals not exceeding 36 inches.
3. Install indoor cables in pathway.

I. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunication spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart. Cable supports shall be fastened to structural members or floor slabs in accordance with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3. Cable shall not be run in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Cables shall not be run through structural members or use structural members, pipes, ducts, or equipment as a support.

J. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Cable 72 inches long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches in diameter below each feed point.

K. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-C recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communication cables or cables in nonmetallic pathways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
3. Separation between communication cables in grounded metallic pathways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
4. Separation between cables in grounded metallic pathways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or hp and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Cables and Light Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

4.01 FIRE ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Fire alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.

B. Wiring Method:

1. Cables and pathways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

E. Color Coding: Color code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

F. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.

G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

5.01 POWER AND CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. 120-V Power Wiring: Install according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" unless otherwise indicated.

B. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

6.01 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Video Surveillance" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Voice Evac Fire Alarm System" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

7.01 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-C, "Firestopping" Annex A.

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

8.01 GROUNDING

A. For communication wiring, comply with J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM's "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter.

9.01 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

10.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP and optical-fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.

2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.

3. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross connection.

    a. Test instruments shall comply with or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

4. Optical-Fiber Cable Tests:

    a. Test instruments shall comply with or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

    b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

        1) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA-526-14-B, Method B, One Reference Jumper.

        2) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 db. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.1.

5. Coaxial-Cable Tests:

    a. Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements.

    b. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items.

    c. Retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved.

    d. Use an agile receiver and signal strength meter or spectrum analyzer for testing.

    e. CCTV Sources: Connect receiver to the output of each CCTV signal source or the distribution amplifier associated with it.

    f. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has successfully been completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.

    g. Operational Tests: Perform tests of operational system to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.

h. Distribution System Acceptance Tests:

1) Field-Strength Instrument: Rated for minus 40-db mV measuring sensitivity and a frequency range of 54 to 812 MHz, minimum. Provide documentation of recent calibration against recognized standards.

2) Signal Level and Picture Quality: Use a field-strength meter or spectrum analyzer, as well as a standard television receiver, to measure signal levels and check picture quality at 25 percent of user-interface outlets.

a) Test the signal strength in db mV at 55, 151, 547, and 750 MHz.

b) Minimum acceptable signal level is zero db mV (1000 mV).

c) Maximum acceptable signal level over the entire bandwidth is 15 db mV.

d) Television receiver shall show no evidence of cross-channel intermodulation, ghost images, or beat interference.

i. Signal-to-Noise-Ratio Test: Use a field-strength meter to make a sequence of measurements at the output of the last distribution amplifier or of another agreed-on location in system. With system operating at normal levels, tune meter to the picture carrier frequency of each of the designated channels in turn, and record the level. With signal removed and input to corresponding headend amplifier terminated at 75 ohms, measure the level of noise at same tuning settings. With meter correction factor added to last readings, differences from first set shall not be less than 45 db.

j. Qualitative and Quantitative Performance Tests: Demonstrate reception quality of color-television program transmissions at each user interface from each designated channel and source. Quality shall be equal or superior to that obtained with performance checks specified below, using a standard, commercial, cable-ready, color-television receiver. Level and quality of signal at each outlet and from each service and source shall comply with the following Specifications when tested according to 47 604-12 76:

1) RF video-carrier level.

2) Relative video-carrier level.

3) Carrier-level stability, during 60-minute and 24-hour periods.

4) Broadband frequency response.

5) Channel frequency response.

6) Carrier-to-noise ratio.

7) RF visual signal-to-noise ratio.

8) Antenna combiner insertion loss.
9) Signal power splitter loss.
10) Cable connector attenuation.
11) Cross modulation.
12) Carrier-to-echo ratio.
13) Composite triple beat.
14) Second order beat.
15) Terminal isolation.
16) Terminal isolation between television and FM.
17) Hum modulation.
18) RF FM carrier level.
19) FM frequency response.
20) FM carrier-to-noise ratio.

D. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 31 11
FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Non-coded, UL Listed intelligent analog addressable system, one-way voice communications with multiplexed signal transmission.

B. The System supplied under this specification shall utilize node-to-node, direct wired, multi priority peer-to-peer network operations where network control or remote voice command centers are located on the drawings. The system shall utilize independently addressed, input/output modules, audio amplifiers, and voice communications as described in this specification. The peer-to-peer network shall contain multiple nodes consisting of the command center - main controller and remote control panel(s). Each panel shall be an equal, active functional member of the network, which is capable of making all local decisions and generating network tasks to other panels in the event of panel failure or communications failure between panels. Master/slave system configurations shall not be considered as equals.

C. The fire alarm equipment and installation shall comply with the current provisions of the following latest edition UL and NFPA standards and shall be listed for its intended purpose and be compatibility listed to insure integrity of the complete system.

D. The system performance specified herein is based upon a minimum design performance requirements utilizing high fidelity speakers with selectable sound performance.

E. At a minimum, provide at least one One-Way Voice Command Center and remote panel(s) as noted on the drawings. Each Command Center shall be fully redundant on the network with redundant audio network, audio messages 2 minutes of message storage capacity minimum, paging microphone and the following:

1. Command Center with redundant audio messages, paging microphone and request for control switches & status indicators. Each Command Center shall have switches with LED annunciating control and requesting control as follows:

    a. Request Take Control
    b. Request Accepted
    c. Request Deny
    d. Restore command center to normal operation
    e. Priority request override Take Control.
    f. Speakers 2nd floor only.
    g. Speakers 1st floor only.
    h. Exterior speakers only.
    i. All speakers.
    j. Custom message#1
    k. Custom Message#2
    l. Custom Message#3.
    m. Add switches for controls as required by NFPA72.

F. The Emergency Voice Paging System will provide single channel audio paging up to ten (10) audio paging areas via a system microphone and telephone paging access. The paging system shall be used for routine and emergency paging.

    a. Area 1 – 1st floor Speakers.
    b. Area 2 – 2nd floor speakers (If applicable)
    c. Area 3 – exterior speakers.
    d. Area 4 – All speakers/All building.

G. Provide telephone access paging interface selectable with ten paging areas, plus all call.

H. All remote annunciator(s) shall have LCD display, paging microphone, audio zone selection switches and by-pass switches. Provide visual indication which microphone is active during paging operations. During local microphone paging the speakers located near by the microphone shall be muted through software programmable audio control relays to avoid feed-back noise. The remote annunciator shall not override the Command Center operations.

I. The fire alarm equipment and installation shall comply with the current provisions of the following latest edition standards (unless otherwise noted below) applicable to the jurisdictional authorities, including their local adoptions and amendments and it shall be listed for its intended purpose of a Voice Notification and Emergency Communication Signaling System and be compatibility listed to insure integrity of the complete system. It shall be listed to all of the UL Standards listed below, without exception.

1.3 BUILDING CODES and STANDARDS

A. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. NFPA-70 National Electrical Code (NEC)
2. NFPA-72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
3. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code
4. IBC International Building Code
5. IFC International Fire Code
6. IMC International Mechanical Code
7. Local Amendments.

B. National Electrical Manufacture's Association (NEMA)

C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL)

1. UL-864 Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems (9th Edition)
2. UL-268 Smoke Detector for Fire Protective Signaling Systems
3. UL-217 Smoke Detectors for Single and Multiple Station
4. UL-521 Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems
5. UL-464 Audible Signaling Appliances
6. UL-1971 Visual Signaling Appliances
7. UL-38 Manually Actuated Signaling Boxes
8. UL-1480 Standard for Speakers for Fire Alarm, Emergency, and Commercial and Professional Use
9. UL-1481 Power Supplies for Fire Protective Signaling Systems

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall not purchase any equipment for the system specified herein until the Owner and/or designated representative has approved the project submittals in their entirety and has returned them to the contractor. It is the responsibility of the contractor to meet the entire intent and functional performance detailed in these specifications. Approved submittals shall only allow the contractor to proceed with the installation and shall not be construed to mean that the contractor has satisfied the requirements of these specifications. The Contractor shall submit electronically a complete set of documentation within 30 calendar days after award of purchase order.

B. Each submittal shall include a cover letter providing a list of each variation that the submittal may have from the requirements of the Contract Documents. In addition the Contractor shall provide specific notation on each Shop Drawing, sample, catalog cut, data sheet, installation manual, etc. submitted for review and approval, of each such variation.

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to the Architect and Engineer.
2. Technical Submittals including Engineered Fire Alarm Installation layout Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

   a. Licensed Fire Alarm Contractor in the state of Illinois.

b. NICET Level III technician who has been certified at Level III in the sub-field of Fire Alarm Systems Layout.
c. Submittals shall also include the Quality Assurance certifications of the Fire Alarm Technician (see Section 1.5).
d. Distributor Qualifications: Provide documentation of the independently owned, Fire Alarm Distributor's qualifications, including all licenses, certificates and proof of authorization as a Manufacturer's Representative in Good Standing.

C. Product Data: Product Data sheets with the printed logo or trademark of the manufacturer of all equipment. Indicated in the documentation shall be the type, size, rating, style, and catalog number for all items proposed to meet the system performance detailed in this specification. The proposed equipment shall be subject to the approval of the Owner.

D. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, calculations and attachments to other work.

1. Comply with all recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA72.
2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits based on manufacturer-provided panel start voltage and point-to-point notification appliance circuit calculations. System Layout drawings prepared using the Lump Sum Method for visual strobe circuits are not acceptable.
3. Include battery-size calculations. Batteries shall be include a 20% safety factor above the minimum requirements derived from calculations, as required by NFPA 72.
4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors in accordance with NFPA 72.
6. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
7. Indicate speaker wattage tap settings for all speakers on the floor plans, calculate and show dB Line Loss calculations for all speaker circuits using the Lump sum method. dB Losses shall be no greater than 3.0 dB from amplifier start terminals to last device.
8. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits from end-to-end. "Home Run" indicators or other non-end-to-end wire path designations are not acceptable.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to be included in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data, include the following:

1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA72.
2. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
3. Record copy of site-specific software database file, hardcopy printout and CD, with password for delivery to the owner. Proprietary system/service companies will not be acceptable.
4. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA72 article of the same name and include the following:
    a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
    b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
    c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
    d. Manufacturer's user training manuals (hardcopy) and electronic on CD.

5. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
6. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.

F. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. CD of site-specific software database file with password and all product data sheets. Provide hard copy printout of the software program.
2. Provide a list of global system settings
3. Provide a list of the contents of each system cabinet and their settings
4. Provide a list of all addressable devices with their addresses and settings

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Fire Alarm distributor's employed personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer on the make and model of the fire alarm control panel specified for this Project.

B. Additional Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as a technician who has been certified at Level II in the sub-field of Fire Alarm Systems Layout.

C. Project Manager Qualifications: Installation shall be supervised by personnel certified by NICET as Fire Alarm System Layout Level IV Technician (SET), an NFPA Certified Fire Protection Specialist (CFPS) or an NCEES accredited Licensed Fire Protection Engineer (FPE).

D. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single distributor and manufacturer. Components shall be compatible with, and operate as a fully U.L. listed extension of a U.L. 864 listed fire alarm control system.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Fire Alarm Distributor Qualifications:

1. Contractor shall utilize an Illinois Licensed Private Alarm Contractor Agency that is an authorized, independently owned Manufacturers representative of the specified fire alarm equipment manufacturer.

2. Fire Alarm Distributor shall be a full service entity qualified to provide the engineering for the technical submittal, furnishing of the equipment, commissioning, testing and inspection services outlined herein including intelligibility testing and capable of providing full repair service to any fire alarm system and/or provide fire alarm system installation and design including, but not limited to, the following minimum requirements:

   a. Qualified Fire Alarm Service Company with employees who meet the criteria defined by NFPA 72 for the qualifications of both System Designers and System Installers to include the requirements of the Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
   b. Certified Fire Alarm Service Inspectors with employees of the entity who are certified in Fire Protection Engineering Technology by the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (N.I.C.E.T.) in FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS – LEVEL II, minimum.
   c. Five (5) Years of experience with installation and testing (minimum) is required for this project .

3. Distributor shall be a registered Illinois legal entity (Corporation, Partnership, Professional Corporation or Limited Liability Company) in Good Standing with the Secretary of State of Illinois.
4. Distributor entity shall hold a valid Illinois Private Alarm Contractor Agency License. Sub-contractors or licensed individual Private Alarm Contractors DO NOT meet this requirement.

1.6 WARRANTY and SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. The contractor shall warranty all materials, installation and workmanship for One (1) year from date of acceptance, and all Fire Alarm Equipment Component materials for a period of four (4) years after that, for a Three (5) year in total manufacturer's equipment warranty. A copy of the manufacturers' five (5) year warranty shall be provided with closeout documentation and included with the operation and installation manuals.

B. The System Supplier shall maintain a service organization with adequate spare parts stocked within 75 miles of the installation. Any defects that render the system inoperative shall be repaired within 24 hours of the Owner notifying the contractor.

C. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for five (5) years, shall be included in this project.

D. Detector Sensitivity Testing: During the warranty period, each year the contractor is to perform detector sensitivity testing and provide report to the Owner. Unless, the system is UL Listed to perform automatic sensitivity testing without any manual intervention and should detector fall outside of sensitivity window, the system will automatically indicated a devices trouble. A copy of UL letter is to be provided as proof of system operation.

E. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within three (3) years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Provide quantity equal to 2% percent of amount of each type installed, but no less than 1 unit of each type.
    a. Smoke Detectors, heat detectors, manual pull stations, duct smoke detector, monitor modules and control modules:
    b. Notification appliances; speakers, speaker-strobes and strobes.
2. Keys: The installing contractor shall collect all equipment spare keys provided with each lockable or resettable device/cabinet and shall turn all of them over to the Owner at completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: The materials, appliances, equipment and devices shall be tested and listed by a nationally recognized approvals agency for use as part of a protected premises protective signaling fire alarm system. The authorized representative of the manufacturer of the major equipment, such as control panels, shall be responsible for the satisfactory installation of the complete system.

B. The Contractor shall provide, from the acceptable manufacturer's current product lines, equipment and components, which comply, with the requirements of these Specifications – refer to drawing for information. Equipment or components, which do not provide the performance and features, required by these specifications are not acceptable, regardless of manufacturer.

C. All control panel assemblies and connected (new) field appliances shall be provided by the same System Supplier, and shall be designed and tested to ensure that the system operates as specified. All equipment and components shall be installed in strict compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

D. That equipment proposed to be supplied will be considered only if it meets all sections of the performance specification. Any deviations of system performance outlined in this specification will only be considered when the following requirements have been met:

1. A complete description of proposed alternate system performance methods with three (3) copies of working drawings thereof for approval by the Owner, not less than ten (10) calendar days prior to the scheduled date for submission of bids.
2. The supplier of alternate equipment shall furnish evidence that the proposed alternate system performance is equal to or superior than the system operation stated in the specification, including proof of all UL listings specified herein. Such evidence shall be submitted to the Owner, not less than ten (10) calendar days prior to the scheduled date for submission of bids.
3. The supplier shall submit a point-by-point statement of compliance for all sections in this specification. The statement of compliance shall consist of a list of all paragraphs within these sections. Where the proposed system complies fully with the paragraph as written, placing the word "comply" opposite the paragraph number shall indicate such. Where the proposed system does not comply with the paragraph as written, and the supplier feels the proposed system will accomplish the intent of the paragraph, a full description of the function as well as a full narrative description of how its proposal will meet its intent shall be provided. Any submission that does not include a point-by-point statement of compliance as described herein shall be disqualified. Where a full description is not provided, it shall be assumed that the proposed system does not comply.
4. The supplier of alternate equipment shall submit a list from the alternate manufacture on the manufacturer's letterhead indicating the names and addresses of all authorized suppliers in the area. Proprietary products manufactured or sold by single source distributorships or factory only direct options will not be considered.
5. The acceptability of any alternate proposed system shall be the sole decision of the Owner or his authorized representative.

E. Approved Products: All panels and peripheral devices shall be of the standard product of single manufacturer and shall display the manufacturer's name of each component.

1. Approved Manufacturers:
   a. Notifier: Extend Existing System

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:

1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Smoke detectors.
4. Duct smoke detectors.
5. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors.
6. Fire-extinguishing system operation.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions where applicable to this facility and jurisdiction:

1. Activate multiple channel pre-recorded voice messages preceded and followed by temporal tone.
2. Continuously operate the visual notification appliances.
3. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
4. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire alarm mode.
6. Record events in the system memory.
7. Record events by the system printer (if shown or called for in the contract documents).

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch

2. Duct smoke detector activation.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
7. Failure of battery charging circuitry
8. High or low battery charge.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.

E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators. Record the event on system printer.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. The main control panel and remote control panel(s) shall be a multi-processor based networked system designed specifically for detection, and one-way emergency audio communications applications. The control panel(s) shall be listed and approved for the application under the standard(s) as listed.

B. The control panel(s) shall include all required hardware, software and site-specific system programming to provide a complete and operational system. The control panel(s) shall be designed such that interactions between any applications can be configured, and modified using software provided by a single supplier. The control panel operational priority shall assure that life safety takes precedence among the activities coordinated by the control panel.

C. The network of control panels shall include the following features.

1. Ability to download all network applications and firmware from the configuration computer on the network or at any control panel (network node) location.
2. Each control panel (network node) shall have an LCD display with common controls. The display shall be configurable to display the status of any and all combinations of alarm, supervisory, trouble, monitor, or group event messages.
3. From each LCD display on the system shall be capable of being programmed for control functions of any node or the entire network. The LCD display shall reside on the network as a node and continue to operate with fault on the network. An LCD can be programmed to be only operation when a node is operational in stand-alone mode, with a network fault.
4. The system program shall have a minimum of 100 system definable Service Groups to facilitate the testing of installed system based on the physical layout of the system. Service groups that disable entire circuits serving multiple floors or fire zones shall not be considered as equal.
5. Advanced Windows based programming with Program Version Reporting to document any and all changes made during system start-up or system commissioning. Time and date stamps of all modifications made to the program must be included to allow full retention of all previous program version data. The operator display shall clearly identify unacknowledged and acknowledged alarm, supervisory, trouble, and monitor status messages. The system shall provide the ability to download data from the analog/addressable detectors to a PC while the system is on-line and operational in the protected premises. The downloaded data may then be analyzed in a diagnostic program supplied by the system manufacturer.
6. Provide system reports that list a detailed description of the status of system parameters for corrective action or for preventive maintenance. Reports shall be displayed on the operator interface or be capable of being sent to a printer.

7. Provide an authorized operator with the ability to operate or modify system functions such as system time, date, passwords, holiday dates, restart the system and clear the control panel event history file.
8. Provide an authorized operator the ability to perform test functions within the installed system.
9. Supervision of system components, wiring, initiating devices and software shall be provided by the control panel. Failure or fault of system component or wiring shall be indicated by type and location on the LCD display. Software and processor operation shall be independently monitored for failure. The system shall provide fail-safe operation, with multiple-levels of system operation

D. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, monitor, trouble and component status messages and control menu.

1. The common control switches and with corresponding LEDs provided as minimum will be; Reset Alarm Silence, Panel Silence, and Drill. It shall be able to add additional switches/LEDs as required.
2. The main control panel shall have display that is 24 lines by 40 character graphic LCD and backlit when active.
3. Each point shall have custom event message of up to 40 characters, for total of 80 charters. In addition to instructional text message support a maximum of 2,000 characters each.
4. Provide 8 simultaneous events to be displayed. The first seven (7) highest priority events in addition to the most recent event. The events shall be automatically placed in event types (Alarm, Supervisory, Monitor & Trouble) for easy access and shall be possible to view the specific event type separately. Having to scroll through a mixed list of event types is not acceptable.
5. Provide an internal audible signal with different programmable patterns to distinguish between alarm, supervisory, trouble and monitor conditions.

E. Audio One-Way Voice Communication & Amplifier Performance Requirement

1. The voice communication system shall be an eight (8) channel capable audio evacuation system, to allow the ability to have eights simultaneous announcements/paging. The audio channels shall be design as such:

    a. Fire Message
    b. Alert Message
    c. Stand-by Message
    d. Stairwell Message
    e. Security/Weather Threat
    f. Manual Paging

2. All messages shall be able to be created on-site without any special tools or burning of chips. Provide as minimum one twenty (20) watt supervised audio amplifier per paging zone. The system software shall be capable of selecting the required audio source signal for amplification. To enhance system survivability, each audio amplifier shall automatically provide an internally generated local 3-3-3, 1000 Hz temporal pattern output upon loss of the audio signal from the one-way emergency audio control unit, during an alarm condition.
3. Audio amplifiers shall be power limited and protected from short circuits conditions on the audio circuit wiring. Each amplifier output shall be a supervised, dedicated, selectable 25/70 Vrms output.
4. Provide a standby audio amplifier per node that will automatically sense the failure of any primary amplifier installed in the same panel and replace the function of the failed amplifier (One for All Backup).

5. Amplifier Minimum Sizing Specification shall be as follows:
    a. 7.5 Watts per Trumpet Type Loudspeaker
    b. 2 Watts per 8 inch cone type speaker
    c. 1 Watts per 4 inch cone type speaker
    d. 4 Watts per re-entrant horn-driver type speaker
    e. Plus 25% spare capacity for each connected amplifier or speaker signal circuit switching module.

F. Provide an Emergency Voice Communication System with the following design features:
1. An audio control unit with Microphone for Paging.
2. Provide 3-position switch for each evacuation signaling zone and “All-Call”, with "Page FIRE", "Auto" and “Page ALERT” positions identified and two LED status indicators for each audio visual evacuation signaling "zone", one red and one yellow.
3. These LED's shall illuminate to indicate respectively:
    a. Evacuation signals activated (red),
    b. Trouble in audio (speaker) or visual (strobe) circuit(s) (yellow).

G. Provide 2-position switch for manually activate pre-recorded voice messages, with “Message Name" positions identified and one LED status indicators, one red. Provide minimum of 12 selector switches.
1. These LED's shall illuminate to indicate respectively:
    a. Message activated (red)

H. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions

I. Circuits Requirements:
1. Signaling Line Circuits for Network Communications:
    a. Class A
2. Signaling Line Circuits for Intelligent Analog Addressable Loop:
    a. Class B
    b. No more than 100 detectors or 100 modules installed on a loop.
3. Initiating Device Circuit:
    a. Class B
4. Notification Appliance Circuits:
    a. Class B
    b. Maximum circuit loading to 2.25 amps for each 3.0 amp visual circuit, not to exceed 75% of the visual circuits terminal capacity or the power supplies total amperage rating (i.e. no more than 6.0 amps on an 8.0 amp power supply)
5. Activation of alarm notification appliances, smoke control, and other functions shall occur within 3 seconds after the activation of an initiating device.

J. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
1. Initiate an audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an NRTL-listed and -approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

K. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change to alternate settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

L. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, shall be powered by nominal 24-V dc source.

M. Secondary Power: Shall provide 24 hours supervisory and 15 minutes of alarm with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

2.4 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR WITH ONE-WAY VOICE COMMUNICATION

A. Annunciator shall match those of fire-alarm control unit LCD display functions for alarm, supervisory, monitor and trouble indications and common system controls including; acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing. The fire alarm bypass function switches and LCD Keypad may be housed separately in a locked enclosure to prevent unauthorized use and control of fire alarm system program control and bypass, but the Paging Microphone, Audio Selector and Message Selector Switches shall be housed in a listed enclosure which is capable of being fitted with an unlocked latching knob for the enclosure, such that these emergency communication and signaling controls are readily accessible for emergency signaling. The Contractor shall verify this feature with Owner prior to final commissioning.

1. This display shall have the following minimum features:
    a. LCD Display
    b. Paging Microphone
    c. Audio Selector Switches
    d. Audio Message Selector Switches
    e. System Bypass Switches

2.5 NAC Power Supply:

A. The NAC power supply shall be independent unit that will provide power to visual strobe notification appliances. It shall be possible to configure the NAC's to follow the main panel's NAC or activate from intelligent synchronized modules. The booster NAC's must be configurable to operate independently at any one of the following rates: continuous synchronized, or 3-3-3 temporal. Fault conditions on the power supply shall not impede alarm activation of host NAC circuits or other power supplies. The NAC power supply must be able to provide concurrent power for notification devices, security devices, access control equipment and auxiliary devices such as door holders. . All the NAC Power Supplies shall be synchronized. The power supply shall support up to 24 amp hour batteries.

1. Power supply shall be minimum of 10 amps and UL 864 Listed.
2. Four independent 3.0 amp NAC circuits. Each being configurable as auxiliary power.
3. All circuits shall be synchronized.

2.6 INTELLIGENT ANALOG SYSTEM SMOKE, HEAT AND CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for Intelligent Analog Detectors

1. Integral Microprocessor: All decision are made at the detector determining if the device is in the alarm or trouble condition.
2. Non-Volatile Memory: Permanently stores serial number, and type of device. Automatically updates historic information including hours of operation, last maintenance date, number of alarms and troubles, time of last alarm1 and analog signal patterns for each sensing element just before last alarm.
3. Field Replaceable Smoke Sensing Chamber: Analog detectors must have a modular, removable smoke sensing chamber which can be removed for easy cleaning and/or convenient, cost effective service replacement without removing the detector base or

resetting the device address, without removal of detector electronics and without requiring any system or device programming adjustments which necessitate a system re-test.

4. Electronic Addressing: Permanently stores programmable system address. It shall be possible to address each intelligent module without the use of DIP or rotary switches. Devices using switches for addressing shall not be acceptable.
5. Automatic Device Mapping: Each detector transmits wiring information regarding its location with respect to other devices on the circuit, creating an As-Built wiring diagram. This will also provide enhanced supervision of the device physical location and the device message shall reside with the location and not the device address. Devices installed in the wrong location will always report the correct message of the physical location.
6. Sensitivity Range: Each analog addressable smoke detector's sensitivity shall be capable of being programmed individually as: most sensitive, more sensitive, normal, less sensitive or least sensitive. It shall be possible to automatically change the sensitivity of individual analog/addressable detectors for the day and night periods. It shall be possible to program control panel activity to each level.
7. Pre-Alarm: Detector stores 20 pre-alarm sensitivity values to alert local personnel prior to the sensor reaching a full evacuation sensitivity. Sensitivity values can be set in 5% increments.
8. Environmental Compensation: The detector's sensing element reference point shall automatically adjust, compensating for background environmental conditions such as dust, temperature, and pressure. Periodically, the sensing element real-time analog value shall be compared against its reference value. The detector shall provide a maintenance alert signal when the detector reaches 75% (Dirty) to 99% (More Dirty) compensation has been used. The detector shall provide a dirty fault signal when 100% or greater compensation has been used.
9. Twin Status LEDs: Flashing Green LED shows normal; flashing RED shows alarm state; steady RED and steady GREEN show alarm state in stand-alone mode, visible from any direction.
10. UL Sensitivity Testing: The detector shall utilize a supervised microprocessor that is capable of monitoring the sensitivity of the detector. If the detector sensitivity shifts outside of the UL limits, a trouble signal is sent to the panel.
11. Device Replacement: The system shall allow for changing of detector types for service replacement purposes without the need to reprogram the system. The replacement detector type shall automatically continue to operate with the same programmed sensitivity levels and functions as the detector it replaced. System shall display an off-normal condition until the proper detector type has been installed or change in the application program profile has been made.

B. Intelligent Photoelectric Detector

1. Provide intelligent analog addressable photoelectric smoke detectors at the locations shown on the drawings.

C. Intelligent CO (Carbon Monoxide) Detector.

1. Where called for on the contract drawings, provide intelligent CO sensor at locations shown on the drawings. The CO sensor (or combination type sensor) shall reside on the Intelligent Addressable loop with its unique system identifier and be able to be programmed as Alarm, Supervisory or Monitor.
2. CO sensor shall be capable of detecting carbon monoxide from any source of combustion and analyzes the sensor data to determine when to initiate a life safety CO alarm. Carbon monoxide electrolytic sensing module shall provide toxic gas sensing to UL2034 and UL2075 standards.
3. The CO element shall have minimum of six year life span and be field replaceable element without. The CO element shall be factory calibrated.

4. The CO end of life shall be supervised / monitored by the Control Panel to annunciate end of life. Also, the control panel shall provide a system report of all CO detectors end of life status.
5. The CO Detector shall activate upon the following conditions:
    a. 70 PPM for 60 – 240 minutes
    b. 150 PPM 10- 50 minutes
    c. 400 PPM 4 – 15 minutes
6. The CO activation shall be programmable type as follows: Alarm, Supervisory Latching, Supervisory Non-Latching, Monitor Latching, or Monitory Non-Latching.

D. Intelligent 135 Degree Fixed Temperature / Rate of Rise Heat Detector

1. Where called for on the contract drawings, provide intelligent combination fixed temperature/rate-of-rise heat detectors at the locations shown on the drawings. The heat detector shall have a low mass thermistor heat sensor and operate at a fixed temperature and at a temperature rate-of-rise. It shall continually monitor the temperature of the air in its surroundings to minimize thermal lag to the time required to process an alarm. The integral microprocessor shall determine if an alarm condition exists and initiate an alarm based on the analysis of the data. Systems using central intelligence for alarm decisions shall not be acceptable. The intelligent heat detector shall have a nominal fixed temperature alarm point rating of 135°F (57°C) and a rate-of-rise alarm point of 15°F (9°C) per minute. The heat detector shall be rated for ceiling installation at a minimum of 70 ft (21.3m) centers and be suitable for wall mount applications.

E. Fixed Temperature Heat Detector

1. Where called for on the contract drawings, provide intelligent fixed temperature heat detectors at the locations shown on the drawings. The heat detector shall have a low mass thermistor heat sensor and operate at a fixed temperature. It shall continually monitor the temperature of the air in its surroundings to minimize thermal lag to the time required to process an alarm. The integral microprocessor shall determine if an alarm condition exists and initiate an alarm based on the analysis of the data. Systems using central intelligence for alarm decisions shall not be acceptable. The heat detector shall have a nominal alarm point rating of 135°F (57°C). The heat detector shall be rated for ceiling installation at a minimum of 70 ft (21.3m) centers and be suitable for wall mount applications.

F. Intelligent Multi-Sensor Detectors Types (where called for on the contract drawings)

1. Multi-criteria sensor can be any combination of photoelectrical smoke sensing, heat and carbon monoxide (CO) detection. The combined photoelectric smoke detection/heat/CO module shall have separate sensors that adjust the detection profile in response to the input from the sensors.
2. Multi-criteria detector can be combination of photoelectrical smoke sensing and carbon monoxide (CO) detection.
3. Multi-criteria detector can be combination of fix-temperature heat and carbon monoxide (CO) detection.
4. All the Multi-Sensor detector shall use only one address on the SLC.
    a. The CO activation shall be programmable type as follows: Alarm, Supervisory Latching, Supervisory Non-Latching, Monitor Latching, or Monitory Non-Latching.

G. Detector Base Types

1. Provide standard detector mounting bases suitable for mounting on 1-gang, or 4inch octagon box and 4 inch square box. The base shall, contain no electronics and support all series detector types. Bases with electronics or dip-switches are not acceptable.
2. Provide audible detector mounting bases suitable for mounting on 4” x 4” octagonal concrete ring (mud box) and 4” square x 2-1/8” (54 mm) deep box.

a. The base shall support all Signature Series detector types and be capable of single or group operation. The audible base shall emit a temporal alarm tone and be selectable for low or high output.
b. The operation of the audible base shall be controlled by its respective detector processor or under program control as required by the application. Detector audible base not capable of operational programming independent of the detector shall not be considered equal.
c. The audible bases shall be UL268 and UL464 Listed, and provide a reverberant room sound output per UL464 of 81 dBA at 10ft (3m) and an average anechoic sound output of 90 dBA at 10 ft (3m).

H. Intelligent Duct Smoke Detector - Photoelectric

1. Provide intelligent photoelectric duct smoke detector at the locations shown on the drawings.
   a. One form C auxiliary alarm relay rated at 2amps @ 30Vdc.
   b. The operating range shall be 100ft/min to 4,000ft/min air velocity and temperature range of –20 to 158F.
   c. Sample tube can be installed with or without the cover place and be rotated in 45-degree increments to ensure proper alignment with duct airflow.
   d. Local magnet-activated test switch.
2. Provide remote test station with Alarm LED and Key Switch.
3. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor control circuit. Furnish and install separate device for each motor start. Connect to motor start as required for fan shutdown during alarm condition.

2.7 INTELLIGENT MODULES

A. It shall be possible to address each intelligent module without the use of DIP or rotary switches. Devices using switches for addressing shall not be acceptable. The personality of multifunction modules shall be programmable at site to suit conditions and may be changed at any time using a personality code downloaded from the Analog Loop Controller.

1. Integral Microprocessor: All decisions are made at the module determining if the device is alarm or trouble condition.
2. Non-Volatile Memory: Permanently stores serial number, and type of device. Automatically updates historic information including hours of operation, number of alarms and troubles, time of last alarm.
3. Automatic Device Mapping: Each detector transmits wiring information regarding its location with respect to other devices on the circuit, creating an As-Built wiring diagram. This will also provide enhanced supervision of the device physical location. The device message shall reside with the location and not the device address. Devices installed in the wrong location will always report the correct message of the physical location.
4. Twin Status LEDs: The modules shall have a minimum of 2 diagnostic LEDs mounted behind a finished cover plate. A green LED shall flash to confirm communication with the loop controller. A red LED shall flash to display alarm status.
5. Input and output circuit wiring shall be supervised for open and ground faults.
6. Two styles of modules shall be available, those designed for gang box mounting, and where multiple modules are required in a single location, plug in modules shall be provided with a Universal Input/Output motherboard.

B. Intelligent Input Module. The Input Module shall provide one or two supervised Class B input circuit capable of a minimum of 4 personalities, each with a distinct operation. The module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 ½" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 ½" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers. The single input module shall support the following circuit types:

- Normally-Open Alarm Latching (Manual Stations, Heat Detectors, etc.)
- Normally-Open Alarm Delayed Latching (Waterflow Switches)

- Normally-Open Active Non-Latching (Monitor, Fans, Dampers, Doors, etc.)
- Normally-Open Active Latching (Supervisory, Tamper Switches)

C. Intelligent Relay Module. Provide addressable control relay circuit modules shall provide one (1) form C dry relay contacts rated at 24Vdc @ 2 amps (pilot duty) to control external appliances or equipment. The position of the relay contact shall be confirmed by the system firmware. The module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 ½" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 ½" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers.

D. NAC Control Module: Provide intelligent NAC control module shall provide one (1) supervised Class B output circuit capable of a minimum of 2 personalities, each with a distinct operation. The gang box -mounted version shall be suitable for mounting in North American 2 ½" (64mm) deep 2-gang boxes and 1 ½" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 2-gang covers, or European 100mm square boxes. The plug-In version shall plug into a universal multi-module motherboard. The NAC control module shall support the following operations:

- 24volt NAC circuit
- Audio notification circuit 25v or 70v
- Telephone Power Selector with Ring Tone (Firefighter's Telephone)
- Visual Synchronized Output to Genesis appliances or to NAC Power Supply.

2.8 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
2. The manual pull station will have an intelligent module integral of the unit.
3. Station Reset: key operated switch shall match the control panel key.
4. Manual pull stations that initiated an alarm condition by opening the unit are not acceptable.

B. Indoor Protective Shield "Stopper Covers": Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure. Hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery powered audible horn (when noted on the drawings) intended to discourage false-alarm operation.

2.9 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. All appliances shall be of the same manufacturer as the Fire Alarm Control Panel specified to insure absolute compatibility between the appliances and the control panels, and to insure that the application of the appliances are done in accordance with the single manufacturers' instructions.

B. Any appliances, which do not meet the above requirements, and are submitted, for use must show written proof of their compatibility for the purpose intended. Such proof shall be in the form of documentation from all manufacturers which clearly states that their equipment (as submitted) are 100% compatible with each other for the purposes intended. All appliances shall be UL 1971, UL 1638 and UL 464 listed for Fire Protective Service. Speakers hall also be UL 1480F listed. Combination Speaker-Visual appliances may be used where shown on the contract drawings and standalone Visual Strobes and Speaker-Only devices may be used where shown on the contract drawings provided they meet the performance requirements specified herein for both audible and visual notification.

C. Notification Appliances – Visual (Fire – Evacuation)

1. Provide wall or ceiling mounted clear lens strobes with {red}{white} body and "FIRE" markings. Strobes shall provide a smooth light distribution pattern field selectable candela 15 cd, 30 cd, 75 cd, and 110 cd flash output rating, UL1971 listed with in-out

screw terminals shall be provided for wiring. The strobe (15, 30, 75, 110) candela rating shall be view from the side window to verify the setting. All strobes shall be synchronization to within 10 milliseconds for an indefinite period shall not require the use of separately installed remote synch modules. The strobes shall mount to one-gang electrical box.

2. The device shall have plastic protective cover for during installation.
3. The actual candela setting on the visual shall be marked on the appliance.

D. Notification Appliance - Re-entrant Speakers {Mechanical, Storage and Unfinished Ceiling locations}

1. Provide 4 inch diameter red re-entrant speakers at loud ambient locations or for outdoor weatherproof installation. Weatherproof boxes shall be provided for outdoor mounting. Speakers shall provide 2w, 4w, 8w, and 15w power taps. The re-entrant speakers shall utilize a high-efficiency compression driver. Cone type drivers are not acceptable. At the 15 watt setting, the speaker shall provide a 102 dBA sound output over a frequency range of 400-4000 Hz. when measured in reverberation room per UL-1480.
2. Combination speaker strobes shall meet both sections of above.

E. Trumpet Type Loudspeaker {Gymnasium or High-Ceiling Assembly locations}

1. Provide a trumpet speaker at the locations shown on the drawings. The trumpet speaker shall be able to operate within any ambient temperature environment ranging from 66°C (150°F) to -35°C (-30°F), with weather-resistant unit shall be constructed of heavy-gauge treat aluminum. Model shall be a double re-entrant type with 15 watts RMS audio power rating compression driver producing a UL-rated sound pressure level of 102dB measured at 15 watts, 10ft. (3dB increment rating) within a frequency range of 400 Hz to 4 kHz. Impedance shall be 8 ohms and sound dispersion 70°. Unit shall have impedance selection via 7-position switch of 5000, 2500, 1300, 666, 333, 89 and 45 ohms. Power taps shall be available at 1, 2, 3.8, 7.5, 15watts for 70V line. Trumpet loudspeaker assembly shall be furnished with mounting bracket allowing adjustment on either a vertical or horizontal plane with a single locking pin and including provisions for mounting, banding, or strapping. Wiring terminals for amplifier output shall be fully enclosed and a vandal-resistant adapter cover shall provide connection facilities for cable or conduit. Dimensions: 7⅞" W x 8¾" H x 9⅝" D (200 x 222 x 237mm). Unit shall be finished in red baked epoxy.

2.10 GUARDS FOR PHYSICAL PROTECTION

A. Provide welded mesh of size and shape for the manual pull stations, smoke detectors, notification appliances at location noted on the drawings.

2.11 INSPECTION BAR CODES

A. Inspection bar codes used by the system must utilize Code 3 of 9 or other approved format, and contain a minimum of eight (8) digits that comprise a unique serial identifier within the Web-based Reporting System. There shall be no duplication of serial numbers. Serial number shall be printed below the bar code for identification purposes.

B. Inspection bar codes shall be limited in size to no more than 2 inches in width, and 3/8 inches in height and shall include a Mylar or other protective coating to protect the bar code from fading due to sunlight or exposure.

C. Inspection bar codes shall be installed on each device in such a manner as to require that scanning of the bar code take place no further than 12 inches from the device during inspection.

2.12 WIRE AND CABLE

A. Signaling Line Circuits – Network Data: Twisted pair, not less than No. 16 AWG or as recommended by the manufacturer. Systems which use Shielded Wire requiring continuous foil shields and continuous drain wires are not acceptable, as they may lead to multiple ground faults and communication integrity faults.

B. Signaling Line Circuits – Intelligent Loop: Non-Twisted pair, not less than No. 16 AWG or as recommended by the manufacturer. Systems which use Shielded Wire requiring continuous foil shields and continuous drain wires are not acceptable, as they may lead to multiple ground faults and communication integrity faults.

C. Notification Appliance Circuits –

1. Audio: Twisted pair, not less than No. 16 AWG or as recommended by the manufacturer.
2. Visual. Non-Twisted pair, not less than No. 14 AWG or as recommended by the manufacturer and required by the voltage drop calculations (it may be No. 12 AWG in some cases).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 72 and NEC Article 760 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on finished floor with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

C. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:

1. Comply with NFPA72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
2. Comply with NFPA72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A [or Appendix B] in NFPA 72.
5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture.

D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.

E. Notification Appliance Devices: Install between 80 on the wall, consult applicable NFPA 72 Chapter for specific mounting heights of Visual Strobes, Audible Devices and Combinations Audible/Visual Devices.

F. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

G. Remote Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 56 inches above the finished floor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to no addressable devices. Install the interface device less than 3 feet from the device controlled.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

B. Install framed instructions provided by Fire Alarm Distributor in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

C. All initiating devices shall have bar code label installed visibly on the device. This bar code shall be used for digital inspection of the fire alarm system using Building Reports.

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests are required during year one of the warranty period and shall be witnessed by Architect, Engineer and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Intelligibility Testing. System shall be intelligible. Use speakers tap properly.
2. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
    a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
    b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
3. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA72.
4. Audibility testing shall test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
5. Audibility testing shall test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA72.

D. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

E. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

G. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

H. Annual Test and Inspection: During the warranty period, each year test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

I. Detector Sensitivity Testing: During the warranty period, each year the contractor is to perform detector sensitivity testing and provide report to the Owner. Unless, the system is UL Listed to perform automatic sensitivity testing without any manual intervention and should detector fall outside of sensitivity window, the system will automatically indicated a devices trouble. A copy of UL letter is to be provided as proof of system operation

3.6 INTELLIGIBILITY TESTING AND ACOUSTICAL ADJUSTMENT

A. Intelligibility testing of the System shall be accomplished in accordance with 2019 NFPA 72 for Voice Evacuation Systems.

B. Provide a preliminary report to the Owner and Owner’s Representative for review. Include time for a review meeting to discuss the results and any areas for adjustments.

C. Provide one (1) full speaker tap setting adjustment to each notification appliance within the entire audible notification appliance network. Adjust speaker wattage tap settings up or down based upon the direction provided by the Owner’s Representative. Do not adjust speaker tap settings for speakers or areas which are not determined to need adjustment.

D. Provide a second full Intelligibility Test and Final Intelligibility Report to the Owner and Owner's Representative for approval.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 16721

SECTION 31 05 13
SOILS FOR EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Subsoil.
   2. Topsoil.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for coarse and fine aggregate materials.
   2. Section 312213 "Rough Grading" for removal of topsoil, rough grading, and filling associated with contouring of Site.
   3. Section 312316 "Excavation" for excavating as required for building foundations and utilities within building perimeter.
   4. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for excavating as required for building foundations and utilities within building perimeter.
   5. Section 312323 "Fill" for backfilling as required at building perimeter and Site structures to subgrade elevations.
   6. Section 312500 "Erosion and Sedimentation Controls" for slope protection and erosion control.
   7. Section 329219 "Seeding" for fertilizing, seeding, hydroseeding, mulching, and maintenance.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. Subsoil.
   2. Topsoil.

B. Samples: Submit, in airtight containers, sample of fill to testing laboratory.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: For subsoil and topsoil materials.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Furnish each material from single source throughout Work.

B. Perform Work according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. The State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.
   2. The Municipality of New Boston Department of Public Works standards.

2.2 SUBSOIL

A. Type S1: Comply with State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

B. Type S2 Ordinary Borrow:
   1. Ordinary borrow consists of well-graded mineral soil substantially free of organic materials, loam, wood, trash, and other objectionable material which may be compressible or which cannot be compacted properly.

2. Ordinary borrow consist of a material satisfactory to the Architect/Engineer and not specified as gravel borrow, sand borrow, special borrow material, or other particular kind of borrow.
3. This material conforms to the physical characteristics of soils designated as group A-1, A-2-4, or A-3 under AASHTO M 145.
4. Must be readily spread and compacted for the formation of foundations, embankments, and other subgrade improvements.
5. Liquid Limit: A-1 and A-3 = none or not measured, A-2-4 = 40 max.
6. Plasticity Index: A-1 = 6 max, A-3 = Non-Plastic (NP), A-2-4 = 10 max.

C. Type S2-a Special Borrow:
1. Special borrow consists of one or all of the following:
   a. A native in-situ soil that is classified under AASHTO M 145 as A-3, or that portion of A-1 and A-2 with less than 12 percent passing the No. 200 sieve as determined by AASHTO T 311.
   b. A crushed rock, either obtained from ledge excavation on the Project or other approved sources, that meets the following requirements:
      1) Percent of Wear LA Abrasion Test: 50 percent.
      2) Maximum Plasticity Index: 6 percent.
   c. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      1) 3 Inches (75 mm): 100
      2) 2 Inches (50 mm): 90 to 100
      3) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 100 to 60
      4) No. 200 (75 micro m): 0 to 12

D. Type S2-b Pipe Bedding Material and Drainage Layer:
1. Bedding and drainage material under loam and around utilities is comprised of natural mineral sand within the following gradation limits:
   a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      1) 1/2 Inch (12 mm): 100
      2) 3/8 Inch (10 mm): 100 to 85
      3) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 100 to 60
      4) No. 16 (1.18 mm): 80 to 35
      5) No. 50 (300 micro m): 55 to 10
      6) No. 200 (75 micro m): 10 to 2

E. Type S2-c Granular Fill:

1. Granular fill consists of sandy gravel or gravely sand, free of organic material, loam, snow, ice, frozen soil, and other objectionable materials, well-graded within the following limits:
   a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      1) 4 Inches (100 mm): 100
      2) 1/2 Inch (12 mm): 85 to 50
      3) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 75 to 40
      4) No. 100 (150 micro m): 30 to 5
      5) No. 200 (75 micro m): 20 to 0

F. Type S2-d Structural Fill:
1. Structural fill consists of processed fill material that is hard durable stone and coarse sand, free from loam and clay, surface coatings, and deleterious materials. Gradation requirements as determined by AASHTO T11 and T27 conforms to the following gradation requirements:

a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
   1) 3 Inches (75 mm): 100
   2) 1/2 Inch (12 mm): 50 to 85
   3) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 40 to 75
   4) No. 50 (300 micro m): 8 to 28
   5) No. 200 (75 micro m): 0 to 8

G. Type S2-e Reclaimed Pavement Borrow Material:
1. Reclaimed pavement borrow material consists of crushed asphalt pavement or crushed cement concrete, and gravel borrow.
2. Provide material free of loam, clay, and deleterious materials such as brick, reinforcing steel, wood, paper, plaster, lathing, and building rubble.
3. Provide coarse aggregate with a percentage of wear not greater than 50 percent as measured by the Los Angeles Abrasion Test.
4. Determine gradation requirements in accordance with AASHTO T 311, except the material cannot be oven dried. Dry material by air drying, fan drying at low speed, or other low temperature heat so as not to liquefy the asphalt or cause the asphalt to adhere to the sieves. Water used for the No. 200 sieve analysis must be cold tap water.
5. The gradation requirements for reclaimed pavement borrow are as follows:
   a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      1) 3 Inches (75 mm): 100
      2) 1-1/2 Inches (37.5 mm): 70 to 100
      3) 3/4 Inch (19 mm): 50 to 85
      4) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 30 to 60
      5) No. 50 (300 micro m): 8 to-24
      6) No. 200 (75 micro m): 0 to 10
6. The liquid limit for the portion of materials passing the No. 40 sieve cannot be greater than 25 and the plasticity index not greater than 6.
7. Compact the reclaimed pavement borrow to a minimum of 95 percent of AASHTO T 180 proctor density.
8. Determine liquid limits by AASHTO T 90.
9. Process reclaimed pavement borrow material by mechanical means and blended to form a homogeneous material. Provide equipment for producing crushed material of adequate size and having sufficient adjustments to produce the desired materials. Blended materials that are stockpiled for more than three months will require rework to provide a uniform material and must be retested prior to use; however, the Architect/Engineer may require additional testing any time the materials appear excessively hard, wet, or segregated.
10. Provide reclaimed pavement borrow material from Architect/Engineer approved sources and stockpiles.
11. The amount of combined crushed asphalt pavement and crushed cement concrete should not exceed 50 percent by volume as determined by visual inspection, or by laboratory tests required by the Architect/Engineer.

H. Type S2-f Lightweight Aggregate Fill (LWAF):
1. LWAF is a rotary kiln expanded shale aggregate manufactured by Solite Corporation of Saugerties, NY, or Norlite Corporation of Chores, NY, or an approved equivalent. No byproduct slags, coal derived by-product aggregates (cinders, bottom ash, fly ash), or pumice, scoria, or tuff are permitted. The aggregate shall meet the requirements of ASTM C330 and consist of tough, durable, non-corrosive particles with the following gradation:
   a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      1) 1 Inch (25 mm): 100

2) 3/4 Inch (19 mm): 90 to 100
3) 3/8 Inch (10 mm): 10 to 50
4) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 0 to 15
5) No. 8 (2.36 mm): 0 to 5

2. The maximum soundness loss when tested in accordance with ASTM C88 with five (5) cycles of magnesium sulphate may not exceed 10 percent.
3. The maximum Los Angeles abrasion loss when tested in accordance with ASTM C131 (B-Grading) will be 50 percent.
4. The maximum chloride content when tested in accordance with the AASHTO T260 (acid solution) will be 100 ppm.
5. The maximum compacted moist density can not exceed 60 pcf when tested in accordance with ASTM D698 (one point test at typical moisture content when shipped to site).
6. The specific gravity when tested in accordance with ASTM C127 will be no less than 1.4.
7. The angle of internal friction will be no less than 40 degrees when tested in accordance with AASHTO T236.

2.3 TOPSOIL

A. Type S3: Comply with State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards .

B. Type S4:
1. Excavated and reused material.
2. Graded and screened.
3. Free of roots, rocks larger than ½ inch, subsoil, debris, large weeds, and foreign matter.
4. Comply with ASTM D2487.

C. Type S5 Imported Base Loam:
1. Imported base loam is comprised of a naturally occurring soil from geological soil forming processes, without admixtures of sand or organic matter sources (composts). Provide imported base loam as required for blending with sand and compost.
2. Imported base loam that has been contaminated by incorporation of subsoil is not acceptable for use.
3. Imported base loam for the Work is required to be free of subsoil, large stones, earth clods, sticks, stumps, clay lumps, roots, or other objectionable, extraneous matter or debris. Imported base loam composition is required to be free of quack-grass rhizomes, Agropyron repens, and the nut-like tubers of nutgrass, Cyperus esculentus, and other primary noxious weeds.
4. Do not deliver imported base loam for use or planting while in a frozen or muddy condition. Provide imported base loam for mixing which conforms to the following grain size distribution for material passing the No. 10 sieve:
   a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      1) No. 10 (2.2 mm): 100
      2) No. 18 (1.0 mm): 85 to 100
      3) No. 35 (500 micro m): 70 to 95
      4) No. 60 (250 micro m): 50 to 85
      5) No. 140 (106 micro m): 36 to 53
      6) No. 270 (53 micro m): 32 to 42
      7) 0.00008 inch (0.002 mm): 3 to 6
5. The organic content must be between 4.0 and 8.0 percent by weight.
6. pH must be between 5.8 and 7.0.
7. Undertake chemical analysis for phosphorus, potassium, calcium magnesium, aluminum, iron, manganese, lead, cation exchange capacity, soluble salts, acidity (pH) and buffer pH.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Analysis:
   1. Subsoil Material: Comply with AASHTO T 180.
   2. Topsoil Material: Comply with AASHTO T 180.
   3. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.

B. Owner Inspection:
   1. Make available for inspection at source prior to packaging for shipment.
   2. Notify Owner at least seven days before inspection is allowed.

C. Owner Witnessing:
   1. Allow witnessing of source testing at supplier's test facility.
   2. Notify Owner at least seven days before tests are scheduled.

D. Certificate of Compliance:
   1. If supplier is approved by authorities having jurisdiction, submit certificate of compliance indicating Work performed at source conforms to Contract Documents.
   2. Specified source tests are not required for Work performed by approved supplier.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions with testing service present for compliance with requirements for moisture content**,** installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUBSOIL AND TOPSOIL

A. Excavation:
   1. Excavate from designated areas.
   2. Strip topsoil to full depth of topsoil in designated areas.
   3. Remove excess excavated materials not intended for reuse from Site.
   4. Remove excavated materials not meeting requirements for materials from Site.

B. Stockpiling:
   1. Stockpile excavated material meeting requirements for subsoil and topsoil materials.
   2. Stockpile materials on Site at locations as designated by Authority.
   3. Stockpile in sufficient quantities to meet Project schedule and requirements.
   4. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile apart to prevent intermixing of soil types or contamination.
   5. Direct surface water away from stockpile to prevent erosion or deterioration of materials.
   6. Stockpile unsuitable materials on impervious material and cover to prevent erosion and leaching until they are disposed.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Stockpile:

   1. Remove stockpile and leave area in clean and neat condition.

      a. Grade Site surface to prevent freestanding surface water.

   2. Leave unused materials in neat, compact stockpile.

END OF SECTION 31 05 13

SECTION 31 05 16
AGGREGATES FOR EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Coarse aggregate.
   2. Fine aggregate.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork" for granular fill, topsoil, and grading materials.
   2. Section 312213 "Rough Grading" for removal of topsoil, rough grading, and filling associated with contouring of Site.
   3. Section 312316 "Excavation" for excavating as required for building foundations and utilities within building perimeter.
   4. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for excavating as required for building foundations and utilities within building perimeter.
   5. Section 312323 "Fill" for backfilling as required at building perimeter and Site structures to subgrade elevations.
   6. Section 312500 "Erosion and Sedimentation Controls" for slope protection and erosion control.
   7. Section 321123 "Aggregate Base Courses" for subbase and base course for placement under asphalt or concrete paving, unit paving, or placed and left exposed.
   8. Section 331416 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping" for pipe materials, fittings, valves, meters, and backflow preventers.
   9. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for pipe materials and accessories normally encountered with gravity sanitary building piping.
   10. Section 334200 "Stormwater Conveyance" for drainage facilities to collect and provide for the flow of stormwater.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. Fine aggregate.
   2. Coarse aggregate.
   3. Submit name of imported materials source.

B. Samples: Submit, in airtight containers, sample of aggregate to testing laboratory.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: For fine- and coarse-aggregate materials.

1.3 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For the source and origin for fine- and coarse-aggregate materials.

B. Product Certificates: For the source for regional fine- and coarse-aggregate materials and distance from Project Site.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Furnish each aggregate material from single source throughout Work.

B. Perform Work according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. The State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.
   2. The Municipality of New Boston Department of Public Works standards.

2.2 COARSE AGGREGATE

A. Type A1: Comply with State of Illinois Department of Transportation standard.

B. Type A2 Gravel Borrow:
   1. Gravel borrow consists of processed inert fill material that is hard durable stone and coarse sand, free from loam and clay, surface coatings, and deleterious materials. Gradation requirements are determined by AASHTO T11 and T27 and conform to the following gradation:
      a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
         1) 2 Inches (50 mm): 100.
         2) 1/2 Inch (12.7 mm): 50 to 85.
         3) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 40 to 75.
         4) No. 50 (300 micro m): 8 to 28.
         5) No. 200 (75 micro m): 0 to 8.
         6) Liquid Limit: Not greater than 25.
         7) Plasticity Index: Not greater than 6, according to ASTM D4318.

C. Type A3 Crushed Stone:
   1. Crushed stone consists of one of the following materials:
      a. Durable crushed rock consisting of angular fragments obtained by breaking and crushing solid or shattered natural rock, and free from a detrimental quantity of thin, flat, elongated, or other objectionable pieces. A detrimental quantity will be considered as any amount in excess of 15 percent of the total weight.
         1) Thin stones are considered to be such stones whose average width exceeds four times their average thickness. Elongated stones are considered to be such stones whose average length exceeds four times their average width.
      b. Durable crushed gravel stone obtained by artificial crushing of gravel boulders or fieldstone with a minimum diameter before crushing of 8 inches.
   2. Provide crushed stone reasonably free from clay, loam, or deleterious material with not more than 1.0 percent of satisfactory material passing a No. 200 sieve allowed to adhere to the crushed stone. Where crushed stone is to be used for surfacing, this requirement shall be not more than 0.5 percent of satisfactory material passing a No. 200 sieve.
      a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
         1) 1-1/2 Inches (37.5 mm): 100.
         2) 1-1/4 Inches (31.75 mm): 85 to 100.
         3) 3/4 Inch (19 mm): 10 to 40.
         4) 1/2 Inch (12 mm): 0 to 8.

D. Type A3a Dense Graded Crushed Stone for Sub-base:
   1. Graded crushed stone for sub-base material combines crusher-run coarse aggregates of crushed stone and fine aggregates uniformly premixed with a predetermined quantity of water. Coarse aggregate consists of hard, durable particles of fragments of stone. Materials that break up when alternately frozen and thawed or wetted and dried are not acceptable. Provide coarse aggregate with a percentage of wear, by the Los Angeles Abrasion Test, of not more than 45. Fine aggregate consists of natural or crushed sand.

Provide the composite material free from clay, loam, or other plastic material, which conforms to the following gradation requirements:

a. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
   1) 2 Inches (50 mm): 90 to 100.
   2) 1-1/2 Inches (37.5 mm): 70 to 100.
   3) 3/4 Inch (19 mm): 50 to 85.
   4) No. 4 (4.75 mm): 30 to 55.
   5) No. 50 (300 micro m): 8 to 24.
   6) No. 200 (75 micro m): 3 to 10.

E. Type A4 Pea Gravel:
   1. Stone: Natural and washed.
   2. Quality: Free of clay, shale, and organic matter.
   3. Grading:
      a. Comply with ASTM C136/C136M.
      b. Minimum Size: 1/4 inch.
      c. Maximum Size: 5/8 inch.

2.3 FINE AGGREGATE

A. Type A5: Comply with State of Illinois Department of Transportation standard.

B. Type A6 Natural River or Bank Sand, Washed:
   1. Quality: Free of silt, clay, loam, friable or soluble materials, and organic matter.
   2. Grading: Comply with ASTM C136/C136M.
   3. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      a. No. 4 (4.75 mm): 100.
      b. No. 14 (1.4 mm): 10 to 100.
      c. No. 50 (300 micro m): 5 to 90.
      d. No. 100 (150 micro m): 4 to 30.
      e. No. 200 (75 micro m): Zero.

C. Type A7 Blended Aggregate:
   1. Produce blended aggregate by intermixing two or more fine or coarse aggregates to produce an aggregate combination with improved grading or other properties.
   2. Percent Passing According to Sieve Size:
      a. 3/8 Inch (9.5 mm): 100.
      b. 1/4 Inch (6.3 mm): 98 to 100.
      c. No. 4 (4.75 mm): 90 to 100.
      d. No. 10 (2.000 mm): 56 to 76.
      e. No. 20 (850 micro m): 40 to 54.
      f. No. 40 (425 micro m): 25 to 45.
      g. No. 80 (180 micro m): 13 to 29.
      h. No. 200 (75 micro m): 4 to 10.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF COARSE AGGREGATE AND FINE AGGREGATE

A. Excavation:

1. Excavate aggregate materials from Site locations as designated by Architect/Engineer and as specified in Section 312213 "Rough Grading.", 312316 "Excavation.", and 312316.13 "Trenching.".
2. Remove excess excavated materials not intended for reuse from Site.
3. Remove excavated materials not meeting requirements from Site.

B. Stockpiling:
1. Stockpile materials on Site at locations as designated by Architect/Engineer.
2. Stockpile excavated material meeting requirements for materials.
3. Stockpile in sufficient quantities to meet Project schedule and requirements.
4. Separate different aggregate materials with dividers or stockpile apart to prevent intermixing of aggregate types or contamination.
5. Direct surface water away from stockpile site to prevent erosion or deterioration of materials.
6. Stockpile unsuitable materials on impervious material and cover to prevent erosion and leaching until they are disposed.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Stockpile:
1. Remove stockpile and leave area in clean and neat condition.
   a. Grade Site surface to prevent freestanding surface water.
2. Leave unused materials in neat, compact stockpile.

END OF SECTION 31 05 16

SECTION 31 05 19.13
GEOTEXTILES FOR EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Woven turf reinforcement mats (TRMs).
2. Nonwoven geotextile materials.
3. Woven geotextiles for erosion control.
4. Woven geotextiles for paved and unpaved roads.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork" for fill and grading materials.
2. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for fill and base coarse materials, and for fill over woven geotextiles at roadway applications.
3. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for soil and subsoil materials for fill and grading purposes.
4. Section 312323 "Fill" for backfilling required at building perimeter and Site structures to subgrade elevations; fill under slabs on grade, pavement, and landscaped areas.
5. Section 312500 "Erosion and Sedimentation Controls" for erosion and sedimentation control devices.
6. Section 320513 "Soils for Exterior Improvements" for soil and subsoil materials for fill and grading purposes.
7. Section 320516 "Aggregates for Exterior Improvements" for coarse and fine aggregate materials for fill and grading purposes.
8. Section 321123 "Aggregate Base Courses" for subbase and base course for placement under paving.
9. Section 329119 "Landscape Grading" for placing, leveling, and compacting topsoil materials prior to final landscaping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Woven turf reinforcement mats (TRMs).
2. Nonwoven geotextile materials.
3. Woven geotextiles for erosion control.
4. Woven geotextiles for paved and unpaved roads.
5. Submit manufacturer information including tensile strength, elongation, thickness, UV resistance, and other material specifications.
6. Submit testing agency compliance with the Geosynthetic Accreditation Institute's Laboratory Accreditation Program (GAI-LAP).

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Indicate fabric layout, seam locations, and overlap details in installation drawings.
2. Seaming Procedures: When a field-sewn seam is required, use high-strength polypropylene or polyester threads. Do not use nylon thread. Comply with ASTM D4884/D4884M. Use the following guidelines for seams sewn in the field:
    a. Provide sample using the same equipment and procedures utilized in production of the geotextile.
    b. Submit the seam assembly description, including the seam type, stitch type, sewing thread, and stitch density, along with the sample of the seam.

3. Signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Samples:
   1. Submit one sample, for each type and weight of geotextile used on Project, illustrating thickness and seaming method.

D. Source Quality-Control Reports: For TRMs and woven and nonwoven geotextiles.

E. Qualifications Statements: For manufacturer, installer, and testing agency.

F. Manufacturer's Approval: For installer.

G. Provide shop inspection and testing of completed assembly. Comply with ASTM D4759.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of geotextile materials, including placement depth.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Comply with ASTM D4873.

C. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.

D. Protection:
   1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
   2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. The State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.
   2. The Municipality of New Boston Department of Public Works standards.

B. Ensure that terminology incorporated herein complies with ASTM D4439.

2.2 WOVEN TURF REINFORCEMENT MATS (TRMS)

A. Provide turf reinforcement mats (TRMs) with sufficient thickness, optimum open area, and three-dimensionality for effective erosion control and vegetation reinforcement against high flow-induced shear forces. Provide material that has high interlock and reinforcement capacity with both soil and root systems and is designed for erosion control applications on steep slopes and vegetated waterways.

B. Manufacturers:
   1. Propex Operating Company, LLC.
   2. Contech Engineered Solutions LLC.
   3. Nilex, Inc.

C. Furnish materials according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

D. Non-biodegradable, UV-resistant, woven geotextile fabric.

E. Edges: finished to prevent separation of outer material.

F. Calendar such that yarns will retain relative positions.

G. Performance and Design Criteria:
   1. Comply with AASHTO M 288.
   2. Mass per Unit Area:
      a. 14.0 oz./sq. yd.
      b. Comply with ASTM D6566.
   3. Thickness:
      a. 0.40 inch.
      b. Comply with ASTM D6525/D6525M.
   4. Light Penetration:
      a. Light Passing: 75 percent.
      b. Comply with ASTM D6567.
   5. Tensile Strength (Grab):
      a. 4,000 by 3,000 lb./ft.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
   6. Maximum Elongation:
      a. 35 percent.
      b. Comply with ASTM D6818.
   7. Resiliency:
      a. 80 percent.
      b. Comply with ASTM D6524/D6524M.
   8. Average Flexibility:
      a. 0.534 IP.
      b. Comply with ASTM D6575/D6575M.
   9. UV Resistance at 6,000 Hours:
      a. Strength Retention: 90 percent.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4355/D4355M.
   10. Velocity Performance:
      a. Velocity (Vegetated): 25 fps.
   11. Seeding Emergence:
      a. Comply with ASTM D7322

2.3 NONWOVEN GEOTEXTILE MATERIALS

A. Provide nonwoven geotextile that meets AASHTO M 288 Class 3 requirements for subsurface drainage, separation, and stabilization. Provide multipurpose fabrics with a felt-like appearance. The main functions for these products are filtration and separation. The most common nonwoven is a needle-punched product. Staple fibers or continuous filaments are bonded by mechanically entangling the fibers with barbed needles. Their optimum open area and three-dimensionality provide effective erosion control and vegetation reinforcement, as well as resistance against high flow-induced shear forces. Provide material that has high interlock and reinforcement capacities with both soil and root systems and is designed for erosion control applications on steep slopes and vegetated waterways.

B. Manufacturers:
   1. TENCATE Mirafi.
   2. Carthage Mills.
   3. Hanes Geo Components.

C. Furnish materials according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

D. Non-biodegradable, UV-resistant, nonwoven geotextile fabric.

E. Edges: finished to prevent separation of outer material.

F. Calendar such that yarns will retain relative positions.

G. Performance and Design Criteria:
   1. Minimum Unseamed Sheet Width: 12.5 by 15 feet.
   2. Nominal Weight: 4.2 oz./sq. yd.
   3. Apparent Opening Size (AOS):
      a. No 70 U.S. standard sieve size.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4751.
   4. Water Permittivity: 1.70 Hz per second, minimum average roll value.
   5. Water Flow Rate:
      a. 135 gpm/sq. ft. , minimum average roll value.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4491/D4491M.
   6. Grab Tensile Strength:
      a. 120 lbf, minimum average roll value.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
   7. Elongation:
      a. 50 percent, minimum average roll value.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
   8. Trapezoidal Tear Strength:
      a. 50 lbf minimum average roll value.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4533/D4533M.
   9. Puncture Strength:
      a. 310 lbf minimum average roll value.
      b. Comply with ASTM D6241.
   10. UV Resistance at 500 Hours:
      a. Strength Retention: 70 percent.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4355/D4355M.

2.4 WOVEN GEOTEXTILES FOR EROSION CONTROL

A. Provide woven geotextile that meets AASHTO M 288 Class 2 and 3 (less than 15 percent fines) for permanent erosion control and subsurface drainage. Provide woven monofilament filtration geotextile made of 100 percent polypropylene yarns. Provide woven geotextile with opening area of 4 to 6 percent to provide excellent hydraulic properties and reduce clogging.

B. Manufacturers:
   1. TENCATE Mirafi.
   2. Carthage Mills.
   3. US Fabrics.

C. Furnish materials according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

D. Non-biodegradable, UV-resistant, woven geotextile fabric.

E. Edges: finished to prevent separation of outer material.

F. Calendar such that yarns will retain relative positions.

G. Performance and Design Criteria:
   1. Roll Dimension: 12.5 by 300 feet.
   2. Nominal Roll Weight: 176 lb.
   3. Apparent Opening Size (AOS):
      a. No. 70 U.S. standard sieve size.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4751.

4. Water Permittivity: 0.28 Hz per second, minimum average roll value.
5. Water Flow Rate:
    a. 18 gpm/sq. ft., minimum average roll value.
    b. Comply with ASTM D4491/D4491M.
6. Grab Tensile Strength:
    a. 370 by 250 lb., minimum average roll value.
    b. Comply with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
7. Elongation:
    a. 15 percent, minimum average roll value.
    b. Comply with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
8. Trapezoidal Tear Strength:
    a. 100 by 60 lb. , minimum average roll value.
    b. Comply with ASTM D4533/D4533M.
9. Puncture Strength:
    a. 950 lb., minimum average roll value.
    b. Comply with ASTM D6241.
10. UV Resistance at 500 Hours:
    a. Strength Retention: 90 percent.
    b. Comply with ASTM D4355/D4355M.
11. Percent Open Area:
    a. 4 percent.
    b. Comply with Corps of Engineers (COE) - 02215.

2.5 WOVEN GEOTEXTILES FOR PAVED AND UNPAVED ROADS

A. Provide woven geotextile which meets AASHTO M 288 Class 1. Provide road fabric that separates and stabilizes materials. Provide flexible, porous geotextile placed between different materials so that both materials can either function properly or have improved functionality. Geotextile road fabrics prevent rutting and erosion, allowing water to flow through gravel or a thin layer of sediment to the soil and dirt underneath.

B. Manufacturers:
    1. CHEROKEE Manufacturing.
    2. One Clarion.
    3. US Fabrics.
    4. Pro Fabric Supply.

C. Furnish materials according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

D. Non-biodegradable, UV-resistant, woven geotextile fabric.

E. Edges: finished to prevent separation of outer material.

F. Calendar such that yarns will retain relative positions.

G. Performance and Design Criteria:
    1. Weight:
        a. 6.3 oz./sq. yd.
        b. Comply with ASTM D5261.
    2. Apparent Opening Size (AOS):
        a. No. 43 U.S. standard sieve size.
        b. Comply with ASTM D4751.
    3. Water Permittivity: 0.05 Hz per second, minimum average roll value.
    4. Water Flow Rate:
        a. 4 gpm/sq. ft., minimum average roll value.

b. Comply with ASTM D4491/D4491M.

5. Grab Tensile Strength:
   a. 315 lb., minimum average roll value.
   b. Comply with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
6. Grab Elongation:
   a. 15 percent, minimum average roll value.
   b. Comply with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
7. Trapezoidal Tear Strength:
   a. 120 lb., minimum average roll value.
   b. Comply with ASTM D4533/D4533M.
8. California Bearing Ratio (CBR) Puncture Strength:
   a. 1,000 lb., minimum average roll value.
   b. Comply with ASTM D6241.
9. UV Resistance at 500 Hours:
   a. Strength Retention: 70 percent.
   b. Comply with ASTM D4355/D4355M.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

A. Sewing Thread:
   1. Material: Polypropylene.
   2. Durability: Equal to or greater than durability of geotextile.

B. Securing Pins:
   1. Material: Steel rods.
   2. Diameter: 3/16 inch.
   3. Minimum Length: 12 inches.
   4. Washers:
      a. Material: Steel.
      b. Outside Diameter: Minimum 1-1/2 inches.
      c. Inside Diameter: 1/4 inch.
      d. Thickness: 1/8 inch.

C. Wire Staples:
   1. Material: Steel.
   2. Minimum Size: 10 gauge.
   3. Minimum Length: 6 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Verify that underlying surface is smooth and free of ruts or protrusions that could damage geotextile material.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Subgrade Material and Compaction Requirements: As specified in Section 312316.13 – Trenching and 312323 - Fill.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF GEOTEXTILES

A. Geotextile Material:
   1. Lay and maintain smooth and free of tensile stresses, folds, wrinkles, or creases.
   2. Ensure that material is in direct contact with subgrade.
   3. Orientate with long dimension of each sheet parallel to direction of slope.
   4. Minimum Unseamed Joints Overlap: 18 inches.

B. Securement Pins:
   1. Insert through geotextile midway between edges of overlaps and minimum 6 inches from free edges.
   2. Minimum Spacing:
      a. Slopes Steeper than 3 Horizontal on 1 Vertical: 24 inches o.c.
      b. Slopes 3 Horizontal on 1 Vertical to 4 Horizontal on 1 Vertical: 3 feet o.c.
      c. Slopes Flatter than 4 Horizontal on 1 Vertical: 5 feet o.c.
   3. Ensure that washer bears against geotextile.

C. Seams:
   1. Minimum Seamed Joints Overlap: 12 inches at longitudinal and transverse joints.
   2. Seams across Slope: Lap upper panel over lower panel.
   3. Sewn Seams:
      a. Continuously sew seams at locations indicated on Drawings.
      b. Stitch Type: As recommended by geotextile manufacturer.
      c. Tie off thread at the end of each seam to prevent unraveling.
   4. Thermal Seams:
      a. As recommended by geotextile manufacturer.
      b. Comply with ASTM D4886.

D. Penetrations: As recommended by geotextile manufacturer.

E. Repair Damaged Geotextiles:
   1. Repair torn or damaged geotextile by placing patch of same type of geotextile over damaged area minimum of 12 inches beyond edge of damaged area and fasten as recommended by geotextile manufacturer.
   2. Remove and replace geotextile rolls which cannot be repaired.

F. Fill and Cover:
   1. Place fill to prevent tensile stress or wrinkles in geotextile.
   2. Place fill from bottom of side-slopes upward.
   3. Do not drop fill from height greater than 3 feet.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Manufacturer Services: Furnish services of manufacturer's representative experienced in installation of products furnished under this Section for not less than 4 hours on Site for installation and inspection.

B. Equipment Acceptance:
   1. Adjust, repair, modify, or replace components failing to perform as specified.
   2. Make final adjustments to equipment under direction of manufacturer's representative.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Ballast: Adequate to prevent uplift of material by wind.

B. UV Exposure: Do not leave material uncovered for more than 14 days after installation.

C. Do not use staples or pins to hold geotextiles in place where located adjacent to other geosynthetic layers that could be damaged.

D. Do not operate equipment directly on top of geotextiles.

END OF SECTION 31 05 19.13

SECTION 31 10 00
SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Removing surface debris.
   2. Removing designated paving and curbs.
   3. Removing designated trees, shrubs, and other plant life.
   4. Removing abandoned utilities.
   5. Excavating topsoil.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 312213 - Rough Grading.

1.2 UNIT PRICE - MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Site Clearing:
   1. Basis of Measurement: By acre.
   2. Basis of Payment: Includes clearing site, loading and removing waste materials from site, applying herbicide to designated plant life.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit data for herbicide. Indicate compliance with applicable codes for environmental protection.
   1. Provide cost data for the following products:
      a. Regional products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with State of Illinois Department of Transportation standard.

B. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify existing plant life designated to remain is tagged or identified.

C. Identify waste area for placing removed materials.

2.2 PREPARATION

A. Call Local Utility Line Information service at Illinois One Call not less than two working days before performing Work.
   1. Request underground utilities to be located and marked within and surrounding construction areas.

2.3 CLEARING

A. Clear areas required for access to site and execution of Work to minimum depth of 6 inches.

B. Clear undergrowth and deadwood, without disturbing subsoil.

C. Apply herbicide to remaining stumps to inhibit growth.

2.4 REMOVAL

A. Remove debris, rock, and extracted plant life from site.

B. Partially remove paving and curbs as shown in the plans. Neatly saw cut edges at right angle to surface.

C. Remove abandoned utilities. Indicated removal termination point for underground utilities on Record Documents.

D. Continuously clean-up and remove waste materials from site. Do not allow materials to accumulate on site.

E. Do not burn or bury materials on site. Leave site in clean condition.

2.5 TOPSOIL EXCAVATION

A. Excavate topsoil from disturbed turf areas without mixing with foreign materials for use in finish grading.

B. Do not excavate wet topsoil.

C. Stockpile in area designated on site and protect from erosion. Stockpile material until disposal.

D. Remove excess topsoil not intended for reuse, from Site.

END OF SECTION 31 10 00

SECTION 31 22 13
ROUGH GRADING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Excavating topsoil.
   2. Excavating subsoil.
   3. Cutting, grading, filling, and compacting Site for buildings and pavement improvements.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for excavating topsoil.
   2. Section 312316 "Excavation" for building excavation.
   3. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for trenching and backfilling for utilities.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Samples: Submit, in airtight containers samples of fill to testing laboratory.

B. Source Quality-Control Reports: For subsoil and topsoil.

C. Material Test Reports: For each fill material, by a qualified testing agency.

D. Field Quality-Control Reports: For fill material placement and compaction.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of remaining utilities by horizontal dimensions, elevations or inverts, and slope gradients.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work according to ASTM C136, ASTM D2419, and ASTM D2434.

B. Perform Work according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standard.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. The State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for moisture content**,** installation tolerances, compaction, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Verify survey benchmark and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated on Drawings.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Call local utility line information service at Illinois One Call not less than two working days before performing Work.
   1. Request underground utilities to be located and marked within and surrounding construction areas.

B. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.

C. Protect utilities indicated to remain free from damage.

D. Protect plant life, lawns, and other features remaining as portion of final landscaping.

E. Protect benchmarks, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.

3.3 TOPSOIL EXCAVATION

A. Excavate topsoil in disturbed turf areas without mixing with foreign materials for use in finish grading.

B. Do not excavate wet topsoil.

C. Stockpile in area designated on Site and protect from erosion. Stockpile material until disposal.

D. Remove from Site excess topsoil not intended for reuse.

E. Remove topsoil from Site.

F. Do not remove topsoil from Site.

3.4 SUBSOIL EXCAVATION

A. Excavate subsoil from areas to be further excavated.

B. When excavating through roots, perform Work by hand and cut roots with sharp axe or a Sawzall reciprocating saw.

C. Remove from Site excess subsoil not intended for reuse.

D. Remove subsoil from Site.

E. Stockpile subsoil in area designated on Site and protect from erosion.

F. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on Site.

G. Stability: Replace damaged or displaced subsoil as specified for fill.

3.5 FILLING

A. Fill areas to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.

B. Place fill material in continuous layers and compact to 95% standard proctor density.

C. Place material in continuous layers as follows:
   1. Subsoil Fill: Maximum 8 inches compacted depth.
   2. Structural Fill: Maximum 6 inches compacted depth.
   3. Granular Fill: Maximum 6 inches compacted depth.

D. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.

E. Slope grade away from building with a minimum 1.5 percent slope for minimum distance of 5 feet, unless noted otherwise.

F. Make grade changes gradual. Blend slope into level areas.

G. Repair or replace items damaged by excavation or filling.

H. Install Work according to City of New Boston standards.

3.6 TOLERANCES

A. Top Surface of Subgrade: Plus or minus 0.1 feet from required elevation.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform laboratory material tests according to ASTM D1557.

B. Perform in-place compaction tests according to the following:
   1. Density Tests: ASTM D1556.
   2. Moisture Tests: ASTM D6938.

C. When tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, and retest.

D. Frequency of Tests: at the completion of each layer of fill and prior to paving operations.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 31 22 13

SECTION 31 23 00
FOUNDATION EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Foundation, excavating, and backfilling within five feet of the building perimeter, when information is not explicitly provided by the Geotechnical Engineer of Record. Work shall include, but not be limited to, the following items:

1. Removal of all unacceptable soil.
2. Furnish and install acceptable fill.
3. Prepare subgrade for footings and slab on grade.

B. The following items are not a part of this specification:

1. Utility trenching and related backfilling outside the building footprint.
2. Subgrade for exterior walks and paving.

C. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding foundation excavating and backfilling shall be considered part of this specification.

D. Direction from the Geotechnical Engineer of Record shall supersede any information provided in this specification.

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.

B. Pertinent Sections of Division 31.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provisions of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.

1. ASTM C136 - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.
2. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort.
3. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using the Modified Effort.
4. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System).
5. ASTM D2940 - Standard Specification for Graded Aggregate Material for Bases or Subbases for Highways or Airports.
6. ASTM D4253 - Standard Test Methods for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table.
7. ASTM D4254 - Standard Test Methods for Minimum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils and Calculation of Relative Density.

8. ASTM D4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.
9. ASTM D6938 - Standard Test Methods for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).
10. Illinois Department of Transportation (IDOT): IDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction.

1.04 TESTING

A. Minimum testing frequency and locations:

1. Laboratory Testing:

   a. Granular fill: One representative gradation test for each type of material.
   b. Cohesive soils: One representative set of Atterberg limits and moisture density test for each type of material used.
   c. Non-cohesive soils: One representative moisture density test for each type of material used.

2. Field Testing:

   a. The Special Inspector or Geotechnical Engineer of Record shall determine the location of testing.
   b. Testing of final utility trench backfill shall begin at a depth of 2 feet above the top of the pipe.
   c. In-place field density test and moisture content tests shall be performed as follows:

      1) Fills not within the influence of building foundations and slab on grade: Per civil specifications.
      2) For fills within the influence of building foundations and slab on grade, the following criteria shall apply: One test for each 8-inch vertical lift of compacted fill placed per 2,500 square feet of fill area (minimum of two tests per lift per structure for areas smaller than 5,000 square feet).

   d. Additional testing may be required by the Special Inspector or Geotechnical Engineer of Record if noncompliance or a change in conditions occurs.
   e. If a test fails, the Contractor shall rework the material, recompact and retest as necessary until specific compaction is achieved in all areas of the trench. All costs associated with this work, including retesting, shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Material Test Reports: Provide the Owner and Architect with the on-site material test reports from the Special Inspection Agency indicating the interpreting test results for compliance with this specification.

1.06 PROTECTION

A. Contractor shall provide for design, permits and installation of all cribbing, bracing, shoring and other methods required to safely retain earth banks and excavations.

B. Notify the Architect and Geotechnical Engineer of Record immediately and discontinue work in affected area if adjacent existing footings are encountered during excavation. Underpin other adjacent structures that may be damaged by excavation work, including service utilities and pipe chases.

C. Notify the Architect and Geotechnical Engineer of Record of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue work in affected areas until notification to resume.

D. Protect benchmarks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, curbing, etc., from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.

E. Maintain and protect above and below grade utilities that are to remain.

F. Provide temporary heating or protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundations soils against freezing temperatures or frost during cold weather conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient acceptable soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Acceptable soils shall comply with the Geotechnical Report on file for this project.

C. Unacceptable soils shall comply with the Geotechnical Report on file for this project.

D. Free-draining granular fill materials shall comply with the Geotechnical Report on file for this project.

Coarse Aggregate Gradations						
Sieve Size - Percent Passing						
Grade No.	1-1/2"	1"	3/4"	1/2"	3/8"	No. 4
CA7	100	95 ± 5	-	45 ± 15	-	5 max

E. Engineered fill and utility base course materials shall comply with the Geotechnical Report on file for this project.

Coarse Aggregate Gradations						
Sieve Size - Percent Passing						
Grade No.	1-1/2"	1"	1/2"	No. 4	No. 16	No. 200
CA6	100 to 90	95 ± 5	75 ± 15	43 ± 13	25 ± 15	8 ± 4

Coarse Aggregate Gradations						
Sieve Size - Percent Passing						
Grade No.	1-1/2"	1"	1/2"	No. 4	No. 30	No. 200
IN#53	100	90 ± 10	67 ± 13	47 ± 13	21 ± 9	7 ± 3

F. Material Applications: Provide and install material meeting with the above requirements as follows:

1. General fill: Acceptable soils.
2. Backfill against basement and retaining walls for 2 feet directly adjacent to wall: Free-draining granular fill.
3. Backfill at over-excavated areas beneath footings: Engineered fill.
4. Sub-grade layer beneath slabs-on-grade: Refer to drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Identify and verify required lines, levels, contours and benchmark elevations for the work are as indicated.

B. Protect plant life, lawns, other features and vegetation to remain as a portion of the final landscaping.

C. Free groundwater is not expected during excavation. Contractor shall provide for de-watering of excavations from surface water, ground water or seepage. Where ground water occurs during excavation, special procedures shall be implemented as recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer of Record.

D. Identify known underground utility locations with stakes and flags.

3.02 EXCAVATION

A. All excavations shall be safely and properly backfilled.

B. All abandoned footings, utilities and other structures that interfere with new construction shall be removed.

C. All unacceptable material and organic material shall be removed from below all proposed slabs-on-grade and the exposed natural soil shall be proof rolled and the compaction verified by the soils testing firm prior to placing fill. Proof-roll with a loaded tandem dump truck, loaded ready-mix truck, roller, or equivalent weight vehicle. Materials exhibiting weakness, such as those exhibiting rutting or pumping, shall be removed and replaced with acceptable compacted fill material.

D. Do not excavate within the 45-degree bearing splay of any adjacent foundations.

E. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders and rock up to 1/3 cubic yard (measured by volume). Provide Owner with unit price per cubic yard for obstructions larger than 1/3 cubic yard.

F. Outside 45-degree bearing splay of foundations, correct areas over excavated with aggregate at no additional cost to the Owner.

G. Within the 45-degree bearing splay of foundations, correct areas over excavated with 2000 psi concrete fill at no additional cost to the Owner. Notify the Architect prior to performing such work.

H. Hand trim final excavation to remove all loose material.

I. Contractor shall form all dams and perform other work necessary for keeping the excavation clear of water during the progress of the work and, at Contractor's expense, shall pump or otherwise remove all surface and perched water which accumulates in the excavations. Perched water that cannot be de-watered in 48 hours of continuous pumping at a minimum rate of 60 gpm in dry weather shall be considered ground water.

J. If de-watering is required to lower the static level of the ground water, it will be paid for by the Owner on a unit price basis per hour as extra compensation.

K. Stockpile excavated material in the area designated and remove excess material not being used, from the site.

3.03 BACKFILLING

A. Verify foundation perimeter drainage system is complete and has been inspected prior to backfilling against foundation walls.

B. Support pipe and conduit during placement and compaction of bedding fill.

C. Systematically backfill to allow necessary time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, spongy, or frozen subgrade surfaces.

D. Backfill areas to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.

E. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, make grade changes gradual.

F. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, slope grade away from the building a minimum of 2 inches in 10 feet.

G. Contractor shall procure the approval of the subgrade from the Special Inspection Agency or Geotechnical Engineer of Record prior to the start of any filling or bedding operations.

H. Do not begin any backfill operations against any concrete walls until the concrete has achieved its specified strength.

I. Do not backfill against below grade walls without necessary bracing to support the walls or until supporting slab or framing is installed and has been anchored to the wall per the drawings.

J. Place and mechanically compact granular fill in continuous layers not to exceed 6 inches compacted depth.

K. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage adjacent utilities, vapor barriers, foundation perimeter drainage and foundation waterproofing.

L. All surplus fill materials are to be removed from the site.

M. Fill material stockpiles shall be free of unacceptable soil materials.

N. After work is complete, remove all excess stockpile material and repair stockpile area to its original condition.

3.04 COMPACTION

A. Compact all fill that will support building footings or floor slabs to 98 percent of the maximum dry density in accordance with ASTM D698. For relative cohesionless fill materials, where the percent passing the #200 sieve is less than 10 and the moisture density curve indicates only slight sensitivity to changing moisture content, compaction requirements should be changed to 75 percent relative density in accordance with ASTM D4253 and ASTM D4254.

B. Compact all fills that support paving and landscape per civil specifications.

3.05 FOUNDATIONS

A. Each footing excavation should be cleared of all obstructions and other organic or deleterious materials.

B. Localized areas of unstable or unacceptable material may be discovered during the stripping and excavation operation and may require over-excavation and backfilling. The Special Inspection Agency shall be present during the proof rolling to evaluate any localized areas and make recommendations regarding over-excavation, backfilling and recompaction of these areas. Fill placement and compaction shall be inspected and tested by the Special Inspection Agency.

C. Footing elevations shown on the drawings designate a minimum depth of footing where an appropriate soil bearing pressure is expected. Footings, piers and/or walls shall be lowered or extended as required to reach soil meeting the design bearing pressure. This work shall be performed per the recommendations of the Special Inspection Agency.

D. All footing excavations shall be recompacted by hand-operated, vibratory compaction equipment, except where compaction will degrade the integrity of subgrade soils. In these instances, bottom of footing excavations should be hand-trimmed to remove loosened material.

E. All excavation and recompacted surfaces shall be inspected and tested to a depth of 2.0 feet below the excavated elevation by the Special Inspection Agency. Additional field density tests should be performed for each one foot of fill material placed. Any areas not in compliance with the compaction requirements should be corrected and re-tested prior to placement of fill material.

3.06 SLAB-ON-GRADE

A. All disturbed areas after the clearing and stripping operation should be proof-rolled and recompacted with a heavy vibratory drum roller (approved by the Special Inspection Agency) in the static mode. The compactor should make a minimum of 10 passes, with a minimum of one foot overlap of each pass. The compactor speed should be less than 0.2 MPH.

B. The Special Inspection Agency shall monitor proof-rolling and compaction operations. This area should then be tested for compaction to a depth of 2.0 feet below the compacted surface prior to the placement of any structural fill material.

3.07 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL (AT SLAB-ON-GRADE LOCATIONS)

A. Excavate and backfill utility trenches under wall footings as shown on the drawings.

B. Place utility base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

C. Place and compact utility base course on trench bottoms and where indicated.

D. Lay underground utilities on 6" sand bedding, which meets the acceptable criteria of Section 2.1B.

E. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

F. After connection joints are made, any misalignment can be corrected by tamping the sand around the utilities.

G. Place and compact initial backfill of acceptable sand to a height of 6 inches over the utility pipe or conduit in 6 inch layers meeting specified compaction requirements.

H. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit.

I. Place and compact final backfill using acceptable soil to final subgrade elevation meeting specified compaction requirements.

J. Backfill voids with acceptable soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.

K. Special Inspection Agency shall monitor and test compacted backfill to verify final compaction meets the specified requirement.

3.08 TOLERANCES

A. Top surface of backfilling under paved areas: Plus or minus 1/2 inch from required elevation.

B. Top surface of general backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevation.

END OF SECTION 31 23 00

SECTION 31 23 16
EXCAVATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Soil densification.
   2. Excavating for building foundations.
   3. Excavating for paving.
   4. Excavating for slabs on grade.
   5. Excavating for Site structures.
   6. Excavating for landscaping.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 312213 "Rough Grading" for topsoil and subsoil removal from Site surface.
   2. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for excavating as required for building foundations and utilities within building perimeter.
   3. Section 312500 "Erosion and Sedimentation Controls" for slope protection and erosion control.
   4. Section 331416 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping" for pipe materials, fittings, valves, meters, and backflow preventers.
   5. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for pipe materials and accessories normally encountered with gravity sanitary building piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. The State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for moisture content, installation tolerances, compaction, and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Call local utility line information service at Illinois One Call not less than two working days before performing Work.

B. Request that underground utilities be located and marked within and immediately surrounding project limits.

C. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and data.

D. Existing Utilities:
   1. Protect from damage utilities indicated to remain.

E. Protect plant life, lawns, and other features designated to remain as portion of final landscaping.

F. Protect benchmarks, existing structures, sidewalks, paving, curbs, and survey control points from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.

G. Do not close or obstruct roadways and hydrants without permits.

H. Erect and maintain temporary barriers and security devices, including warning signs, warning lights, and similar measures, for protection of public and existing improvements indicated to remain.

3.3 SOIL DENSIFICATION BY VIBRO-COMPACTION

A. Before excavating Site, vibro-compact substrates below bearing surfaces for footings as indicated on Drawings.

B. Densify existing subsoils with existing relative density rating of "compact to dense" to attain relative density rating of "very dense."

C. Depth Vibrator:
   1. Type: Poker.
   2. Follower Tubes: Furnish visible marking every 12 inches to enable insertion depth measurement.
   3. Motion: Radial in horizontal plane.
   4. Data Acquisition System: Record amps or pressure of vibrator motor over time and depth.

D. Procedure: Perform densification in presence of testing company, directly under each footing, with vibrator inserted in grid pattern at maximum 6 feet o.c.
   1. Arrange compaction grid for each footing for maximum number of insertion points, and with outermost insertion points within bearing area of footings.
   2. Adjust compaction grid arrangement and spacing as directed by testing company to achieve required densification.
   3. Insert vibrator to maximum specified depth, densify soils for 30 seconds or other amount of time as directed by testing company, and withdraw vibrator every 12 inches while repeating densification at each increment.
   4. If subsurface obstruction prevents vibrator insertion to specified depth, request instructions from testing company to compensate for obstruction.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Deviation from Center of Completed Compaction: 8 inches from indicated position.

B. Maximum Deviation from Vertical: 4 degrees during vibrator insertion.

3.5 EXCAVATION

A. Underpin adjacent structures which may be damaged by excavation Work.

B. Excavate subsoil to accommodate building foundations, paving, and construction operations.

C. Excavate to working elevation for piling Work.

D. Compact disturbed load-bearing soil in direct contact with foundations to original bearing capacity as specified in Section 312316.13 "Trenching".

E. Slope banks with machine to angle of repose.

F. Do not interfere with 45-degree bearing splay of foundations.

G. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water from draining into excavation.

H. Trim excavation and remove loose matter.

I. Removal of Deleterious Materials:
   1. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu. yd. measured by volume.

2. Remove excess and unsuitable material from Site.

J. Notify Architect/Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions.

K. Correct over-excavated areas as directed by Architect/Engineer.
1. Remove excavated material from Site.
2. Stockpile subsoil in area designated on Site and protect from erosion.
3. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on Site.

L. Repair or replace items indicated to remain that have been damaged by excavation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Request visual inspection of bearing surfaces by testing company before installing subsequent Work.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Prevent displacement or loose soil from falling into excavation and maintain soil stability.

B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil adjacent to and beneath foundation from freezing.

C. Protect structures, utilities, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that may be created by earth operations.

END OF SECTION 31 23 16

SECTION 31 23 16.13
TRENCHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Excavating trenches for utilities from 5 feet outside building.
2. Compacted fill from top of utility bedding.
3. Fill materials.
4. Trench shoring shields or boxes.
5. Temporary steel plates.
6. Geotextiles.
7. Backfilling and compaction.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 312213 "Rough Grading" for topsoil and subsoil removal from Site surface.
2. Section 312316 "Excavation" for general building excavation.
3. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for sanitary sewer piping and bedding.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Excavator: Any entity including, but not limited to, a person, partnership, joint venture, trust, corporation, association, public utility, company, or state or local government body or public agency which performs excavation operations, including the excavation of trenches.

B. Trench: An excavation which is narrow in relation to its length and deeper than it is wide, made more than three feet below grade, with width no greater than 15 feet as measured from the bottom.

C. Trench Shoring: The methods and equipment, including shores and props, used to brace the walls of a trench during excavation work and to prevent the trench walls from collapsing into the trench. Also referred to as trench bracing or trench lining.

D. Utility: Any buried pipe, duct, conduit, or cable.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit data for sheeting, shoring, trench shoring shields, and geotextile fabric indicating fabric and construction.

B. Samples:
1. Submit, in airtight containers sample of fill to testing laboratory.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: For subsoil.

D. Material Test Reports: For each fill material, by a qualified testing agency.

E. Field Quality-Control Reports: For fill material placement and compaction.

1.4 PROTECTION OF UNDERGROUND FACILITIES

A. The Contractor will conduct an investigation to assure that no damage to existing structures, drainage lines, utilities, or conduits will occur.

B. The Contractor is required to use caution when encountering active or abandoned utility structures to avoid possibly disturbing or damaging asbestos-containing materials (ACM), which may be present. The Contractor will notify the Architect/Engineer of any suspected ACM

encountered in Site utility structures and is responsible for arranging testing of the suspect material by polarized light microscopy (PLM) or other approved method before proceeding with any Work that would disturb the structures.

C. While the excavation is open, protect, support, or remove underground installations as necessary.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
1. The State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.
2. The Municipality of New Boston Department of Public Works standards.

2.2 FILL MATERIALS

A. Subsoil Fill: Type as specified in plans.

B. Structural Fill: as specified in plans.

C. Granular Fill: as specified in plans.

D. Concrete: Structural concrete as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" with compressive strength of 4000 psi.

2.3 TRENCH SHORING SHIELDS OR BOXES

A. Provide professional engineer-certified, high-strength, single-wall or double-wall high-strength steel trench shields or boxes with the following characteristics:
1. Modular shoring system.
2. Foam-filled option.
3. Lifting lugs standard.
4. Hardwood filled top boards.
5. Stackable.
6. Reinforced cutting edges.
7. Minimum five standard lengths.
8. Dual purpose end posts accept either panels, screw jacks, or spreaders allowing two-, three-, or four-sided shields using the same components.

B. Manufacturers:
1. American Shoring Inc.
2. ESC Trench Shoring.
3. PRO-TEC Equipment.
4. Trench Shoring Company.

2.4 TEMPORARY STEEL PLATES

A. Place temporary steel plates over all saw cuts and trenches in roadway areas that will be subjected to traffic during installations to allow for the passage of vehicular traffic.

B. Design the steel plates to size and thickness capable of supporting HS-20 loading, but not less than one inch thick.

C. Submit design criteria and calculations that determine the sizes to be used to Architect/Engineer for approval.

D. Completely cover the opening with plates and overlap a minimum of 24 inches on all sides.

1. Secure the plates to pavement with spikes or similar devices to prevent any movement of the plates.
2. Place bituminous concrete around the edges of the steel plating to provide a smooth transition on and off the plates for vehicles.
3. When the steel plating is removed, also remove the temporary bituminous concrete.

2.5 GEOTEXTILES

A. Filtration Fabric: Provide to line pipe trenches according to Section 310519.13 "Geotextiles for Earthwork," Paragraph 2.3 - Nonwoven Geotextile Materials.

B. Erosion Control: Provide erosion control and subsurface drainage geotextile as required for trench Work according to Section 310519.13 "Geotextiles for Earthwork," Paragraph 2.4 - Woven Geotextiles for Erosion Control.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for moisture content, installation tolerances, compaction, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with trench excavation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 LINES AND GRADES

A. Lay pipes and conduit to lines and grades as indicated on Drawings.
1. Architect/Engineer reserves right to make changes in lines, grades, and depths of utilities when changes are required for Project conditions.

B. Use laser-beam instrument with qualified operator to establish lines and grades.

C. Maintain grade alignment of pipe and conduit using string line parallel with grade line and vertically above centerline of pipe or conduit.
1. Establish string line on level batter boards at intervals of not more than 25 feet.
2. Install batter boards spanning trench, rigidly anchored to posts driven into ground on both sides of trench.
3. Set three adjacent batter boards before laying pipe to verify grades and line.
4. Determine elevation and position of string line from elevation and position of offset points or stakes located along pipe or conduit route.
5. Do not locate pipe or conduit using side lines for line or grade.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Call local utility line information service at Illinois One Call not less than two working days before performing Work.
1. Request underground utilities to be located and marked within and surrounding construction areas.
2. If utilities are to remain in place, provide adequate means of protecting during trench excavation operations.
3. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities be encountered during trench excavation, consult Architect/Engineer immediately for directions. Cooperate with Architect/Engineer and public utility service companies as required to keep their respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to the satisfaction of Architect/Engineer.

B. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.

C. Protect plant life, lawns, and other features remaining as portion of final landscaping.

D. Protect benchmarks, existing structures, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.

E. Maintain and protect above- and below-grade utilities indicated to remain.

F. Establish temporary traffic control when trenching is performed in public right-of-way. Relocate controls as required during progress of Work.

3.4 TRENCHING

A. Excavate subsoil required for utilities.

B. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock more than 1/6 cu. Yd measured by volume.

C. Perform excavation within 24 inches of existing utilities.

D. Do not advance open trench more than 200 feet ahead of installed pipe or conduit.

E. Cut trenches sufficiently wide to enable installation and allow inspection. Remove water or materials that interfere with Work according to OSHA 29 CFR 1926.650.

F. Excavate bottom of trenches maximum 2 feet wider than outside diameter of pipe or conduit.

G. Excavate trenches to depth as indicated on Drawings. Provide uniform and continuous bearing and support for bedding material and pipe.

H. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of trench or foundations.

I. When Project conditions permit, slope side walls of excavation starting 2 feet above top of pipe or conduit. When side walls cannot be sloped, provide sheeting and trench shoring shields to protect excavation as specified in this Section.

J. When subsurface materials at bottom of trench are loose or soft, notify Architect/Engineer and request instructions.

K. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with granular backfill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent backfill material.

L. Trim excavation. Remove loose matter.

M. Correct over-excavated areas with compacted backfill as specified for authorized excavation.

N. Remove from Site excess subsoil not intended for reuse.

O. Remove subsoil from Site.

P. Stockpile subsoil in area designated on Site and protect from erosion.

Q. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on Site.

R. Locate a stairway, ladder, ramp, or other safe means of egress in trench excavations that are 4 feet or more in depth to require no more than 25 feet of lateral travel for personnel.

3.5 SHEETING, SHORING, AND TRENCH SHORING SHIELDS

A. Utilize sheeting, shoring, and trench shoring shields and brace excavations to prevent danger to persons, structures, and adjacent properties and to prevent caving, erosion, and loss of surrounding subsoil.

B. Support trenches more than 5 feet deep excavated through unstable, loose, or soft material. Provide sheeting, shoring, bracing, trench shoring shields, or other protection to maintain stability of excavation.

C. When sheeting is used, drive it ahead of the excavation operations to avoid the loss of material from behind the sheeting. Fill voids that occur outside of the sheeting with gravel borrow, thoroughly compacted.

D. Assemble and place trench shoring shields according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Design sheeting and shoring to be left in place as part of the completed Work, cut off minimum 18 inches below finished grade.

F. Design sheeting and shoring to be removed at completion of excavation Work.

G. Repair damage caused by failure of the sheeting, shoring, trench shoring shields, or bracing and for settlement of filled excavations or adjacent soil.

H. Repair damage to Work from settlement, water pressure, earth pressure, or other causes resulting from inadequate sheeting, shoring, trench shoring shields, or bracing.

3.6 BACKFILLING

A. Backfill trenches to contours and elevations with unfrozen fill materials.

B. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, frozen, or spongy subgrade surfaces.

C. Place fill material in continuous layers and compact.

D. Place material in continuous layers as follows:
1. Subsoil Fill: Maximum 8 inches compacted depth.
2. Structural Fill: Maximum 6 inches compacted depth.
3. Granular Fill: Maximum 6 inches compacted depth.

E. Employ placement method that does not disturb or damage utilities in trench.

F. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.

G. Do not leave more than 50 feet of trench open at end of working day.

H. Protect open trench to prevent danger to the public.

3.7 TOLERANCES

A. Top Surface of Backfilling Under Paved Areas: Plus or minus 0.1 feet from required elevations.

B. Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus 0.1 feet from required elevations.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform laboratory material tests according to ASTM D1557.

B. ASTM D1556 is a sand cone method. ASTM D2167 is a balloon method. ASTM D6938 is a nuclear method. Coordinate required test methods with geotechnical report.

C. Perform in place compaction tests according to the following:
1. Density Tests: ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, or ASTM D6938.
2. Moisture Tests: ASTM D6938.

D. When tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, compact, and retest.

E. Frequency of Tests: at each layer of compaction.

3.9 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

A. Reshape and recompact fills subjected to vehicular traffic during construction.

END OF SECTION 31 23 16.13

SECTION 31 23 23
FILL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Backfilling building perimeter to subgrade elevations.
2. Backfilling site structures to subgrade elevations.
3. Fill under slabs on grade.
4. Fill under paving.
5. Fill for over-excavation.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete materials.
2. Section 310513 - Soils for Earthwork: Soils for fill.
3. Section 310516 - Aggregates for Earthwork: Aggregates for fill.
4. Section 310519.13 - Geotextiles for Earthwork: Geotextile fabric for placement over fill.
5. Section 312213 - Rough Grading: Site filling.
6. Section 312316 - Excavation: Backfilling of building foundations and utilities within building perimeter.
7. Section 312316.13 - Trenching: Backfilling of utility trenches.
8. Section 331416 - Site Water Utility Distribution Piping: Pipe materials, fittings, valves, meters, and backflow preventers.
9. Section 333100 - Sanitary Sewerage Piping: Pipe materials and accessories normally encountered with gravity sanitary building piping.
10. Section 334200 - Stormwater Conveyance: Drainage facilities to collect and provide for flow of stormwater.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
1. AASHTO T 180 - Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils

B. ASTM International:
1. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil
2. ASTM D1556/D1556M - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method.
3. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil.
4. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method.
5. ASTM D6031/D6031M - Standard Test Method for Logging In Situ Moisture Content and Density of Soil and Rock by the Nuclear Method in Horizontal, Slanted, and Vertical Access Tubes.
6. ASTM D6938 - Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer information for geotextile fabric, indicating fabric and construction.

C. Samples: Submit, in airtight containers, sample of fill to testing laboratory.

D. Materials Source: Submit name of imported materials suppliers.

E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

F. Field Quality-Control Submittals: Indicate results of Contractor-furnished tests and inspections.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Subsoil Fill: As specified in Section 310513 - Soils for Earthwork.

B. Structural Fill: As specified in Section 310513 - Soils for Earthwork.

C. Granular Fill: As specified in Section 310516 - Aggregates for Earthwork.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Geotextile Fabric: As specified in Section 310519.13 - Geotextiles for Earthwork.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation examination.

B. Verify that subdrainage, damp proofing, and waterproofing installations have been inspected.

C. Verify that underground tanks are anchored to their own foundations to avoid floatation after backfilling.

D. Verify structural integrity of unsupported walls to support loads imposed by fill.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation preparation.

B. Compact subgrade to specified density requirements for subsequent backfill materials.

C. Soft Subgrade:
   1. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place.
   2. Backfill with approved structural or granular fill and compact to density equal to or greater than specified requirements for subsequent fill material.

D. Scarify subgrade surface to depth of 12 inches.

3.3 BACKFILLING

A. Backfill areas to contours and elevations.

B. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement.

C. Do not backfill over porous, wet, frozen, or spongy subgrade surfaces, and do not backfill with frozen materials.

D. Geotextile: Place geotextile fabric if called out in the plans, as specified in Section 310519.13 - Geotextiles for Earthwork.

E. Place fill material in continuous layers and compact.

F. Use placement method that does not disturb or damage utilities in trench or other existing infrastructure.

G. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.

H. Structures:
   1. Backfill against supported foundation walls.
   2. Backfill simultaneously on each side of unsupported walls until supports are in place.
   3. Slope grade away from building minimum 1.5 percent slope for minimum distance of 5 feet.

I. Make gradual grade changes and blend slope into level areas.

J. Remove surplus backfill materials from Site.

K. Leave fill material stockpile areas free of excess fill materials.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for tolerances.

B. Top Surface of Backfilling : Plus or minus 0.1 feet from required elevations.

C. Top Surface of Backfilling: Plus or minus 0.1 feet from required elevations.

D. Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus 0.1 feet from required elevations.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for inspecting and testing.

B. Inspecting: Request visual inspection of bearing surfaces by testing service before installing subsequent Work.

C. Testing:
   1. Laboratory Material Testing: Comply with AASHTO T 180.
   2. In-Place Compaction Testing:
      a. Density Tests: Comply with ASTM D1556/D1556M.
      b. Moisture Tests: Comply with ASTM D6031/D6031M.
   3. If tests indicate that Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, compact, and retest.
   4. Testing Frequency: each layer of compaction and prior to approval of subgrade.
   5. Proof-roll compacted fill surfaces under paving.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

B. Reshape and recompact fills subjected to vehicular traffic during construction.

3.7 ATTACHMENTS

A. Fill Under Grass Areas: below finish grade; compacted uniformly to 90 percent of maximum standard density.

B. Fill under Paving:

1. Compact subsoil to 95 percent of maximum standard density.

END OF SECTION 31 23 23

SECTION 31 25 00
EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Diversion channels.
2. Rock energy dissipator.
3. Paved energy dissipator.
4. Rock basin.
5. Rock barriers.
6. Sediment ponds.
7. Sediment traps.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 311000 - Site Clearing.
2. Section 312316 - Excavation.
3. Section 321313 - Concrete Paving.
4. Section 329113 - Soil Preparation.
5. Section 329219 - Seeding.
6. Section 334213 - Stormwater Culverts.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
1. AASHTO T88 - Standard Specification for Particle Size Analysis of Soils.
2. AASHTO T180 - Standard Specification for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop.

B. American Concrete Institute:

1. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete.

C. ASTM International:
1. ASTM C127 - Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate.
2. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft3 (600 kN-m/m3).
3. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3 (2,700 kN-m/m3).
4. ASTM D2922 - Standard Test Method for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).
5. ASTM D3017 - Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

D. Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute:
1. PCI MNL-116S - Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Precast and Prestressed Concrete Products.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with requirements of manufacturer.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Preinstallation meeting.

B. Convene minimum one week prior to commencing Work of this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Furnish materials according to plans.

B. Geotextile Fabric: As specified in plans.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting Work.

B. Verify compacted subgrade is acceptable and ready to support devices and imposed loads.

C. Verify gradients and elevations of base or foundation for other Work are correct.

3.2 DIVERSION CHANNELS

A. Windrow excavated material on low side of channel.

B. Compact to 95 percent maximum density.

C. On entire channel area, apply soil supplements and sow seed as specified in Section 329113 and Section 329219.

D. Mulch seeded areas with hay as specified in Section 329113 and Section 329219.

3.3 SITE STABILIZATION

A. Incorporate erosion control devices indicated on the Drawings into the Project at the earliest practicable time.

B. Construct, stabilize and activate erosion controls before site disturbance within tributary areas of those controls.

C. Slope stockpile sides at 2: 1 or flatter.

D. Stabilize any disturbed area of affected erosion control devices on which activity has ceased and which will remain exposed for more than 20 days.
   1. During non-germinating periods, apply mulch at recommended rates.
   2. Stabilize disturbed areas that are not at finished grade and which will be disturbed within one year in accordance with Section 329113 and Section 329219 at 70 percent of permanent application rate with no topsoil.
   3. Stabilize disturbed areas that either are at finished grade or will not be disturbed within one year in accordance with Section 329113 and Section 329219 permanent seeding specifications.

E. Stabilize diversion channels, sediment traps, and stockpiles immediately.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for cleaning.

B. When sediment accumulation in sedimentation structures has reached a point one-third depth of sediment structure or device, remove and dispose of sediment.

C. Do not damage structure or device during cleaning operations.

D. Do not permit sediment to erode into construction or site areas or natural waterways.

E. Clean channels when depth of sediment reaches approximately one half channel depth.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

B. Immediately after placement, protect paving from premature drying, excessive hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.

C. Protect paving from elements, flowing water, or other disturbance until curing is completed.

END OF SECTION 31 25 00

SECTION 31 26 00
STEEL HELICAL PILES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. All items required for executing and completing the steel helical pile work and related work shown on the drawings or specified herein.

B. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding steel helical piles should be considered a part of this specification.

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.

B. Section 03 20 00 - Concrete Reinforcement.

C. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

D. Section 31 23 00 - Foundation Excavating and Backfilling.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provisions of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.

1. ASCE 20 - Standard Guidelines for the Design and Installation of Pile Foundations.
2. ASME B18.2.1 - Square, Hex, Heavy Hex, and Askew Head Bolts and Hex, Heavy Hex, Hex Flange, Lobed Head, and Lag Screws (Inch Series).
3. ASTM A29 - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Bars, Carbon and Alloy, Hot-Wrought.
4. ASTM A36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.
5. ASTM A53 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
6. ASTM A123 - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
7. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
8. ASTM A193 - Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for High Temperature or High Pressure Service and Other Special Purpose Applications.
9. ASTM A252 - Standard Specification for Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe Piles.
10. ASTM A320 - Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for Low-Temperature Service.
11. ASTM A500 - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
12. ASTM A513 - Standard Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Carbon and Alloy Steel Mechanical Tubing.
13. ASTM A536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings.

14. ASTM A572 - Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel.
15. ASTM A618 - Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Tubing.
16. ASTM A656 - Standard Specification for Hot-Rolled Structural Steel, High-Strength Low-Alloy Plate with Improved Formability.
17. ASTM A958 - Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon and Alloy, with Tensile Requirements, Chemical Requirements Similar to Standard Wrought Grades.
18. ASTM A1018 - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Heavy-Thickness Coils, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Commercial, Drawing, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength.
19. ASTM D1143 - Standard Test Methods for Deep Foundations Under Static Axial Compressive Load.
20. ASTM D3689 - Standard Test Methods for Deep Foundations Under Static Axial Tensile Load.
21. ASTM D3966 - Standard Test Methods for Deep Foundations Under Lateral Load.
22. ASTM F3125 - Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 120 ksi and 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, Inch Dimensions.
23. AWS B2.1 - Specification for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification.
24. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel.
25. AWS D1.4 - Structural Welding Code - Reinforced Steel.
26. ICC AC358 - Acceptance Criteria for Helical Piles Systems and Devices.
27. OSHA Excavation Safety Guidelines.
28. SAE J429 - Mechanical and Material Requirements for Externally Threaded Fasteners.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

A. A partial list follows:

1. Bearing Stratum: The soil or highly weathered rock layer that provides the axial tension resistance for the installed helical pile.
2. Brackets: Cap plate, angle, thread bar, or other termination device that is bolted or welded to the end of a helical pile after completion of installation to facilitate attachment to structures or embedment in cast-in-place concrete.
3. Crowd: Axial compressive force or pressure applied to the helical pile as needed during installation to ensure the pile advances into the ground a minimum of 80% of the distance equal to the helix pitch for each revolution.
4. Deflection: The axial displacement of the pile as measured at the pile head under applied load.
5. Effective Torsional Resistance: The average installation torque typically taken over a distance equal to the last three diameters of penetration of the largest helix plate as close to or in the specified bearing stratum.
6. Extension Section: Helical pile component connecting the lead section to the load transfer device. Extension sections may be plain without helix plates or helical including one or more helix plates.
7. Factored Load: Service load times the required load factor.
8. Geotechnical Capacity: The maximum load that can be resisted through the bearing of the helix plates in the soil or highly weathered rock in which they are embedded as characterized by the available subsurface soils, rock and groundwater information, and geotechnical testing data, without exceeding the specified performance criteria.
9. Helical Pile: Consists of one or more helix plates attached to a central shaft and load transfer device for attachment to a structure. May also include surface coating or other corrosion protection means.
10. Helical Anchor: Same as a Helical Pile. Term generally used when axial tension is the primary service load.

11. Helix Plate (Helices): Generally round steel plate formed into a helical spiral and welded to the central steel shaft.
12. Installation Angle: Angle of inclination between the longitudinal axis of the helical pile and the horizontal.
13. Lead Section: The first helical pile component installed into the soil. It consists of one or more helical plates welded to the central steel shaft.
14. Limit State: A condition beyond which a helical pile component or interface becomes no longer useful for its intended function (serviceability limit state) or to be unsafe (strength limit state).
15. Loads: Forces or other actions as defined that must be resisted by the piles. Permanent loads are those loads in which variations over time are rare or of small magnitude. All other loads are variable loads. Refer also to Service Load below.
16. Load Factor: A factor that accounts for deviations of the actual load from the service load (load resistance factor design).
17. Load Test: A procedure to test the capacity and relation of load to deflection by applying a compression, tension, and/or lateral load on the helical pile.
18. Mechanical Strength: The maximum compressive, tension, and/or lateral load capable of being resisted by the structural elements of a helical pile.
19. Pile Design Professional: Individual or firm responsible for the design of helical piles, helical anchors, and brackets.
20. Reveal: The distance from ground surface to the end of the last installed extension of a pile, measured along the pile's longitudinal axis.
21. Pitch: The distance measured along the axis of the shaft between the leading and trailing edges of the helix plate.
22. Safety Factor: The ratio of the ultimate resistance to the service load used for the design of any helical pile component or interface.
23. Service Load: The total magnitude of the unfactored loads, determined by the Owner's Representative, that must be resisted by the piles.
24. Torque: The measure of the rotational force times the moment arm needed to overcome the shear strength of the soil measured in ft-lb. Torque is used as an empirical approach for predicting the ultimate capacity of a helical pile.
25. Ultimate Resistance: Limit state based on the lesser of mechanical strength or geotechnical capacity of the helical pile defined as the point at which no additional load can be applied without exceeding the specified performance criteria.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabrication and Installation Qualifications:

1. All welding of structural steel shall be performed by operators who have been recently qualified as prescribed in "Qualification Procedures" of the American Welding Society (AWS).
2. The Steel Helical Pile Contractor shall be fully experienced in all aspects of helical pile design and construction, and shall furnish all necessary materials, skilled labor, and supervision to carry out the contract. The Contractor shall not have less than five (5) years of continuous experience in fabrication and installation of steel helical pile work. Job supervisor shall have a minimum of three (3) years of method specific experience.
3. The Steel Helical Pile Contractor shall not sublet the whole or any part of the contract without the express permission in writing of the Owner.
4. Special Inspector shall keep a record or log of each pile as installed. Records shall show location, top and bottom elevations, shaft diameters, date installed, type of strata encountered, rated load capacity, grout pressure attained and any other pertinent information. A copy of this record shall be submitted to the Architect and Structural Engineer for their record files.
5. Helical Pile Contractor shall schedule and provide time and means for the Special Inspection Agency to inspect, take samples, and make tests.

B. Design:

1. Helical piles shall be designed to meet the specified loading as shown on the drawings and deflection criteria of 1/2" differential settlement and 1" total settlement. Calculations and drawings required from the Helical Pile Contractor shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer.
2. Except where noted in the drawings, all pile components shall be designed to provide a minimum safety factor for mechanical strength of 2.0.
3. Except where noted in the drawings, all piles shall be designed and installed to provide a minimum safety factor for ultimate applied load resistance of 2.0 , a maximum axial deflection at service load of 1 inch and must satisfy the deflection criteria as stated on the drawings.
4. Except where noted in the drawings, each pile shall be designed to meet a corrosion service life of 50 years.
5. The helical pile design shall take into account pile spacing, soil stratification, long-term soil consolidation, corrosion, settlement, and strain compatibility issues as are present for the project.
6. The helical pile top attachment shall effectively distribute the design load to the concrete foundations such that the concrete bearing stress does not exceed those in the ACI Building Code and the bending stress in the steel plates does not exceed AISC allowable stresses for steel members.
7. If on-site load testing is to be performed, the piles shall be designed such that the maximum test load does not exceed 90% of the manufacturer's rated mechanical strength of any pile component or load transfer device.

C. Corrosion Protection:

1. Structure Type: Permanent.
2. Service Life: 50 years
3. Soil: Non-Aggressive

Corrosion Protection				
Loading	Tension		Compression	
Soil	Aggressive[1]	Non-Aggressive	Aggressive[1]	Non-Aggressive
Central Steel Shaft (Lead Section)	Galvanization OR Minimum 1/8" corrosion loss on outside	Bare steel OR Galvanization OR Minimum 1/8" corrosion loss on outside	Galvanization OR Minimum 1/8" corrosion loss on outside	Bare steel OR Galvanization OR Minimum 1/8" corrosion loss on outside

Central Steel Shaft (Extension Section)	Galvanization OR Epoxy coating OR a. or b. + Grout cover[2]	Bare steel OR Galvanization OR Epoxy coating	Galvanization OR Epoxy coating OR a. or b. + Grout cover2	Bare steel OR Galvanization OR Epoxy coating
Steel Pipe Cap	Galvanization OR Epoxy coating	Bare steel OR Galvanization OR Epoxy coating	Galvanization OR Epoxy coating	Bare steel OR Galvanization OR Epoxy Coating

4. Corrosion protection shall extend 15'-0" below corrosive material.
5. Minimum cover of 1" in soil. If protective coatings (galvanization, epoxy) are provided in compression, minimum cover may be 0.25" in soil. Grout column can be installed using the HELICAL PULLDOWN® Micropile method.

1.06 ID REQUIREMENTS

A. Steel Helical Piles: Bids shall be provided for the lump sum amount based on the number of piles, estimated length, and total footage as shown in the drawings and/or specifications.

B. The Pile Contractor shall examine the construction site and conditions under which piles are to be installed and notify the Contractor/Construction Manager and Architect in writing prior to bidding of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of work.

C. Helical Pile Length: Base the length of the helical piles on the length listed on the drawings and in the Geotechnical Engineering Report. The elevation identifying the bottom of the shaft is an approximate length for consistent bidding purposes only. The actual length will be determined in the field from the actual elevation of the bearing stratum to be verified by the Special Inspection Agency.

D. Unit prices shall be issued to the Architect prior to construction as part of the submittal package.

E. Adjustments in the Contract Price will be made due to changes in the number and length of piles, based on unit prices established in Section 01 21 00 - Allowances as follows:

1. Payment for helical piles will be made on the total length of helical piles installed and accepted. Actual length and shaft diameter may change due to job conditions. Adjusted payment will be made based on net variations to the total quantities, based on design dimensions.

2. Provide the following unit costs if additions to, or deductions from, work, are required and authorized in writing by the Architect/Engineer:

    a. Additional length of helical pile ($/per foot)
    b. Subtracted length of helical pile ($/per foot)

1.07 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop drawings:

1. Prepare and submit to the Architect/Engineer, for review and approval, working drawings and relevant structural design calculations for the helical pile system or systems intended for use. All design submittals shall be sealed by a Structural engineer currently licensed in the State where the project is located.
2. Product Data:

    a. Product designations for helix sections, extension sections, and all ancillary products to be supplied at each helical pile location.
    b. Evaluation approved by the applicable building code authority (e.g., International Code Council Evaluation Services (ICC-ES)).
    c. Corrosion protection and pile top attachment.
    d. Manufacturer's published mechanical strengths for the pile assemblies, including load transfer devices per current ICC-ES report, calculations, and/or full-scale testing.

3. Design Data:

    a. Calculated geotechnical capacity of piles based on geotechnical information. The design submittal prepared by the pile designer shall indicate the selected piles can be installed to achieve the performance requirements.
    b. Minimum effective torsional resistance criteria.
    c. Maximum allowable installation torque of pile.
    d. Proposed production quality control plan, including method and equipment to be used to measure torsional resistance during installation.
    e. Procedures and acceptance criteria for any proposed performance and/or proof testing.

4. Submit a detailed description of the construction procedures proposed for use to the Architect/Engineer for review. This shall include a schedule of major equipment resources.
5. The working drawings shall include helical pile installation details giving:

    a. Helical pile number, location, and pattern by assigned identification number
    b. Helical pile design load
    c. Type and size of central steel shaft
    d. Number and diameter of helix plates
    e. Minimum overall length
    f. Minimum effective installation torque
    g. Inclination of helical pile
    h. Helical pile attachment to structure relative to grade beam, pile cap, etc.
    i. Cutoff elevation

6. Submit shop drawings for all structural steel, including the helical pile components, corrosion protection system, pile top attachment, and helix details, to the Architect/Engineer for review and approval.

7. Submit for review and acceptance the proposed helical pile load testing procedure. The testing program shall be provided two (2) weeks prior to starting the load testing. This helical pile verification load testing proposal shall be in general conformance with ASTM D1143 and/or D3689, and shall indicate the minimum following information:

    a. Type and accuracy of apparatus for measuring load
    b. Type and accuracy of apparatus for applying load
    c. Type and accuracy of apparatus for measuring the pile deformation
    d. Type and capacity of reaction load system, including sealed design drawings
    e. Hydraulic jack calibration report

8. Submit to the Architect/Engineer calibration reports for each test jack, pressure gauge, and master pressure gauge to be used. The calibration tests shall have been performed by an independent testing laboratory, and tests shall have been performed within one year of the date submitted. Testing shall not commence until the Architect/Engineer has approved the jack, pressure gauge, and master pressure gauge calculations.
9. Work shall not begin until the appropriate submittals have been received, reviewed, and approved in writing by the Architect/Engineer. Note that any additional time required due to incomplete or unacceptable submittals shall not be cause for delay or impact claims. All costs associated with incomplete or unacceptable submittals shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
10. Welding certificates.
11. Unit costs: Submit as outlined in this section.
12. The Contractor shall submit to the Architect copies of calibration reports for each torque indicator or torque motor, and all load test equipment to be used on the project. The calibration tests shall have been performed within 45 working days of the date submitted. Helical pile installation and testing shall not proceed until the Architect/Engineer has received the calibration reports. These calibration reports shall include, but are not limited to, the following information:

    a. Name of project and Contractor
    b. Name of testing agency
    c. Identification (serial number) of device calibrated
    d. Description of calibrated testing equipment
    e. Date of calibration
    f. Calibration data

13. Installation Reports: The installing contractor shall provide the Owner or its authorized representative copies of individual helical pile installation records within 24 hours after each installation is completed. Formal copies shall be submitted within 48 hours after installation. These installation records shall include, but are not limited to, the following information:

    a. Name of project and Contractor
    b. Name of Contractor's supervisor during installation
    c. Date and time of installation
    d. Installation equipment type and operator name
    e. Type of torque indicator used
    f. Location of helical pile or helical anchor by grid location, diagram, or assigned identification number
    g. Pile reveal
    h. Type and configuration of lead section with length of shaft and number and size of helical bearing plates
    i. Type and configuration of extension sections with length and number and size of helical bearing plates, if any
    j. Final elevation of top of shaft and cutoff length, if any

k. Total length of installed pile
l. As-built installation angle of pile
m. Torque measurements at three-foot depth intervals
n. Final installation torque
o. Effective torsional resistance and calculated geotechnical capacity based on effective torsional resistance and/or as derived from the pre-production test program
p. Comments pertaining to interruptions, obstructions, or other relevant information
q. Unless specified otherwise on the drawings or by local codes, the pile design professional, or an inspection agency accepted by the Architect/Engineer, shall observe and document at least 10 percent of helical pile and helical anchor installations.

B. Post Construction:

1. The following records shall be prepared for the Owner. The records shall be completed within 24 hours after each pile installation is completed. The records shall include the following minimum information:

a. Pile drilling duration and observations
b. Information on soil and rock encountered, including description of strata, water, etc.
c. Approximate final tip elevation
d. Cutoff elevation
e. Rated load capacities
f. Description of unusual installation behavior or conditions
g. Any deviations from the intended parameters
h. Torque attained, where applicable
i. Pile materials and dimensions
j. Helical pile test records, analysis, and details

2. Submit as-built drawings showing the location of the piles, their depth and inclination, and details of their composition.

1.08 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

A. The Geotechnical Report, including logs of soil borings as shown on the boring location plan, shall be considered to be representative of the in-situ subsurface conditions likely to be encountered on the project site. Said Geotechnical Report shall be used as the basis for helical pile design using generally accepted engineering judgment and methods.

B. The Geotechnical Report shall be provided for purposes of bidding. If, during helical pile installation, subsurface conditions of a type and location are encountered of a frequency that were not reported, inferred, and/or expected at the time of preparation of the bid, the additional costs required to overcome such conditions shall be considered as extras to be paid for by the Owner.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. All helical pile, helical anchor, and bracket assemblies shall be free of structural defects and protected from damage. Store helical piles, helical anchors, and bracket assemblies on wood pallets or supports to keep from contacting the ground. Damage to materials shall be cause for rejection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. AB Chance Company, a subsidiary of Hubbel Corp., 210 North Allen Street, Centralia, MO 65240-1395; or Aluma-Form/Dixie, 3625 Old Getwell Road, Memphis, TN 38118.

B. Foundation Supportworks, Inc., 12330 Cary Circle, Omaha, NE 68128.

C. Pier Tech Systems, 17813 Edison Avenue, Suite 100, Chesterfield, MO 63005.

D. Magnum Piering, Inc., 6082 Schumacher Park Drive, West Chester, OH 45069

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SITE CONDITIONS

A. Prior to commencing helical pile installation, the Contractor shall inspect the work of all other trades and verify that all said work is completed to the point where helical piles may commence without restriction.

B. The Contractor shall verify all helical piles may be installed in accordance with all pertinent codes and regulations regarding such items as underground obstructions, right-of-way limitations, utilities, etc.

C. In the event of a discrepancy, the Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall not proceed with helical pile installation in areas of discrepancies until said discrepancies have been resolved. All costs associated with unresolved discrepancies shall be the responsibility of the Owner.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Installing Contractor shall furnish and install all helical piles per the project plans and approved pile design submittals. In the event of conflict between the project plans and the approved pile design documentation, the Installing Contractor shall not begin construction on any affected items until such conflict has been resolved.

B. Installation of helical piles may be observed by representatives of the Owner for quality assurance purposes. The Installing Contactor shall notify the Owner's Representative at least 24 hours prior to pile installation operations. All helical pile sections and ancillary products shall be marked as necessary to allow correlation with the pile design submittals before shipment from the manufacturer.

C. The helical pile installation technique shall be such that it is consistent with the geotechnical, logistical, environmental, and load carrying conditions of the project. The lead section shall be positioned at the location as shown on the pile design drawings. Inclined helical piles can be positioned perpendicular to the ground to assist in initial advancement into the soil before the required installation angle shall be established. After initial penetration, the required installation angle shall be established. The helical pile sections shall be engaged and advanced into the soil in a smooth, continuous manner at a rate of rotation of 5 to 25 rpm. Sufficient crowd shall be applied to uniformly advance the helical pile sections a minimum of 80% of the distance equal to the pitch of the helix plate per revolution. The rate of rotation and magnitude of crowd shall be adjusted for different soil conditions and depths. Extension sections shall be provided to obtain the required minimum overall depth/length and minimum effective torsional resistance as shown on the project plans.

3.03 TERMINATION CRITERIA

A. The specified minimum overall depth/length criteria and minimum effective torsional resistance criterion must be satisfied prior to terminating the helical pile installation. In the event any helical pile fails to meet these production quality control criteria, the following pre-qualified remedies are authorized:

1. If the installation fails to meet the minimum effective torsional resistance criterion at the minimum embedment depth/length:

    a. Continue the installation to greater depth/length in the specified bearing stratum until the effective torsional resistance criterion is met, provided continued installation does not exceed any applicable maximum length. or,
    b. Demonstrate acceptable pile performance through load testing. or,
    c. Replace the pile with one having a different helix configuration. The replacement pile must not exceed any applicable maximum embedment length and either be embedded to a length that places its last helix at least three times its own diameter beyond the position of the first helix of the replaced pile and meet the minimum effective torsional resistance criterion, or pass load testing.

2. If the torque measured during installation reaches the helical pile's allowable torque rating prior to reaching the minimum embedment depth/length criterion, with approval from the Owner/Owner's Representative, terminate the installation, then proceed with one of the following recommended actions:

    a. Replace the pile with one having a shaft with a higher torsional strength rating. This replacement pile must be installed to satisfy the minimum embedment depth/length criterion. It must also be embedded to a depth/length that places its last helix at least three times its own diameter beyond the position of the first helix of the replaced pile without exceeding any applicable maximum embedment depth/length requirements, and it must meet the minimum effective torsional resistance criterion. or,
    b. Replace or modify the pile with one having a different helix configuration. This replacement or modified pile must be installed to satisfy the minimum embedment depth/length criterion. It must also be embedded to a depth/length that places its last helix at least three times its own diameter beyond the position of the first helix of the replaced pile without exceeding any applicable maximum embedment depth/length requirements, and it must meet the minimum effective torsional resistance criterion. or,

c. If allowed or approved by the Owner/Owner's Representative, remove and reinstall the pile at a position at least three times the diameter of the largest helix away from the initial location. Original minimum embedment depth/length and effective torsional resistance criteria must be met for the repositioned pile. This pile repositioning may require the installation of additional helical piles with service loads adjusted for these spacing changes.

3. If the installation reaches a specified maximum embedment depth/length without achieving the minimum effective torsional resistance criterion:

   a. If approved by the Owner/Owner's Representative, remove and reinstall the pile at a position at least three times the diameter of the largest helix away from the initial location. Original minimum installation depth/length and effective torsional resistance criteria must be met for the repositioned pile. This pile repositioning may require the installation of additional helical piles with service loads adjusted for these spacing changes. or,
   b. Demonstrate acceptable pile performance through load testing. or,
   c. Reduce the load capacity of the helical pile and install additional pile(s) as necessary. The reduced capacity and additional pile location shall be subject to the approval of the Owner/Owner's Representative. or,
   d. Replace the pile with one having a different helix configuration. This replacement pile must be embedded to a depth/length that places its last helix at least three times its own diameter beyond the position of the first helix of the replaced pile. This replacement pile must be installed to satisfy the minimum embedment depth/length criterion, and it must meet the minimum effective torsional resistance criterion.

4. If a helical pile fails to meet acceptance criteria in a load test:

   a. Install the pile to a greater depth/length and installation torque and re-test, provided any maximum embedment depth/length criterion is not exceeded. or,
   b. Replace the pile with one having more and/or larger helix plates. It must be embedded to a depth/length that places its last helix at least three times its own diameter beyond the position of the first helix of the replaced pile without exceeding any applicable maximum embedment depth/length requirements. This replacement pile must be re-tested. or,
   c. If approved by the Owner's Representative, de-rate the load capacity of the helical pile and install additional piles. Additional piles must be installed at positions at least three times the diameter of the largest helix away from any other pile locations and approved by the Owner's Representative. Piles installed in cohesive soils shall not be spaced closer than four helix diameters.

5. Load testing to qualify a helical pile under any of the remedial actions outlined in Article 1.9 shall not be used to satisfy load testing frequency requirements shown in the project plans or the approved design submittals.
6. If a helical pile fails a production quality control criterion for any other reason, including damage during installation, any proposed remedy must be approved by the Owner/Owner's Representative prior to implementation.

3.04 TOLERANCES

A. When helical pile placement is shown on the project plans, production piles shall be placed such that the pile head is within 3 inches laterally and longitudinally and 1/2 inch vertically to plan; and the pile shaft alignment is within 1 degree of the installation angle shown on the project plans. When pile placement is not shown on the project plans, the placements, alignments, and their respective tolerances shall be included as part of the design submittal.

3.05 CLEANUP

A. The Installing Contractor shall remove any and all material, equipment, tools, building materials, concrete forms, debris, or other items belonging to the Installing Contractor or used under the Installing Contractor's direction.

END OF SECTION 31 26 00

SECTION 32 11 23
AGGREGATE BASE COURSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Aggregate subbase.
   2. Aggregate base course.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 312213 - Rough Grading: Preparation of site for base course.
   2. Section 312316.13 - Trenching: Compacted fill under base course.
   3. Section 321313 - Concrete Paving: Finish concrete surface course.
   4. Section 330561 - Concrete Manholes:

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
   1. AASHTO M288 - Standard Specification for Geotextile Specification for Highway Applications.

B. ASTM International:
   1. ASTM D1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method.
   2. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method.
   3. ASTM D2922 - Standard Test Method for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).
   4. ASTM D2940 - Standard Specification for Graded Aggregate Material For Bases or Subbases for Highways or Airports.
   5. ASTM D3017 - Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data:
   1. Submit data for geotextile fabric and herbicide.

C. Samples: Submit, in air-tight containers, sample of each type of aggregate fill to testing laboratory.

D. Materials Source: Submit name of aggregate materials suppliers.

E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify meet required gradation.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Furnish each aggregate material from single source throughout the Work.

B. Perform Work according to City of New Boston standards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATE MATERIALS

A. Drainable base shall Illinois DOT gradation CA-7 or approved equal.

B. Non drainable rock base shall be Illinois DOT gradation CA-6 or approved equal.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Geotextile Fabric: AASHTO M288; non-woven, polypropylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting Work.

B. Verify compacted substrate is dry.
   1. Proof roll substrate with loaded tandem in minimum two perpendicular passes to identify soft spots.
   2. Remove soft substrate and replace with compacted granular or structural fill as specified in Section 312213.

C. Verify substrate has been inspected, gradients and elevations are correct.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Correct irregularities in substrate gradient and elevation by scarifying, reshaping, and re-compacting.

B. Do not place fill on soft, muddy, or frozen surfaces.

3.3 AGGREGATE PLACEMENT

A. Spread aggregate over prepared substrate to total compacted thickness as shown in the plans.

B. Roller compact aggregate to 95 percent maximum density if rock aggregate is not drainable base.

C. Level and contour surfaces to elevations, profiles, and gradients indicated.

D. Add small quantities of fine aggregate to coarse aggregate when required to assist compaction.

E. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain specified compaction density.

F. Use mechanical tamping equipment in areas inaccessible to compaction equipment.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Tolerances.

B. Maximum Variation From Flat Surface: ¼ inch.

C. Maximum Variation From Thickness: ¼ inch.

D. Maximum Variation From Elevation: ¼ inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Field inspecting, testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Compaction testing will be performed according to ASTM D1556.

C. When tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest.

D. Frequency of Tests: One test for every 1,000 sq. yd. compacted aggregate.

3.6 COMPACTION

A. Compact materials to 95 percent of maximum standard density as determined from test strip, according to ASTM D2940.

END OF SECTION 32 11 23

SECTION 32 12 16
ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Asphalt materials.
2. Aggregate materials.
3. Aggregate subbase.
4. Asphalt paving base course, binder course, and wearing course.
5. Asphalt paving overlay for existing paving.
6. Surface slurry.

B. Related Requirement:
1. Section 099000 - Painting and Coating: Pavement markings.
2. Section 312213 - Rough Grading: Preparation of site for paving.
3. Section 312323 - Fill: Compacted subbase for paving.
4. Section 320116 - Flexible Paving Rehabilitation.
5. Section 320516 - Aggregates for Exterior Improvements: Product requirements for aggregate for placement by this section.
6. Section 321123 - Aggregate Base Courses: Compacted subbase for paving.
7. Section 321723 - Pavement Markings: Painted pavement markings, lines, and legends.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
1. AASHTO M17 - Standard Specification for Mineral Filler for Bituminous Paving Mixtures.
2. AASHTO M29 - Standard Specification for Fine Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures.
3. AASHTO M140 - Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt.
4. AASHTO M208 - Standard Specification for Cationic Emulsified Asphalt.
5. AASHTO M288 - Standard Specification for Geotextile Specification for Highway Applications.
6. AASHTO M320 - Standard Specification for Performance-Graded Asphalt Binder.
7. AASHTO M324 - Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements.
8. AASHTO MP1a - Standard Specification for Performance-Graded Asphalt Binder.

B. Asphalt Institute:
1. AI MS-2 - Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot- Mix Types.
2. AI MS-19 - Basic Asphalt Emulsion Manual.
3. AI SP-2 - Superpave Mix Design.

C. ASTM International:
1. ASTM C1371 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers.
2. ASTM C1549 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer.
3. ASTM D242 - Standard Specification for Mineral Filler for Bituminous Paving Mixtures.
4. ASTM D692 - Standard Specification for Coarse Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures.

5. ASTM D946 - Standard Specification for Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction.
6. ASTM D977 - Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt.
7. ASTM D1073 - Standard Specification for Fine Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures.
8. ASTM D1188 - Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures Using Coated Samples
9. ASTM D2027 - Standard Specification for Cutback Asphalt (Medium-Curing Type).
10. ASTM D2397 - Standard Specification for Cationic Emulsified Asphalt.
11. ASTM D2726 - Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Non-Absorptive Compacted Bituminous Mixtures.
12. ASTM D2950 - Standard Test Method for Density of Bituminous Concrete in Place by Nuclear Methods.
13. ASTM D3381 - Standard Specification for Viscosity-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction.
14. ASTM D3515 - Standard Specification for Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Bituminous Paving Mixtures.
15. ASTM D3549 - Standard Test Method for Thickness or Height of Compacted Bituminous Paving Mixture Specimens.
16. ASTM D3910 - Standard Practices for Design, Testing, and Construction of Slurry Seal.
17. ASTM D6690 - Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements.
18. ASTM E408[**-1971(1996)e1**] - Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques.
19. ASTM E903[**-1996**] - Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres.
20. ASTM E1918[**-1997**] - Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field.
21. ASTM E1980[**-2001**] - Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data:
   1. Submit product information for asphalt and aggregate materials.
   2. Submit mix design with laboratory test results supporting design.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mixing Plant: Conform to Illinois Department of Transportation standard.

1.5 AMBIENT CONDITIONS

A. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Ambient conditions control facilities for product storage and installation.

B. Do not place asphalt mixture between November 22 and March 1.

C. Do not place asphalt mixture when ambient air or base surface temperature is less than 40 degrees F, or surface is wet or frozen.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASPHALT PAVING

A. Asphalt Materials:
   1. Asphalt: In accordance with Illinois Department of Transportation standards. Iron content must be less than 2%.
   2. Tack Coat: ASTM D977; diluted emulsified asphalt.

B. Aggregate Materials:
   1. Coarse Aggregate: In accordance with Section 320516. In accordance with Illinois Department of Transportation standards. Iron content must be less than 2%.
   2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D1073; natural sand or sand manufactured from stone, gravel, or blast furnace slag. Iron content must be less than 2%.

C. Aggregate Subbase: Specified in Section 321123. Iron content must be less than 2%.

2.2 MIXES

A. Use dry material to avoid foaming. Mix uniformly.

B. Asphalt Paving Mixtures: Designed in accordance with Illinois Department of Transportation standards. Mix shall be Illinois DOT IL-9.5, Mix D, N50 for surface course and IL-9.5, N50 for binder course or approved equal.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Geotextile Fabric: AASHTO M288; non-woven, polypropylene.

B. Sealant: ASTM D6690; hot applied type.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Testing, inspection and analysis requirements.

B. Submit proposed mix design for review prior to beginning of Work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation examination.

B. Verify utilities indicated under paving are installed with excavations and trenches backfilled and compacted.

C. Verify compacted subgrade and subbase and that they are dry and ready to support paving and imposed loads.
   1. Proof roll subbase with loaded tandem in minimum two perpendicular passes to identify soft spots.
   2. Remove soft subbase and replace with compacted fill as specified in Section 312323.

D. Verify gradients and elevations of base are correct.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare subbase in accordance with Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

3.3 DEMOLITION

A. Saw cut and notch existing paving.

B. Clean existing paving to remove foreign material, excess joint sealant and crack filler from paving surface.

C. Repair surface defects in existing paving to provide uniform surface to receive new paving.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Subbase:
   1. Aggregate Subbase: Install as specified in Section 321123.

B. Tack Coat:
   1. Apply tack coat in accordance with Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

C. Single Course Asphalt Paving:
   1. Install Work in accordance with Illinois Department of Transportation standards.
   2. Place asphalt within 24 hours of applying primer or tack coat.
   3. Place asphalt wearing course to thickness indicated on Drawings.
   4. Compact paving by rolling to specified density. Do not displace or extrude paving from position. Hand compact in areas inaccessible to rolling equipment.
   5. Perform rolling with consecutive passes to achieve even and smooth finish without roller marks.

D. Double Course Asphalt Paving:
   1. Place asphalt binder course within 24 hours of applying primer or tack coat.
   2. Place binder course to thickness indicated on Drawings.
   3. Place wearing course within 24 hours of placing and compacting binder course. When binder course is placed more than 24 hours before placing wearing course, clean surface and apply tack coat before placing wearing course.
   4. Place wearing course to thickness indicated on Drawings.
   5. Compact each course by rolling to specified density. Do not displace or extrude paving from position. Hand compact in areas inaccessible to rolling equipment.
   6. Perform rolling with consecutive passes to achieve even and smooth finish, without roller marks.

3.5 TOLERANCES

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Tolerances.

B. Flatness: Maximum variation of 1/4 inch measured with 10 foot straight edge.

C. Scheduled Compacted Thickness: Within ¼ inch.

D. Variation from Indicated Elevation: Within ½ inch.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for inspecting, testing.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

SECTION 32 13 13
CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Aggregate base course.
   2. Concrete paving for:
      a. Concrete sidewalks.
      b. Concrete stair steps.
      c. Concrete curbs and gutters.
      d. Concrete parking and roads.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 079000 - Joint Protection: Sealant for joints.
   2. Section 099000 - Painting and Coating: Pavement markings.
   3. Section 312213 - Rough Grading.
   4. Section 321123 - Aggregate Base Courses

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
   1. AASHTO M324 - Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements.

B. American Concrete Institute:
   1. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete.
   2. ACI 304 - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete.

C. ASTM International:
   1. ASTM A184/A184M - Standard Specification for Fabricated Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement.
   2. ASTM A185/A185M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
   3. ASTM A497/A497M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement.
   4. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
   5. ASTM A706/A706M - Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
   6. ASTM A767/A767M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
   7. ASTM A775/A775M - S Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars.
   8. ASTM A884/A884M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement.
   9. ASTM A934/A934M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars.
   10. ASTM C31/C31M - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
   11. ASTM C33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.

12. ASTM C39/C39M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
13. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.
14. ASTM C143/C143M - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
15. ASTM C150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
16. ASTM C172 - Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
17. ASTM C173/C173M - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method.
18. ASTM C231 - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
19. ASTM C260 - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
20. ASTM C309 - Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
21. ASTM C494/C494M - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
22. ASTM C595 - Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements.
23. ASTM C618 - Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Concrete.
24. ASTM C979 - Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.
25. ASTM C989 - Standard Specification for Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag for Use in Concrete and Mortars.
26. ASTM C1017/C1017M - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete.
27. ASTM C1064/C1064M - Standard Test Method for Temperature of Freshly Mixed Hydraulic-Cement Concrete.
28. ASTM C1116 - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete and Shotcrete.
29. ASTM C1315 - Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete.
30. ASTM C1371 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers.
31. ASTM C1549 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer.
32. ASTM D1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).
33. ASTM D1752 - Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction.
34. ASTM D6690 - Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements.
35. ASTM E408 - Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques.
36. ASTM E903 - Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres.
37. ASTM E1918 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field.
38. ASTM E1980 - Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Design Data:

1. Submit concrete mix design for each concrete strength. Submit separate mix designs when admixtures are required for the following:

    a. Hot and cold weather concrete work.
2. Identify mix ingredients and proportions, including admixtures.
3. Identify chloride content of admixtures and whether or not chloride was added during manufacture.

C. Source Quality Control Submittals: Indicate results of tests and inspections.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work according to ACI 301**.** requirements of Section 031000, Section 032000, and Section 033000.

B. Obtain cementitious materials from same source throughout.

C. Perform Work according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

1.5 AMBIENT CONDITIONS

A. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Ambient conditions control facilities for product storage and installation.

B. Do not place concrete when base surface temperature is less than 35 degrees F or surface is wet or frozen.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

A. Aggregate Base Course: As specified in Section 321123.

2.2 CONCRETE PAVING

A. Form Materials:
    1. Form Materials: Conform to ACI 301. As specified in Section 031000.

B. Reinforcement:
    1. Reinforcing Steel and Wire Fabric: Type specified in Section 032000.

C. Concrete Materials:

    1. Concrete Materials: As specified in Section 033000. Provide according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate reinforcing according to CRSI Manual of Practice.

B. Form standard hooks for bends as indicated on Drawings.

2.4 MIXES

A. Concrete Mix - By Performance Criteria:
    1. Mix and deliver concrete according to Illinois DOT Class PV mix.
    2. Provide concrete to the following criteria:
        a. Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 7 days.
        b. Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
        c. Slump: 0.5 inch to 2.5 inches machine finish and 0.5 inch to 4 inches for hand finish.

d. Air Entrainment: per Illinois DOT Class PV requirements.

3. Limit the following cementitious materials to maximum percentage by mass of all cementitious materials:
   a. Fly Ash: 20 percent.
   b. Blast Furnace Slag: 35 percent.
   c. Fly Ash and Blast Furnace Slag: 40 percent.
4. Use accelerating admixtures in cold weather only when approved by the Architect/Engineer in writing. Use of admixtures will not relax cold weather placement requirements.
5. Use calcium chloride only when approved by the Architect/Engineer in writing.
6. Use set retarding admixtures during hot weather only when approved by the Architect/Engineer in writing.

2.5 FINISHES

A. Shop Finishing - Reinforcement:
   1. Galvanized Finish for Steel Bars: ASTM A767/A767M, hot dip galvanized after fabrication.
   2. Epoxy Coated Finish for Steel Bars: ASTM A775/A775M.

B. Epoxy Coated Finish for Steel Wire: ASTM A884/A884M; Class A, using ASTM A775/A775M.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

A. Curing Compound: ASTM C309

B. Joint Sealers: Specified in Section 079000.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Submit proposed mix design to appointed firm for review prior to commencement of Work.

B. Tests on cement, aggregates, and mixes will be performed to ensure conformance with specified requirements.

C. Test samples according to ASTM C94/C94M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation examination.

B. Verify compacted subgrade and ready to support paving and imposed loads.
   1. Proof roll subbase with loaded tandem in minimum two perpendicular passes to identify soft spots.
   2. Remove soft subbase and replace with compacted fill as specified in Section 312323.

C. Verify gradients and elevations of base are correct.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation preparation.

B. Moisten substrate to minimize absorption of water from fresh concrete.

C. Coat surfaces of structure frames with oil to prevent bond with concrete paving.

D. Notify Architect/Engineer minimum 24 hours prior to commencement of concreting operations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Base Course:
   1. Aggregate Base Course: Install as specified in Section 321123.

B. Forms:
   1. Place and secure forms and screeds to correct location, dimension, profile, and gradient.
   2. Assemble formwork to permit easy stripping and dismantling without damaging concrete.

C. Reinforcement:
   1. Place reinforcing as indicated on Drawings.
   2. Interrupt reinforcing at expansion joints.
   3. Place dowels to achieve paving and curb alignment as detailed.
   4. Repair damaged coating to match shop finish.

D. Placing Concrete:
   1. Coordinate installation of snow melting components.
   2. Place concrete as specified in Section 033000.
   3. Ensure reinforcing, inserts, embedded parts, and formed joints are not disturbed during concrete placement.
   4. Place concrete continuously over the full width of the panel and between predetermined construction joints.

E. Joints
   1. Place contraction joints at maximum 15 feet intervals. Align curb, gutter, and sidewalk joints.
   2. Place joint filler between paving components and building or other appurtenances.
   3. Provide keyed joints as indicated.
   4. Saw cut contraction joints at an optimum time after finishing. Cut 1/3 into depth of slab.
   5. Seal joints as indicated on Drawings.

F. Finishing:
   1. Paving: Light broom.
   2. Sidewalk Paving: Light broom
   3. Median Barrier: Light broom
   4. Curbs and Gutters: Light broom.
   5. Direction of Texturing: Parallel to paving direction.
   6. Place curing compound on exposed concrete surfaces immediately after finishing.

G. Curing and Protection
   1. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
   2. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Tolerances.

B. Maximum Variation of Surface Flatness: 1/4 inch.

C. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/2 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for inspecting, testing.

B. Perform field testing according to City of New Boston requirements.

C. Inspect reinforcing placement for size, spacing, location, support.

D. Testing firm will take cylinders and perform slump and air entrainment tests according to ACI 301.

E. Strength Test Samples:
   1. Sampling Procedures: ASTM C172.
   2. Cylinder Molding and Curing Procedures: ASTM C31/C31M, cylinder specimens, standard cured.
   3. Sample concrete and make one set of three cylinders for every 150 cy or less of each class of concrete placed each day and for every 5,000 sf of surface area paving.
   4. Make one additional cylinder during cold weather concreting, and field cure.

F. Field Testing:
   1. Slump Test Method: ASTM C143/C143M.
   2. Air Content Test Method: ASTM C173/C173M.
   3. Temperature Test Method: ASTM C1064/C1064M.
   4. Measure slump and temperature for each compressive strength concrete sample.
   5. Measure air content in air entrained concrete for each compressive strength concrete sample.

G. Cylinder Compressive Strength Testing:
   1. Test Method: ASTM C39/C39M.
   2. Test Acceptance: Average compressive strength of three consecutive test no less than specified compressive strength.
   3. Test one cylinder at 7 days or earlier if requested by the Engineer.
   4. Test two cylinders at 28 days unless one was broken earlier at the request of the Engineer.

H. Maintain records of placed concrete items. Record date, location of pour, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

B. Immediately after placement, protect paving from premature drying, excessive hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.

C. Do not permit vehicular traffic over paving for 7 days minimum after finishing until 75 percent design strength of concrete has been achieved.

3.7 ATTACHMENTS

A. Concrete Sidewalks and Median Barrier: 4,000 psi 28 day concrete, 4 inches thick

B. Parking Area Paving: 4,000 psi 28 day concrete, 6 inches thick.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

SECTION 321623
SIDEWALKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Concrete paving for sidewalks.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 031000 - Concrete Forming and Accessories: Form materials, waterstops, and accessories.
2. Section 032000 - Concrete Reinforcing: Reinforcing steel and supports for cast-in-place concrete.
3. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Cast-in-place or in-situ concrete for structural building frames, slabs on fill or grade, and other concrete components.
4. Section 079000 - Joint Protection: Sealant for joints.
5. Section 099000 - Painting and Coating: Pavement markings.
6. Section 312213 - Rough Grading: Preparation of Site for paving.
7. Section 312323 - Fill: Compacted subgrade for paving.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
1. AASHTO M182 - Standard Specification for Burlap Cloth Made from Jute or Kenaf and Cotton Mats.

B. American Concrete Institute:
1. ACI 304 - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete.

C. ASTM International:
1. ASTM A184/A184M - Standard Specification for Welded Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement.
2. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
3. ASTM A706/A706M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Low-Alloy Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
4. ASTM A767/A767M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
5. ASTM A775/A775M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars.
6. ASTM A884/A884M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement.
7. ASTM A934/A934M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars.
8. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete.
9. ASTM C31/C31M - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
10. ASTM C33/C33M - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
11. ASTM C39/C39M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
12. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.
13. ASTM C143/C143M - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete.
14. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

15. ASTM C171 - Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
16. ASTM C172/C172M - Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
17. ASTM C173/C173M - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method.
18. ASTM C231/C231M - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
19. ASTM C260/C260M - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
20. ASTM C309 - Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
21. ASTM C494/C494M - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
22. ASTM C595/C595M - Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements.
23. ASTM C618 - Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete.
24. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
25. ASTM C979/C979M - Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.
26. ASTM C989/C989M - Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars.
27. ASTM C1017/C1017M - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete.
28. ASTM C1064/C1064M - Standard Test Method for Temperature of Freshly Mixed Hydraulic-Cement Concrete.
29. ASTM C1116/C1116M - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete.
30. ASTM C1315 - Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete.
31. ASTM C1371 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers.
32. ASTM C1549 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer.
33. ASTM D1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).
34. ASTM D1752 - Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction.
35. ASTM D5893/D5893M - Standard Specification for Cold Applied, Single Component, Chemically Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements.
36. ASTM D6690 - Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements.
37. ASTM E408 - Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques.
38. ASTM E903 - Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres.
39. ASTM E1918 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field.
40. ASTM E1980 - Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data:

1. Submit required information regarding concrete materials.
2. Mix Design:
    a. Submit concrete mix design for each concrete strength prior to commencement of Work.
    b. Submit separate mix designs if admixtures are required for hot- and cold-weather concrete Work.
    c. Identify mix ingredients and proportions, including admixtures.
3. Identify chloride content of admixtures and whether or not chloride was added during manufacture.

C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

D. Source Quality-Control Submittals: Indicate results of tests and inspections.

E. Field Quality-Control Submittals: Indicate results of Contractor-furnished tests and inspections.

F. Qualifications Statement:

1. Submit qualifications for manufacturer and installer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work according to Sections 031000 - Concrete Forming and Accessories, 032000 - Concrete Reinforcing, and 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

B. Obtain cementitious materials from same source throughout.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

C. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.

D. Protection:
1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

1.6 AMBIENT CONDITIONS

A. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Requirements for ambient condition control facilities for product storage and installation.

B. Minimum Conditions: Do not place concrete if base surface temperature is less than 35 degrees F, or if surface is wet or frozen.

C. Subsequent Conditions: Maintain minimum 35 degrees F for not less than 72 hours after placing, and at a temperature above freezing for remainder of curing period.

1.7 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements:
1. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.
2. Indicate field measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Forms:
   1. Description: As specified in Section 031000 - Concrete Forming and Accessories
   2. Height: Equal to full depth of finished sidewalk.

B. Reinforcement:
   1. Reinforcing Steel and Wire Fabric: As specified in Section 032000 - Concrete Reinforcing.
   2. Welded Plain-Wire Fabric:
      a. Comply with ASTM A1064/A1064M.
      b. Configuration: Flat sheets.
      c. Finish: Uncoated.
   3. Dowels:
      a. Description: Plain steel bars.
      b. Comply with ASTM A615/A615M.
      c. Yield Strength: 60 ksi.
      d. Length: As indicated on Drawings.
      e. Ends: Square, with burrs removed.
      f. Finish: Galvanized or Epoxy coated.
   4. Tie Wire:
      a. Type: Annealed.
      b. Finish: Epoxy coated.
   5. Epoxy Coating Patching Material: Type as recommended by coating manufacturer.

C. Concrete:
   1. Concrete Materials:
      a. As specified in Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
   2. Fine and Coarse Aggregates:
      a. Comply with ASTM C33/C33M.
      b. Coarse Aggregate Maximum Size: 1 inch
   3. Water:
      a. Description: Potable.
      b. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
   4. Air Entrainment: Comply with ASTM C260/C260M.
   5. Chemical Admixtures:
      a. Comply with ASTM C494/C494M.
   6. Fly Ash:
      a. Comply with ASTM C618.
   7. Slag:
      a. Description: Ground-granulated blast-furnace slag.
      b. Comply with ASTM C989/C989M.
   8. Color Pigment:
      a. Comply with ASTM C979/C979M.
      b. Resistant to mineral oxides, alkalis, and fading.
      c. Color: see plans.

2.2 FABRICATION

A. Reinforcing:
   1. Comply with CRSI Manual of Practice.

B. Hooks:
1. As indicated on Drawings.
2. Type:
a. Standard bends.

2.3 MIXES

A. Concrete:
1. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M,
2. Mix Design: As specified in Section 321313 Concrete Paving.

2.4 FINISHES

A. Reinforcement:
1. Galvanized Finish for Steel Bars:
a. Comply with ASTM A767/A767M.
b. Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
2. Epoxy-Coated Finish for Steel Bars: Comply with ASTM A775/A775M
3. Epoxy-Coated Finish for Steel Wire:
a. Comply with ASTM A884/A884M.
b. Class A, using ASTM A775/A775M.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Curing Compound:
1. Comply with ASTM C309.

B. Joint Sealers:
1. Hot Applied:
a. Comply with ASTM D6690.

C. Cover Sheets:
1. Comply with ASTM C171.
2. Burlap: Comply with AASHTO M182.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for testing, inspection, and analysis.

B. Testing: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation examination.

B. Verify that compacted subgrade is dry and ready to support paving and imposed loads.

C. Verify that gradients and elevations of subgrade are as indicated on Drawings.

D. Verify reinforcing placement for proper size, spacing, location, and support.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation preparation.

B. Moisten substrate to minimize absorption of water from fresh concrete.

C. Notify Architect/Engineer minimum 24 hours prior to commencement of concreting operations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Subgrade:
   1. As specified in Section 321123 - Aggregate Base Courses.

B. Forms:
   1. Wood Forms: Thoroughly wet with water before concrete is placed.

C. Reinforcement:
   1. Place reinforcing as indicated on Drawings.
   2. Interrupt reinforcing at expansion joints.
   3. Place dowels to achieve indicated paving alignment.
   4. Repair damaged coating to match shop finish.

D. Placing Concrete:
   1. As specified in Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
   2. Place concrete in forms in one layer.
   3. Ensure that reinforcing, inserts, embedded parts, and formed joints are not disturbed during concrete placement.
   4. Place concrete continuously over full width of panel and between predetermined construction joints.
   5. Consolidate concrete by tamping and vibration.

E. Joints:
   1. Place continuous transverse contraction joints at 5 feet intervals or width of sidewalk, whichever is less.
   2. Saw-cut contraction joints at optimum time after finishing, cutting one-third into depth of slab.

F. Finishing:
   1. Light broom trowel edges of joints.
   2. Texture Direction: Parallel to paving direction.
   3. Ramps: Broom perpendicular to slope**.**
   4. Place curing compound on concrete surfaces immediately after finishing.
   5. Edges and Joints:
      a. Edger Radius: 1/8 inch.
      b. Spalled Corners and Edges: Clean and fill with mortar mixture and finish.

G. Curing:
   1. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.
   2. Mats:
      a. Cover exposed surface with two or more layers of wetted burlap, overlapping each other.
      b. Maintain burlap continuously saturated and in contact with concrete for minimum 2 days.

H. Backfilling: After curing, backfill, grade, and compact adjacent disturbed area as indicated.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for tolerances.

B. Maximum Variation of Surface Flatness: ¼ inch.

C. Maximum Variation from True Position: ½ inch.

D. Line and Grade for Forms: 1/8 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for inspecting and testing.
   1. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
   2. Samples:
      a. Sampling Procedures: Comply with ASTM C172/C172M.
      b. Cylinder Molding and Curing Procedures: Comply with ASTM C31/C31M, cured.
      c. Sample concrete and make one set of three cylinders for every 150 cy or less of each class of concrete placed each day, and for every 5,000 s.f. of surface area paving.
      d. Make one additional cylinder during cold-weather concreting, and field cure.
   3. Cylinder Compressive Strength:
      a. Comply with ASTM C39/C39M.
      b. Acceptance:
         1) Average Compressive Strength of Three Consecutive Tests: No less than specified compressive strength.
      c. Test one cylinder at seven days, and two cylinders at 28 days.
   4. Slump, Temperature, and Air Content:
      a. Measure for each compressive-strength concrete sample.
      b. Slump: Comply with ASTM C143/C143M.
      c. Air Content: Comply with ASTM C173/C173M.
      d. Temperature: Comply with ASTM C1064/C1064M.
   5. Records:
      a. Maintain records of placed concrete items.
      b. Record date, location of pour, quantity, air temperature, and number of test samples taken

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

B. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, rain and flowing water, and mechanical injury.

C. Do not permit vehicular traffic over paving until 75 percent design strength of concrete has been achieved.

D. Damaged Concrete:
   1. Remove and reconstruct concrete that has been damaged for entire length between scheduled joints.
   2. Refinishing damaged portion is not acceptable.
   3. Dispose of damaged portions.

3.7 ATTACHMENTS

A. Concrete Sidewalks: 4000-psi 28-day concrete, 4 inches thick.

END OF SECTION 32 16 23

SECTION 32 17 23
PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Traffic lines and markings.
2. Legends.
3. Paint.
4. Glass beads.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 321216 - Asphalt Paving: Asphalt paving for roads, parking areas, and sidewalks.
2. Section 321313 - Concrete Paving: Concrete paving for roads, parking areas, and sidewalks.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials:
1. AASHTO M247 - Standard Specification for Glass Beads Used in Pavement Markings.

B. ASTM International:
1. ASTM D34 - Standard Guide for Chemical Analysis of White Pigments.
2. ASTM D126 - Standard Test Methods for Analysis of Yellow, Orange, and Green Pigments Containing Lead Chromate and Chromium Oxide Green.
3. ASTM D562 - Standard Test Method for Consistency of Paints Measuring Krebs Unit (KU) Viscosity Using a Stormer-Type Viscometer.
4. ASTM D711 - Standard Test Method for No-Pick-Up Time of Traffic Paint.
5. ASTM D713 - Standard Practice for Conducting Road Service Tests on Fluid Traffic Marking Materials.
6. ASTM D1301 - Standard Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of White Lead Pigments.
7. ASTM D1394 - Standard Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of White Titanium Pigments.
8. ASTM D1475 - Standard Test Method for Density of Liquid Coatings, Inks, and Related Products.
9. ASTM D1640/D1640M - Standard Test Methods for Drying, Curing, or Film Formation of Organic Coatings.
10. ASTM D2202 - Standard Test Method for Slump of Sealants.
11. ASTM D2371 - Standard Test Method for Pigment Content of Solvent-Reducible Paints.
12. ASTM D2621 - Standard Test Method for Infrared Identification of Vehicle Solids From Solvent-Reducible Paints.
13. ASTM D2743 - Standard Practices for Uniformity of Traffic Paint Vehicle Solids by Spectroscopy and Gas Chromatography.
14. ASTM D4280 - Standard Specification for Extended Life Type, Nonplowable, Raised Retroreflective Pavement Markers.
15. ASTM D4505 - Standard Specification for Preformed Retroreflective Pavement Marking Tape for Extended Service Life.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit paint formulation for each type of paint.

C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

D. Test and Evaluation Reports: Indicate source and acceptance test results according to AASHTO M247.

E. Manufacturer Instructions:
   1. Submit instructions for application temperatures, eradication requirements, application rate, line thickness, type of glass beads, and bead embedment and application rate.
   2. Submit detailed instructions on installation requirements, including storage and handling procedures.

F. Field Quality-Control Submittals: Indicate results of Contractor-furnished tests and inspections.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work according to Illinois DOT standards.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum three years' experience.

B. Applicator: Company specializing in performing Work of this Section with minimum three years' experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

C. Storage:
   1. According to manufacturer instructions.
   2. Paint:
      a. Invert containers several days prior to use if paint has been stored more than two months.
      b. Minimize exposure to air when transferring paint.
      c. Seal drums and tanks when not in use.

D. Protection:
   1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
   2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

1.7 AMBIENT CONDITIONS

A. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Requirements for ambient condition control facilities for product storage and installation.

B. Do not apply materials if surface and ambient temperatures are outside temperature ranges required by paint product manufacturer.

C. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow if relative humidity is outside range required by paint manufacturer, or if moisture content of surfaces exceeds that required by paint manufacturer.

D. Minimum Conditions: Do not apply paint if temperatures are expected to fall below 50 deg. F within 24 hours after application.

E. Thermoplastic Compound: Do not apply unless pavement surface temperature is minimum 40 deg. F and rising.

F. Maximum VOCs: Do not exceed limit required by State or Environmental Protection Agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PAINTED PAVEMENT MARKINGS

A. Manufacturers:
1. Aexcel Inc.
2. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings.
3. Columbia Paint & Coatings, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
4. Conco Paints.
5. Coronado Paint; Benjamin Moore & Co.
6. Diamond Vogel Paints.
7. Ennis-Flint.
8. EZ-Liner Industries.
9. Franklin Paint Company.
10. McCormick Paints.
11. Pathmark Traffic Products of Texas Inc.
12. Safety Coatings, Inc.
13. Scott Paint.

B. Performance and Design Criteria:
1. Paint Adhesion: Adhere to road surface, forming smooth continuous film one minute after application.
2. Paint Drying: Tack free by touch as not to transfer by vehicle tires within two minutes after application.

C. Paint:
1. Description: Ready mixed, conventional, fast-dry, waterborne traffic paints.
2. Lead-free and nontoxic.
3. Minimum Retroreflectance: 100 mcd.
4. Durability Rating: 6 or more, after in place for nine months.
5. Properties:
   a. Pigment Percent by Weight: 60, plus or minus 2.
   b. Vehicle Percent by Weight: 40, plus or minus 2.
   c. Nonvolatile Percent by Weight of Paint: 76.0.
   d. Minimum Density: 13.0 lb./gal.
   e. Viscosity: 80-95 Kreb Units at 77 deg. F.
6. Grind:
   a. Method: Hegeman Gage.
7. Maximum Dry-Through Time:
   a. 125 minutes.
   b. Wet Film Thickness: 15 mils at 90 percent relative humidity and 72 deg. F.
   c. Comply with ASTM D1640/D1640M.

2.2 APPLICATION EQUIPMENT

A. Paint Gun:
1. Description: Simultaneously apply parallel lines of indicated width in solid or broken patterns or various combinations of those patterns.
2. Type: Dual nozzle.

B. Measuring Device: Automatically and continuously measure to nearest foot length of each line placed.

C. Paint Heater: Capable of heating paint for fast-dry applications.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for testing, inspection, and analysis.
B. Test and analyze traffic paints according to ASTM D34.
C. Certificate of Compliance:
   1. If manufacturer is approved by authorities having jurisdiction, submit certificate of compliance indicating Work performed at manufacturer's facility conforms to Contract Documents.
   2. Specified shop tests are not required for Work performed by approved manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for application preparation.

B. Do not apply paint to concrete surfaces until concrete has cured for 28 days.

C. Agitate paint for 1 to 15 minutes prior to application to ensure even distribution of pigment.

D. Maintenance and Protection of Traffic:
   1. Provide short-term traffic control as specified in Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.
   2. Prevent interference with marking operations and prevent traffic on newly applied markings before dry.
   3. Maintain access to adjacent property owners, and other properties requiring access.

E. Surface Preparation.
   1. Clean and dry paved surfaces prior to painting.
   2. Blow or sweep surface free of dirt, debris, oil, grease, or gasoline.
   3. Spot location of final pavement markings, as specified and as indicated on Drawings, by applying pavement spots 25 feet o.c.
   4. Request inspection by Architect/Engineer after placing pavement spots and minimum three days prior to applying traffic lines.

3.2 DEMOLITION

A. Remove existing markings in an acceptable manner, using methods that will cause least damage to pavement structure or surface.

B. Do not remove existing pavement markings by painting over with blank paint.

C. Repair pavement or surface damage caused by removal methods.

D. Clean and repair existing remaining adjacent lines and legends.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Application Rate:
   1. Reflective Markings:
      a. Paint: 100 sq. ft./gal
   2. Nonreflective Markings:
      a. Paint: 100 sq. ft./gal

B. Painting:
   1. Apply paint pneumatically, using guidelines and templates as necessary to control application.
   2. Manually paint numbers, letters, and symbols.
   3. Prevent splattering and overspray when applying markings.
   4. Paint Guns: Simultaneously apply paint binder at uniform specified rates.
   5. Dispense at ambient temperature.
   6. Wet-Film Thickness:
      a. 15 mils.
      b. Edge Markings: 12 mils.

C. Dimensions and Locations: As indicated on Drawings.

D. Crosswalks and Stop Lines:
   1. Use walk-behind stripers, hand spray, or stencil trucks.
   2. Do not use hand brushes or rollers.
   3. Glass beads may be applied by hand.

E. Installation Standards: Install Work according to Illinois DOT standards.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for tolerances.

B. Maximum Variation from Wet Film Thickness: 1 mil.

C. Maximum Variation from Wet Paint Line Width: Plus or minus 1/8 inch.

D. Paint Guns: Plus or minus 1 mil.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for inspecting and testing.

B. Inspect for incorrect location, insufficient thickness, line width, coverage, retention, uncured or discolored material, and insufficient bonding.

C. Acceptance:
   1. Repair lines and markings which after application and curing do not meet following criteria:
      a. Incorrect location.
      b. Insufficient thickness, width, coverage, or retention.
      c. Uncured or discolored material.
      d. Insufficient bonding.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for cleaning.

B. Collect and legally dispose of residues from painting operations.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

B. Protect painted pavement markings from vehicular and pedestrian traffic until paint is dry and track free.

C. Unless material is track free at end of paint application convoy, use traffic cones to protect markings from traffic until track free.

D. If vehicle crosses a marking and tracks it, or if splattering or overspray occurs, eradicate affected marking and resultant tracking and apply new markings.

E. Follow manufacturer instructions or use minimum of 30 minutes of dry time.

F. Barrier cones are satisfactory protection for materials being dried.

3.8 MAINTENANCE

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for maintenance service.

3.9 ATTACHMENTS

A. Pavement Markings:
   1. Edge: 4-inch; white; conventional.
   2. Stop Line: 24-inch; white; fast-dry.
   3. Center: 4-inch; yellow; conventional.

END OF SECTION 32 17 23

SECTION 32 17 26
TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Tactile warning surfacing and accessories.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 321313 - Concrete Paving: Coordination with paving systems for equipment specified in this Section.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Association of State and Highway Transportation Officials:
   1. AASHTO HB-17 - Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

B. ASTM International:
   1. ASTM C1208 - Standard Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Joints for Use in Microtunneling, Sliplining, Pipe Bursting, and Tunnels.
   2. ASTM C1208M - Standard Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Joints for Use in Microtunneling, Sliplining, Pipe Bursting, and Tunnels.
   3. ASTM C1371 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers.
   4. ASTM C1549 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer.
   5. ASTM D570 - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics.
   6. ASTM D638 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.
   7. ASTM D790 - Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials.
   8. ASTM D1044 - Standard Test Method for Resistance of Transparent Plastics to Surface Abrasion.
   9. ASTM D2240 - Standard Test Method for Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness.
   10. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
   11. ASTM E303 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Surface Frictional Properties Using the British Pendulum Tester.
   12. ASTM E408 - Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques.
   13. ASTM E903 - Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres.
   14. ASTM E1918 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field.
   15. ASTM E1980 - Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces.

C. U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (Access Board):
   1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) - Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements specifies requirements for coordination.

B. Coordinate Work of this Section with Work of other Sections.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures specifies requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's information including characteristics, dimensions, domes, and special shapes.

C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit detailed instructions on installation requirements, including storage and handling procedures.

E. Source Quality-Control Submittals: Indicate results of tests and inspections.

F. Field Quality-Control Submittals: Indicate results of Contractor-furnished tests and inspections.

G. Manufacturer Reports:
1. Certify that equipment has been installed according to manufacturer's instructions.
2. Indicate activities on Site, adverse findings, and recommendations.

H. Qualifications Statements:
1. Submit qualifications for manufacturer and installer.
2. Submit manufacturer's approval of installer.

I. Perform Work according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

C. Store and protect materials according to manufacturer's instructions.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for warranties.

B. Furnish one year manufacturer's warranty for tactile warning surfacing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

A. Manufacturer List:
1. Detectable Warning Systems, Inc.
2. Engineered Plastics, Inc.

B. Description:
1. ADA-compliant tactile warning surfaces for visually impaired pedestrians.
2. Suitable for installation on both asphalt and concrete.

C. Design and Performance Criteria:
1. Loading: Single-wheel HS20-44, according to AASHTO HB-17.
2. Resistant to impacts, wear, freeze-thaw, UV exposure, and stains.
3. Fire Spread: Less than 15 when tested according to ASTM E84.
4. Slip Resistance: according to ASTM E303.
5. Taber Abrasion: 150 mgs, according to ASTM D1044.

6. Durometer Hardness: according to ASTM D2240, Type A.
7. Water Absorption:
    a. Comply with ASTM D570.
    b. Maximum: 0.05 percent.
8. Minimum Strengths:
    a. Compressive: 30,000 psi, according to ASTM D695.
    b. Flexural: 18,000 psi, according to ASTM D790.
    c. Tensile: 19,000 psi, according to ASTM D638.
9. Slip Resistance:
    a. Dry: 1.03.
    b. Wet: 0.83.
    c. Comply with ASTM C1208.
10. Domes:
    a. Spacing: 2.35 inches , o.c., measured diagonally.
    b. Size: 0.9 inch base bottom diameter, 0.45 inch top diameter, 0.2 inches high.

D. Surface-Applied Tile Type:
1. Material: Polymer-concrete composite or approved equal.
2. Length and Width: 24 by 60 (total) inches or as shown on the plans.
3. Color: Red.
4. Anchors: Stainless steel.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for testing, inspection, and analysis.

B. Provide shop inspection and testing of tactile warning surfacing units.

C. Owner Inspection: Make completed tactile warning surfacing units available for inspection at manufacturer's factory prior to packaging for shipment. Notify Owner at least seven days before inspection is allowed.

D. Owner Witnessing: Allow witnessing of factory inspections and tests at manufacturer's test facility. Notify Owner at least seven days before inspections and tests are scheduled.

E. Certificate of Compliance: When fabricator is approved by authorities having jurisdiction, submit certificate of compliance indicating Work performed at fabricator's facility conforms to Contract Documents.
1. Specified shop tests are not required for Work performed by approved fabricator.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation examination.

B. Verify that substrate is level or to correct grade, is smooth, is capable of supporting tactile warning surface units and imposed loads and is otherwise ready to receive Work of this Section.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation preparation.

B. Maintenance and Protection of Traffic:

1. Provide short-term traffic control as specified in Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.
2. Prevent interference with operations.
3. Maintain travel lanes between 7:00 AM to 9:00 AM and between 4:00 PM and 6:00 PM.
4. Maintain access to existing properties requiring access.

C. Surface Preparation:
1. Clean and dry paved surface prior to installing tactile warning surface modules.
2. Blow or sweep surface free of dirt, debris, oil, grease, or gasoline.

D. Existing Work:
1. Remove existing tactile warning surface modules by methods that will cause least damage to pavement surface.
2. Repair pavement or surface damage caused by removal operations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Requirements for inspecting and testing.

B. Inspect for correct location, extent of coverage, and final grade.

C. Equipment Acceptance:
1. Adjust, repair, modify, or replace components failing to perform as specified and rerun tests.
2. Make final adjustments to equipment under direction of manufacturer's representative.

D. Furnish installation certificate from equipment manufacturer's representative attesting that equipment has been properly installed and is ready for startup and testing.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for cleaning.

B. Clean tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's instructions.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

B. Protect tactile warning surfacing from vehicular and pedestrian traffic on newly installed tactile warning surface modules for period of time as instructed by manufacturer.

3.7 MAINTENANCE

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for maintenance service.

B. Furnish service and maintenance of tactile warning surfacing for three years from date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 32 17 26

SECTION 32 18 10
SYNTHETIC TURF SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Synthetic grass surfacing and infill.

B. Edge anchoring and borders.

C. Correction of grades and subgrade.

D. Drainage layer.

E. Field graphics.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, tools, and equipment necessary to install, in place, all synthetic turf material as indicated on the plans and as specified herein. The installation of all new materials shall be performed in strict accordance with the Manufacturer's written installation instructions, and in accordance with all approved shop drawings.

B. Prior to order of materials, the Synthetic Turf Contractor shall submit the following:
   1. Product data, including Independent Laboratory Test Results,
   2. Installation details,
   3. Sample Warranty,
   4. Field layout and striping plans,
   5. Details on construction, especially any details that may deviate from plans and specifications.

C. Prior to the beginning of installation, the Synthetic Turf Contractor of the synthetic turf shall verify the base for planarity. Upon written confirmation from the base contractor that compaction/planarity and drainage/permeability specifications have been achieved, the installation of synthetic turf will proceed as arranged.

D. Prior to Final Acceptance, the Synthetic Turf Contractor shall submit to the Owner three(3) copies of Executed Warranty Documents and Maintenance Manuals, which will include necessary instructions for the proper care and preventative maintenance of the synthetic turf system, including painting and striping.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete.

B. Section 31 23 16 Excavation.

C. Section 31 23 16.13 Trenching.

D. Section 31 23 23 - Fill.

E. Section 32 18 13 – Synthetic Grass Surfacing

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C920-Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2018.

B. ASTM C136/C136M – Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates; 2014.

C. ASTM C476 – Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry; 2018.

D. ASTM D698 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft2 (600kN-m/m3)); 2012, with Editorial Revision (2015).

E. ASTM D1335 – Standard Test Method for Tuft Bind of Pile Yarn Floor Coverings; 2017, with Editorial Revision (2018).

F. ASTM D1557 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3 (2,700 kN m/m3)); 2012, with Editorial Revisions (2015).

G. ASTM D2859 – Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials; 2016.

H. ASTM D5823 – Standard Test Method for Tuft Height of Pile Floor Coverings; 2013.

I. ASTM D6662 – Standard Specification for Polyolefin-Based Plastic Lumber Decking Boards; 2017.

J. ASTM F1487 – Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use; 2017.

K. ASTM F1632 – Standard Test Method for Particle Size Analysis and Sand Shape Grading of Golf Course Putting Green and Sports Field Rootzone Mixes; 2003 (Reapproved 2018).

L. ASTM F1667 – Standard Specification for Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples; 2018a.

M. ASTM F1936 – Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Turf Playing Systems as Measured in the Field; 2010 (Reapproved 2015).

N. ASTM F2765 – Standard Specification for Total Lead Content in Synthetic Turf Fibers; 2014.

O. ASTM F2898 – Standard Test Method for Permeability of Synthetic Turf Sports Field Base Stone and Surface by Non-confined Area Flood Test Method; 2011.

P. ASTM STP322-1 – Field Testing of Soils, Chapter 1: Field Percolation Tests for Sanitary Engineering Application; 1962.

Q. CPSC Pulb. No. 325 – Public Playground Safety Handbook; 2010.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. See Section 01 30 00 – Administrative Requirements – Administrative Requirements, for project meetings.

B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting at least one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

C. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

D. Coordination: Contractor shall coordinate construction activities with contractors under separate agreements (Bleacher Contractor and Track Coating Contractor).

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 30 00 – Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: for all manufactured surfacing products, provide manufacturer's product data showing materials of construction, compliance with specified standards, installation procedures, and safety limitations.
   1. Include STC certifications where required.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Carpet Roll: Show locations of seams and methods of seaming.
2. Installation details, edge detail, other inserts, and covers, etc., as required by contract.
3. Striping plan showing any field lines, markings and boundaries per project drawings.
4. Field Graphics: Include methods of seaming.

D. Samples: For each product for which color must be selected provide a color chart showing full range of colors.

E. Samples: Provide the following prior to ordering material:
1. Synthetic Grass carpet: Two 12 inch by 12 inch (305mm by 305mm) pieces.
2. Infill material: Two 1 gallon bags for each type.
3. Seamed synthetic grass carpet: Two 12 inch by 24 inch (305mm by 610mm) pieces seemed together for each seaming method indicated on drawings.
4. Field graphics synthetic grass carpet: Two 12 inch by 12 inch (305mm by 305mm) pieces for each color indicated on drawings.

F. Percolation Test Report: Describing test method used and results.

G. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.

H. Installer's Qualification Statement.

I. Maintenance Data:
1. For manufactured surfacing products, provide manufacturer's recommended maintenance instructions and list of repair products, with address and phone number of source of supply.
2. For loose fill surfacing products, provide detailed re-ordering information to enable Owner to match installed material exactly.

J. Manufacturer's Field Report.

K. Topographical survey loose fill layer prior to installation of synthetic grass carpet.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. See section 01 40 00 – Quality Requirements, for procedures for testing, inspection, mock-ups, reports, certificates, use of reference standards.

B. Maintain one copy of the latest edition of ASTM F1487 and CPSC Pub. No. 325 at project site.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company regularly engaged in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than eight years of documented experience.
1. Surfacing installed in minimum 10 sites and been in successful service minimum 5 years.
2. Manufacturer's Representative: Provide name, company name and address, and qualifications.
3. Manufacturer shall have an experienced technical services and sales professional who is available during the course of the work to meet personally with the Owner, Contractor, and Landscape Architect.
4. The Synthetic Turf Manufacturer must be vertically integrated including in-house tufting, polyethylene monofilament extrusion, in-house coating, polyurethane compounding, manufacture own primary backing, in-house yarn texturizing, ability and flexibility to tuft various gauge widths and have the ability to recycle used/old fields.

D. Installer Qualifications: Company certified by manufacturer for training and experience installing the protective surfacing; provide installer's company name and address, and training and experience certificate.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, handle, and store synthetic grass surfacing to project site in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Store materials in a dry, covered area, elevated about grade.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Ambient Conditions: Work under this section will cease when:

B. Temperatures are below 55 degrees F.

C. Humidity levels are above the adhesive manufacturer's requirements.

D. Rain is imminent or falling.

E. Surfaces are wet or damp.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 78 00 – Closeout Submittals – Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Provide 8 year minimum warranty form the date of substantial completion for materials and installation covering:

1. Excessive wear.
2. Fiber tensile strength.
3. Deterioration or fading from UV light.
4. Seam integrity.
5. Shock absorption.
6. Drainage rate.

C. The warranty submitted must have the following characteristics:

1. Must provide full-field coverage for eight (8) years from date of Substantial Completion,
2. Must warrant materials and workmanship,
3. Must warrant that the materials installed meet or the product specifications within manufacturing tolerances,
4. Must have a provision to either repair or replace such portions of the installed materials that are no longer serviceable to maintain a serviceable and playable surface.
5. Must be a Manufacturer's warranty from a single source covering workmanship and all self-manufactured or procured materials,
6. Must not be limited to the amount of annual usage,
7. Must provide, at the time of bid, a copy of its pre-paid 3rd party insurance policy. This policy must have an annual aggregate amount of no less than $15 million, and a per incident limit of no less than $15 million per claim. The third-party insurer must have an AM Best rating of A+ or better.

1.11 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. The surface on which the new synthetic turf is to be installed is a new base of compacted, porous aggregate. The Synthetic Turf Contractor will be responsible for any damage to the base during removal / installation of the synthetic turf system after the deficiencies (if any) have been corrected by the base contractor with respect to planarity, compaction, and drainage / permeability. New in ground equipment, and / or infield mix backfill within the contiguous synthetic turf limits or immediately adjacent thereto are to be installed prior to the installation of the synthetic turf system. Damage to the synthetic turf system during the installation of such materials is not the responsibility of the Synthetic Turf Contractor.

B. The Contractor is responsible to verify all measurements in the field prior to submitting shop drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of Design: "Pure Play 85" synthetic turf system as manufactured by Sporturf™ www.sporturf.com

2.2 SYNTHETIC GRASS SURFACING

A. Turf
   a. See Section 32 18 13

B. Replacement Panels
   a. See Section 32 18 13

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Edge Anchoring: Wood-polymer composite lumber complying with ASTM D6662; factory finished, free of sharp vertical edges, protruding elements, and trip hazards, capable of being secured to the border.
   1. Size (s): 2 inch by 3 inch (51 mm by 76 mm).
   2. Minimum Edge Radius: 1/2 inch.

B. Border: Permanent element surrounding edge anchoring, consisting of concrete curb.
   1. Concrete Curb: Concrete curb as indicated on drawings.

C. Drainage (Loose Surfacing) Course: Fractured, non-rounded gravel; washed; free of dust, clay, dirt, organic material, hazardous substances, or foreign objects; rounded particles, either naturally or mechanically; sieved in compliance with ASTM C136/C136M in the specified gradation range.
   1. Percent passing Sieve Size 1/2 inch: 100 percent.
   2. Percent passing Sieve Size 3/8 inch: 75 to 85 percent.
   3. Percent passing Sieve Size No. 4: 0 percent.
   4. Depth: As indicated on drawings.

D. Drainage (Base Stone) Course: Fractured, non-rounded gravel; washed; free of dust, clay, dirt, organic material, hazardous substances, or foreign objects; rounded particles, either naturally or mechanically; sieved in compliance with ASTM C136/C136M in specified gradation range.
   1. Percent passing Sieve Size 1-1/2 inch: 100 percent.
   2. Percent passing Sieve Size 3/4 inch: 75 to 85 percent.
   3. Percent passing Sieve Size 1/2 inch: 40 to 70 percent.
   4. Percent passing Sieve Size 3/8 inch: 75 to 85 percent.
   5. Percent passing Sieve Size No. 4: 0 percent.

6. Depth: As indicated on drawings.

E. Drainage Pipes: Uniform material, free of defects:
   1. Material: As indicated on drawings.
   2. Shape: As indicated on drawings.
   3. Perforations: As indicated on drawings.
   4. Size: As indicated on drawings.

F. Geotextile Fabric: Nonwoven Polypropylene Sheet.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners, Synthetic Grass to Edging: 1/2 inch (13mm) stainless steel staples, in compliance with ASTM F1667.

B. Fasteners, Edging to Border: Self drilling, stainless steel screws, in compliance with ASTM F1667.

C. Fasteners, Seams:
   1. Nails: Galvanized steel, 4 inch (102mm) long, in compliance with ASTM F1667.

D. Rebar: Number 4 rod.

E. Cementitious Grout: Fine, in compliance with ASTM C476.

F. Joint Sealant: As recommended by curbing manufacturer, in compliance with ASTM C920.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 40 00 – Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

B. Supply individual components from a single source.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Lay out entire project perimeter as indicated on drawings prior to starting work.

B. Measure the location of all synthetic grass elements, including perimeter of existing synthetic grass surfacing, access and egress points, hard surfaces, walls, fences, and structures.

C. Verify location of underground utilities and facilities in the project area. Damage to underground utilities and facilities will be repaired at Contractor's expense.

3.2 SUBGRADE

A. Excavate unsuitable soils as specified in Section 31 23 16. Backfill with suitable material as specified in Section 31 23 23.

B. Correct irregularities to ensure that required depth of drainage layer can be installed, and elevation is in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

C. Remove all obstructions that extend into the drainage layer within the composite nailer boards.

D. Perform rough and finish grading as specified in Section 31 22 13.

E. Shape to profile indicated on drawings and compact by proof rolling to a minimum 95 percent, in compliance with ASTM D698.

F. Flatness Tolerance: 1/2 inch in 10 feet, maximum.

G. Perform percolation test at the lowest elevation of the subgrade, in compliance with ASTM STP322-1.
   1. Report results to Architect.
   2. If percolation is less than 1 inch in a 3 hour period, do not proceed.

H. Verify that subgrades are at proper elevations and that smooth grading is complete.

3.3 TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

A. Lay out trenching for entire drainage network prior to excavation, as indicated on drawings.

B. Excavate trenches in accordance with drawings.

C. Mirror base of trenches to finish grade.

D. Open trenches require the presence of daily site activity.

E. Repair and deviations from plans after drainage pipe installation and prior to installing geotextile fabric.

F. Perform trenching as specified in Section 31 23 16.13.

3.4 DRAINAGE PIPE

A. Install all piping and fittings as indicated on drawings.

B. Install collector lines prior to laterals with deepest excavations first.

C. Connect collector lines to discharge outlet prior to field use.

D. Completion of installation in accordance to design requires approval by the Architect.
   1. Install drainage pipe as specified in Section 33 42 00.

3.5 GEOTEXTILE FABRIC

A. Verify that subgrade is free of ruts or protruding objects.

B. Install Geotextile fabric over subgrade in drainage trenches first, prior to field installation.

C. Lap minimum 36 inches width at seams. Adhere seams in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations.

D. Install fabric smooth, and free of tensile stresses, folds, or wrinkles.

E. Protect fabric from clogging, tears, or other damage during surfacing installation.

F. Repair or replace damaged fabric in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.6 DRAINAGE AGGREGATE

A. Loose Fill Surfacing:

   1. Install in compliance with CPSC Pub. No. 325, ASTM F1487, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
   2. Install aggregate subbase as indicated on drawings. Compact aggregate to maximum 95 percent, in compliance with ASTM D1557.
   3. Flatness Tolerance: 1/4 inch in 10 feet, maximum.
   4. Correct high and low areas in accordance with design drawings.
   5. Match top of layer with top of edge anchoring.
   6. Prevent base stone from entering into loose fill surfacing layer. Prevent loose fill from entering into base stone layer.

B. Base Stone:

1. Install aggregate subbase as indicated on drawings. Compact aggregate to maximum 95 percent, in compliance with ASTM D1557.
2. Install in compliance with CPSC Pub. No. 325, ASTM F1487, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
3. Flatness Tolerance: 1/2 inch in 10 feet, maximum.
4. Correct high and low areas in accordance with design drawings.
5. Mirror base stone elevations to final elevations.
6. Prevent disturbance to geotextile fabric during installation.
7. Approval of drainage piping by Architect required prior to commencement of installation. Prevent disturbance of drainage piping during installation.

3.7 EDGE ANCHORING

A. Layout composite nailer boards. Approval of locations by Architect required prior to installing.

B. Install along full perimeter of synthetic grass.

C. Fasten to border with case hardened screws at 24 inch or center, minimum.

D. Set top of edging flush or recessed 1/2 inch below top of border, maximum.

3.8 BORDER

A. Verify that site furnishings and composite nailer boards located within project area are complete.

B. Install border curbs according to design drawings.

3.9 SYNTHETIC GRASS

A. Carpet Rolls:
1. Unroll all carpet in the same direction.
2. Prevent seams from being located over impact mats.
3. Allow carpet to rest for at least 4 hours after unrolling and prior to seaming.
4. Smooth seams and edges, eliminate overlaps and gaps.

B. Seaming:
1. Cut: Straight, with a clean and smooth edge.
2. Method:
   a. Nailing / Stapling: Spaced 6 inch (152 mm) along seam.

C. Securing: Staple carpet to edging 1 inch (25 mm) on center.

D. Field Graphics:
1. Applied Marking: Per manufacturer recommendations, in dimensions and color patterns indicated on drawings.

3.10 INFILL

A. Apply during dry weather without signs of moisture on synthetic grass.

B. Thoroughly brush synthetic grass prior to infill installation.

C. Apply infill uniformly in multiple lifts, brush fibers between each application.

D. Measure dept to confirm accordance with plans.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 40 00 – Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

B. Drainage aggregate completion requires approval by Architect.

C. Owner or Owner's representative will inspect synthetic grass after installation to verify that surfacing is of proper type and meets specified design safety and accessibility requirements.

D. Repair or replace rejected work until compliant with specified requirements and design criteria.

E. Confirm rainfall permeability meets design, per ASTM F2898.

F. Confirm impact attenuation meets design, per ASTM F1936.

G. G-max testing
   1. All g-max testing shall be performed by an independent testing service and in accordance with ASTM Standard Specification F1936 and ASTM Standard Test Method F355 (Procedure A).
   2. Prior to acceptance and/or use by the owner, the contractor/manufacturer will have the field tested in 3 separate locations, to confirm the average G-max at each test point is less than 200 G-max on the infield and less than 165 in the outfield.
   3. G-max testing is to be included in the contractors bid and will not come out of the testing allowance.
   4. Subsequent to acceptance, for the remainder of the time the field is under warranty, the contractor/manufacturer will have the field tested no less often than annually to demonstrate that the field complies with the requirement(s).
   5. If during the warranty period, the field is tested and found not to comply with the requirements, the contractor/manufacturer is required to bring the field into compliance, and the owner may require the contractor/manufacturer to have the field retested to verify compliance.
   6. Copies of all G-max test reports shall be furnished to Owner and Architect.

H. Replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

3.12 CLEANING

A. Clean surrounding areas of excess construction materials, debris, and waste.

B. Remove excess and waste material and dispose of off-site in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.13 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products until Date of Substantial Completion.

B. Restore adjacent existing areas that have been damaged by work of this section.

END OF SECTION 32 18 10

SECTION 32 18 13
SYNTHETIC GRASS SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Furnish all labor, materials, tools, and equipment necessary to install monofilament artificial grass as indicated on the plans and as specified herein; including components and accessories required for a complete installation. Including but not limited to

B. Acceptance of prepared sub-base.

C. Coordination with related trades to ensure a complete, integrated, and timely installation: Aggregate base course, sub-base material (tested for permeability), grading and compacting, piping and drain components (when required); as provided under its respective trade section.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM – American Society for Testing and Materials.
1. D1577 – Standard Test Method for Linear Density of Textile Fiber
2. D5848 – Standard Test Method for Mass Per Unit Area of Pile Yarn Floor Covering
3. D1338 – Standard Test Method for Tuft Bind of Pile Yarn Floor Covering
4. D1682 – Standard Test Method of Test for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics.
5. D5034 - Standard Test Method of Breaking Strength and Elongation of Textile Fabrics (Grab Test)
6. F1015 – Standard Test Method for Relative Abrasiveness of Synthetic Turf Playing Surfaces
7. F1551 - Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability
8. D2859 - Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials
9. F355 - Standard Test Method for Shock-Absorbing Properties of Playing Surfaces
10. F1936 - Standard Test Method for Shock-Absorbing Properties of North American Football Field Playing Systems as Measured in the Field
11. D1557 – Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.
12. National Federation of High School (NFHS) Rules, as applicable. FIFA Rules of the Game or NCAA Soccer Rules, as applicable.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with Section 01 33 00, Submittals Procedures.

B. Product Data:
1. Submit manufacturer’s catalog cuts, material safety data sheets (MSDS), brochures, specifications; preparation and installation instructions and recommendations; storage, handling requirements and recommendations.
2. Submit fiber manufacturer’s name, type of fiber and composition of fiber.
3. Submit date in sufficient detail to indicate compliance with the contract documents.
4. Submit manufacturer's instructions for installation.

5. Submit manufacturer's instructions for maintenance for the proper care and preventative maintenance of the synthetic turf system, including painting and markings.

C. Samples: Submit samples, 6x6 inches, illustrating details of finished product.

D. Shop Drawings: Shop drawings are to be submitted for review by the Engineer prior to manufacture of product and are to contain information regarding locations of seams, anchorage details, goal post/insert details, line and event marking locations and dimensions, turf roll widths and dimensions.

E. Product Certification:
1. Submit manufacturer's certification that products and materials comply with requirements of the specifications.
2. Submit test results indicating compliance with Reference Standards.

F. Warranties: Submit warranty to ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with approved manufacturer.

G. Testing Certification: Submit certified copies of independent (third-party) laboratory reports on ASTM testing.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section. The turf contractor and/or the turf manufacturer.
1. Shall be experienced in the manufacture and installation of specified type of synthetic grass system for a minimum of three years with the same manufacturer, product and company they are proposing for this project.

B. Installer: Company shall specialize in performing the work of this section. The Contractor shall provide competent workmen skilled in this specific type of synthetic grass installation.

C. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at project site at time to be determined by Architect. Review methods and procedures related to installation including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Inspect and discuss existing conditions and preparatory work performed under other contracts.

D. The Contractor shall verify special conditions required for the installation of the system.

E. The Contractor shall notify the Architect of any discrepancies.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store components with labels intact and legible.

B. Protect from damage during delivery, storage, handling, and installation. Protect from damage by other trades.

C. Inspect all delivered materials and products to ensure they are undamaged and in good condition.

D. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate the Work with installation of work of related trades as the Work proceeds.

B. Sequence the Work in order to prevent deterioration of installed system.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

A. Install synthetic turf surfacing only when ambient air temperature is 35 F or above and the relative humidity is below 35% or as specified by the product manufacturer. Installation will not proceed if rain is imminent.

B. Install product only when prepared sub-floor is suitably free of dirt, dust, and petroleum products, is moisture free and sufficiently secured to prevent unwanted pedestrian and vehicular access.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 78 00 – Closeout Submittals.

B. The Contractor shall provide a minimum five (5) year warranty policy by the manufacturer, against defects in materials and workmanship. Defects shall include, but not be limited to ultraviolet ray fading, degradation, or excessive wear of fiber.

C. Limited Warranty shall be for replacement of any damaged product within the warranty period. Warranty shall be comprehensive and sufficient to replace entire field if necessary.

D. Warranty shall become effective from the date of substantial completion.

E. The Warranty shall contain no usage limits for the warranted field.

F. Submit Manufacturer Warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with Manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER AND DISTRIBUTOR

A. Basis of Design: "Pure Play 85" synthetic turf system as manufactured by Sporturf™ www.sporturf.com

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Turf Fiber:
   1. The turf fiber must be tufted to the ArmorLoc™ 3L and coated with SilverBack™ with a minimum tuft bind of 8 pounds.
   2. The tufted fiber weight shall be a minimum of 40 ounces per square yard.
   3. The turf fiber shall be polyethylene slit film and texturized nylon.
   4. The turf fiber shall be non-abrasive and a minimum of 100 microns thick.
   5. The turf fiber must contain less than 100 ppm of lead in all colors.
   6. The turf fibers must be from the same dye lots.
   7. The turf fibers must be guaranteed for a period of Eight Years no to fade or fail (as distinguished from a change in texture) or have a pile height decrease to 50% of pile height as result of UV degradation.
   8. The infill must be within 1/4" of the tips of the fibers upon completion of the install if required.
   9. The turf fiber must retain a minimum of 75% of its original fibril width after 10,000 cycles on the Lisport Studded Roll Test Machine.
   10. The pile fiber shall possess the following characteristics:
      a. Linear Density (Denier): 9,000 combined (ASTM D1577)
      b. Yarn Thickness: 100 Microns (slit); 100 Microns (mono) (ASTM D3218)
      c. Pile Weight: 40 oz/yd2 (ASTM D5848).

11. The pile fabric shall possess the following physical characteristics:
    a. Finished Pile Height: 3/4" (ASTM D5823)
    b. Product Weight (total): 125 oz/yd2 (ASTM D3218)
    c. Primary Backing Weight: 7.4 oz/yd2 (ASTM D2256)
    d. Secondary Coating Weight: 78 oz/yd2 (ASTM D5848)
    e. Fabric Width: 12'-0" (ASTM D5793)
    f. Grab Tear Strength: 220-1b-F (ASTM D5034)
    g. Tuft Bind: >8-1b-F (ASTM D1335)

B. Backing Material

1. Primary Backing:
    a. Primary backing must be a dual layered woven polypropylene material.
    b. Primary backing system weight must be a minimum of 7.0 ounces/square yar.
2. Secondary Backing:
    a. Secondary backing system weight must be a minimum of 75 ounces/square yard.

C. Turf roll seams: to be glued on site so that no openings larger than the porous backing mat openings are created. Roll width to coincide with tufted-in sports line markings where possible. All turf fabric edges to be securely bound as per the perimeter detail design. Adhesives for joining seams of turf together shall be Nordot 34G, Mapei SK, Turf Claw or equivalent.

D. Fabric Surface: shall be constructed and installed in minimum widths of 12 feet with no longitudinal or transverse seams, except for inlaid lines with a finish roll assembly. Seams shall be 12'-0" apart. Rolls that do not comply with the proper length or conform to the seaming diagram, as approved prior to installation, shall be rejected from the site. No fitted pieces shall be allowed to true alignment. Parallel seams are only acceptable in the main playing areas.

E. The entire system shall be resistant to weather, including ultra-violet light and heat degradation; insects, rot, mildew, and fungus growth and be non-allergenic and non-toxic.

F. Fiber Colors: Submit samples of the full available color palette for owner approval prior to placing order for turf including at a minimum the below listed colors:

1. Color 1: Grass, green in standard color, as selected by the Owner.

G. The turf material shall be non-combustible and pass the DIN standard Pill Burn test or ASTM D2859.

2.3 SYNTHETIC GLUE MATERIAL

A. Adhesive products shall be Nordot 34G, Mapei 2K, Turf Claw or equivalent as approved by the engineer.

B. Any adhesive products required for the installation of a proposed turf system shall be purpose-suited to the system. The material and application methods shall be as recommended by the adhesive manufacturer.

C. Disposal of adhesive containers and unused adhesives as well as any fees resulting from such disposal shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

D. Contractor shall glue perimeter and seams to meet manufacturers requirements where concrete substrate is provided. Where aggregate substrate is provided under alternate bid, contractor shall provide full adhesive around perimeter and seam tape at all joints. Full area adhesive is not required unless required by manufacturer specific installation instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Installation of the synthetic turf system is to comply with the manufacturer's recommendations, requirements, and the reviewed and approved shop drawings.

B. Perform all work in strict accordance with the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's specifications and instructions. Only those skilled technicians proposed in the bid phase are to be assigned to this project by the Contractor.

C. The designated Supervisor for the Synthetic Turf Installer must be present during any and all construction activity associated with the field installation, including testing, cleanup and training.

D. All products and equipment are to be from sources approved by the authorized turf manufacturer and confirm to the specifications.

3.2 SITE EXAMINATION

A. A 24 Hour Relaxation Period is recommended before gluing down turf to prevent shrinking and for expanding after glue down. Ideal temperatures should be above 70 degrees.

B. When turf is delivered: check its texture, color, and style; make sure there are no visible defects before installation. Be sure the installer will adhere to the CRI 105 installation methods (www.carpet-rug.com). Among other things, it requires for proper installation that turf must be power-stretched to minimize wrinkling and rippling. Seam edges must be sealed with appropriate adhesive to prevent delaminating and edge ravel.

C. Temperature and Humidity: The environment in which the turf is to be installed must be controlled with the temperature between 65 F and 95 F and the relative humidity between 10% and 65%. These conditions must be maintained for at least 48 hours before, during, and 48 hours after the installation.

D. Commencement of work under this section shall constitute acceptance of the work completed under other sections by the Contractor, and hence, no claims for extra work based upon these conditions will be permitted.

3.3 TURF INSTALLATION

A. Install synthetic turf system in accordance with the manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. All inlaid areas shall have full fastenings and no loose areas. At no time can pulling on the section separate the material.

C. Turf shall be attached to the perimeter edge as shown in the construction plans and as per the manufacturer.

D. All terminations shall be as detailed and approved in the shop drawings.

3.4 CLEANING AND COMPLETION

A. Protect all installed work from other construction activities as installation progresses.

B. The Contractor shall keep the area clean throughout the construction period and free from the installation process.

C. Upon completion of the installation, thoroughly clean surfaces and site of all refuse resulting from the installation process.

D. Any damage to existing fixtures or facilities resulting from the installation of the synthetic turf system shall be repaired to the original condition at the Contractor's expense prior to Substantial Completion and commencement of the Warranty Period.

E. A deficiency list will be produced by the Engineer at the conclusion of the project. All installation project deficiencies not in dispute must be remedied by the Contractor prior to the issuance of a certificate of Substantial Completion.

F. Contractor to provide a written acceptance by the Turf Manufacturer that the turf and base system is installed in accordance with their recommendations prior to final completion.

END OF SECTION 32 18 13

SECTION 32 18 16
POURED-IN-PLACE BONDED RUBBER MULCH SURFACE FOR PLAYGROUND AREAS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Ectoturf Surfacing Bonded Rubber Mulch Surfacing System.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Project drawings and general provisions of the Contract: including General, Supplementary, and Special Conditions, and Division 1 Specifications, apply to this contract.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
   1. ASTM F1292 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment.
   2. ASTM F1951 Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment.
   3. International Play Equipment Manufacturers Association (IPEMA) certified.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Performance Requirements: Provide a single layer rubber-urethane playground surfacing system which has been designed, manufactured and installed to meet the following criteria:
   1. Shock Attenuation (ASTM F1292):
      a. Gmax: Less than 200.
      b. Head Injury Criteria: Less than 1000.
   2. Accessibility: Comply with the requirements of ASTM F1951.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Procedures Section.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions.

C. Verification Samples: Submit manufacturer's standard verification samples of 6" x 6" minimum.

D. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals: Submit the following:
   1. Certificate of qualifications of the playground surfacing installer.

E. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:
   1. Warranty documents specified herein.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications: Utilize an installer approved and trained by the manufacturer of the playground surfacing system or a direct employee of the manufacturer’s installation division, having experience with other projects of the scope and scale of the work described in this section.

B. Certifications: Certification by the manufacturer that the installer is an approved applicator of the playground surfacing system.

C. International Play Equipment Manufacturers Association (IPEMA) certified.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirement Section.

B. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at a minimum temperature of 40 degrees F and a maximum temperature of 90 degrees F.

1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Requirements: Install the surfacing system when the minimum ambient temperature is 40 degrees F and the maximum ambient temperature is 95 degrees F. Exceptions to the temperature requirements can be made by the manufacturer of the surfacing system. Do not install in steady or heavy rain.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.

B. Proper drainage is critical to the longevity of the Ecoturf Surfacing Bonded Rubber Mulch surfacing system. Inadequate drainage will cause premature breakdown of the poured system in affected areas: and void the warranty.
   1. Warranty Period: At least 5 years from date of completion of work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ECOTURF SURFACING BONDED RUBBER MULCH PLAYGROUND SURFACING SYSTEM

A. Manufacturer:
   1. Ecoturf Surfacing, 7356 Holliday Drive, Kansas City, KS 66106. Telephone: (913)548-0668; Email: play@ecoturfsurfacing.com ; website: http://www.ecoturfsurfacing.com

B. Proprietary Products/Systems. Ecoturf Surfacing Bonded Rubber Mulch surfacing system, including the following:
   1. Ecoturf Surfacing Bonded Rubber Mulch Primer:
      a. Material: Manufacturers standard Urethane Primer.
   2. Ecoturf Surfacing Bonded Rubber Mulch:
      a. Material: 100% recycled blend of shredded SBR (styrene butadiene rubber) and urethane.
      b. Playground equipment determines the required system thickness, and the system thickness may be different at various locations on the playground site. Depending on current ASTM F1292 requirements for critical fall height (6') system thickness shall be:
         1) Rubber Mulch Thickness: 3” minimum (IPEMA Certified for a max. critical fall height of 6’-0”)
      c. Colors: Earthtone, Redwood, Forest Green, Cypress, Caribbean Blue, Black – Owner will select.
      d. Binder: Aliphatic Resin. No filler materials shall be used in urethane such as plasticizers and the catalyzing agent shall contain no heavy metals. No Toluene Diphenyl Isocyanate (TDI) shall be used.

2.2 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS:

A. Substitutions: No Substitutions permitted.

2.3 MIXES

A. Required mix proportions by weight:

1. Rubber Mulch: 16+% urethane (as ratio: 14% urethane divided by 86% rubber). 14% urethane, 86% rubber (based on entire rubber & urethane mix).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with the instructions and recommendations of the playground surfacing manufacturer.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Substrate preparation must be in accordance with surfacing manufacturer's specifications.

B. Proper drainage is critical to the longevity of the Ecoturf Surfacing Bonded Rubber Mulch surfacing system. Inadequate drainage will cause premature breakdown of the poured system in affected areas; and void the warranty.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Surface preparation: Using a brush or short nap roller, apply primer to the substrate perimeter and any adjacent vertical barriers such as playground equipment support legs, curbs or slabs that will contact the surfacing system at the rate of 300 ft2/gal.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Do not proceed with surfacing installation until all applicable site work, including substrate preparation, fencing, playground equipment installation and other relevant work, has been completed.

B. Surfacing Installation:
1. Using screeds and hand trowels, install the surfacing to the specified thickness.
2. Allow surfacing to cure for sufficient time so that indentations are not left in the surfacing from applicator foot traffic or equipment.
3. Do not allow foot traffic or use of the surfacing until it is sufficiently cured.

C. Primer Application: Using a brush or short nap roller, apply primer to the basemat perimeter and any adjacent vertical barriers such as playground equipment support legs, curbs or slabs that will contact the surfacing system at the rate of 300 ft2/gal.

D. Top Surface Installation:
1. Using a hand trowel, install surfacing at a consistent nominal thickness as required for critical fall heights.
2. Allow surfacing to cure for a minimum of 72 hours for aliphatic resin.
3. At the end of the minimum curing period, verify that the surfacing is sufficiently dry and firm to allow foot traffic and use without damage to the surface.
4. Do not allow foot traffic or use of the surfacing until it is sufficiently cured.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect the installed playground surface from damage resulting from subsequent construction activity on the site.

END OF SECTION 32 18 16

SECTION 32 31 13
CHAIN LINK FENCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish and install chain link fence framework and fabric with hardware and accessories as shown, specified, or both shown and specified, complete.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in commercial quality chain link fencing with a minimum of three (3) years of experience.

B. Installation: ANSI/ASTM F567

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and product data. Include plan layout, grid, spacing of components, accessories, fittings, hardware, anchorages and schedule of components.

B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

C. Submit samples of fencing and accessories upon Architect’s request.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REPRESENTATIVE ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

A. Anchor Fence, Inc.; United States Steel Corporation; Colorguard Corporation; or equal.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Frame Work: ASTM A120; Schedule 40 standard weight steel pipe; galvanized and zinc coated inside and outside.

B. Fabric: FS RR-F-191, Type IV, steel.

2.3 COMPONENTS

A. Line Posts: 2.5” outside diameter steel pipe.

B. Corner and Terminal Posts: 3” outside diameter steel pipe.

C. Gate Posts: 3" outside diameter steel pipe.

D. Top and Brace Rails: 1 5/8” outside diameter steel pipe, plain-ended and sleeve coupled.

E. Gate Frame: 2” outside diameter steel pipe.

F. Fabric: 2” diamond mesh, steel wire, interwoven 9-gauge, top and bottom selvage knuckle end closed.

G. Caps: Cast metal, sized to post dimension, set screw retained.

H. Fittings: Sleeves, bands, clips, rail ends, fasteners and fittings, steel. Painted fittings are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL:

A. Install framework, fabric, and accessories in accordance with ANSI/ASTM F567.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF POSTS AND RAILS:

A. Space line posts at intervals not exceeding 10'.

B. Set terminal and line posts plumb. Use concrete sleeve anchor method of setting posts into sleeves set in concrete.

C. Provide top rail through line post tops and splice with 7" long rail sleeves.

D. Install bottom brace rail on corners.

3.3 EXISTING FENCING:

A. As shown or specified, remove any chain-link fence and dispose of it in a legal manner off-site.

3.4 GATES:

A. Provide new gates where indicated on drawings.

B. Gates shall be swinging type, properly braced against sagging and equipped with lift latch and a padlock hasp.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FABRIC:

A. Stretch fabric between terminal posts or at intervals of 10' maximum, whichever is less. Position the bottom of the fabric 2" above the finished grade.

B. Fasten fabric to the top rail, line posts, and braces with wire ties maximum of 15" on centers.

C. Clean and adjust.

END OF SECTION 32 31 13

SECTION 32 33 00
SITE FURNISHINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Benches.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Bollard infill and underground encasement.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2019.

B. ASTM A500/A500M - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes; 2023.

C. ASTM A536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings; 1984, with Editorial Revision (2019).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's specifications and descriptive literature, installation instructions, and maintenance information.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate plans for each unit or group of units, elevations with model number, overall dimensions, construction, and anchorage details.

D. Samples: Submit two sets of manufacturer's available colors for metal furnishings.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with at least three years of documented experience.

B. Installer Qualifications: Natural Stone Institute (NSI) Accredited Commercial B Contractor (light commercial); www.naturalstoneinstitute.org/#sle.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Provide manufacturer’s warranty against defects in materials or workmanship for ductile iron castings for a period of 10 years from Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Metal Furnishings:
   1. Neenah Foundry, a division of Neenah Enterprises, Inc: www.nfco.com/#sle.
   2. SiteScapes, Inc: www.sitescapesonline.com/#sle.
   3. Wausau Made, a division of Wausau Tile Inc: www.tecturadesigns.com/#sle.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.02 METAL FURNISHINGS

A. Metal Furnishings, General:
   1. Cast iron components: Ductile iron castings complying with ASTM A536; cleaned, treated, and powder-coated.
      a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
   2. Steel components: Plates, bars, and shapes complying with ASTM A36/A36M and tubing complying with ASTM A500/A500M; cleaned, treated, and powder-coated.
      a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
   3. Hardware: Stainless steel.

B. Benches: Metal frame and seat section with back.
   1. Basis of Design Product: CV1-1000 as manufactured by Sitescapes.
   2. Frame: Steel.
   3. Seat: Steel slat.
   4. Length: 72 inches.
   5. Width: 34 inches.
   6. Height: 26 inches.
   7. Mounting: Surface.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify proper installation of mounting surfaces, preinstalled anchor bolts, and other mounting devices; and ready to receive site furnishing items.

B. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions are corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install site furnishings in accordance with approved shop drawings, and manufacturer's installation instructions.

B. Provide level mounting surfaces for site furnishing items.

END OF SECTION 32 33 00

SECTION 32 92 19
SEEDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Fertilizing.
   2. Seeding.
   3. Hydroseeding.
   4. Mulching.
   5. Maintenance.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 312213 - Rough Grading: Rough grading of site.
   2. Section 312316.13 - Trenching: Rough grading over cut.
   3. Section 320513 - Soils for Exterior Improvements: Topsoil material.
   4. Section 329113 - Soil Preparation

1.2 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International:
   1. ASTM C602 - Standard Specification for Agricultural Liming Materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Weeds: Vegetative species other than specified species to be established in given area.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit data for seed mix, fertilizer, mulch, and other accessories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for submittals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide seed mixture in containers showing percentage of seed mix, germination percentage, inert matter percentage, weed percentage, year of production, net weight, date of packaging, and location of packaging.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: Product storage and handling requirements.

B. Deliver grass seed mixture in sealed containers. Seed in damaged packaging is not acceptable.

C. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for maintenance service.

B. Maintain seeded areas immediately after placement until grass is well established and exhibits vigorous growing condition.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED MIXTURE

A. Furnish materials according to State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Mulching Material: Oat or wheat straw, free from weeds, foreign matter detrimental to plant life, and dry. Hay is acceptable.

B. Fertilizer: Commercial grade; recommended for grass; of proportion necessary to eliminate deficiencies of topsoil. See State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards for requirements.

C. Water: Clean, fresh and free of substances or matter capable of inhibiting vigorous growth of grass.

D. Erosion Fabric: matting, open weave.

E. Herbicide: See State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

F. Stakes: Softwood lumber, chisel pointed.

G. String: Inorganic fiber.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Testing, inspection and analysis requirements.

B. Analyze to ascertain percentage of nitrogen, phosphorus, potash, soluble salt content, organic matter content, and pH value.

C. Provide recommendation for fertilizer and lime application rates for specified seed mix as result of testing.

D. Testing is not required when recent tests and certificates are available for imported topsoil. Submit these test results to testing laboratory. Indicate, by test results, information necessary to determine suitability.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify prepared soil base is ready to receive the Work of this section.

3.2 FERTILIZING

A. Apply fertilizer at application rate per State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil.

C. Do not apply fertilizer at same time or with same machine used to apply seed.

D. Mix fertilizer thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.

E. Lightly water soil to aid dissipation of fertilizer. Irrigate top level of soil uniformly.

3.3 SEEDING

A. Apply seed at rate per State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards evenly in two intersecting directions. Rake in lightly.

B. Do not seed areas in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.

C. Planting Season: per State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards.

D. Do not sow immediately following rain, when ground is too dry, or when winds are over 12 mph.

E. Roll seeded area with roller not exceeding 112 lbs/linear foot.

F. Immediately following seeding, apply mulch to thickness of 1/8 inch. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.

3.4 HYDROSEEDING

A. Apply fertilizer, mulch and seeded slurry with hydraulic seeder at rate per State of Illinois Department of Transportation standards evenly in one pass.

3.5 SEED PROTECTION

A. Cover seeded slopes where grade is greater than 3 horizontal to 1 vertical with erosion fabric. Roll fabric onto slopes without stretching or pulling.

B. Overlap edges and ends of adjacent rolls minimum 12 inches. Rake smooth, level with adjacent soil.

C. Secure outside edges and overlaps at 36 inch intervals with stakes or anchors.

D. Lightly dress slopes with topsoil to ensure close contact between fabric and soil.

E. At sides of ditches, lay fabric laps in direction of water flow. Lap ends and edges minimum 6 inches.

END OF SECTION 32 92 19

SECTION 32 93 00
PLANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Preparation of subsoil and topsoil.

B. Placing topsoil.

C. New trees, plants, and ground cover.

D. Mulch and Fertilizer.

E. Maintenance.

F. Tree Pruning.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 32 92 19 - Seeding.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ANSI/AHIA Z60.2 - American Standard for Nursery Stock; 2025.

B. ANSI A300 Part 1 - American National Standard for Tree Care Operations - Tree, Shrub, and Other Woody Plant Management - Standard Practices (Pruning); 2017.

C. ANSI Z133.1 - American National Standard for Arboricultural Operations - Safety Requirements; 2017.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Certificate: Certify fertilizer mixture approval by authority having jurisdiction.

C. Certificate: Submit certificate for plants free of disease or hazardous insects; certified by federal department of agriculture; free of disease or hazardous insects.

D. Maintenance Data: Include cutting and trimming method ; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer ; and _____.

E. Submit list of plant life sources.

F. Maintenance Contract.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Nursery Qualifications: Company specializing in growing and cultivating the plants with three years documented experience.

B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing and planting the plants approved by nursery.

C. Tree Pruner Qualifications: Company specializing in pruning trees with proof of Arborist Certification.

D. Tree Pruning: Comply with ANSI A300 Part 1.

E. Maintenance Services: Performed by installer.

F. Non-native, Invasive Plant Species: Do not introduce, grow, or cultivate plant species that are non-native to the ecosystem of the project site, and whose introduction causes or is likely to cause economic or environmental harm or harm to human health.

1. Comply with laws regulating non-native and invasive plant species in the State in which the Project is located.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.

B. Protect and maintain plant life until planted.

C. Deliver plant life materials immediately prior to placement. Keep plants moist.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not install plant life when ambient temperatures may drop below 35 degrees F or rise above 90 degrees F.

B. Do not install plant life when wind velocity exceeds 30 mph.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Provide one year warranty.

C. Warranty: Include coverage for one continuous growing season; replace dead or unhealthy plants.

D. Replacements: Plants of same size and species as specified, planted in the next growing season, with a new warranty commencing on date of replacement.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PLANTS

A. Plants: Species and size identified in plant schedule, grown in climatic conditions similar to those in locality of the work.

2.02 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; minimum pH value of 5.4 and maximum 7.0.

2.03 MULCH

A. Mulching Material: Oat or wheat straw, free from weeds, foreign matter detrimental to plant life, and dry. Hay or chopped cornstalks are not acceptable.

B. Organic Mulch: Maintain uniform appearance; may remove existing mulch. Use one of the following types:
   1. Wood chips ranging in size from 1/2 to 1 inch.
   2. Ground or shredded bark.
   3. Shredded hardwood ranging in size from 1/2 to 1 inch.

C. Inorganic Mulch: Maintain uniform appearance; may remove existing mulch; use one of the following types:
   1. Riverbank stone ranging in size from 1/4 to 3/43 inch.
   2. Crushed rock ranging in size from 1/4 to 3/4 inch.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

A. Wrapping Materials: Burlap.

B. Stakes: Softwood lumber, pointed end.

C. Cable, Wire, Eye Bolts and Turnbuckles: Non-corrosive, of sufficient strength to withstand wind pressure and resulting movement of plant life.

D. Plant Protectors: Rubber sleeves over cable to protect plant stems, trunks, and branches.

E. Membrane: 20 mil thick, water permeable polyolefin fabric.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that prepared subsoil and planters are ready to receive work.

B. Saturate soil with water to test drainage.

3.02 PREPARATION OF SUBSOIL

A. Prepare subsoil to eliminate uneven areas. Maintain profiles and contours. Make changes in grade gradual. Blend slopes into level areas.

B. Remove foreign materials, weeds and undesirable plants and their roots. Remove contaminated subsoil.

C. Scarify subsoil to a depth of 3 inches where plants are to be placed. Repeat cultivation in areas where equipment, used for hauling and spreading topsoil, has compacted subsoil.

D. Dig pits and beds 6 inches larger than plant root system.

3.03 PLACING TOPSOIL

A. Spread topsoil to a minimum depth of 4 inches over area to be planted. Rake smooth.

B. Place topsoil during dry weather and on dry unfrozen subgrade.

C. Remove vegetable matter and foreign non-organic material from topsoil while spreading.

D. Grade topsoil to eliminate rough, low or soft areas, and to ensure positive drainage.

E. Install topsoil into pits and beds intended for plant root balls, to a minimum thickness of 6 inches.

3.04 FERTILIZING

A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Apply after initial raking of topsoil.

C. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.

D. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

3.05 PLANTING

A. Place plants for best appearance for review and final orientation by Architect.

B. Set plants vertical.

C. Remove non-biodegradable root containers.

D. Set plants in pits or beds, partly filled with prepared plant mix, at a minimum depth of 6 inches under each plant. Remove burlap, ropes, and wires, from the root ball.

E. Place bare root plant materials so roots lie in a natural position. Backfill soil mixture in 6 inch layers. Maintain plant life in vertical position.

F. Saturate soil with water when the pit or bed is half full of topsoil and again when full.

3.06 PLANT SUPPORT

A. Brace plants vertically with plant protector wrapped guy wires and stakes to the following:
   1. Tree Caliper: 1 to 2 inches; Tree Support Method: 2 stakes with two ties
   2. Tree Caliper: 2 to 4 inches; Tree Support Method: 3 guy wires with eye bolts and turn buckles

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 01 40 00.

B. Plants will be rejected if a ball of earth surrounding roots has been disturbed or damaged prior to or during planting.

3.08 CLEANING

A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.

B. Clean surrounding areas of construction debris.

3.09 MAINTENANCE

A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.

B. Provide a separate maintenance contract for specified maintenance service for review by owner.

C. Provide one complete spring start-up and fall shutdown by installer at no extra cost to Owner.

D. Planting Bed Maintenance:
   1. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed; inspect at least once per week and perform needed maintenance promptly.
   2. Keep planting beds free of pests; remove weeds and grass by hand before reaching 1-inch height.
   3. Do not allow climbing, twining, or creeping plants to encroach into other species.
   4. Ground Cover and Vines:
      a. Trim to encourage dense, well-developed growth covering intended areas.
      b. Remove existing plants growing up trees, shrubs, or vines or encroaching into turf or drainage channels, unless ground cover within drainage channel is intended.
      c. Remove existing plants growing up trees, shrubs, and vines.
   5. Flowering Plants: Remove dead flower heads; do not trim off leaves of flowering bulbs until they are brown.
   6. Replace mulch as required and remove debris.

E. Tree and Shrub Maintenance:
   1. Consider trees dead when main leader has died or when 25 percent or more of crown has died, except as otherwise indicated for palm trees.
   2. Consider shrubs dead when 25 percent or more of plant has died.
   3. Inspect woody plants for health by scraping up to 1/16-inch square area of bark.
   4. Adjust stakes, guys and turnbuckles, ties, and trunk wrap as required to promote growth and avoid girdling.
   5. Pruning: Unless otherwise indicated, prune only to maintain balanced natural shape; comply with recommendations of ANSI A300 Part 1, ANSI Z133.1, and best local practices for species involved.
   6. Shrubs: Prune at least once during maintenance period at best time to influence ultimate shape and size for particular species.
      a. Prune to balance plant's form and according to its natural growth characteristics.
      b. Remove water shoots, suckers, and branches not complying with desired shape and size.
   7. Hedges: Trim to encourage growth into voids and gaps.
   8. Young Trees: Prune at least once during maintenance period at best time to influence ultimate shape and size for particular species; do not remove or cut off leader.

F. Cleanup:
   1. Clean adjacent pavements of plant debris and other debris generated by maintenance activities.
   2. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris; Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.
   3. Remove and dispose of general cleanup debris and biodegradable debris.
      a. Biodegradable Debris: Deposit biodegradable debris in Owner's designate on-site compost pile; branches and bark are not considered biodegradable.
      b. Branches and Bark: Machine-chip branch and bark debris; deposit resulting debris in Owner's designated wood chip storage area.
      c. Non-Biodegradable Debris: Owner's trash collection facilities may be used.

END OF SECTION 32 93 00

SECTION 33 01 10.58
DISINFECTION OF WATER UTILITY PIPING SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Disinfection chemicals.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 224000 "Plumbing Fixtures" for disinfection of building domestic water piping systems.
   2. Section 330110.59 "Disinfection of Water Utility Storage Tanks" for water tank disinfection and bacteriological testing.
   3. Section 331416 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping" for product and execution requirements for installation and testing of site domestic water distribution piping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Disinfection Procedure:
   1. Submit description of procedure, including type of disinfectant and calculations indicating quantities of disinfectants required to produce specified chlorine concentration.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer information for proposed chemicals and treatment doses.

C. Material Test Reports: For each disinfectant, by a qualified testing agency.

D. Field Quality-Control Reports: For disinfection chemicals.

E. Qualifications Statements: For manufacturer and applicator.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Disinfection Report:
   1. Type and form of disinfectant used.
   2. Date and time of disinfectant injection start and completion.
   3. Test locations.
   4. Name of person collecting samples.
   5. Initial and 24-hour disinfectant residuals in treated water in ppm for each outlet tested.
   6. Date and time of flushing start and completion.
   7. Disinfectant residual after flushing for each outlet tested.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. In according with Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois.

2.2 DISINFECTION CHEMICALS

A. Chemicals:
   1. Hypochlorite: Comply with AWWA B300.
   2. Ammonium Sulfate: Comply with AWWA B302.
   3. Sodium Chlorite: Comply with AWWA B303.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Verify that piping system has been cleaned, inspected, and pressure tested.

C. Verify that access fittings have been installed under Section 331416 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping."

D. Perform scheduling and disinfecting activity with startup, water pressure testing, adjusting and balancing, and demonstration procedures, including coordination with related systems.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF DISINFECTION CHEMICALS

A. Provide required equipment to perform Work of this Section.

B. Introduce treatment into piping system.

C. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24hours.

D. Flush, circulate, and clean until required disinfectant quality standard has been achieved using domestic water.

E. Replace permanent system devices that were removed for disinfection.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Disinfection, Flushing, and Sampling:
   1. Disinfect pipeline installation according to AWWA C651.
   2. Use of liquid chlorine is not permitted.
   3. Upon completion of retention period required for disinfection, flush pipeline until chlorine concentration in water leaving pipeline is no higher than that generally prevailing in existing system or is acceptable for domestic use.
   4. Disposal:
      a. Legally dispose of chlorinated water.
      b. If chlorinated discharge may cause damage to environment**,** apply neutralizing chemical to chlorinated water to neutralize chlorine residual remaining in water.
   5. After final flushing and before pipeline is connected to existing system or placed in service, certify that disinfectant level meets quality standards of Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 33 01 10.58

SECTION 33 01 30.86
MANHOLE RIM ADJUSTMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Manhole frames and covers.
   2. Riser rings.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 034100 "Precast Structural Concrete" for execution requirements for precast and prestressed concrete members as specified in this Section.
   2. Section 329219 "Seeding" for restoration of grassed areas.
   3. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for execution requirements for sewerage piping as required by this Section.

1.2 SCHEDULING

A. Submit schedule for manhole grade adjustments.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer information for manhole covers and riser rings construction, features, configuration, and dimensions.

B. Qualifications Statements: For manufacturer and installer.

C. Manufacturer's Approval: For installer.

1.4 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For the source and origin for products.

B. Product Certificates: For recycled material content for recycled content products.

C. Product Certificates: For the source for regional materials and distance from Project Site.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual grade-adjusted elevation of manholes.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Store materials according to manufacturer's instructions.

C. Protection:
   1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
   2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. The Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 MANHOLE FRAMES AND COVERS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. EJ.
   2. Neenah Foundry Company.

B. Material: Cast iron.

C. Comply with ASTM A48/A48M.

D. Surface: Machined flat bearing.

E. Lid: Removable and boltable.

F. Cover Design: Closed.

G. Live Load Rating: 16,000 lb.

H. Furnish sealing gasket.

I. Cover: See Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.3 RISER RINGS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. EJ.
   2. Neenah Foundry Company.

B. Riser Rings:
   1. Thickness of 4 Inches (100 mm) to 6 Inches (150 mm):
      a. Material: Precast concrete.
      b. Comply with ASTM C478.
   2. Thickness of Less than 4 Inches (100 mm):
      a. Material: Cast iron.
      b. Comply with AASHTO M306.
   3. Rubber Seal Wraps:
      a. Wraps and Band Widths: Comply with ASTM C877, Type III.
      b. Cone/Riser Ring Joint: Minimum 3-inch overlap.
      c. Frame/Riser Ring Joint: 2-inch overlap.
      d. Additional Bands: Overlap upper band by 2 inches.

C. Accessories:
   1. Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C990.
   2. Bolts: Galvanized steel; ASTM F1554.
   3. Large elevation changes to manholes may require additional manhole sections. See Section 330561 Concrete Manholes.

2.4 CONTROL

A. Provide shop inspection and testing of completed assembly.

B. Owner Inspection:
   1. Make completed manhole frames and covers available for inspection at manufacturer's factory prior to packaging for shipment.
   2. Notify Owner at least seven days before inspection is allowed.

C. Owner Witnessing:
   1. Allow witnessing of factory inspections and tests at manufacturer's test facility.
   2. Notify Owner at least seven days before inspections and tests are scheduled.

D. Certificate of Compliance:
   1. If manufacturer is approved by authorities having jurisdiction, submit certificate of compliance indicating Work performed at manufacturer's facility conforms to Contract Documents.
   2. Specified shop tests are not required for Work performed by approved manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify and locate manholes requiring grade adjustment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF MANHOLE FRAMES AND COVERS

A. Raising Manhole Frames and Covers:
   1. Locate and raise manholes to grade as indicated in plans.
   2. Use flat or tapered rubber manhole rings to achieve indicated elevation for frame and cover.
   3. Do not adjust elevation greater than 6 inches with rubber manhole rings.
   4. Use sealant to seal joints between manhole top, rubber rings, and frame.
   5. Reinstall removed manhole frame and cover.

B. Replacing Manhole Frames and Covers:
   1. Locate manholes for replacement of frames and covers as indicated in plans.
   2. Remove existing manhole frames and covers to enable reuse.
   3. Deliver removed manhole frames and covers to Owner as maintenance materials.
   4. Install new frames and covers for manholes as indicated in plans.
   5. Adjust new frames and covers to match finished grade as indicated in plans.
   6. Seal joints between manholes and manhole frames.

END OF SECTION 33 01 30.86

SECTION 33 05 05.33
INFILTRATION AND EXFILTRATION TESTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Exfiltration testing.
   2. Infiltration testing.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 330130.86 "Manhole Rim Adjustment" for raising or replacing of designated manhole rims.
   2. Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes" for requirements for sewage and stormwater manholes.
   3. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for pipe materials, manholes, and accessories normally encountered with gravity sewerage piping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. Exfiltration testing equipment.
   2. Infiltration testing equipment.

B. Product Test Reports: For manholes and piping, for tests performed by testing service.

C. Qualifications Statement: For applicator.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 EXFILTRATION TESTING

A. Equipment:
   1. Plugs.
   2. Pump.
   3. Measuring device.

2.3 INFILTRATION TESTING

A. Equipment: Weirs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that manholes and piping are ready for testing.

B. Verify that trenches are backfilled.

C. Proceed with testing only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Lamping:
   1. Lamp gravity piping after flushing and cleaning.

2. Perform lamping operation by shining light at one end of each pipe section between manholes.
3. Observe light at other end.
4. Pipe not installed with uniform line and grade will be rejected.
5. Remove and reinstall rejected pipe sections.
6. Clean and lamp until pipe section is installed to uniform line and grade.

B. Plugs:
1. Plug outlets, wye branches, and laterals.
2. Brace plugs to resist test pressures.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Exfiltration Testing of Pipes Larger Than 36 Inches (900 mm) in Diameter:
1. Perform exfiltration testing not exceeding 100 gal. for each inch of pipe diameter for each mile per day for each reach of piping undergoing testing.
2. Perform testing with minimum positive head of 2 feet.

C. Infiltration Testing:
1. Maximum Allowable Infiltration: 100 gal./in. of pipe diameter for each mile per day for reach of piping undergoing testing.
2. Include allowances for leakage from manholes.
3. Perform testing with minimum positive head of 2 feet.

D. Manhole Testing:
1. Repair both outside and inside of joint to ensure permanent seal.
2. Test manholes with manhole frame set in place.
3. Plug pipes in manhole.
4. Remove water from manhole.
5. Observe plugs over period of not less than two hours to ensure that there is no leakage into manhole.
6. Determine ground water level outside manhole.
7. Fill manhole with water within 4 inches of top of cover frame.
8. Prior to testing, allow manhole to soak from minimum of four hours to maximum of 72 hours.
9. After soak period, adjust water level inside manhole to within 4 inches of top of cover frame.
10. Measure water level from top of manhole frame.
11. At end of four-hour testing period, again measure water level from top of manhole frame; compute drop in water level during testing period.
12. Manhole exfiltration test is considered satisfactory when drop in water level is less than following:
    a. Manhole Depth of 4 Feet (1.2 m):
        1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.11 inch.
        2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.14 inch.
        3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.17 inch.
    b. Manhole Depth of 6 Feet (1.5 m):
        1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.17 inch.
        2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.21 inch.
        3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.26 inch.
    c. Manhole Depth of 8 Feet (2.4 m):
        1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.23 inch.

2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.29 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.35 inch.

d. Manhole Depth of 10 Feet (3.0 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.28 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.35 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.42 inch.

e. Manhole Depth of 12 Feet (3.7 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.34 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.43 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.51 inch.

f. Manhole Depth of 14 Feet (4.3 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.40 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.50 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.60 inch.

g. Manhole Depth of 16 Feet (4.9 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.45 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.56 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.68 inch.

h. Manhole Depth of 18 Feet (5.5 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.51 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.64 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.77 inch.

i. Manhole Depth of 20 Feet (6.1 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.57 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.71 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.86 inch.

j. Manhole Depth of 22 Feet (6.7 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.62 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.78 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 0.93 inch.

k. Manhole Depth of 24 Feet (7.3 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.68 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.85 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 1.02 inch.

l. Manhole Depth of 26 Feet (7.9 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.74 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.93 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 1.11 inch.

m. Manhole Depth of 28 Feet (8.5 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.79 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 0.99 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 1.19 inch.

n. Manhole Depth of 30 Feet (9.1 m):
1) Diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m): 0.85 inch.
2) Diameter of 5 feet (1.5 m): 1.06 inch.
3) Diameter of 6 feet (1.8 m): 1.28 inch.

13. If unsatisfactory testing results are achieved, repair manhole and retest until result meets criteria.
14. Repair visible leaks regardless of quantity of leakage.

END OF SECTION 33 05 05.33

SECTION 33 05 05.36
VACUUM TESTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Vacuum testing.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 330130.86 "Manhole Rim Adjustment" for raising or replacing of designated manhole rims.
2. Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes" for requirements for sewage and stormwater manholes.
3. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for pipe materials, manholes, and accessories normally encountered with gravity sewerage piping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
1. Vacuum testing.
2. List of test equipment.
3. Testing sequence schedule.
4. Provisions for disposal of flushing and test water.
5. Certification of test gage calibration.

B. Product Test Reports: For each manhole, for tests performed by testing service.

C. Qualifications Statement: For testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 VACUUM TESTING

A. Equipment:
1. Vacuum pump.
2. Vacuum line.
3. Vacuum Tester Base:
   a. Compression band seal.
   b. Outlet port.
4. Shutoff valve.
5. Stopwatch.
6. Plugs.
7. Vacuum Gage: Calibrated to 0.1 in. Hg.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that manholes are ready for testing.

B. Verify that manholes are backfilled.

C. Proceed with testing only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manhole Testing:
   1. Repair both outside and inside of joint to ensure permanent seal.
   2. Test manholes with manhole frame set in place.
   3. Vacuum Testing:
      a. Comply with ASTM C1244.
      b. Plug pipe openings; securely brace plugs and pipe.
      c. Inflate compression band to create seal between vacuum base and structure.
      d. Connect vacuum pump to outlet port with valve open, then draw vacuum to 10 in. Hg.
      e. Close valve.
      f. Manhole Test Duration in Seconds:
         1) Manhole Diameter of 4 Feet (1.2 m): 60.
         2) Manhole Diameter of 5 Feet (1.5 m): 75.
         3) Manhole Diameter of 6 Feet (1.8 m): 90.
      g. Record vacuum drop during test period.
      h. If vacuum drop is greater than 1 in. Hg during testing period, repair and retest manhole.
      i. If vacuum drop of 1 in. Hg does not occur during test period, manhole is acceptable; discontinue testing.
      j. If vacuum test fails to meet 1-in. Hg drop in specified time after repair, repair and retest manhole.
   4. If unsatisfactory testing results are achieved, repair manhole and retest until result meets criteria.
   5. Repair visible leaks regardless of quantity of leakage.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 33 05 05.36

SECTION 330505.41
AIR TESTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Air testing equipment.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for pipe materials, manholes, and accessories normally encountered with gravity sewerage piping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. Air testing equipment.
   2. Testing procedures.
   3. List of test equipment.
   4. Testing sequence schedule.
   5. Provisions for disposal of flushing and test water.
   6. Certification of test gage calibration.

B. Product Test Reports: For piping, for tests performed by testing service.

C. Qualifications Statement: For testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 AIR TESTING EQUIPMENT

A. Air compressor.

B. Air supply line.

C. Shutoff valves.

D. Pressure regulator.

E. Pressure relief valve.

F. Stopwatch.

G. Plugs.

H. Pressure Gage: Calibrated to 0.1 psi.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that piping is ready for testing.

B. Verify that trenches are backfilled.

C. Proceed with testing only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Lamping:
   1. Lamp gravity piping after flushing and cleaning.
   2. Perform lamping operation by shining light at one end of each pipe section between manholes.
   3. Observe light at other end.
   4. Pipe not installed with uniform line and grade will be rejected.
   5. Remove and reinstall rejected pipe sections.
   6. Clean and lamp until pipe section is installed to uniform line and grade.

B. Plugs:
   1. Plug outlets, wye branches, and laterals.
   2. Brace plugs to resist test pressures.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Low-Pressure Air Testing:
   1. Test each reach of gravity sewer piping between manholes.
   2. Introduce air pressure slowly to approximately 4 psig.
   3. Determine ground water elevation above spring line of piping.
   4. For every foot of ground water above spring line of piping, increase starting air test pressure by 0.43 psi.
   5. Do not increase pressure above 10 psig.
   6. Allow pressure to stabilize for at least five minutes.
   7. Adjust pressure to 3.5 psig or to increased test pressure as determined above when ground water is present.
   8. Do not make allowance for laterals.
   9. Minimum Testing Duration in Minutes Per 100 Feet (30 m):
      a. Pipe Size 3 Inches (75 mm): 0.2.
      b. Pipe Size 4 Inches (100 mm): 0.3.
      c. Pipe Size 6 Inches (150 mm): 0.7.
      d. Pipe Size 8 Inches (200 mm): 1.2.
      e. Pipe Size 10 Inches (250 mm): 1.5.
      f. Pipe Size 12 Inches (300 mm): 1.8.
      g. Pipe Size 15 Inches (375 mm): 2.1.
      h. Pipe Size 18 Inches (450 mm): 2.4.
      i. Pipe Size 21 Inches (525 mm): 3.0.
      j. Pipe Size 24 Inches (600 mm): 3.6.
      k. Pipe Size 27 Inches (675 mm): 4.2.
      l. Pipe Size 30 Inches (750 mm): 4.8.
      m. Pipe Size 33 Inches (825 mm): 5.4.
      n. Pipe Size 36 Inches (900 mm): 6.0.
   10. Record drop in pressure during testing period.
   11. If air pressure drops more than 1.0 psi during testing period, piping has failed.
   12. If 1.0-psi air pressure drop has not occurred during testing period, piping is acceptable; discontinue testing.
   13. If piping fails, test reach of piping in incremental stages until leaks are isolated, repair leaks, and retest entire reach between manholes.
   14. If unsatisfactory testing results are achieved, make necessary repairs and retest until result meets criteria.

15. Repair visible leaks regardless of quantity of leakage.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 33 05 05.41

SECTION 33 05 05.43
MANDREL TESTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Deflection testing equipment.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for pipe materials, manholes, and accessories normally encountered with gravity sewerage piping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. Deflection testing.
   2. Testing procedures.
   3. List of test equipment.
   4. Testing sequence schedule.
   5. Provisions for disposal of flushing and test water.
   6. Certification of test gage calibration.
   7. Deflection mandrel drawings and calculations.

B. Product Test Reports: For piping, for tests performed by testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 DEFLECTION TESTING EQUIPMENT

A. Properly sized rigid ball.

B. Pull/retrieval ropes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Verify that piping is ready for testing.

C. Verify that trenches are backfilled.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Lamping:
   1. Lamp gravity piping after flushing and cleaning.
   2. Perform lamping operation by shining light at one end of each pipe section between manholes.
   3. Observe light at other end.
   4. Pipe not installed with uniform line and grade will be rejected.

5. Remove and reinstall rejected pipe sections.
6. Clean and lamp until pipe section is installed to uniform line and grade.

B. Plugs:
1. Plug outlets, wye branches, and laterals.
2. Brace plugs to resist test pressures.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Deflection Testing of Plastic Sewer Piping:
1. Perform vertical ring deflection testing on PVC and ABS sewer piping after backfilling has been in place for at least 30 days, but not longer than 12 months.
2. Allowable maximum deflection for installed plastic sewer pipe is no greater than five percent of original vertical internal diameter.
3. Perform deflection testing using properly sized rigid ball.
4. Perform testing without mechanical pulling devices.
5. Locate, excavate, replace, and retest piping that exceeds allowable deflection.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 33 05 05.43

SECTION 33 05 09.33
THRUST RESTRAINT FOR UTILITY PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Tied joint restraint systems.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for trenching and backfilling requirements for Site utilities.
   2. Section 331416 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping" for requirements for piping Work as required by this Section.
   3. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for requirements for piping Work as required by this Section.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with installation of fittings and joints that require restraint.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Tied joint restraint systems.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Indicate restrained joint details and materials being used.
   2. Submit layout drawings showing piece numbers and locations.
   3. Indicate restrained joint locations.
   4. Signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Delegated Design Submittals:
   1. Submit signed and sealed Shop Drawings with design calculations and assumptions for restrained lengths.
   2. Submit joint restraint details.
   3. Use joint restraint devices specifically designed for applications described in manufacturer information.

D. Qualifications Statements: Submit qualifications for manufacturer, fabricator, and licensed professional.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of joint restraints.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.

C. Protection:
   1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
   2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

B. Provide pressure pipeline with restrained joints at each bend, tee, and change in direction.

2.2 TIED JOINT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Baker Hughes Company.
   2. Bulldog Restraint System; S&B Technical Products.

B. Tie Bolts:
   1. Mechanical Joints on 2- and 3-Inch (50- and 75-mm) Pipe:
      a. Size:5/8 inch (16 mm).
      b. Comply with ASTM A588/A588M, Grade B.
      c. Comply with ASTM A325 (A325M), Type 3, except increase tensile strength of full-body threaded section to 40,000 lb. (18 144 kPa) minimum for 5/8 inch (16 mm) and 60,000 lb. (27 216 kPa) minimum for 3/4 inch (19 mm) by heat-treating (quenching and tempering) to manufacturer's reheat and hardness specifications.
   2. Mechanical and Flanged Joints on 4- to 12-Inch (100- to 300-mm) Pipe:
      a. Size: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
      b. Comply with ASTM A588/A588M, Grade B.
      c. Comply with ASTM A325 (A325M), Type 3, except increase tensile strength of full-body threaded section to 40,000 lb. (18 144 kPa) minimum for 5/8 inch (16 mm) and 60,000 lb. (27 216 kPa) minimum for 3/4 inch (19 mm) by heat-treating (quenching and tempering) to manufacturer's reheat and hardness specifications.
   3. Mechanical Joints on 14- to 24-Inch (350- to 600-mm) Pipe:
      a. Size:3/4 inch (19 mm).
      b. Comply with ASTM A588/A588M, Grade B and ASTM A325 (A325M), Type 3.
   4. Mechanical and Flanged Joints on 30-Inch (750-mm) and Larger Pipe:
      a. Size: 1 inch (25 mm).
      b. Comply with ASTM A588/A588M, Grade B.
      c. Comply with ASTM A325 (A325M), Type 3, except increase tensile strength of full-body threaded section to 100,000 lb. (45 360 kPa) minimum by heat-treating (quenching and tempering) to manufacturer's reheat and hardness specifications.

C. Tie Nut:
   1. Description: Hex nut for each tie bolt and tie rods.
   2. Comply with ASTM A563 (A563M), Grade C3.
   3. Finish: galvanized.

D. Tiepin:
   1. Bends and Hydrants: 3/4-inch (20-mm) round bar stock.
   2. Size and Shape: 6-inch (150-mm) hairpin.
   3. Comply with ASME B1.1 and ASTM A588/A588M.
   4. Finish: galvanized.

E. Tie Coupling:
   1. Description: Extension of continuous-threaded rods.
   2. Provide with center stop to aid installation.
   3. Comply with ASTM A588/A588M.

4. Finish: galvanized.

F. Tie Clamp:
1. Description: Retainer clamp for ductile iron, asbestos-cement, and PVC push-on pipe.
2. Location: In front of bell.
3. Comply with ASTM A36/A36M, ASTM A307, Grade A, and ASTM A563 (A563M), Grade A.
4. Finish: galvanized.

G. Tie Rod:
1. Description: Continuous-threaded rod for cutting to desired lengths.
2. Comply with ASTM A588/A588M, Grade B, ASTM A325 (A325M), Type 3, and ASME B1.1.
3. Finish: galvanized.

H. Tie Bar:
1. Description: Steel bar used to restrain push-in plugs.
2. Comply with ASTM A36/A36M.
3. Finish: galvanized.

I. Tie Washer:
1. Description: Round flat washers.
2. ASTM A588/A588M, ASTM F436 (F436M), Type 1.
3. Finish: galvanized.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Steel:
1. High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel: Comply with ASTM A588/A588M.
2. Carbon Steel: Comply with ASTM A36/A36M.

2.4 FINISHES

A. Zinc Plating:
1. Factory applied.
2. Comply with ASTM B633.

B. Galvanizing:
1. Factory applied.
2. Comply with ASTM A153/A153M.
3. Comply with ASTM A123 (A123M).
4. Hot dip galvanize after fabrication.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for thrust restraint for utility piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces of pipe and fittings that are to receive tied joint restraint systems.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF THRUST RESTRAINT FOR UTILITY PIPING

A. According to AWWA C600.

B. Install joint restraint system such that joints are mechanically locked together to prevent joint separation.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Torque 5/8-inch (15-mm) nuts on mating threaded fasteners from 45 to 60 ft.-lbf (60 to 80 N-m).

B. Torque 3/4-inch (20-mm) nuts on mating threaded fasteners from 75 to 90 ft.-lbf (100 to 120 N-m).

C. Torque 1-inch (25-mm) nuts from 100 to 120 ft.-lbf (135 to 160 N-m).

END OF SECTION 33 05 09.33

SECTION 33 05 61
CONCRETE MANHOLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Concrete and masonry manholes.
2. Frames and covers.
3. Riser rings.
4. Pile support systems.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 031000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories" for erection and bracing of forms.
2. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for reinforcing steel as required by this Section.
3. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete type for manhole and structure foundation slab construction.
4. Section 040513 "Masonry Mortaring" for mortar.
5. Section 040516 "Masonry Grouting" for grout.
6. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for clay brick units for use in manhole and structure construction.
7. Section 061300 "Heavy Timber Construction" for timber cradle construction.
8. Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork" for soils for backfill in trenches.
9. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for aggregate for backfill in trenches.
10. Section 310519.13 "Geotextiles for Earthwork" for filter fabric for subsurface drainage.
11. Section 312316 "Excavation" for excavating for manholes, structures, and foundation slabs.
12. Section 312323 "Fill" for backfilling after manhole and structure installation.
13. Section 330505.33 “Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing” or 330505.36 "Vacuum Testing" for testing requirements for manholes.
14. Section 330130.86 "Manhole Rim Adjustment" for resetting existing castings and grates.
15. Section 333100 "Sanitary Sewerage Piping" for piping connections to manholes.
16. Section 334200 "Stormwater Conveyance" for piping connections to manholes and structures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Bedding: A type of specialized material placed under manhole prior to installation and subsequent backfill operations.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with connection to existing sewer and trenching.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
1. Concrete and masonry manholes.
2. Frames and covers.
3. Riser rings.
4. Pile support systems.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Indicate structure locations and elevations.
2. Indicate sizes and elevations of piping.

3. Signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: For manholes and covers.

D. Field Quality-Control Reports: For manholes and covers.

E. Qualifications Statement: For manufacturer.

1.5 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For paving materials Solar Reflectance Index (SRI).

B. Product Certificates:
1. For source and origin for products.
2. For recycled material content for recycled content products.
3. For source for regional materials and distance from Project Site.
4. For lumber harvested from Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Certified well-managed forest.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of manholes and connections, and record invert elevations.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Handling: Comply with precast concrete manufacturer instructions for unloading and moving precast manholes and drainage structures.

C. Storage:
1. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.
2. Store precast concrete manholes and drainage structures to prevent damage to Owner's property or other public or private property.
3. Repair property damaged from materials storage.

D. Protection:
1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 35 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry Work.

B. Cold Weather Requirements: Comply with ACI 530/530.1.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Furnish one year manufacturer's warranty for concrete manholes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 CONCRETE MANHOLES

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Armorcast Products Company; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
   2. Hanson Pipe & Precast.
   3. Monarch Products, Inc.
   4. Oldcastle Infrastructure Inc.; CRH Americas.

B. Reinforced Precast Concrete Manhole Sections:
   1. Comply with ASTM C478 (C478M).
   2. Gaskets: Comply with ASTM C923 (C923M).
   3. Joints:
      a. Comply with ASTM C913.
      b. Maximum Leakage: 0.025 gal. (94.6 mL) per hour per foot (0.3 m) of joint at 3 feet (91 cm) of head.

C. Mortar and Grout:
   1. Mortar:
      a. As specified in Section 040513 "Masonry Mortaring."
   2. Grout: As specified in Section 040516 "Masonry Grouting."

D. Reinforcement:
   1. See Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

E. Shaft and Eccentric Cone Top Sections:
   1. Pipe Sections: Reinforced precast concrete.
   2. Joints:
      a. Lipped male/female.
      b. Dry.
   3. Sleeved to receive pipe sections.

F. Shape: Cylindrical.

G. Clear Inside Dimensions:
   1. As indicated on Drawings.

H. Design Depth:
   1. As indicated on Drawings.

I. Clear Cover Opening:
   1. Diameter: 26 inches (660 mm).
   2. As indicated on Drawings.

J. Pipe Entry: Furnish openings as required.

K. Structure Joint Gaskets:
   1. Comply with ASTM C361 (C361M).
   2. Material: Rubber.

2.3 FRAMES AND COVERS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. EJ.
   2. Neenah Foundry Company.

B. Cast iron.

C. Comply with ASTM A48/A48M, Class 30B.

D. Lid:

1. Bearing Surface: Machined flat.
2. Configuration: Removable.
3. Security: Boltable.

E. Cover Design: Closed.

F. Live-Load Rating: 16,000 lb.

G. Furnish sealing gasket.

H. Cover: See plans.

I. Grate: See plans.

J. Nominal Lid or Grate Size: See plans.

2.4 RISER RINGS

A. Manufacturers:
1. EJ.
2. Neenah Foundry Company.

B. Riser Rings:
1. Thickness of 4 to 6 Inches (100 to 150 mm):
   a. Precast concrete.
   b. Comply with ASTM C478 (C478M).
2. Thickness Less Than 4 Inches (100 mm):
   a. Cast iron.
   b. Comply with AASHTO M306.
3. Rubber Seal Wraps:
   a. Wraps and Band Widths: Comply with ASTM C877 (C877M), Type III.
   b. Cone/Riser Ring Joint: Minimum 3-inch (75-mm) overlap.
   c. Frame/Riser Ring Joint: 2-inch (50-mm) overlap.
   d. Additional Bands: Overlap upper band by 2 inches (50 mm).

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Cover and Bedding:
1. Bedding: as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".
2. Cover: as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".

2.6 ACCESSORIES

A. Steps:
1. As required by City of Burlington code.
2. Rungs: Formed by galvanized steel.
3. Fabrication: Formed integral with manhole sections.
4. Diameter: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
5. Width:
   a. 12 inches (300 mm).
   b. As indicated on Drawings.
6. Spacing:
   a. 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. vertically, set into structure wall.
   b. As indicated on Drawings.

B. Foundation Slab:
1. Cast-in-place concrete as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete”
2. Top Surface: Level.

C. Strap Anchors:
   1. Shape: Bent steel.
   2. Finish: Unfinished.

D. Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C990 (C990M).

E. Fasteners: Galvanized steel; ASTM F1554.

F. Geotextile Filter Fabric:
   1. As specified in Section 310519.13 "Geotextiles for Earthwork."
   2. Non-biodegradable; woven.
   3. Comply with AASHTO M288.

G. Concrete: As specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

H. Grout: As specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

I. Watertight PE Manhole Insert:
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Parson Environmental Products, Inc.

J. Expandable Pipe Plug:
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Petersen Products Co.
      b. Taylor Made Plastics Inc. (TMP).

K. Soil Backfill from Above Pipe to Finish Grade:
   1. Soil Types, as specified in Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork".
   2. Subsoil: No frozen earth, or foreign matter, or rocks more than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.

2.7 FINISHES

A. Bituminous Interior Manhole Coating:
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Polyglass U.S.A., Inc.
   2. Description: As specified in Section 099000 "Painting and Coating."

B. Steel Galvanizing:
   1. Hot-dip galvanize after fabrication.
   2. Comply with ASTM A123/A123M.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide shop inspection and testing of completed assembly.

B. Certificate of Compliance:
   1. If manufacturer is approved by authorities having jurisdiction, submit certificate of compliance indicating Work performed at manufacturer's facility conforms to Contract Documents.
   2. Specified shop tests are not required for Work performed by approved manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine ground areas for suitable conditions where concrete manholes will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Mark each precast structure by indentation or waterproof paint showing date of manufacture, manufacturer, and identifying symbols and numbers as indicated on Drawings to indicate its intended use.

B. Coordinate placement of inlet and outlet pipe or duct sleeves as required by other Sections.

C. Do not install manholes and structures where Site conditions induce loads exceeding structural capacity of manholes or structures.

D. Inspect precast concrete manholes and structures immediately prior to placement in excavation to verify that they are internally clean and free from damage; remove and replace damaged units.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES

A. Conduct operations not to interfere with, interrupt, damage, destroy, or endanger integrity of surface structures or utilities in immediate or adjacent areas.

B. Correct over-excavation with coarse aggregate.

C. Remove large stones or other hard matter impeding consistent backfilling or compaction.

D. Protect manhole from damage or displacement while backfilling operation is in progress.

E. Excavating:
   1. As specified in Section 312316 "Excavation" and in indicated locations and depths.
   2. Provide clearance around sidewalls of manhole or structure for construction operations for installation of granular backfill.
   3. If ground water is encountered, prevent accumulation of water in excavations; place manhole or structure in dry trench.
   4. Where possibility exists of watertight manhole or structure becoming buoyant in flooded excavation, anchor manhole or structure to avoid flotation as approved by Architect/Engineer.

F. Base and Alignment:
   1. Place foundation slab and trowel top surface level.
   2. Grout base of shaft sections to achieve slope to exit piping, trowel smooth, and contour.
   3. Place manhole sections plumb and level, trim to correct elevations, and anchor to foundation slab.
   4. Install manholes supported at proper grade and alignment on compacted crushed-stone bedding.
   5. Grout base of shaft sections to achieve slope to exit piping, trowel smooth, and contour.
   6. Form and place manhole or structure cylinders plumb and level, to correct dimensions and elevations.

G. Attachments:
   1. Cut and fit for pipes.
   2. Set cover frames and covers level to correct elevations without tipping.

H. Backfilling: As specified in Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork.", 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork.", and 312323 "Fill.".

I. Coating: Paint interior with two coats of bituminous interior coating at rate of 120 sq. ft./gal. for each coat.

J. Precast Concrete Manholes:
   1. Lift precast components at lifting points designated by manufacturer.
   2. When lowering manholes and structures into excavations and joining pipe to units, take precautions to ensure that interior of pipeline and structure remains clean.
   3. Assembly:
      a. Assemble multisection manholes and structures by lowering each section into excavation.
      b. Install rubber gasket joints between precast sections according to manufacturer recommendations.
      c. Lower, set level, and firmly position base section before placing additional sections.
   4. Remove foreign materials from joint surfaces and verify that sealing materials are placed properly.
   5. Maintain alignment between sections by using guide devices affixed to lower section.
   6. Joint sealing materials may be installed on Site or at manufacturer's plant.
   7. Verify that installed manholes and structures meet required alignment and grade.
   8. Remove knockouts or cut structure to receive piping without creating openings larger than required to receive pipe; fill annular spaces with mortar.
   9. Cut pipe flush with interior of structure.
   10. Shape inverts through manhole and structures as indicated on Drawings.

K. Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes:
   1. Bear firmly and fully on compacted crushed stone bedding.
   2. Erect and brace forms against movement as specified in Section 031000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories."
   3. Install reinforcing steel as indicated on Drawings and as specified in Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing."
   4. Place and cure concrete as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   5. Frames and Covers:
      a. Set frames using mortar and masonry.
      b. Install radially laid concrete brick with 1/4-inch- (6.35-mm-) thick, vertical joints at inside perimeter.
      c. Lay concrete brick in full bed of mortar and completely fill joints.
      d. If more than one course of concrete brick is required, stagger vertical joints.
      e. Set frame and cover 2 inches (51 mm) above finished grade for manholes and structures with covers located within unpaved areas, to allow area to be graded away from cover beginning 1 inch (25 mm) below top surface of frame.

L. Doghouse Manholes and Structures:
   1. Stake out location and burial depth of existing sewer line in area of proposed manhole or structure.
   2. Carefully excavate around existing sewer line to adequate depth for foundation slab installation.
   3. Protect existing pipe from damage.
   4. Cut out soft spots and replace with granular fill compacted to 95 percent maximum standard density.
   5. Bear firmly and fully on compacted crushed stone bedding.
   6. Install precast concrete manhole or structure around existing pipe according to applicable Paragraphs in this Section.

7. Grout pipe entrances as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
8. Block upstream flow at existing manhole or structure with expandable plug.
9. Use hydraulic saw to cut existing pipe at manhole or structure entrance and exit and along pipe length at a point halfway up OD on each side of pipe.
10. Bottom half of pipe is to remain as manhole flow channel.
11. Saw cut to smooth finish with top half of pipe flush with interior of manhole or structure.
12. Grout base of manhole or structure to achieve slope to manhole or structure channel as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and trowel smooth.

M. Sanitary Manhole Drop Connections:
1. Concrete Encasement: Minimum 2 feet outside of manhole.
2. Form channel from pipe drop to sweep into main channel at maximum angle of 30 degrees.
3. As indicated on Drawings.

N. Castings:
1. Set frames using mortar and masonry as indicated on Drawings.
2. Install radially laid concrete brick with 1/4-inch thick, vertical joints at inside perimeter.
3. Lay concrete brick in full bed of mortar and completely fill joints.
4. If more than one course of concrete brick is required, stagger vertical joints.
5. Set frame and cover 2 inches above finished grade for manholes and other structures with covers located within unpaved areas to allow area to be graded away from cover beginning 1 inch below top surface of frame.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Cast-in-Place Concrete: As specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
2. Concrete Manhole Sections: As specified in Section 330505.33 "Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing" or As specified in Section 330505.36 "Vacuum Testing".
3. Concrete manholes will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Vertical Adjustment of Existing Manholes and Structures:
1. As specified in Section 330130.86 "Manhole Rim Adjustment".
2. If required, adjust top elevation of existing manholes and structures to finished grades as indicated on Drawings.
3. Frames, Grates, and Covers:
   a. Remove frames, grates, and covers cleaned of mortar fragments.
   b. Reset to required elevation according to requirements specified for installation of castings.
4. Reinforcing Bars:
   a. Remove concrete without damaging existing vertical reinforcing bars if removal of existing concrete wall is required.
   b. Clean vertical bars of concrete and bend into new concrete top slab or splice to required vertical reinforcement as indicated on Drawings.
5. Clean and apply sand-cement bonding compound on existing concrete surfaces to receive cast-in-place concrete as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

END OF SECTION 33 05 61

SECTION 33 14 16
SITE WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Piping.
2. Tapping sleeves and valves.
3. Valves and hydrants.
4. Reduced-pressure backflow preventers.
5. Pile support systems.
6. Concrete encasement and cradles.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete for cradles and encasements.
2. Section 221100 "Facility Water Distribution" for product and execution requirements for domestic water piping at building.
3. Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork" for soils for backfill in trenches.
4. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for aggregate for backfill in trenches.
5. Section 312316 "Excavation" for product and execution requirements for excavation and backfill.
6. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for execution requirements for trenching.
7. Section 312323 "Fill" for requirements for backfill to be placed by this Section.
8. Section 330110.58 "Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems" for disinfection of water mains and appurtenances.
9. Section 330509.33 "Thrust Restraint for Utility Piping" for tied joint-restraint system to anchor and resist forces developed in underground closed pipeline systems.
10. Section 331417 "Site Water Service Utility Laterals" for water main service connections.
11. Section 331419 "Valves and Hydrants for Water Utility Service" for fire hydrants, valves, and valve boxes for fire hydrant and water main installations.
12. Section 331900 "Water Utility Metering Equipment" for positive displacement meters as required by this Section.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
1. Piping.
2. Tapping sleeves and valves.
3. Valves and hydrants.
4. Reduced-pressure backflow preventers.
5. Pile support systems.
6. Concrete encasement and cradles.

B. Field Quality-Control Reports: For piping and related equipment.

C. Qualifications Statements: For manufacturer and installer.

1.3 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates:
1. For the source and origin for products.
2. For recycled material content for recycled content products.

3. For the source for regional materials and distance from Project Site.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of piping mains, valves, connections, thrust restraints, and invert elevations.

B. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Storage:
1. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.
2. Block individual and stockpiled pipe lengths to prevent moving.
3. Do not place pipe or pipe materials on private property or in areas obstructing pedestrian or vehicle traffic.
4. Store PE and PVC materials out of sunlight.

C. Protection:
1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Furnish one year manufacturer's warranty for valves and hydrants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 PIPING

A. Ductile Iron Pipe:
1. Comply with AWWA C151.
2. Fittings:
   a. Material: Ductile iron.
   b. Thickness: Standard.
3. Joints:
   a. Comply with AWWA C111.
   b. Provide rubber gasket with rods.
4. Jackets: AWWA C105 PE jacket.

B. Copper Tubing:
1. Comply with ASTM B88.
2. Type K, annealed.
3. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper or ASME B16.22, wrought copper.
4. Joints: Compression connection or AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP silver braze.

C. PVC Pipe:
1. ASTM D2241 SDR-21.
2. Fittings: PVC, ASTM D2466.

3. Joints:
    a. Comply with ASTM D2855.
    b. Type: Solvent weld.

D. PVC Pipe with Cast Iron Fittings:
1. Comply with AWWA C900, Class 165.
2. Cast Iron Fittings: Comply with AWWA C111.
3. Joints:
    a. Comply with ASTM D3139.
    b. Furnish compression gasket ring.

E. PE Pipe:
1. Pipe: Comply with AWWA C901.
2. Fittings:
    a. Comply with AWWA C901.
    b. Type: Molded.
3. Joints: Compression or Butt fusion.

2.3 TAPPING SLEEVES AND VALVES

A. Tapping Sleeves:
1. Manufacturers:
    a. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
    b. Mueller Co.
    c. U.S. Pipe.

B. Description:
1. Material: Ductile or cast iron.
2. Type: Dual compression.
3. Outlet Flange Dimensions and Drilling: Comply with ASME B16.1, Class 125, and MSS SP-60.

C. Tapping Valves:
1. Manufacturers:
    a. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
    b. Mueller Co.
    c. U.S. Pipe Valve & Hydrant Division.

D. Description:
1. Comply with AWWA C500.
2. Type: Double disc with non-rising stem.
3. Inlet Flanges: Comply with ASME B16.1, Class 125, and MSS SP-60.
4. Mechanical Joint Outlets: Comply with AWWA C111.
5. Mark manufacturer's name and pressure rating on valve body.

2.4 VALVES AND HYDRANTS

A. Valves, Valve Boxes, and Fire Hydrants: As specified in Section 331419 "Valves and Hydrants for Water Utility Service."

B. Yard Hydrants:
1. Manufacturers:
    a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
    b. Josam Company.
    c. WATTS.
2. Description:

a. Automatic-draining, non-freezing yard hydrant for hose connection.
b. Inlet:
    1) Size: 1 inch (25 mm) NPT.
    2) Fitting: Female.
c. Nozzle:
    1) Size: 3/4 inch (20 mm).
    2) Material: Brass.
    3) Fitting: Male.
    4) Type: Removable.
d. Casing:
    1) Description: Galvanized-steel pipe.
    2) Size: 1-1/4 inch (32 mm).
e. Drain Hole: Tapped, 1/8 inch (6 mm) NPT.
f. Operating Rod:
    1) Description: Galvanized-steel pipe.
    2) Size: 3/8 inch (10 mm).
g. Working Pressure: 125 psig (862 kPa).

2.5 REDUCED-PRESSURE BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Manufacturers:
1. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
2. Flomatic Corporation.
3. Matco-Norca.
4. NIBCO INC.
5. WATTS.
6. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Description:
1. Comply with ASSE 1013.
2. Materials:
    a. Body: Bronze.
    b. Internal Parts: Bronze.
    c. Springs: Stainless steel.
3. Check Valves:
    a. Quantity: Two.
    b. Description: Independently operating, spring loaded.
    c. Type: Diaphragm type, differential pressure relief, located between check valves.
    d. Provide third check valve opening under back pressure in case of diaphragm failure.
    e. Vent Outlet: Non-threaded.
4. Furnish two gate valves, one strainer, and four test cocks.

C. Double Check Valve Assemblies:
1. Comply with ASSE 1012.
2. Description: Two independently operating check valves, with intermediate atmospheric vent.
3. Materials:
    a. Body: Bronze.
    b. Internal Parts: Corrosion resistant.
    c. Springs: Stainless steel.

2.6 CONCRETE ENCASEMENT AND CRADLES

A. Concrete:
   1. As specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   2. Type: Reinforced, air entrained.
   3. Compressive Strength: 4,000 psi at 28 days.
   4. Finish: Rough troweled.

B. Concrete Reinforcement: As specified in Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing."

2.7 MATERIALS

A. Bedding and Cover:
   1. Bedding: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".
   2. Cover: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".
   3. Soil Backfill from Above Pipe to Finish Grade:
      a. Soil Type as specified in Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork".
      b. Subsoil with no rocks greater than 6 inches in diameter, frozen earth, or foreign matter.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. Thrust Restraints: As specified in Section 330509.33 "Thrust Restraint for Utility Piping."

B. Air-Release Valves:
   1. As located on Drawings.
   2. As specified in Section 400578.11 "Air Release Valves for Water Service."

C. Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."

D. Vaults: As specified in Section 330563 "Concrete Vaults and Chambers."

E. Metering Equipment: As specified in Section 331900 "Water Utility Metering Equipment."

F. Meter Boxes: As specified in Section 330577 "Fiberglass Metering Manholes".

G. Steel Rods, Bolt, Lugs, and Brackets:
   1. Comply with ASTM A36.
   2. Grade A carbon steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for site water utility distribution piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Cut pipe ends square, ream pipe and tube ends to full pipe diameter, and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.

C. Prepare pipe connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

D. Protect and support existing distribution piping and appurtenances as Work progresses.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SITE WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING

A. Bedding:
   1. Excavate pipe trench as specified in Section 312316.13 "Trenching".
   2. Placement:
      a. Place bedding material as indicated on Drawings.
      b. Level fill materials in one continuous layer not exceeding 6 inches of compacted depth.
      c. Compact to 95 percent maximum standard density.
   3. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place, and compact to 95 percent maximum standard density.
   4. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe as specified in Section 312323 "Fill."
   5. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill material to attain required compaction density.
   6. Place fill materials as specified in Section 312323 "Fill."

B. Pipe and Fittings:
   1. Maintain 10 feet of horizontal separation and 18 inches of vertical separation of water main from sewer piping.
   2. Group piping with other Site piping work whenever practical.
   3. Install pipe to elevations indicated on Drawings.
   4. Install ductile-iron piping and fittings according to AWWA C600.
   5. Install grooved and shouldered pipe joints according to AWWA C606.
   6. Route pipe in straight line.
   7. Install access fittings to permit disinfection of water system performed under Section 330110.58 "Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems".
   8. Thrust Restraints:
      a. Form and place concrete for pipe thrust restraints at each elbow or change of pipe direction.
      b. Place concrete to permit full access to pipe and pipe accessories.
      c. Provide at least 1 sq. ft. of bearing area on subsoil.
      d. Provide bearing area as indicated on Drawings.
   9. Establish elevations of buried piping with not less than 5 feet of cover.
   10. Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."
   11. Valves, Valve Boxes, and Fire Hydrants: As specified in Section 331419 "Valves and Hydrants for Water Utility Service."

C. Meters and Boxes: As specified in Section 331900 "Water Utility Metering Equipment".

D. Disinfection: As specified in Section 330110.58 "Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems."

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Install pipe within tolerance of 5/8 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Pressure test piping system according to AWWA C600.
   2. Pressure test piping system as indicated on pipe schedule.
   3. Pressure test piping system according to AWWA C600 and following:
      a. Test Pressure: Not less than 200 psig (1 380 kPa) or 50 psi (345 kPa) in excess of maximum static pressure, whichever is greater.
      b. Conduct hydrostatic test for a minimum of two hours.

c. Slowly fill section to be tested with water; expel air from piping at high points.
d. Install corporation cocks at high points.
e. Close air vents and corporation cocks after air is expelled.
f. Raise pressure to specified test pressure.
g. Observe joints, fittings, and valves under test.
h. Remove and renew cracked pipes, joints, fittings, and valves showing visible leakage, and retest.
i. Correct visible deficiencies and continue testing at same test pressure for additional two hours to determine leakage rate.
j. Maintain pressure within plus or minus 5 psi (34.4 kPa) of test pressure.
k. Leakage is defined as quantity of water supplied to piping necessary to maintain test pressure during period of test.
l. Compute maximum allowable leakage using following formula:
    1) L = SD x sqrt(P)/C.
    2) L = testing allowance, gph (L/h).
    3) S = length of pipe tested, feet (m).
    4) D = nominal diameter of pipe, inches (mm).
    5) P = average test pressure during hydrostatic test, psig (kPa).
    6) C = 148,000 (794 797).
m. If pipe under test contains sections of various diameters, calculate allowable leakage from sum of computed leakage for each size.
n. Leakage:
    1) If test of pipe indicates leakage greater than allowed, locate source of leakage, make corrections, and retest until leakage is within allowable limits.
    2) Correct visible leaks regardless of quantity of leakage.

4. Compaction Testing:
    a. Comply with ASTM D1557.
    b. Frequency of Compaction Tests: after each layer of fill.
    c. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, and retest.

END OF SECTION 33 14 16

SECTION 33 14 17
SITE WATER SERVICE UTILITY LATERALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Water piping and fittings.
2. Corporation stop assemblies.
3. Curb stop assemblies.
4. Backflow preventers.
5. Water meters.
6. Meter setting equipment.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 221100 "Facility Water Distribution" for connections to building water service.
2. Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork" for backfill-soil type.
3. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for bedding- and cover-material type.
4. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for excavation of pipe trench.
5. Section 312323 "Fill" for backfilling of trench.
6. Section 330110.58 "Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems" for flushing and disinfecting of water system.
7. Section 330509.33 "Thrust Restraint for Utility Piping" for thrust restraints as required by this Section.
8. Section 331900 "Water Utility Metering Equipment" for water meters as required by this Section.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
1. Water piping and fittings.
2. Corporation stop assemblies.
3. Curb stop assemblies.
4. Backflow preventers.
5. Water meters.
6. Meter setting equipment.

B. Field Quality-Control Reports: For utility laterals as specified in this Section.

C. Qualifications Statement: For manufacturer.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of piping mains, curb stops, connections, thrust restraints, pressure-pipe centerline elevations, and gravity-pipe invert elevations.

B. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.

C. Protection:

1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 WATER PIPING AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tubing:
1. Comply with ASTM B88.
2. Type: K, annealed.
3. Fittings: Cast copper; ASME B16.18 or wrought copper; ASME B16.22.
4. Joints: Compression connection or BCuP silver braze; AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

B. PVC Pipe:
1. Comply with ASTM D2241, SDR-21 for 200-psig (1.38-MPa) rating.
2. Fittings: PVC; ASTM D2466.
3. Joints: Solvent welded; ASTM D2855.

C. PE Pipe:
1. Comply with AWWA C901.
2. Fittings:
   a. Type: Molded.
   b. Comply with AWWA C901,
3. Joints: Compression or Butt fusion.

2.3 CORPORATION STOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers:
1. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
2. Hydro Instruments.
3. Mueller Co.

B. Corporation Stops:
1. Comply with ASTM B62.
2. Body: Brass or red brass alloy.
3. Inlet End: Threaded for tapping according to AWWA C800.
4. Outlet End: Suitable for service pipe specified.

C. Service Saddles:
1. Type: Double strap.
2. Designed to hold pressures in excess of pipe working pressure.

2.4 CURB STOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers:
1. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
2. Mueller Co.

B. Curb Stops:
1. Body: Brass or red brass alloy.

2. Comply with ASTM B62.
3. Valve Type: Plug.
4. Sealing: Positive pressure.

C. Curb Boxes and Covers:
1. Body: Cast iron.
2. Type: Extension or Buffalo.
3. Base: arch pattern.
4. Lid:
   a. Inscription: WATER.
   b. Plug: Pentagonal.

2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Manufacturers:
1. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
2. Flomatic Corporation.
3. Matco-Norca.
4. NIBCO INC.
5. WATTS.
6. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Reduced-Pressure Backflow Preventers:
1. Comply with ASSE 1013.
2. Materials:
   a. Body: Bronze.
   b. Internal Parts: Bronze.
   c. Springs: Stainless steel.
3. Check Valves:
   a. Quantity: Two, operating independently operating.
   b. Spring-loaded.
   c. Third Check Valve: Open under back pressure in case of diaphragm failure.
4. Differential Pressure Relief Valve:
   a. Type: Diaphragm.
   b. Location: Between check valves.
5. Gate Valves:
   a. Type: Resilient seated.
   b. Comply with AWWA C509.
   c. Quantity: Two.
6. Accessories:
   a. Non-threaded vent outlet.
   b. Strainer.
   c. Four resilient-seated ball valve test cocks.

C. Double-Check Valve Assemblies:
1. Comply with ASSE 1012.
2. Materials:
   a. Body: Bronze.
   b. Internal Parts: Corrosion resistant.
   c. Springs: Stainless steel.
3. Check Valves:
   a. Quantity: Two, operating independently.
   b. Intermediate atmospheric vent.

2.6 WATER METERS

A. As specified in Section 331900 "Water Utility Metering Equipment."

2.7 METER SETTING EQUIPMENT

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Mueller Co.

B. Outside Meter Setting:
   1. Meter Yokes:
      a. Material: Copper.
      b. Key Valves:
         1) Type: Angle inverted.
         2) Connection: Bronze pins and spring washers.
         3) Furnish test valves.
      c. Outlet: Expansion connection.
      d. End Connections: Flared copper tubing.
      e. Inlets and Outlets: Horizontal or vertical setting, with matching couplings, fittings, and stops.

2.8 MATERIALS

A. Bedding: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".

B. Cover: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".

C. Soil Backfill from Above Pipe to Finish Grade:
   1. Soil Type as specified in Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork".
   2. Subsoil: No rocks greater than 6 inches in diameter, frozen earth, or foreign matter.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

A. Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."

B. Precast Concrete Vaults: As specified in Section 330563 "Concrete Vaults and Chambers."

C. Metering Manholes: As specified in Section 330577 "Fiberglass Metering Manholes".

D. Thrust Restraints: As specified in Section 330509.33 "Thrust Restraint for Utility Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Cut pipe ends square, ream pipe and tube ends to full pipe diameter, and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale and dirt from inside and outside of piping before assembly.

C. Prepare pipe connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SITE WATER SERVICE UTILITY LATERALS

A. Corporation Stop Assemblies:

1. Make connection for each different kind of water main, using suitable materials, equipment, and methods as approved by Architect/Engineer.
2. Provide service clamps for mains constructed of materials other than cast iron or ductile iron.
3. Location:
    a. Screw corporation stops directly into tapped and threaded iron main at 10- and 2-o'clock positions along main's circumference.
    b. Locate and stagger corporation stops at least 12 inches apart longitudinally.
4. Plastic Pipe Mains:
    a. Provide full support for service clamp for full circumference of pipe, with minimum 2-inch width of bearing area.
    b. Exercise care against crushing or causing other damage to mains at time of tapping or installation of service clamp or corporation stop.
5. Use seals or other devices such that no leaks are present in mains at points of tapping.
6. Do not backfill and cover service connections until installation has been approved by Architect/Engineer.

B. Bedding:
1. Excavate pipe trench as specified in Section 312316.13 "Trenching".
2. Placement:
    a. Place bedding material as indicated on Drawings.
    b. Level fill materials in one continuous layer not exceeding 6 inches of compacted depth.
    c. Compact to 95 percent maximum standard density.
3. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place, and compact to 95 percent maximum density.
4. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe as specified in Section 312323 "Fill."
5. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill material to attain required compaction density.
6. Place fill materials as specified in Section 312323 "Fill."

C. Pipe and Fittings:
1. Maintain 10 feet horizontal separation and 18” vertical separation of water main from sewer piping.
2. Group piping with other Site piping Work whenever practical.
3. Install pipe to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe or joints.
4. Install access fittings to permit disinfection of water system.
5. Thrust Restraints: Form and place concrete for thrust restraints at each elbow or change of direction of pipe.
6. Establish elevations of buried piping with not less than 5 feet of cover.
7. Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."
8. Backfill trench as specified in Section 312323 "Fill".

D. Curb Stop Assemblies:
1. Set curb stops on compacted soil.
2. Boxes:
    a. Center and plumb curb boxes over curb stops.
    b. Set box cover flush with finished grade.

E. Water Meters: Install positive displacement meters according to AWWA M6, with isolating valves on inlet and outlet as indicated on Drawings.

F. Backflow Preventers:

1. Install backflow preventers where indicated on Drawings and according to manufacturer instructions.
2. Testing and Installation Requirements: Comply with local water company requirements and plumbing codes.

G. Service Connections:
1. Install water service according to as indicated on Drawings.
2. Install water service to within 5 feet of building and connect to building water service as specified in Section 221100 "Facility Water Distribution."
3. Metal Sleeve:
   a. Size: Accommodate minimum 2 inches of insulation.

H. Precast-Concrete Vaults: As specified in Section 330563 "Concrete Vaults and Chambers."

I. Disinfection of Water Piping System: Flush and disinfect system as specified in Section 330110.58 "Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems".

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Install pipe to indicated elevation to within tolerance of 5/8 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Pressure test water distribution system according to AWWA C600.
2. Pressure test system according to AWWA C600 and following:
   a. Test Pressure: Not less than 200 psig (1 380 kPa) or 50 psi (345 kPa) in excess of maximum static pressure, whichever is greater.
   b. Conduct hydrostatic test for a minimum of two hours.
   c. Slowly fill with water section to be tested, and expel air from piping at high points.
   d. Install corporation cocks at high points.
   e. Close air vents and corporation cocks after air is expelled.
   f. Raise pressure to specified test pressure.
   g. Observe joints, fittings, and valves under test.
   h. Remove and renew cracked pipes, joints, fittings, and valves that show visible leakage. Retest.
   i. Correct visible deficiencies and continue testing at same test pressure for additional two hours to determine leakage rate. Maintain pressure within plus or minus 5.0 psi (34.4 kPa) of test pressure.
   j. Leakage is defined as quantity of water supplied to piping as necessary to maintain test pressure during testing period.
   k. Compute maximum allowable leakage using following formula:
      1) L = SD x sqrt(P)/C.
      2) L = testing allowance, gph (L/h).
      3) S = length of pipe tested, feet (m).
      4) D = nominal diameter of pipe, inches (mm).
      5) P = average test pressure during hydrostatic test, psig (kPa).
      6) C = 148,000 (794 797).
   l. If pipe under test contains sections of various diameters, calculate allowable leakage from sum of computed leakage for each size.
   m. Leakage:

1) If test of pipe indicates leakage greater than that allowed, locate source of leakage, make corrections, and retest until leakage is within allowable limits.
2) Correct visible leaks regardless of quantity of leakage.

C. Compaction Testing for Bedding: Comply with ASTM D1557.

D. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, and retest.

E. Frequency of Compaction Tests: at each layer of fill.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 33 14 17

SECTION 33 14 19
VALVES AND HYDRANTS FOR WATER UTILITY SERVICE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Valves.
   2. Fire hydrants.
   3. Valve boxes.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete for thrust restraints.
   2. Section 099000 "Painting and Coating: for exterior finish for fire hydrants.
   3. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for fire hydrant drainage gravel.
   4. Section 330110.58 "Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems" for requirements for flushing and disinfecting.
   5. Section 330509.33 "Thrust Restraint for Utility Piping" for thrust restraints as required by this Section.
   6. Section 331413 "Public Water Utility Distribution Piping" for pressure testing of valves and hydrants.
   7. Section 331416 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping" for pressure testing of valves and hydrants.
   8. Section 331417 "Site Water Service Utility Laterals" for piping, trenching, backfilling, and compaction requirements.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with installation of water mains.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. Valves.
   2. Fire hydrants.
   3. Valve boxes.

B. Source Quality-Control Reports: For valves, valve boxes, and fire hydrants.

C. Qualifications Statements: For manufacturer and installer.

D. Manufacturer's Approval: For installer.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of valves and hydrants.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Tools: Furnish one tee wrench of required length to Owner.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery:
   1. Seal valve and hydrant ends to prevent entry of foreign matter.
   2. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.

C. Protection:
1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 VALVES

A. Performance and Design Criteria:
1. Pressure Rating:
a. 12-inch (300-mm) Diameter and Smaller: 200 psig (1 380 kPa).
b. 14-inch (350-mm) Diameter and Larger: 150 psig (1 030 kPa).
2. End Connections: Flanged or Mechanical joint**.**
3. Furnish valves of diameters 16 inches (400 mm) and larger with bypass valves and gear operators.
4. Coatings:
a. Comply with AWWA C550.
b. Application: Interior and exterior.

B. Double-Disc Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers:
a. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
b. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
c. Mueller Co.
d. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Comply with AWWA C500.
3. Materials:
a. Body: Iron.
b. Trim: Bronze.
4. Seat Type: Double disc; parallel.
5. Stem:
a. Type: Rising.
b. Seals: O-ring.
6. Operation:
a. Square operating nut with counterclockwise opening direction.
b. Handwheel with counterclockwise opening direction.

C. Resilient-Wedge Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers:
a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
b. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
c. Mueller Co.
d. NIBCO INC.
2. Comply with AWWA C509.
3. Body: Ductile iron.
4. Seats: Resilient.
5. Stem:
a. Type: Non-rising.

b. Material: Bronze.

6. Operation:
   a. Square operating nut.
   b. Opening Direction: Counterclockwise.

2.3 FIRE HYDRANTS

A. Manufacturers:
1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
2. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
3. Mueller Co.

B. Dry-Barrel, Breakaway Type:
1. Comply with AWWA C502.
2. Body: Cast iron.
3. Valve: Compression type.
4. Burial Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
5. Inlet Connection Size: 6 inches (150 mm).
6. Valve Opening: 5-1/4 inches (133 mm) in diameter.
7. End Connections: Mechanical joint.
8. Bolts and Nuts: Galvanized steel.
9. Interior Coating: Comply with AWWA C550.
10. Opening Direction: Counterclockwise.

C. Hose Connections:
1. One pumper, two hose nozzles.
2. Obtain thread type and size from local fire department.
3. Attach nozzle caps by separate chains.

D. Finishes:
1. Primer and two coats of enamel as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Color: Comply with requirements of fire department.

2.4 VALVE BOXES

A. Manufacturers:
1. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
2. Mueller Co.
3. Tyler Utilities; Union Foundry Company.

B. 12-inch (300-mm) Diameter Valves and Smaller:
1. Material: Cast iron.
2. Type: Two piece; screw.

C. Valves Larger than 12-inch (300-mm) Diameter:
1. Material: Cast iron.
2. Type: Three piece; screw.
3. Base: Round.

D. Lid Inscription: WATER.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Thrust Restraints: As specified in Section 330509.33 "Thrust Restraint for Utility Piping."

B. Valve Box Aligner: High-strength plastic device designed to automatically center valve box base and to prevent it from shifting off center during backfilling.

C. Fire Hydrant Drainage Gravel: As specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork."

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide shop inspection and testing of completed assembly.

B. Certificate of Compliance:
   1. If manufacturer is approved by authorities having jurisdiction, submit certificate of compliance indicating Work performed at manufacturer's facility conforms to Contract Documents.
   2. Specified shop tests are not required for Work performed by approved manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Determine exact location and size of valves from Drawings.

B. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.

C. Verify that elevations prior to excavation and installation are as indicated on Drawings.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Locate, identify, and protect from damage utilities to remain.

B. Do not interrupt existing utilities without permission and without making arrangements to provide temporary utility services.
   1. Notify Architect/Engineer not less than <**Insert**> days in advance of proposed utility interruption.
   2. Do not proceed without written permission from Architect/Engineer.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND HYDRANTS

A. Perform trench excavation, backfilling, and compaction as specified in Section 331417 "Site Water Service Utility Laterals".

B. Install n conjunction with pipe laying.

C. Provide buried valves with valve boxes installed flush with finished grade.

D. Provide support blocking and drainage gravel while installing fire hydrants; do not block drain hole.

E. Orientation:
   1. Set plumb.
   2. Set fire hydrants with pumper nozzle facing roadway.
   3. Set fire hydrants with centerline of pumper nozzle 18 inches (450 mm) above finished grade and with safety flange not more than 6 inches (150 mm) nor less than 2 inches (50 mm) above grade.

F. After main-line pressure testing, flush fire hydrants and check for proper drainage.

G. Disinfection of Water Piping System: Flush and disinfect with water mains as specified in Section 330110.58 "Disinfection of Water Utility Piping Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing: Pressure test with water mains as specified in Section 331416 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping."

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 33 14 19

SECTION 33 31 00
SANITARY SEWERAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Sanitary sewerage piping.
2. Manholes.
3. Flexible couplings.
4. Flexible pipe boots for manhole pipe entrances.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 221300 "Facility Sanitary Sewerage" for product and execution requirements for sanitary waste and vent piping at building.
2. Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork" for soil for backfill in trenches.
3. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for aggregate for backfill in trenches.
4. Section 312316 "Excavation" for requirements for excavation and backfill as required by this Section.
5. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for requirements for trenching as required by this Section.
6. Section 312323 "Fill" for requirements for backfilling as required by this Section.
7. Section 330505.41 "Air Testing" for testing of pressurized sewerage piping.
8. Section 330505.33 "Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing" for infiltration testing of gravity-flow sewerage piping.
9. Section 330505.43 "Mandrel Testing" for deflection testing of plastic sewerage piping.
10. Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes" for manholes for sanitary sewerage piping.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Bedding: Fill placed under, beside, and directly over pipe, prior to subsequent backfill operations.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with termination of sanitary sewer connection outside building, connection to City sewer, and trenching.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
1. Sanitary sewerage piping.
2. Manholes.
3. Flexible couplings.
4. Flexible pipe boots for manhole pipe entrances.

B. Source Quality-Control Reports: For piping and accessories.

C. Field Quality-Control Reports: For piping and accessories.

D. Qualifications Statements: For manufacturer and installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Record finished locations of pipe runs, connections, manholes, cleanouts, and invert elevations.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Storage:
   1. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.
   2. Store valves in shipping containers with labeling in place.

C. Protection:
   1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
   2. Block individual and stockpiled pipe lengths to prevent moving.
   3. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
   1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 SANITARY SEWERAGE PIPING

A. Ductile-Iron Pipe:
   1. Comply with AWWA C150.
   2. Minimum Pressure Class: 150.
   3. Minimum Special Thickness Class: 50.
   4. End Connections: Bell and spigot.
   5. Outside Coating:
      a. Type: Asphaltic.
      b. Minimum Uniform Thickness: 1 mil (0.025 mm).
      c. Comply with AWWA C151.
   6. Cement Mortar Lining: Comply with AWWA C104.
   7. Seal Coating-Applied Lining:
      a. Nominal Pipe Sizes 6 through 12 Inches (150 through 300 mm): 1/8 inch.
      b. Nominal Pipe Sizes 14 through 24 Inches (250 through 600 mm): 1/8 inch.
   8. Asphaltic Sealcoat Lining:
      a. Minimum Uniform Thickness: 1 mil.
      b. Comply with AWWA C104.
   9. PE Encasement: Comply with AWWA C105.
   10. Fittings:
      a. Material: Ductile iron, Class 50 or greater.
      b. Comply with AWWA C153.
      c. Lining: Cement-mortar lined according to AWWA C104.
   11. Coating:
      a. As specified in Section 099000 "Painting and Coating."
   12. Joints:
      a. Rubber gasket joint devices.
      b. Comply with AWWA C111.

B. Plastic Pipe with Bell and Spigot End Connections with Rubber-Ring-Sealed Gasket Joint:
   1. Material: PVC.
   2. Comply with ASTM D3034, SDR-26 or 35.
   3. Fittings: PVC.

4. Joints:
    a. Elastomeric gaskets.
    b. Comply with ASTM F477.

2.3 MANHOLES

A. As specified in Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes."

2.4 FLEXIBLE COUPLINGS

A. Manufacturers:
    1. Fernco Inc.
    2. Romac Industries, Inc.

B. Material: Resilient, chemical-resistant, elastomeric PVC.

C. Attachment: Two Series-300 stainless-steel clamps, screws, and housings.

2.5 FLEXIBLE PIPE BOOTS FOR MANHOLE PIPE ENTRANCES

A. Manufacturers:
    1. A-Lok.
    2. Press-Seal Corporation.

B. Material: EPDM.

C. Comply with ASTM C923.

D. Attachment: Series-300 stainless-steel clamp and hardware.

2.6 MATERIALS

A. Bedding and Cover:
    1. Bedding: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".
    2. Cover: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".
    3. Soil Backfill from Above Pipe to Finish Grade:
        a. Soil Type as specified in Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork".
        b. Subsoil with no rocks more than 6 inches in diameter, frozen earth, or foreign matter.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

A. Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide shop inspection and testing of pipe.

B. Certificate of Compliance:
    1. If manufacturer is approved by authorities having jurisdiction, submit certificate of compliance indicating Work performed at manufacturer's facility conforms to Contract Documents.
    2. Specified shop tests are not required for Work performed by approved manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that site is ready to receive Work of this Section.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

B. Correct over-excavation with coarse aggregate.

C. Remove large stones or other hard materials that could damage pipe or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.

D. Protect and support existing sewer lines, utilities, and appurtenances.

E. Utilities:
1. Maintain profiles of utilities.
2. Coordinate with private and public utilities to eliminate interference.
3. Notify Architect/Engineer if crossing conflicts occur.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING AND MANHOLES

A. Bedding:
1. Excavate pipe trench as specified in Section 312316.13 "Trenching".
2. Place bedding material at trench bottom.
3. Level materials in continuous layer not exceeding 6 inches.
4. Maintain optimum moisture content of bedding material to attain required compaction density.

B. Piping:
1. Install pipe, fittings, and accessories according to ASTM D2321, and seal joints watertight.
2. Lay pipe to slope gradients as indicated on Drawings.
3. Begin at downstream end of system and progress upstream.
4. Bedding:
   a. As indicated on Drawings.

5. Lay bell-and-spigot pipe with bells upstream.
6. Backfill and compact as specified in Section 312316.13 "Trenching."
7. Do not displace or damage pipe when compacting.
8. Connect to building sanitary sewer outlet and/or municipal sewer system.
9. Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."
10. Install Site sanitary sewage system piping to within 5 feet of building and connect to building sanitary waste system as specified in Section 221300 "Facility Sanitary Sewerage."

C. Manholes: As specified in Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes."

D. Backfilling:
1. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill in minimum lifts of up to 8 inches.
2. Tamp fill in place, and compact to 95 percent of maximum standard density.
3. Place and compact material immediately adjacent to pipes to avoid damage to pipe and prevent pipe misalignment.
4. Maintain optimum moisture content of bedding material as required to attain specified compaction density.
5. As specified in Section 312323 "Fill."

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Indicated Slope: 1/8 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Request inspection by testing service prior to placing bedding and backfill.

C. Testing:
   1. If tests indicate that Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, and retest.
   2. Perform testing on Site sanitary sewage system according to City of Burlington standards.
   3. Pipe Testing:
      a. Pressure Testing: As specified in Section 330505.41 "Air Testing".
      b. Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing: As specified in Section 330505.33 "Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing".
      c. Deflection Testing: As specified in Section 330505.43 "Mandrel Testing".
   4. Compaction Testing:
      a. Comply with AASHTO T 180.
      b. Testing Frequency: at each level of fill.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect pipe and aggregate cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation is in progress.

B. Cap open ends of piping during periods of Work stoppage.

END OF SECTION 33 31 00

SECTION 33 42 00
STORMWATER CONVEYANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Storm drainage piping.
2. Manholes.
3. Catch basins.
4. Cleanouts.
5. Pile support systems.
6. Concrete encasement and cradles.
7. Underground detention.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for reinforcement of concrete cradles.
2. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete type for catch basin base pad construction.
3. Section 036000 "Grouting" for cementitious grout.
4. Section 061300 "Heavy Timber Construction" for timber cradle construction.
5. Section 221400 "Facility Storm Drainage" for requirements for storm drainage piping.
6. Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork" for soils for backfill in trenches.
7. Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork" for aggregate for backfill in trenches.
8. Section 310519.13 "Geotextiles for Earthwork" for geotextile filter fabric.
9. Section 312316 "Excavation" for product and execution requirements for excavation and backfill as required by this Section.
10. Section 312316.13 "Trenching" for execution requirements for trenching as required by this Section.
11. Section 312323 "Fill" for requirements for backfill to be placed under this Section.
12. Section 330505.33 "Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing" for infiltration testing of gravity-flow sewerage piping.
13. Section 330505.43 "Mandrel Testing" for deflection testing of plastic sewerage piping.
14. Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes" for manholes and accessories as required by this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. ABS: Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with termination of storm sewer connection outside building, trenching, connection to foundation drainage system and/or municipal sewer utility service.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
1. Storm drainage piping.
2. Manholes.
3. Catch basins.
4. Cleanouts.
5. Pile support systems.

6. Concrete encasement and cradles.

B. Field Quality-Control Reports: For storm drainage piping, manholes, catch basins, cleanouts, pile support systems, and concrete encasement and cradles.

C. Qualifications Statement: For manufacturer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.

B. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.

C. Protection:
1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Perform Work according to:
1. Standard Specifications for Water and Sewer Construction in Illinois standards.

2.2 STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

A. Reinforced Concrete Piping:
1. Pipe:
   a. Comply with ASTM C76, Class III.
   b. Reinforcement: Mesh.
   c. Inside Nominal Diameter: See plans.
   d. End Connections: Bell and spigot.
2. Fittings: Reinforced concrete.
3. Joints:
   a. Comply with ASTM C443.
   b. Gaskets: Rubber, compression.

B. ABS Piping:
1. Pipe:
   a. Comply with ASTM D2680, SDR 35.
   b. Inside Nominal Diameter: See plans.
   c. End Connections: Bell and spigot, solvent sealed.
2. Fittings: ABS.
3. Joints:
   a. Type: Solvent weld.
   b. Comply with ASTM D2235.

C. PVC Piping:
1. Pipe:
   a. Comply with ASTM D2680; SDR 35.
   b. Inside Nominal Diameter: See plans.
   c. Style: Bell and spigot with rubber-ring sealed gasket joint.
2. Fittings: PVC.
3. Joints:
   a. Comply with ASTM F477.

b. Gaskets: Elastomeric.

D. Corrugated PE Piping for 3- to 6-Inch (25- to 75-mm) or 3- to 10-Inch (25- to 250-mm) Diameters:
1. Pipe:
   a. Comply with ASTM F405.
   b. Type: Smooth interior.
   c. Inside Nominal Diameter: See plans.
2. Fittings: PE.
3. Joints: Comply with ASTM F405.

E. Corrugated PE Piping for 8- to 24-Inch (200- to 600-mm) or 12- to 60-Inch (300- to 1 500-mm) Diameters:
1. Pipe:
   a. Comply with ASTM F667/F667M.
   b. Type: Smooth interior.
   c. Inside Nominal Diameter: See plans.
2. Fittings: PE.
3. Joints: Comply with ASTM F667/F667M.

2.3 MANHOLES

A. As specified in Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes"

2.4 CATCH BASINS

A. Shaft and Top Section:
1. Material: Reinforced precast concrete pipe sections.
2. Joints: Lipped male/female.
3. Nominal Shaft Diameter: See plans.
4. Top Section: Eccentric cone.

B. Lids and Frames:
1. Manufacturers:
   a. EJ.
   b. Neenah Foundry Company.
   c. Polylok, Inc.
2. Materials: Cast iron.
3. Lid:
   a. Hinged.
   b. Design: See plans.
4. Nominal Lid and Frame Size: See plans.

C. Base Pad:
1. Material: Cast-in-place concrete, as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

2.5 CLEANOUTS

A. Shaft and Top Section:
1. Material: Same as pipe.
2. Joints: Same as pipe.
3. Nominal Shaft Diameter: See plans.

B. Cleanout Lids and Frames:
1. Manufacturers:
   a. IPS Corporation.

b. Josam Company.
c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Materials: Cast iron.
3. Lid:
a. Hinged.
b. Design: See plans.
4. Nominal Lid and Frame Size: See plans.

C. Base Pad:
1. Material: Cast-in-place concrete, as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

2.6 CONCRETE ENCASEMENT AND CRADLES

A. Concrete:
1. Description: Concrete, as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Compressive Strength: 4,000 psi at 28 days, concrete, rough troweled finish.

B. Reinforcement: As specified in Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing."

2.7 MATERIALS

A. Bedding and Cover:
1. Bedding: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".
2. Cover: Fill Type as specified in Section 310516 "Aggregates for Earthwork".
3. Soil Backfill from above Pipe to Finish Grade: Soil Type as specified in Section 310513 "Soils for Earthwork".
4. Subsoil: No rocks more than 6 inches in diameter, frozen earth, or foreign matter.

2.8 MIXES

A. Grout: As specified in Section 036000 "Grouting".

2.9 FINISHES

A. Steel Galvanizing:
1. Comply with ASTM A123/A123M.
2. Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

B. Galvanizing for Nuts, Bolts, and Washers: Comply with ASTM A153/A153M.

2.10 ACCESSORIES

A. Geotextile Filter Fabric:
1. As specified in Section 310519.13 "Geotextiles for Earthwork."
2. Comply with AASHTO M288 for subsurface drainage.
3. Type:
a. Class A or B, non-biodegradable.
b. Woven.

B. Underground Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."

C. Pipe Support Brackets: Galvanized structural steel coated with bituminous paint.

D. Underground detention shall be installed per plans and manufacturer’s recommendations. Approved suppliers shall be:
1. StormTank by Brentwood Industries, Inc., 118 Brentwood Drive, Hope, AR 71901, 870-777-5220.

2. StormTech by Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc., 4821 Highway 6 SE, Iowa City, IA 52240, 319-545-3080.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that site is ready to receive Work of this Section.

B. Verify that excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on Drawings.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

B. Correct over-excavation with coarse aggregate.

C. Remove large stones and other hard matter that could damage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF STORM DRAINAGE PIPING, CATCH BASINS, AND CLEANOUTS

A. Excavation and Bedding:
1. Excavate trench as specified in Section 312316.13 "Trenching.".
2. Hand trim excavation for accurate placement of piping to indicated elevations.
3. Place bedding material at trench bottom.
4. Level materials in continuous layers not exceeding 8-inch compacted depth.
5. Maintain optimum moisture content of bedding material to attain required compaction density.
6. Level fill materials in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches in depth, and compact to 95 percent maximum standard density.
7. Install pipe on compacted subgrade meeting bedding requirements, and cradle bottom 20 percent of diameter.
8. Install pipe supports and anchors.

B. Piping:
1. Pipe, Fittings, and Accessories: Comply with ASTM D2321.
2. Seal joints watertight.
3. Place pipe on minimum 4-inch-deep bed of filter aggregate.
4. Cradle bottom 20 percent of pipe diameter to avoid point load.
5. Install aggregate at sides per plans.
6. Install top cover to minimum compacted thickness of 12 inches, and compact to 95 percent maximum standard density.
7. Backfilling and Compaction:
   a. As specified in Section 312323 "Fill".
   b. Do not displace or damage pipe while compacting.
8. Manholes: As specified in Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes."
9. Connect to building sewer outlet, municipal storm sewer system, and/or manholes (see plans).
10. Pipe Markers: As specified in Section 330597 "Identification and Signage for Utilities."
11. Install Site storm drainage system piping to within 5 feet of building.
12. Connect to building storm drainage system as specified in Section 221400 "Facility Storm Drainage."

C. Catch Basins and Cleanouts:
   1. Form bottom of excavation clean and smooth, and to indicated elevation.
   2. Form and place cast-in-place concrete base pad, with provision for storm sewer pipe end sections.
   3. Level top surface of base pad.
   4. Sleeve concrete shaft sections to receive storm sewer pipe sections.
   5. Establish elevations and pipe inverts for inlets and outlets as indicated on Drawings.
   6. Mount lid and frame level in grout, secured to top section to indicated elevation.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Indicated Pipe Slope: 1/8 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Request inspection by testing service prior to placing aggregate cover over pipe.

C. Inspection:
   1. Request inspection by testing service prior to placing aggregate/soil cover over pipe.
   2. As specified in Section 330130.11 "Television Inspection of Sewers."

D. Testing:
   1. Pipe Welding: Comply with AASHTO T241.
   2. Compaction Test:
      a. Comply with AASHTO T 180.
      b. Testing Frequency: at each layer of fill.
   3. Manholes: As specified in Section 330561 "Concrete Manholes."
      a. Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing: As specified in Section 330505.33 "Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing".
      b. Deflection Testing: As specified in Section 330505.43 "Mandrel Testing".
   4. If tests indicate that Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, and retest.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect pipe and aggregate cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation is in progress.

END OF SECTION 33 42 00